
RFB-OC177-22

Volume 2 of 2

ORANGE COUNTY DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

ORANGE COUNTY MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE

WELLS FARM ROAD
GOSHEN, NEW YORK 10924

ISSUED: November 30, 2022

OWNER

County of Orange
2455-2459 Route 17M
Goshen, NY 10924
Phone: (845) 291-2750

CONSTRUCTION MANAGER

The Palombo Group
22 Noxon Street
Poughkeepsie, NY 12601
Phone: (845) 868-1239

ARCHITECT/ENGINEER

Hyman Hayes Associates, LLC
Suite 103, 800 Troy Schenectady Road
Latham, NY 12210
Phone: (518) 452-3470

SECTION 00 0001

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME 1

DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 0000	TABLE OF CONTENTS/ LIST OF DRAWINGS
00 0200	NOTICE TO BIDDERS
00 1000	INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS
00 3000	BID FORM – CONTRACT 1 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK
00 3100	BID FORM – CONTRACT 2 GEOTHERMAL WELLS WORK
00 3200	BID FORM – CONTRACT 3 PLUMBING WORK
00 3300	BID FORM – CONTRACT 4 HVAC WORK
00 3400	BID FORM – CONTRACT 5 ELECTRICAL
00 4100	BID BOND
00 4300	STOCKHOLDER & PARTNERSHIP INTEREST AFFIDAVIT
00 4800	NON-COLLUSIVE AFFIDAVIT
00 4900	CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATION STATEMENT
00 4950	DISCLOSURE OF PRIOR NON-RESPONSIBILITY DETERMINATIONS
00 4951	IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT CERTIFICATION
00 4952	DISCLOSURE OF CONTRACTOR-SUBCONTRACTOR AND SUBSTANTIALLY OWNED- AFFILIATED ENTITY RELATIONSHIPS
00 4953	SUBCONTRACTOR'S VERIFIED STATEMENT
00 4954	CONTRACTOR'S VERIFIED STATEMENT
00 4955	BYRD ANTI-LOBBYING CERTIFICATION
00 4956	BYRD ANTI-LOBBYING DISCLOSURE FORM
00 5000	AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRATOR
00 6100-A	PERFORMANCE BOND
00 6100-B	PAYMENT BOND
00 6100-C	MAINTENANCE BOND
00 7000	GENERAL CONDITIONS
00 7000A	TABLE 1-1
00 8100	PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE
00 8200	PROJECT LABOR AGREEMENT

DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 0100	SUMMARY OF WORK
01 0110	MILESTONE SCHEDULE
01 1900	REFERENCE STANDARDS & DEFINITIONS
01 2000	PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES
01 2000-A	SUBSTITUTION FORM
01 2200	UNIT PRICES
01 2600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES
01 3000	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS
01 3100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
01 3300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 4000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
01 4533	SPECIAL INSPECTIONS & STRUCTURAL TESTING

01 5000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 5723	TEMPORARY STORMWATER POLLUTION CONTROL
01 5734	INDOOR AIR QUALITY
01 6000	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS
01 7000	EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS
01 7419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT & DISPOSAL
01 7700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
01 7823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
01 7839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS
01 8000	PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
01 8200	DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

APPENDIX:

1. GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING REPORT.
2. FORMATION THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY TEST & DATA ANALYSIS.

VOLUME 2

00 0000	TABLE OF CONTENTS/ LIST OF DRAWINGS
---------	-------------------------------------

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 4119	SELECTIVE DEMOLITION
---------	----------------------

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

03 3000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
03 3020	CONCRETE SLAB ON GRADE

DIVISION 04 – MASONRY

04 2200	CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY
---------	-----------------------

DIVISION 05 – METALS

05 1200	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
05 3100	STEEL DECKING
05 4000	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
05 5000	METAL FABRICATIONS
05 5213	PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 1000	ROUGH CARPENTRY
06 1600	SHEATHING
06 4113	ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS AND CASEWORK
06 4216	SIMULATED WOOD WALL PANELS

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 1900	WATER REPELLANTS
07 2100	THERMAL INSULATION

07 2119	FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION
07 2500	WEATHER BARRIERS
07 4213	METAL PLATE WALL PANELS
07 5323	EPDM ROOFING
07 7200	ROOF ACCESSORIES
07 8413	PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING
07 9200	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS

08 1113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
08 1416	FLUSH WOOD DOORS
08 3113	ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES
08 3325	OVERHEAD COILING DOORS
08 4113	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
08 4243	AUTOMATIC SLIDING ENTRANCES
08 7100	DOOR HARDWARE
08 8000	GLAZING
08 8836	PRIVACY GLASS

DIVISION 09 -FINISHES

09 2900	GYPSUM BOARD
093013	CERAMIC PORCELAIN TILING
09 5113	ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS
09 5423	LINEAR METAL CEILINGS
09 6513	RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES
09 6519	RESILIENT TILE FLOORING
09 6723	RESINOUS FLOORING
09 6813	TILE CARPETING
09 7200	WALL COVERING
09 9100	PAINTING

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

10 1100	VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS
10 2113	PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS
10 2123	CUBICLE CURTAINS AND TRACK
10 2600	WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION
10 2800	TOILET, BATH AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES
10 4413	FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS
10 4416	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS
10 5100	SECURITY PRODUCTS
10 5113	METAL LOCKERS
10 5330	PRE-ENGINEERED METAL CANOPIES
10 7312	EXTERIOR SUN CONTROL DEVICES
107516	GROUND SET FLAGPOLES

DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT

11 1319	STATIONARY LOADING DOCK EQUIPMENT
11 7000	MEDICAL EQUIPMENT

11 7800 MORTUARY EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

12 3570 HEALTHCARE CASEWORK
12 3616 METAL COUNTERTOPS
12 3623 PLASTIC LAMINATE CLAD COUNTERTOPS
12 3661 SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS
12 4816 ENTRANCE FLOOR GRILLES
12 4900 CLUTCH-OPERATED FLEX SHADE

DIVISION 13 SPECIALTIES

13 4900 RADIATION PROTECTION

DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION
21 0517 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
21 0518 ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
21 1100 FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER SERVICE PIPING
21 1313 WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING
22 0516 EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0517 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0519 METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0523 GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
22 0529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 0553 IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
22 0700 PLUMBING INSULATION
22 0719 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
22 1116 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
22 1119 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
22 1123 DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS
22 1316 SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
22 1413 FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING
22 1423 STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES
22 3300 ELECTRIC DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS
22 4000 PLUMBING FIXTURES
22 4700 DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATER COOLERS

DIVISION 23 – HVAC

23 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC
23 0513 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
23 0516 EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING
23 0517 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
23 0518 ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
23 0519 METERS AND GAUGES FOR HVAC
23 0523 GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
23 0529 HANGARS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
23 0548 VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
23 0553 IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
23 0593 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

23 0713	DUCT INSULATION
23 0719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION
23 0800	COMMISSIONING OF HVAC
23 0900	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS FOR HVAC
23 0993	SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS
23 2113	HYDRONIC PIPING
23 2123	HYDRONIC PUMPS
23 2500	HVAC WATER TREATMENT
23 3113	METAL DUCTS
23 3300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
23 3423	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
23 3713	DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
23 3723	HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS
23 5216.16	MACH BOILERS
236423	WATER-TO-WATER REVERSE CYCLE CHILLERS
23 7313	MODULAR INDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS
23 8126	SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONERS
23 7146	WATER SOURCE HEAT PUMPS – SMALL WSHP
23 8147	WATER SOURCE HEAT PUMPS – LARGE WSHP
23 8149	GROUND SOURCE HEAT PUMPS
23 8150	THERMAL-ENHANCED BENTONITE GROUT

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

26 0500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL
26 0519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
26 0529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0533	RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
26 0923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
26 2200	LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS
26 2413	SWITCHBOARDS
26 2416	PANELBOARDS
26 2726	WIRING DEVICES
26 3600	TRANSFER SWITCHES
26 5100	INTERIOR LIGHTING
26 5600	EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS

27 0526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
27 0528.36	CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS
27 0528.48	MULTIMEDIA CONNECTION WALL BOX
27 1000	TELECOMMUNICATIONS STRUCTURED CABLING
27 4100	AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS
27 4113	MULTIMEDIA SYSTEMS FLOORBOX
28 1300	ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL
28 2300	VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

31 1000	SITE CLEARING
31 2000	EARTH MOVING
31 2301	EXCAVATION, BACKFILL & COMPACTION

31 2319	DEWATERING
32 1216	ASPHALT PAVING
32 1313	CONCRETE PAVING
32 1373	CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS
32 1713	PARKING BUMPERS
32 1723	PAVEMENT MARKINGS
32 1726	TACTILE WARNING SURFACING
32 3113	CHAINLINK FENCES AND GATES
32 3223	SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS
32 3300	STEEL BOLLARDS
32 3301	CONCRETE BOLLARDS
32 9300	PLANTS
33 0500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES
33 1425	SITE WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING
33 4200	STORMWATER CONVEYANCE
33 4600	SUBDRAINAGE

LIST OF DRAWINGS

CIVIL

EX101	EXISTING CONDITIONS PLAN
DM101	DEMO PLAN
C101	UTILITY PLAN
C102	SITE PLAN
E_101	ELECTRICAL SITE PLAN
L101	LANDSCAPE PLAN
ESCP	EROSION & SEDIMENT CONTROL PLAN
D101	DETAILS
D102	DETAILS
D103	DETAILS

STRUCTURAL

S001	GENERAL NOTES
S002	DESIGN DATA AND GENERAL NOTES CONT
S003	SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
S100	FOUNDATION PLAN
S200	MAIN ROOF FRAMING PLAN
S201	INTERMEDIATE ROOF FRAMING PLAN
S202	HIGH ROOF FRAMING PLAN
S300	FOUNDATION DETAILS
S301	FOUNDATION DETAILS CONT
S302	PIER, BASE PLATE AND ANCHOR ROD DETAILS
S400	MASONRY DETAILS
S500	STEEL FRAMING DETAILS
S501	STEEL FRAMING DETAILS CONT
S502	COLD FORMED METAL FRAMING DETAILS

S503 BRACED FRAME ELEVATIONS AND DETAILS

LIFE SAFETY

LSC100 LIFE SAFETY PLAN

ARCHITECTURAL

A001 GENERAL NOTES, TYPICAL ELEVATIONS
A002 WALL TYPES
A100 FURNITURE & EQUIPMENT PLAN
A101 FLOOR PLAN
A102 DIMENSION PLAN
A103 ROOF PLAN
A104 ROOF DETAILS
A200 EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A201 EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A202 BUILDING SECTIONS
A400 REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
A401 CEILING DETAILS
A500 WALL SECTIONS
A501 WALL SECTIONS
A502 EXTERIOR DETAILS
A503 EXTERIOR DETAILS
A504 EXTERIOR DETAILS
A505 EXTERIOR DETAILS
A506 EXTERIOR PLAN DETAILS
A507 EXTERIOR PLAN DETAILS
A600 ENLARGED FLOOR PLANS
A601 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A602 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A603 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A604 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A605 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A606 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A607 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A608 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
A700 DOOR SCHEDULE AND DETAILS
A701 WINDOW/ BORROWED LITE SCHEDULE AND DETAILS
A800 ROOM FINISH SCHEDULE
A801 FINISH PLAN
A802 WALL PROTECTION PLAN AND SIGNAGE PLAN
A803 SIGNAGE
A900 MILLWORK SECTIONS AND DETAILS

FIRE PROTECTION

FP001 FIRE PROTECTION SYMBOLS, NOTES AND ABBREVIATIONS
FP100 FIRE PROTECTION SPRINKLER FLOOR PLAN

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

H001 HVAC SYMBOLS, NOTES & ABBREVIATIONS
H100 HVAC DUCTWORK FLOOR PLAN
H101 HVAC DUCTWORK FLOOR PLAN @ ROOMS 134 & 121
H102 HVAC SITE PLAN
H200 HVAC DUCTWORK ROOF PLAN
H700 HVAC DETAILS
H701 HVAC DETAILS
H702 HVAC DETAILS
H703 HVAC DETAILS
H704 HVAC DETAILS
H705 HVAC DETAILS
H801 HVAC SCHEDULES
H802 HVAC SCHEDULES

ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

E001 ELECTRICAL SYMBOLS, NOTES & ABBREVIATIONS
ES101 ELECTRICAL SITE PLAN
E100 ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN
E101 ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN
E200 ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FLOOR PLAN
E300 ELECTRICAL POWER ROOF PLAN
E700 ELECTRICAL ONE-LINE, AND ELECTRICAL DETAILS
E701 ELECTRICAL DETAILS
E800 ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES & DETAILS

PLUMBING SYSTEMS

P001 PLUMBING SYMBOLS, NOTES & ABBREVIATIONS
P100 PLUMBING SANITARY FLOOR PLAN
P200 PLUMBING DOMESTIC WATER FLOOR PLAN
P300 PLUMBING ROOF PLAN
P701 PLUMBING DETAILS
P702 PLUMBING DETAILS

IT/SECURITY

TA002 LV SITE PLAN ENABLING

TA003 LV OUTSIDE PLANT
TA100 LOW VOLTAGE FLOOR PLAN
TA200 LV REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
TA300 ENLARGED LOW VOLTAGE DETAILS - I.T. ROOM 119
TA401 TYPICAL LOW VOLTAGE DEVICE DETAILS
TA411 TYPICAL LOW VOLTAGE INFRASTRUCTURE DETAILS
TA500 TYPICAL ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL DOOR DETAILS
TA700 AV SIGNAL FLOW

FF&E

F1.1 FURNITURE PLAN

END OF SECTION

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
2. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
2. Section 017300 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.
3. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements not part of selective demolition.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.

2. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
3. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
4. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's building manager's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
- B. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage and demolition operations. Comply with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation." Submit before Work begins.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- B. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- C. Hazardous Materials:
 1. It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
 - b. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
 2. Present in buildings and structures to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.

- a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
 - b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
 - c. Owner will provide material safety data sheets for suspected hazardous materials that are known to be present in buildings and structures to be selectively demolished because of building operations or processes performed there.
- D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- E. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

1.9 WARRANTY

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- C. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of measured drawings, preconstruction photographs or video.
 - 1. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.
 - 2. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain

and protect them against damage.

- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
 - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
- B. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
 - 1. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
 - 1. Clean salvaged items.
 - 2. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 - 3. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
 - 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
 - 1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
 - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.

3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

3.8 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION SCHEDULE

- A. Remove: As shown on site drawings.
- B. Remove and Salvage: As shown on site drawings.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: As shown on site drawings.
- D. Existing to Remain: As shown on site drawings.
- E. Dismantle: As shown on site drawings.

END OF SECTION 024119

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes. See Section 033020 for concrete to be used for slab on grade applications.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 312301 Excavation, Backfill & Compaction for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
 - 2. Section 014533 Special Inspection and Structural Testing.
 - 3. Section 033020 Concrete Slab on Grade and Slab on Deck.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material certificates.
- B. Material test reports.
- C. Special Inspections

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

- B. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
 - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- D. Concrete Testing and Special Inspections: See Section 014533

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: For exposed surfaces use form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: For hidden and buried surfaces use plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.
 - 1. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch bar length.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- C. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II. Supplement with the following:
 - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
 - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33 size 467 or graded and blended as follows:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
2 inch	100
1 1/2 inch	95 to 100
3/4 inch	35 to 70
3/8 inch	10 to 30
No. 4	0 to 5

1. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement. Clean, sharp, natural sand free from loam, clay, lumps, or other deleterious substances.

- C. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.

2.4 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.

2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.

- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating with minimum 18 percent solids content.

2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- 1. Use water-reducing or high-range water-reducing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
- 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

- D. Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

- 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi for piers and foundation walls at 28 days, 3000 psi for footings at 28 days.
- 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 for piers and walls, 0.55 for footings.
- 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, 8 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
- 4. Air Content: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery.

2.8 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect. Install at location of wall control joint shown on foundation plan.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of

weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.

1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.

C. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1.

D. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301.

3.6 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view.

C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist and covered with polyethylene film for not less than seven days.

3.8 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting (Special Inspector): Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. See Specification Section 014533.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 033020 - CONCRETE SLAB ON GRADE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of contract, including general and supplementary conditions and Division 1 specification sections, apply to this section.
- B. Section 033000: Cast-In-Place Concrete.
- C. Section 014533: Special Inspections & Structural Test.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This section supplements Section 033000: Cast-In-Place Concrete, with specific emphasis on concrete slabs on grade. The general requirements of Section 033000 pertain to this section unless otherwise specified in this section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Reference Standards:

- 1. ACI 302 "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction."
- B. Hold a slab preconstruction meeting at least 14 days prior to initial planned date of slab placement. Discussion shall include subbase preparation, reinforcing and dowel placement, slab joints, concrete mix designs, and procedures for concrete placement, finishing, curing, and protection. Attendees shall include Contractor, Placement Subcontractor, Concrete Supplier, Special Inspector, Testing Agency, Engineer, Construction Manager, Owner and Architect.
- C. Provide protection from precipitation for vapor retarder and slab subbase prior to slab-on-grade placement. Provide protection for slab on grade from direct exposure to sun, wind, precipitation, and excessive cold or hot temperatures starting during placement and lasting until end of curing period.
 - 1. After curing period, provide protection from precipitation for slab openings (column blockouts, mechanical blockouts, expansion/isolation joints, etc.) to prevent moisture from entering slab subbase.
 - 2. Contractor shall be responsible for cost of repairing slab defects resulting from deficient protection methods.
 - 3. One method of protection is installing roof membrane and roof drains prior to installing vapor retarder, slab subbase, and slab on grade.

1.5 MATERIAL EVALUATION/QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Contractor shall secure services of company field advisor from manufacturer of water vapor-reducing admixtures (WVRA) and concrete surface treatment products, including sealers, hardeners, sealants, and finishes. Field advisor shall be certified in writing by manufacturer to be technically qualified in product installation. Personnel involved solely in sales do not qualify. Field advisor shall be present at beginning of installation of product and as required during duration of project to:
 - 1. Render technical assistance to Contractor regarding installation procedures of product to satisfy warrantee or guarantee requirements.
 - 2. Provide specialized training in use of product to Contractor's personnel.
 - 3. Verify surface preparation procedures and suitable substrates for material application.
 - 4. Verify proper mixing proportions and procedures for product.
 - 5. Verify proper temperature and other environmental controls.
 - 6. Verify proper tools and application procedures.
 - 7. Verify proper curing and protection of installed product.
 - 8. Familiarize Contractor/Owner/Architect/Engineer with entire system, including inspection techniques.
 - 9. Answer questions that arise.
- B. Field advisor shall prepare a written report summarizing information listed above. Submit report to Special Inspector, Contractor, Owner, Architect, and Engineer.
- C. Contractor shall be responsible for expenses of field advisor and verifying credentials of advisor.
- D. WVRA manufacturer's warranty shall include:
 - 1. Term: Minimum of 10 years.
 - 2. Repair and/or removal of failed flooring.
 - 3. Placement of topical moisture remediation system.
 - 4. Replacement of flooring materials equal to quality of original installation including material and labor.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with Section 033000.
- B. Submit option for slab placement (see Part 3 of this section) and layout of slab joints.
- C. Prior to slab placement, submit to Special Inspector and Engineer for information only a written protection program for vapor retarder, slab subbase, and slab on grade.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Reinforcement: ASTM A 615, Grade 60 for uncoated deformed bars.
 - 1. ASTM A 775 for epoxy-coated, deformed bars.
 - 2. Coatings (epoxy) applied after fabrication and bending.
- B. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775.
- C. Supports for Reinforcement: Use wire bar-type supports complying with CRSI specifications. Use chairs with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
 - 1. Concrete bricks may be used to support reinforcing. Stagger brick locations.
 - a. Do not use clay bricks.
 - b. Do not use bricks to support epoxy-coated or galvanized reinforcing.
 - 2. Supports for epoxy-coated reinforcing shall be either wire bar-type coated with epoxy, plastic, or vinyl compatible with concrete for minimum distance of 2 inches from point of contact with reinforcing or all plastic-type.
 - 4. Finish (epoxy-coated or galvanized) for supports formed from reinforcing bars shall match finish of supported reinforcing.
- F. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150. Type II or Type I/II only.
- B. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Type F, with loss on ignition of less than 6 percent.
- C. Ground-Granulated, Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
- D. Water: ASTM C 94, clean, fresh, drinkable.
- E. Aggregates: NYSDOT-approved, Section 703-02 (normal weight), one source and as herein specified.
 - 1. Fine Aggregate: Coarse, clean, sharp, uniformly graded natural sand free of loam, clay, lumps or other deleterious substances. Less than 10 percent passing No. 100 sieve and less than 3 percent passing No. 200 sieve.
 - 2. Coarse Aggregate: Uniformly graded to 1 1/2 inches, clean, processed, crushed stone with low absorption and free of flat/elongated particles. NYSDOT-approved, size 3A gravel can be used to meet large diameter requirement. Gradation similar to blended NYSDOT Type CA 2 and size 1A or ASTM C 33 Type 57 and Type 8, blended and

modified as follows:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
1 inch	95 to 98.5
3/4 inch	75 to 94
1/2 inch	25 to 50
3/8 inch	10 to 25
No. 4	0 to 10

2.3 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air Entraining: ASTM C 260.
- B. Set-Control Admixtures: Not permitted.
- C. Calcium Chloride: Not permitted.
- D. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture (Superplasticizer): "Eucon 37" by Euclid Chemical Co.; or "Sikament SPMN" by Sika Chemical Corp. Admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type F or G, and not contain more chloride ions than in municipal drinking water.
- E. Water-Reducing Admixture: "Eucon WR-75" or "Eucon WR-91" by Euclid Chemical Co.; "MasterPozzolith 200" by Master Builders; or "Plastocrete 161" by Sika Chemical Corp. Admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type A, and not contain more chloride ions than in municipal drinking water.
- F. Mid-Range, Water Reducer/Finish Enhancer: ASTM C 494, Type A/F. "Daracem 55" or "Daracem 65" by W.R. Grace or accepted equivalent.
- G. Integral Water Vapor-Reducing Admixture (WVRA): Sodium silicate admixtures by "Vapor Lock 20/20" by Specialty Products Group (SPG); "Barrier One" by Barrier One, Inc.; "Moxie 1800 Super-Admix" by Moxie International; with the following minimum performance:
 - 1. Water Vapor Transmission: Maximum 0.03 US perms per ASTM E 96.
 - 2. Water Proofing: Maximum 1.0×10^{-8} cm/s per ASTM D-5084.

2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Premolded Joint Filler: Provide resilient and nonextruding, premolded, bituminous fiberboard units complying with ASTM D 1751; 1/2-inch-thick, full slab depth.
- B. Construction Joint Form: Square edge form only. Keyed joint not permitted.
- C. Semi-Rigid Epoxy Joint Filler for Interior Exposed Slabs: At exposed slabs, seal joints with "Sikadur 51SL" by Sika; "Sure Fil J52" by Dayton Superior; "MM-80P" by Metzger/McGuire; "Euco 700" by Euclid Chemical Co.
- D. Semi-Rigid Polyurea Joint Filler for Interior Slabs: At interior slabs to receive broadloom carpet, hardwood, or VCT, seal joints with "Euco QWIKjoint 200" by Euclid Chemical Co.;

- “Spal-Pro RS 65” by Metzger/McGuire; “Sika Loadflex-524 EZ” by Sika; or accepted equivalent.
- E. Cementitious Joint Filler for Interior Slabs (Self-Leveling Topping): At interior slabs to receive rubber-backed carpet, solid vinyl tile, and for all other floor coverings, seal joints with “Ardex K301” by Ardex; “Fast Setting Floor Resurfacer” by Quikrete; “Level-X52” by Edison Coatings; “SLT-HS” by Raeco; or accepted equivalent.
 - F. Polyurethane Joint Sealant for Exterior Slabs: “Sikaflex-2c SL” by Sika; “MasterSeal SL2” by Master Builders; “Eucolastic 1 SL” by Euclid Chemical Co.; “Urexpan NR-200” by Pecora Corporation; or accepted equivalent.
 - G. Absorptive Cover: Burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 ounces a square yard and complying with AASHTO M 182, Class 2.
 - H. Curing-Sheet Materials: ASTM C 171; waterproof paper, polyethylene film, or polyethylene-coated burlap.
 - 1. For slabs exposed to view, provide one of the following or accepted equivalent:
 - a. “HydraCure S16” by PNA Construction Technologies.
 - b. “UltraCure NCF/SUN” by McTech Group.
 - I. Penetrating Exterior Anti-Spalling Sealer: “Euco-Guard 100” by Euclid Chemical Co. (mixed to 17.5 percent concentration); “MasterProtect H400” by Master Builders; “Aquapel Plus” by L&M Construction Chemicals; or accepted equivalent.
 - J. Evaporation Retarder: Monomolecular, film-forming compound applied to exposed concrete slab surfaces for temporary protection from rapid moisture loss. “Aquafilm J74RTU” by Dayton Superior; “EucoBar” by Euclid Chemical Co.; “MasterKure ER 50” by Master Builders, Inc.; or accepted equivalent.
 - K. Crack Repair Material: For cracks smaller than 1/8 inch, use “Sika Pronto 19-4K” methacrylate by Sika; “Rapid Refloor” polyurea by Metzger McGuire; or accepted equivalent. For cracks greater than 1/8 inch, use specified joint filler material.
 - L. Hardener: “Lapidolith” by Sonneborn Building Products or accepted equivalent for exposed slabs.

2.5 PROPORTIONING AND MIX DESIGN

A. Concrete Quality:

Location	Required 28-Day Compressive Strength (psi)	Approximate Cementitious Materials Content (pounds)	Maximum Water/Cement Ratio	Percent Entrained Air
Interior slabs on grade	3,500	530	0.50 (265 pounds maximum total water)	2*
Exterior slabs on grade	4,500	611***	0.45	6**

* Do not add air-entraining admixtures. Air entrainment occurs as result of mixing.

** Plus or minus 1.5 percent.

*** Maximum cement content 526 pounds plus 20 percent pozzolans by weight. Minimum cement content 488 pounds plus 20 percent pozzolans by weight.

B. Slump: 5-inch maximum for normal and mid-range, water-reduced mixes.

C. Concrete containing a high-range, water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer) shall have maximum slump of 6 inches unless otherwise accepted by Engineer.

D. Use 564 pounds (6 sacks) maximum of cement for each cubic yard for interior slabs and minimum sand content.

E. Quantity of coarse aggregate in pounds must be in range of 1.25 to 1.5 times quantity of fine aggregate in pounds. Provide minimum of 1,800 pounds of coarse aggregate for each cubic yard of concrete.

F. Pozzolans:

1. Pozzolans may be substituted for cement in normal-weight concrete for interior slabs, including fly ash at a maximum rate of 20 percent by weight or ground-granulated, blast-furnace slag at a maximum rate of 35 percent by weight.

2. Pozzolans shall be used at a rate of 20 percent by weight of total cementitious materials for exterior slabs.

3. Submittals shall include actual mix design, including percentage of pozzolans and test results showing mix meets specified 7-day compressive strength where indicated, 28-day compressive strength, and air content.

4. Protect and heat concrete containing pozzolans during cold-weather conditions. Maintain protection and heat until 70 percent of specified design strength is achieved.

G. Pumping concrete is permitted only if mix designs specifically prepared and used previously for pumping are submitted. Mix designs not previously used for anticipated pump line lengths

shall be tested by Contractor to verify suitability for project before use at site. Pump line shall have 5-inch-minimum inside diameter and be used with 5-inch pumps.

H. Water vapor reducing admixture shall be used in interior slabs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Examine conditions under which work shall be performed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 OPTION FOR SLAB PLACEMENT

A. For placement of slabs that will be exposed in final structure, place construction and contraction joints as shown in drawings or as recommended by ACI 302 if not shown.

B. For placement of slabs that will be subsequently concealed with an architectural finish material, Contractor has two options. Option 1 is to place slabs with few joints or construction joints only. Option 2 is to place slabs with construction and contraction joint spacings as recommended by ACI 302, "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction." Contractor shall submit option to be used and joint layout to Architect and Engineer for review.

C. If Option 1 is selected, shrinkage cracking will likely occur but potential for curling will be reduced. Contractor shall be responsible for repairing cracks and curled areas. If Option 2 is selected, probability of shrinkage cracking will be less but probability of curling will increase. Contractor shall be responsible for repairing cracks and curled areas.

3.3 PRECONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Just before concrete placement, slab subbase shall be dry.

B. Whenever possible, air temperature should be rising after concrete placement. Attempt to schedule slab placements according to favorable weather reports.

C. Subgrade shall be frost-free.

3.4 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED STRIPS FOR SLABS

A. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain required elevations and contours in finished slab surfaces. Provide secure edge forms or screed strips to support strike-off templates or compacting vibrating-type screeds. Wet screeding is not permitted.

3.5 REINFORCEMENT PLACEMENT

- A. Place slab reinforcing 1" below top surface of slab. Support reinforcement by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, or concrete brick as required.
- B. Dedicate workers to placement of reinforcement to continuously monitor and adjust reinforcement location during concrete placement.
- C. Touch up damaged epoxy-coated reinforcement in field after placement with epoxy patching material provided by coating manufacturer.

3.6 ISOLATION JOINTS

- A. Construct isolation joints in slabs on grade at points of contact with vertical surface and elsewhere as indicated.

3.7 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

- A. Locate and install construction joints not shown in drawings so as not to impair strength and appearance of structure as acceptable to Engineer.

3.8 CONTRACTION JOINTS

- A. Saw cut contraction joints as soon as possible after finishing, generally within 4 to 16 hours. Make sample cut to determine if concrete surface is firm enough so it is not torn or damaged by blade.
- B. Use soft-cut contraction joints. Depth of cut shall be one-fifth of slab thickness with minimum of 1 inch.

3.9 PLACING CONCRETE SLABS

- A. Maximum of 2 1/2 gallons for each cubic yard of total mix design water can be added in field. Water must be added prior to discharging and testing concrete. At no time shall total water exceed amount listed in accepted mix design.
- B. Use strip pour methods and mechanical vibratory screed whenever possible.
- C. Deposit and consolidate concrete in continuous operation within limits of construction joints until placing of panel or section is complete.
- D. Consolidate concrete during placing operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
- E. Maximum placement width shall not exceed 20 feet for very-flat and super-flat slabs.
- F. Bring slab surfaces to correct level with a straightedge and strike off. Uniformly slope to

drains. Use darbies to smooth surface, leaving it free of humps or hollows. Do not sprinkle water or portland cement on plastic surface. Do not disturb slab surfaces before beginning finishing operations.

- G. Maintain reinforcement in proper position during concrete placement operations. See requirements for reinforcement placement.
- H. Slab thicknesses shown in drawings are minimum allowable. Maximum allowable thickness shall be 1 inch greater than specified thickness.
- I. For floor areas with drains, Contractor shall be responsible for finishing concrete slabs to proper elevations to ensure surface moisture will drain freely to floor drains and no puddle areas exist. Reference elevations shown in drawings.
- J. Cost of corrections to provide positive drainage shall be responsibility of Contractor.

3.11 SLAB FINISHES

- A. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to monolithic slab surfaces to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for tile, portland cement terrazzo, other bonded applied cementitious finish flooring material, and as otherwise indicated. After placing slabs, plane surface to tolerances for floor flatness (F_F) of 15 and floor levelness (F_L) of 13. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required. After leveling, roughen surface before final set with stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes.
- B. Float Finish: Apply power float finish to slab surfaces that will subsequently be trowel finished or covered with waterproofing membrane. After screeding, consolidating, and leveling concrete slabs, do not work surface until ready for floating. Begin floating using float blade or float shoes when surface water has disappeared, when concrete has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power-driven floats, or both. Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand-floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Check and level surface plane to overall tolerances of F_F 18 and F_L 13, and minimum local tolerances of F_F 13 and F_L 10. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Uniformly slope surface to drains. Immediately after leveling, refloat surface to a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- C. Trowel Finish: Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed to view and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile, paint, or other thin-film finish-coating system. After floating, begin first trowel-finish operation using a power-driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand-troweling operation. Surface shall be free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance, and leveled to an overall tolerance of F_F 25 and F_L 20 and minimum local tolerance of F_F 17 and F_L 13 for carpet and ceramic or quarry tile finishes and overall tolerance of F_F 35 and F_L 25 and minimum local tolerance of F_F 25 and F_L 17 for exposed slabs and other finishes. Grind smooth surface defects that would telegraph through applied floor-covering system. Exposed surfaces are to be over trowelled to "burn" surface to a dense, hard, dark finish.
 - 1. Where test sample area includes multiple floor finishes, more stringent tolerances shall apply to entire test sample area.

- D. Trowel and Fine Broom Finish: Where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed with thin-set mortar, apply trowel finish as specified and immediately follow with fine brooming to slightly scarify surface.
- E. Nonslip Broom Finish: Apply nonslip, heavy broom finish to exterior concrete slab surfaces. Immediately after trowel finishing, roughen concrete surface by brooming with fiber bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
- F. Delay finishing as long as possible. Allow bleed water to evaporate before finishing.
- G. Finish slabs to specified tolerances given. Patching low spots shall not be permitted. Perform grinding as soon as possible, preferably within 3 days, but not until concrete is sufficiently strong to prevent dislodging coarse aggregate particles.

3.12 COLD-WEATHER CONCRETING

- A. Comply with Section 033000.
- B. Provide temporary heat with vented heaters only.
- C. Use foggers to maintain humidity at 50 percent minimum.

3.13 HOT-WEATHER CONCRETING

- A. Comply with Section 033000.

3.14 CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect freshly placed slabs from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperature. Maintain without drying at a relatively constant temperature for time period necessary for cement hydration and proper hardening.
- B. Cure exterior slabs completely by moist-curing using burlap absorptive cover, soaker hoses, and ponding for at least 7 days. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers. Avoid rapid drying at end of curing period. Allow absorptive cover to remain an additional 3 days.
- C. Cure interior slabs by sheet-curing by covering slabs with curing sheet material for 7 days minimum. Avoiding rapid drying at end of curing period. Place curing cover in widest practicable width with sides and ends lapped at least 3 inches and sealed with waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair holes or tears in cover during curing period.
- D. Do not allow foot or other traffic over slabs during 7-day curing period.
- E. Cure slabs or pads 14 days minimum before placing equipment.

F. Interior Nonexposed Slabs:

1. Place finish toppings, coatings, tile, and other materials to be bonded to slabs when the following have been satisfied:
 - a. Slabs have cured minimum of 90 days.
 - b. Acceptable moisture vapor emission and alkalinity test results have been achieved.
 - c. Acceptable 72-hour Bond Test results have been achieved. Bond test by floor finish installer.

G. Interior Exposed Slabs:

1. Apply two coats of hardener after slabs have cured 28 days minimum at rate of 100 square feet/gallon in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

H. Exterior Slabs:

1. Apply penetrating exterior anti-spalling sealer to exterior concrete slabs, walks, platforms, steps, ramps, and curbs according to manufacturer's directions.

3.15 JOINT SEALANT

- A. Install joint sealant in exposed construction, isolation, and contraction joints in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Clean joints thoroughly before applying sealant.
- C. Apply sealant after slabs have cured 90 days minimum.

3.16 REPAIR OF SURFACES

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for cost of repairing slab defects.
- B. Test surfaces for smoothness and level tolerances. Test uniform surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope.
- C. Correct flatness and levelness defects by grinding or removing and replacing slab. Patching low spots not permitted. Repair areas shall be remeasured and accepted by Owner.
- D. Repair cracks only when slab is more than 90 days old. Use crack repair material. For cracks over 1/8 inch, fill crack with oven-dried sand prior to application of crack repair material as recommended by manufacturer. Contractor has option to remove and rebuild areas of cracking. Mask cracks to limit crack repair material to crack only.
- E. Repair curling only when slab is more than 90 days old.
- F. Curling at slab edges exceeding 1/8 inch when measured with a 10-foot straightedge shall be made level by grinding or planing. Locate straightedge with its end at the slab edge, and

measure space between straightedge and slab.

- G. If curling exceeds 1/4 inch, level slab by grinding or planing as stated above. In addition, core-drill slab 10 inches from joint at 2 foot intervals, alternating on each side of joint, and inject non-shrink grout to fill void beneath slab.
- H. Repair edge spalls occurring from shrinkage cracking or from Contractor's operations with methods acceptable to Engineer.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting (Special Inspector): Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. See Specification Section 014533.

END OF SECTION 033020

SECTION 042200 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units (CMU-3).
2. Decorative concrete masonry units (CMU-1 & CMU-2).
3. Mortar and grout.
4. Steel reinforcing bars.
5. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
6. Embedded flashing.
7. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
8. Cast-stone trim (pre-cast concrete sills and wall caps) in concrete unit masonry.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 071900 "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry assemblies.
2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for **exposed** sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
 3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
 4. Cast Stone Trim: Show sizes, profiles, reinforcing and anchorage of cast stone trim.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Decorative CMUs, in the form of small-scale units.
 - 2. Colored mortar.
 - 3. Weep vents.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
 - 1. Decorative CMUs.
 - 2. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cast stone anchors, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include data on material properties.
 - 2. Integral water repellant used in CMUs.
 - 3. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
 - 4. Mortar admixtures.
 - 5. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 6. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 7. Reinforcing bars.
 - 8. Joint reinforcement.
 - 9. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
 - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- C. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.

1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction typical exterior wall 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness.
2. Build sample panels facing south.
3. Where masonry is to match existing, build panels adjacent and parallel to existing surface.
4. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
5. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 feet vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units.
1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E514/E514M as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
 - a. Basis of design: DRY BLOCK Block Admixture and DRY BLOCK Mortar Admixture. Must be from same source and compatible with Section 071900 "Water Repellents".
- C. CMUs: ASTM C90 (**CMU-3 (8" CMU in Sally Port)**).
1. Density Classification: lightweight.
 2. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi.
 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less-than-nominal dimensions.
 4. Color: Manufacturer's standard CMU color.
- D. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C90 (**CMU-1 & CMU-2 (4" veneer)**).
1. Density Classification: lightweight.
 2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less-than-nominal dimensions.
 3. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.
 - a. Standard pattern, **split-face** finish. Match Architect's samples (**CMU-1**).
 - b. Standard pattern, **ground-face** finish. Match Architect's samples (**CMU-2**).
 4. Colors: Match Architect's samples.
 5. Special Aggregate: Provide units made with aggregate matching aggregate in Architect's sample.

2.4 CAST STONE UNITS

- A. Cast Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C1364.
1. Units shall be manufactured using the manufacturer's selected method.
- B. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
 3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.

D. Cure Units as Follows:

1. Cure units in enclosed, moist curing room at 95 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F for 12 hours or 70 deg F for 16 hours.
2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
 - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
 - b. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.

E. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

F. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C114.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.

C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.

E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.

F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.

G. Colored Cement Products: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime masonry cement or mortar cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.

1. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
2. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

I. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.

J. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.

K. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.

L. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60.

B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.

C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: Ladder type complying with ASTM A951/A951M.

1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
5. Spacing of Cross Rods: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet with prefabricated corner and tee units.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into masonry but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.

B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.

2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
1. Copper: ASTM B370, Temper H00, cold-rolled copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight or 0.0216 inch thick.
 2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
 3. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from copper, with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
 4. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
 5. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
 6. A. Flexible flashing:
 - a. Type: Copper core with polymer fabric laminated to copper face on both sides with non-asphalt adhesive.
 - b. Copper core: ASTM B370, CDA Alloy 110
 - c. Weight: 7 oz.
 - d. Fabric: polymer fabric; laminated both faces of copper core.
 - e. Size: Manufacturer's standard width rolls.
 7. Drip Edge: 3/8-inch, exposed hemmed edge by 2-inch, stainless steel drip edge. Select product compatible with flashing.
 - a. Drip edge must be adhered to flashing with manufacturer's approved adhesive.
 - b. Isolate drip edge from metals other than stainless steel to avoid contact with drip edge.
 8. End dam: Product may be folded in line with the flashing material or utilize preformed end dams by manufacturer.
 9. Mortar collection device: As manufactured by H&B, Mortar Trap, or approved equal, sized for air space as shown on drawings.
 10. Sealant for flashing: As recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 11. Termination bar: Stainless steel, as manufactured by H&B T1 –Termination bar, or equal.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Vent Products: Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.

2.10 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
 - 3. For mortar parge coats, use Type S.
 - 4. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and nonload-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior nonload-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
 - 5. For interior nonload-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
 - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 - 2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement mortar cement by weight.
 - 3. Mix to match Architect's sample.
 - 4. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
 - a. Decorative CMUs.
 - b. Pre-faced CMUs.
 - c. Cast-stone trim units.
- E. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
 - 1. Mix to match Architect's sample.
 - 2. Application: Use colored-aggregate mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
 - a. Decorative CMUs.
 - b. Pre-faced CMUs.
 - c. Cast-stone trim units.
- F. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, [Table 1] [or] [paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi (14 MPa)].
 3. Provide grout with a slump of [8 to 11 inches (200 to 280 mm)] [10 to 11 inches (250 to 280 mm)] as measured according to ASTM C143/C143M.
- G. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: Mix epoxy pointing mortar to comply with mortar manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Application: Use epoxy pointing mortar for exposed mortar joints with pre-faced CMUs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that would impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- B. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- C. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive

mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.

- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- E. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- F. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
 - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
 - 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping."

3.5 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Set cast stone as indicated in TMS 604 (The Masonry Society, <https://masonrysociety.org/>)
- B. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
 - 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.
- C. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.
- D. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Set units with joints 1/4 to 3/8 inch wide unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
 - 3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
 - 4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
 - 5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
 - 6. Keep head joints in copings and between other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.

7. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.
- E. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- F. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- G. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint thickness.
- H. Rake out joints for pointing with sealant to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- I. Point joints with sealant to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 1. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Provide sealant joints at head joints of copings and other horizontal surfaces; at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints; and at locations indicated.
 1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
 3. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch .
 4. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.6 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid CMUs with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.

1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
 2. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
 3. Rake out mortar joints for pointing with sealant.
- D. Rake out mortar joints at pre-faced CMUs to a uniform depth of 1/4 inch and point with epoxy mortar to comply with epoxy-mortar manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive waterproofing unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at [**corners,**] returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.8 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:
1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

3.9 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
 - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout, and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 - 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 - 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar, or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 - 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

3.10 LINTELS

- A. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.11 FLASHING

- A. General: Install embedded flashing at ledges and other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. At lintels, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
 - 3. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
 - 4. Terminate the flashing on stainless steel drip embedded in Type 3 sealant.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of

wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.

- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

3.12 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
 - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C140 for compressive strength.

- F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780.
- G. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- H. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C1019.
- I. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, according to ASTM C1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.

3.14 PARGING

- A. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in two uniform coats to a total thickness of 3/4 inch. Dampen wall before applying first coat, and scarify first coat to ensure full bond to subsequent coat.
- B. Use a steel-trowel finish to produce a smooth, flat, dense surface with a maximum surface variation of 1/8 inch per foot. Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom.
- C. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.

3.15 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.

3.16 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
 - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042200

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Structural steel.
- 2. Grout.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 014533 Special Inspections and Test

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges." Retain four definitions below if required for "High-Seismic Applications" as defined in AISC 360.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 2. Include embedment Drawings.
 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
 5. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
 6. Identify demand critical welds.
- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing including the following:
1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
 2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation. Engineer must be licensed in New York State.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator and erector.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 2. Shop primers.
 3. Nonshrink grout.
- F. Survey of existing conditions.
- G. Source quality-control reports.
- H. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.

- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector.
- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint or to SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC 360.
 - 2. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated on Drawings and AISC 360.
 - 2. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level..
 - 3. Submit connection details for review prior to completing structural steel shop drawings and connection design calculations.

4. Qualified Professional engineer shall be a licensed professional engineer in the State of New York with at least five years of experience in connection design. Submit resume to engineer for review.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992
- B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B or Grade C, structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
- B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, **round** head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 1. Finish: Plain
- C. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 or ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable, straight.
 1. Finish: Plain
- D. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36.
 1. Finish: Plain

2.4 GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
 - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted.
- F. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened unless noted otherwise.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.7 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
 - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
 - 2. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles and door frame jambs attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

2.8 SHOP PAINTING

- A. Shop-paint structural steel work that will remain exposed to view in final work or where indicated in drawings. Do not paint members or portions of members to be concealed in final work embedded in concrete or mortar or to receive spray-on fireproofing.
- B. Do not paint the following surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces within 2 inches of field welds.
 - 2. Top and bottom flanges of beams to receive field-installed brace angles, shear wall connectors, or hybrid connectors. Coordinate locations with installers.
- C. Apply two coats of paint to surfaces that will be inaccessible after assembly or erection. Apply two coats to surfaces indicated to be cold-galvanized.
- D. For steel to be spray-fireproofed, clean steel to remove dirt, grease, rust, and loose mill scale in accordance with SSPC-SP3 "Power Tool Cleaning."
- E. For steel to be cold-galvanized or primed and finish-painted, clean steel to remove dirt, grease, rust, and loose mill scale in accordance with SSPC-SP6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning" unless recommended otherwise by paint manufacturer.
- G. After surface preparation, immediately apply structural steel primer paint in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at rate to provide uniform dry-film thickness of 2 mils. Use painting methods that will result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
- H. Apply coal-tar epoxy coating to steel below slab on grade and in contact with soil or as indicated in drawings. Extend coating 1 inch into slab.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.

B. Baseplates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated.

F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.

G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 - 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- B. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1.
 - 1. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

- D. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting (Special Inspector): Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. See Specification Section 014533.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof deck.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
 - 2. Section 014533: Special Inspections & Structural Test

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:

- 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.

- D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.

- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- C. FM Global Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Global and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

2.2 ROOF DECK

- A.
 - 1. Canam Steel Corporation; Canam Group, Inc.
 - 2. Vulcraft
 - 3. CMC Joist & Deck
- B. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, G60 zinc coating.
 - 2. Deck Profile: Type WR, wide rib.
 - 3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
 - 5. Span Condition: Two span continuous minimum.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- C. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- D. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- F. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch-wide flanges. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- G. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- H. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- C. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- D. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

- E. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- F. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: As indicated.
 - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld or mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting (Special Inspector): Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. See Specification Section 014533.

END OF SECTION 053100

SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
2. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing.
3. Ceiling joist framing.
4. Soffit framing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
2. Section 092116.23 "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.
3. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
4. Section 014533: Special Inspections & Structural Test

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work. Retain "Delegated-Design Submittal" Paragraph below if design services have been delegated to Contractor.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- B. Comply with AISI S230 "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ClarkDietrich.
 - 2. Marino\WARE.
 - 3. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
- B. As a Basis of Design provide cold-formed steel framing products by The Steel Network, Inc. (TSN) (<https://www.steelnetwork.com>); or comparable products by one of the Steel Framing Industry Association Members in good standing.
- C. MarinoWARE
- D. Clark Dietrich

2.2 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - 1. Grade: 50 ksi
 - 2. Coating: ASTM A 653 G60 Coating

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated.
 2. Flange Width: As indicated.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
- C. Stiff Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, with positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.
- D. Slide Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
- 2.4 Channel Bridge Inside Wall: 1-1/2 inch web, 1/2 inch flanges

2.5 INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 2. Flange Width: 1-3/8 inches.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch.
 2. Flange Width: 1 inch plus the design gap for one-story structures.

2.6 CEILING JOIST FRAMING

- A. Steel Ceiling Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.

2.7 SOFFIT FRAMING

- A. Exterior Soffit Frame: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches, minimum.

2.8 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1. Supplementary framing.
 - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- B. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to **bypassing** studs and anchor to building structure.

- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging 6 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
 - 2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR NONLOADBEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 - 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to studs and anchor to building structure.
 - 4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed steel metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 - 2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 - 3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
 - 1. Install solid blocking at minimum 96-inch centers.

- G. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting (Special Inspector): Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. See Specification Section 014533.

END OF SECTION 054000

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors.
2. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
3. Steel framing and supports for mortuary equipment (sink support).
4. Steel tube reinforcement for low partitions ("pony wall").
5. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
6. Steel ladders.
7. Steel bollards.
8. Abrasive metal nosings and thresholds.
9. Loose steel lintels.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for steel framing.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Manufactured metal ladders.
2. Abrasive metal nosings and thresholds.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:

1. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
2. Metal ladders.
3. Metal bollards.
4. Loose steel lintels.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For ladders including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated-design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- C. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- C. Water-Based Primer: Emulsion type, anticorrosive primer for mildly corrosive environments that is resistant to flash rusting when applied to cleaned steel, complying with MPI#107 and compatible with topcoat.
- D. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

- E. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- H. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- I. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

2.6 STEEL FRAMING SUPPORT FOR MORTUARY EQUIPMENT (SINKS)

- A. Steel headwall support posts, ASTM A36 (Rooms 147 & 148):
 1. 3 ½" x 3 ½" x 3/16" square tubing with base plate from floor slab to steel roof framing.
 2. Coordinate with mortuary sink support brackets.
 3. Expansion anchor into concrete slab.
 4. Application: 2 posts at each of 5 mortuary stations in Autopsy Rooms.

2.7 STEEL TUBE REINFORCEMENT LOW PARTITIONS ("PONY WALL")

- A. Pony wall rigid connection posts: ASTM A36, A653/A653M, A1003.
 1. Plate material: ASTM A36.
 2. ½" thick hot rolled steel.
 3. Stud material: Structural grade 50 Type H (ST50H), 50 ksi (340 MPa) 12ga (97 mil), 0.1017" Design thickness, 00966" Min. thickness.
 4. Height 24" (nom.)
 5. Application: In short wall in offices Rm. 127.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

2.9 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.

2.10 STEEL LADDERS

- A. General:
 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3.
- B. Steel Ladders:

1. Space siderails 18 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
3. Rungs: 3/4-inch- diameter steel bars.
4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
6. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch in least dimension.
7. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
8. Galvanize and prime exterior ladders, including brackets.
9. Prime exterior ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.
10. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum ladders from single source from single manufacturer.

2.11 STEEL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe 1/4-inch wall-thickness.
- B. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe with 1/4-inch- steel or plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of bollard.
- C. Prime steel bollards with zinc-rich primer.

2.12 ABRASIVE METAL NOSINGS

- A. Cast-Metal Units: Cast iron with an integral-abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
 1. Source Limitations: Obtain units from single source from single manufacturer.
 2. Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 4 inches wide with 1-inch lip, for casting into concrete.
- B. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
- C. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units.

2.13 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.

- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize and prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.
- D. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer.

2.14 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.15 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.16 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
 - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean galvanized surfaces of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Shop prime with zinc-rich primer.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning":
 - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 3. Galvanized-Steel Items: SSPC-SP 16, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning of Coated and Uncoated Galvanized Steel, Stainless Steels, and Non-Ferrous Metals."
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for overhead doors and mortuary equipment securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with ANSI/AISC 360, "Specifications for Structural Steel Buildings," and with requirements applicable to listing and labeling for fire-resistance rating indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- B. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
 - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF NOSINGS, TREADS, AND THRESHOLDS

- A. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For nosings embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align nosings flush with riser faces and level with tread surfaces.
- C. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.

3.6 REPAIRS

- A. Touchup Painting:
 - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 055213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Aluminum railings.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
 - 2. Post-installed anchors.
 - 3. Metal finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For delegated-design professional engineer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For tests on railings performed by a qualified testing agency, in accordance with ASTM E894 and ASTM E935.
- C. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of railings from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 2. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

2.3 ALUMINUM RAILINGS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
- C. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B429/B429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
 - 1. Provide Standard Weight (Schedule 40) pipe unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B210/B210M, Alloy 6063-T832.
- E. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 6061-T6.
- F. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B247, Alloy 6061-T6.
- G. Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Fastener Materials:
 - 1. Aluminum Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel fasteners.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
 - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308.
 - 1. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Handrail Brackets: Cast aluminum.
- B. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select in accordance with AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
 - 1. For aluminum railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
 - 1. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
 - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.
 - 1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.
 - 1. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
 - 2. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded or nonwelded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #1 welds; ornamental quality with no evidence of a welded joint.

- I. Welded Connections for Aluminum Pipe: Fabricate railings to interconnect members with concealed internal welds that eliminate surface grinding, using manufacturer's standard system of sleeve and socket fittings.
- J. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
 - 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection, using an epoxy structural adhesive, if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- K. Form changes in direction as follows:
 - 1. As detailed.
 - 2. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.
- L. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- M. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated cap and end fittings of same metal and finish as railings.
- N. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- O. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.

1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
 2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
 3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
 4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
 6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- B. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
1. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.2 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws, using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article, whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- C. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve, extending 2 inches beyond joint on either side; fasten internal sleeve securely to one side; and locate joint within 6 inches of post.

3.3 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, attached to post with setscrews.
- C. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type, as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:

1. For aluminum railings, attach posts as indicated, using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.

3.4 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends to concrete and masonry with sleeves concealed within ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends, using nonwelded connections.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean aluminum by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period, so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 055213

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood blocking and nailers.
 - 2. Plywood backing panels.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for sheathing, subflooring, and underlayment.
 - 2. Section 061753 "Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses" for wood trusses made from dimension lumber.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.

ACTION SUBMITTALS

- C. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 the following species:
 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
 3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 6. Northern species; NLGA.
 7. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C nominal thickness.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M] [of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 as appropriate for the substrate.
 - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- D. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- E. Where wood-preserved-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- F. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- G. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.
- D. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- E. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Wall sheathing.
- 2. Parapet sheathing.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
- 2. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
 - 3. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, including list of ABAA-certified installers and supervisors employed by Installer, who work on Project and testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing manufacturer, certifying compatibility of sheathing accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the sheathing.

- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, indicating compliance with specified requirements, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Wood-preserved-treated plywood.
 - 2. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer of air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat all plywood unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not

extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat all plywood unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M.
1. Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch thick.
 2. Size: 48 by 96 inches.

2.4 PARAPET SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Exterior, Structural sheathing.
1. Nominal Thickness: Not less than $\frac{3}{4}$ ".
- B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M.
1. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch thick.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
 2. For roof and parapet sheathing, provide fasteners with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C1002.

- E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
 - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C1002.
- G. Screws for Fastening Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

2.6 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
 - 1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.
- B. Sheathing Tape for Foam-Plastic Sheathing: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by sheathing manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in sheathing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall parapet and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - 1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
 - a. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

3.3 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
 - 2. Install panels with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
 - 3. Install panels with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent panels without forcing. Abut ends over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent panels not less than one stud spacing. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
 - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.
- D. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
 - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.

- E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.
- F. Install sheathing vertically with long edges parallel to, and centered over, studs. Install solid wood blocking where end joints do not occur over framing. Allow 1/8-inch open space between edges and ends of adjacent units. Stagger horizontal joints if any.
- G. Cover sheathing as soon as practical after installation to prevent deterioration from wetting.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 064113 - ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS & CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. 123623.13 FL - Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops
 - 2. Section 123661 Solid Surfacing Countertops

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: For architectural cabinets.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and finish specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Single source: All wood casework and paneling in this project must be from a single source manufacturer and installer using the same flitch of cherry wood veneer. Single source is required for all Division 6 materials.
- C. Select glues, adhesives, joinery methods, fasteners and other techniques/products that mitigate delamination, warpage or other failures of the installed work due to the environmental conditions anticipated after substantial completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CABINETS AND CASEWORK, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of architectural cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS AND WALL PANELS

- A. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- B. Cabinet, Door, and Drawer Front Interface Style: Flush overlay.
- C. Reveal Dimension: 1/2 inch.
- D. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
- E. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
 - 2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
 - 3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade HGS.
- F. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
 - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood
- G. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. As indicated by laminate manufacturer's designations.
 - 2. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
 - a. Solid colors, gloss finish.

2.3 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.

- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.

2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, self-closing.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- D. Wire Pulls: Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal
 - 1. Hafele model HAF-59397.
 - 2. Brushed Nickel finish.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal, two-pin with shelf hold-down clip.
- G. Drawer Slides and Printer Shelf Slides: BHMA A156.9.
 - 1. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
- H. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
 - 1. (Keyed, Typical) Basis-of-Design: Cam Lock w/ Masterkey System
 - a. Finish to match door pulls.
 - 2. (Push button Operation, as indicated) Basis-of-Design: Simplex 9600 series
 - a. Finish to match door pulls
- I. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- J. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- K. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
 - 1. Bright Chromium Plated: BHMA 625 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 651 for steel base.
 - 2. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- L. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with cabinet surface.
 - 1. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
 - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 - 3. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
 - 4. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- E. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.
- F. Protect installed wok with Ram board paper secured to counter.

END OF SECTION 064113

SECTION 066455 – SIMULATED WOOD PANELS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Field-Fabricated Simulated Wood Panels – Laminate Panels

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 06100 – Rough Carpentry; Framing and Sheathing.
- B. Section 06105 – Miscellaneous Carpentry.
- C. Section 06402 – Interior Architectural Woodwork.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International:
 - 1. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- B. International Code Council (ICC):
- C. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 3. Installation methods.
- C. Detail Drawings: Submit detail drawings showing the profile and dimensions of each trim type specified in this section.
- D. Selection Samples: 8 inch by 10 inch (203 mm x 254 mm) finish panel to be submitted for each specified finish, mounted on MDF substrate for quality and visual aesthetics approval.
- E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples representing actual product, color, and patterns.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of five (5) years experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer with a minimum of three (3) years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.
- C. Mock-Up: Provide a full-size mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
 - 1. Finish areas designated by Architect.
 - 2. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, configuration, and finish are approved by Architect.
 - 3. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.
 - 4. Approved acceptable Work may be incorporated into the final Project.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, handle, and store in manner to products from damage. Product is to deliver on pallets, corner guard and cardboard protected, shrink-wrapped and adequately affixed to pallet to avoid separation during shipping.
- B. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- C. Store products indoors. Store products in a dry, temperature controlled area. Maintain temperatures between 65 to 80 degrees F (18 - 26 C) and a relative humidity between 25-55 percent. Place products in the installation area no less than 48 hours prior to installation to adjust to environmental conditions.
- D. Store and dispose of hazardous materials, and materials contaminated by hazardous materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. At project closeout, provide to Owner or Owners Representative an executed copy of the manufacturer's standard limited warranty against manufacturing defect, outlining its terms, conditions, and exclusions from coverage.
 - 1. Duration – Material: One (1) year from date of installation.
 - 2. Duration - Surface Color Fade: Five (5) years from date of installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Spectrim Building Products, LLC; PO Box 826, Bensalem, PA

19020. ASD. Toll Free Tel: (800) 437-0557, Tel: (267) 223-1030. Fax: (215) 245-8704.
Email: sales@spectrimbp.com Web: <http://www.spectrimbp.com>.

- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 016000.

2.2 APPLICATIONS/SCOPE

- A. Install Field-Fabricated Simulated Wood Panels – Laminate Panels as shown on the Contract Drawings.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. General: Pre-finished 12 to 16 mil thick. PVC decorative surface film, in the specified finish, is field-applied with contact adhesive to an MDF (medium density fiberboard) core that has been molded into the specified shape.
- B. Substrate: Synergite Medium Density Fiberboard as manufactured by Georgia-Pacific, or equal.
- C. Touch-up material: Wax putty fill sticks and colored caulk to match each specified finish, provided by the approved manufacturer for installation touch-up and fill. Quantity sufficient to complete all specified work.

2.4 SIMULATED WOOD PANELS – Fused Edge Panels

- A. Face of Panel
 1. Ven4ma .040"
 2. Film Veneer .012"
- B. Back of Panel
 1. Spectrim to Balance back of panel
- C. Leading Edge Detail
 1. 1mm Edgebanding
 2. 1mm Laser Plasma Fused Edgebanding
- D. Substrate – Maximum width of 48" wide x 144" long. Grain runs length direction.
 1. ¾" Double Refined MDF (Class C or Class A Fire Rated)
- E. Finish
 1. As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard range.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine wall conditions before beginning installation of SpecTrim products; verify

dimensions and acceptability of wall conditions.

- B. Do not proceed with installation until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Inspect products prior to installing each piece. Do not install defective or damaged lengths. Install all products in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- B. Cut to desired lengths using a power radial saw with a 64-tooth triple-chip carbide tipped blade. Cut miter joints, scarf joints, butt joints, etc. according with the standards of the Architectural Woodwork Institute, manufacturer's printed installation instructions and as field conditions require.
- C. Install reveal molding using a panel adhesive to adhere to wall surfaces, and 18 gauge adjustable power nail gun to hold molding in place while adhesive cures. When conditions do not permit nailing, use trim screws to attach to wall framing. Pre-drill and Counter-Bore all screw heads for screw attachment.
- D. Fill all fastener holes and open joints with matching wax putty sticks provided by the manufacturer. Wipe off excess wax putty with a clean rag and naphtha solvent. Wipe off excess caulk with a clean dampened rag.
- E. Install securely, straight and level, plumb and true, in proper location.
- F. Do not sand or apply any other finish to molding.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Should staining occur, clean with as mild a cleaning agent as possible. Warm soapy water or dishwashing detergent is adequate in removing most stains. Alternatively, standard household cleaners such as Windex, Pine-sol, denatured or rubbing alcohol may be used to remove stains without affecting the texture or appearance of the surface.
- B. If stains cannot be removed using the aforementioned methods, remove the damaged section and replace prior to project closeout.
- C. Clean dirt from surface of installed products, using mild soap and water.

- D. After completing installation of molding, remove excess materials and debris resulting from installation of molding products.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

END OF SECTION 066455

SECTION 071900 - WATER REPELLENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes penetrating water-repellent treatments for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
 - 1. Concrete unit masonry.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for integral water-repellent admixture for unit masonry assemblies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's recommended number of coats for each type of substrate and spreading rate for each separate coat.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of water repellent.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:

1. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for not less than 28 days.
2. Building has been closed in for not less than 30 days before treating wall assemblies.
3. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F and will remain so for 24 hours.
4. Substrate is not frozen and substrate-surface temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F.
5. Rain or snow is not predicted within 24 hours.
6. Not less than 24 hours have passed since surfaces were last wet.
7. Windy conditions do not exist that might cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Performance: Water repellents shall meet the following performance requirements as determined by on manufacturer's standard substrates representing those indicated for this Project.
- B. Water Absorption: Minimum 90 percent reduction of water absorption after 24 hours for treated compared to untreated specimens when tested according to the following:
 1. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C140.
- C. Water-Vapor Transmission: Comply with one or both of the following:
 1. Maximum 10 percent reduction water-vapor transmission of treated compared to untreated specimens, according to ASTM E96/E96M.
 2. Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission of treated compared to untreated specimens, according to ASTM D1653.
- D. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Minimum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate of treated compared to untreated specimens, according to ASTM E514/E514M.
- E. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water-repellent performance after 2500 hours of weathering according to ASTM G154 compared to water-repellent-treated specimens before weathering.

2.2 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS

- A. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blend with 400 g/L or less of VOCs.
 - 1. Basis of design: DRY BLOCK Infiniseal DB. Must be from same source and compatible with integral water repellent in Section 042200 "Concrete Unit Masonry".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.
 - 3. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.
- B. Test pH level according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions to ensure chemical bond to silica-containing or siliceous minerals.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. New Construction and Repairs: Allow concrete and other cementitious materials to age before application of water repellent, according to repellent manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Cleaning: Before application of water repellent, clean substrate of substances that could impair penetration or performance of product according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Concrete Unit Masonry: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E1857.
- C. Protect adjoining work, including mortar and sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live vegetation.
- D. Coordination with Mortar Joints: Do not apply water repellent until mortar for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment has been installed and cured.
- E. Coordination with Sealant Joints: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.

1. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those required.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
- B. Apply coating of water repellent on surfaces to be treated using 15 psi-pressure spray with a fan-type spray nozzle to the point of saturation. Apply coating in dual passes of uniform, overlapping strokes. Remove excess material; do not allow material to puddle beyond saturation. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Apply a second saturation coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Coverage Test: In the presence of Architect, hose down a dry, repellent-treated surface to verify complete and uniform product application. A change in surface color will indicate incomplete application.
 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when surfaces will be tested.
 2. Reapply water repellent until coverage test indicates complete coverage.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Correct damage to work of other trades caused by water-repellent application, as approved by Architect.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION 071900

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board insulation.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 072119 "Foamed-in-Place Insulation" for spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation.
 - 2. Section 075323 "Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing" for polyisocyanurate in roofing applications.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
 - 2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board insulation.
 - 3. Glass-fiber blanket thermal insulation
 - 4. Glass-fiber blanket acoustical insulation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Research Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.

2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation - Designation **I-01**: ASTM C578, Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [DuPont de Nemours, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Owens Corning.](#)
 - c. [The Dow Chemical Company.](#)
2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation **12 inches (305 mm)** and wider in width.

2.2 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION (for applications other than roofing).

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation, Foil Faced - Designation **I-02**: ASTM C1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Carlisn Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.
 - b. [DuPont de Nemours, Inc.](#)
 - c. Hunter Panels.
 - d. [Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.](#)
 - e. [The Dow Chemical Company.](#)
2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
3. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Kraft Faced - Designation **I-03**: ASTM C665, Type II (nonreflective faced), Class C (faced surface not rated for flame propagation); Category 1
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.](#)
 - b. [Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.](#)
 - c. [Owens Corning.](#)
 2. **Labeling:** Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation **12 inches (305 mm)** and wider in width.
 1. **Installation**
 - a. Comply with manufacturer's instruction for particular conditions of installation.
 - b. Between framing Friction-fit unfaced insulation between studs after cover material has been installed on one side of the cavity. When faced insulation is used, staple attachment flanges to side of stud every 8 to 12 inches to hold in place.

2.4 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET ACOUSTICAL INSULATION

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket Acoustical Insulation, Kraft Faced - Designation **I-04**: ASTM E84 Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics and ASTM C665, E90 Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements, C423 Test Method for Sound Absorption and the Sound Absorption Coefficient
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. [Owens Corning](#), or as approved.
 2. **Labeling:** Provide label for insulation packages to include material name, production date and/or product code.
 3. **Surface burning characteristics**
 - a. **Combustion Characteristics:** Unfaced insulation passes ASTM E 136 test.
 - b. **Dimensional Stability:** Linear stability less than 0.1%.
 4. **Installation**
 - a. Comply with manufacturer's instruction for particular conditions of installation.
 - b. Between framing Friction-fit unfaced insulation between studs after cover material has been installed on one side of the cavity. When faced insulation is used, staple attachment flanges to side of stud every 8 to 12 inches to hold in place

2.5 INSULATION FASTENER

- A. Insulation Anchors, Spindles, and Standoffs: As recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E84.
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Install insulation with manufacturer's R-value label exposed after insulation is installed.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 36 inches below exterior grade line.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, or spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
 1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
 3. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.
 4. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
 5. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
- C. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer.
 1. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions, and with faces flush.
 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
 3. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
- B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072119 - FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Closed-cell spray polyurethane foam.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation"

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For spray-applied polyurethane foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSED-CELL SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM

- A. Closed-Cell Spray Polyurethane Foam: ASTM C1029, Type II, minimum density of 1.5 lb/cu. ft. and minimum aged R-value at 1-inch thickness of 6.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by insulation manufacturer where required for adhesion of insulation to substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that substrates are clean, dry, and free of substances that are harmful to insulation.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by insulation manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas to be insulated; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Spray insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated and fill voids.
- C. Apply in multiple passes to not exceed maximum thicknesses recommended by manufacturer. Do not spray into rising foam.
- D. Framed Construction: Install into cavities formed by framing members to achieve thickness indicated on Drawings.
- E. Miscellaneous Voids: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.

END OF SECTION 072119

SECTION 072500 – WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Water Resistive Air Barrier.
 - 2. Flexible flashing.
 - 3. Foundation Dampproofing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For weather resistive barrier, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show details of weather resistive barrier at terminations, openings, and penetrations. Show details of flexible flashing applications.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary materials and primers in this section from single source from single manufacturer. Provide auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.

2.2 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

1. Air Barrier and auxiliary materials shall comply with the following system requirements:
 1. Obtain air barrier and auxiliary materials as a single-source from the Air Barrier Manufacturer to ensure total system compatibility and integrity.
 2. Air leakage:
 1. ASTM E2357: Pass
 2. CAN/ULC-S742-11: Classification A1
 3. CAN/ULC S741-08
 3. Water resistance:
 1. AATCC TM127: Pass
 2. ASTM E331: Pass
 4. Nail Sealability:
 1. AAMA 711-13, ASTM D1970: Pass
 2. Basis of Design Manufacturer:
 1. Henry® Company
999 N. Sepulveda Blvd. Suite 800
El Segundo, CA 90245
(800) 486-1278
www.henry.com
- A. Weather Resistive Barrier Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by weather resistive barrier tape manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in weather resistive barrier.

2.3 FLEXIBLE FLASHING

- A. Vapor Permeable Flashing:
1. Self-adhered water resistive vapor permeable air barrier consisting of a reinforced modified polyolefin tri-laminate film surface and patented adhesive technology with split-back poly-release film; having the following typical physical properties:
 - a. Basis of design: Henry® Blueskin® VP160 Self-Adhered Water Resistive Air Barrier
 - b. Thickness: 23 mils (0.58 mm)
 - c. Water Vapor Permeance (ASTM E96): 29 perms
 - d. Nail Sealability (ASTM D1970): Pass
 - e. Low Application Temperature: 20 degrees F (-7 degrees C)
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer for substrate.
- C. Nails and Staples: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer and complying with ASTM F1667.

2.4 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT FOUNDATION DAMPPROOFING

- A. Brush, trowel or spray applied: ASTM D4479/D4479M, Type I, fibered or nonfibered.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing immediately after sheathing is installed.
- B. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:
 - 1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
 - 2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Weather Resistive Barrier: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
 - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
 - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated on and all sides of window and door openings to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
 - 3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
 - 4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
 - 5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.3 DRAINAGE MATERIAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install drainage material over weather resistive barrier and flashing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 072500

SECTION 074213 - METAL PLATE WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal plate wall panels with three color choices (**MP-1, MP-2 & MP-3**).
- B. Standing seam metal roof panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Construction manager, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
 - 8. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment assembly, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. The first installed area of typical metal panel assembly (min. 100 square feet) is to serve as a benchmark to review the installation of the metal panel system, as shown on Drawings, including corner, soffits, supports, attachments, and interface with the aluminum storefront system.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E330:
 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): [120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 METAL PLATE WALL PANELS (MP-1, MP-2 & MP-3)

- A. Metal Plate Wall Panels: Provide factory-formed, metal plate wall panels fabricated from single sheets of metal formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment assembly components, panel stiffeners, and accessories required for weathertight system.
- B. Manufacturers:
 1. Centria, Intercept.
 2. Kingspan Dri-Design, ENV.
- C. Panel Depth: 1 3/8" panel depth.
- D. Aluminum Sheet: Tension-leveled, smooth aluminum sheet, ASTM B209 .060" minimum nominal thickness.
 1. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
 - a. Color: Three color choices (MP-1, MP-2 & MP-3) as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- E. Attachment Assembly: Manufacturer's standard.

2.3 STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF

- A. Metal Panels: structural standing seam panel.
 - 1. Fabricate metal panels from aluminum-zinc coated steel conforming to ASTM A792 Grade 50B with AZ50 coating when painted AZ50 coating when painted or AZ55 coating when unpainted. Thickness shall be minimum [24 or 22] gage.
 - 2. Panels shall be a min. 12" wide with a 1-3/4" vertical seam height.
 - 3. Panels shall have longitudinal stiffening ribs in the pan to minimize "oil canning" effect, or be flat in the pan with no minor ribs.
- B. Concealed Anchor Panel Clips: Fasten metal roof panels to support substrate with concealed anchor clips eliminating all through fastener penetrations.
 - 1. Panel Clips shall be a one piece clip 18ga minimum thickness made from either G-90 galvanized or 300 series stainless steel.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation.
 - 1. Hat Channels: 0.048 inch/18 ga. (1.22 mm) minimum nominal thickness.
 - 2. Sill Channels: 0.048 inch/18 ga. (1.22 mm) minimum nominal thickness
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer. Provide sealant types that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 2. Colors to correspond with MP-1, MP-2 or MP-3 as designated on drawings and as selected by architect.

- D. Standing Seam Metal Roof Finish: Coating system to have been tested in accordance with ASTM standard test for factory color finish. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF): Two-coat system consisting of a nominal 0.2 micro corrosion inhibitive primer on both sides with a 0.75 mil fluoropolymer exterior topcoat and 0.30 mil backer finish. Texture: Panel finish shall be smooth. Color: to match metal wall panel color as selected by architect.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.

5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:

1. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

D. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal plate wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet, non-accumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated, and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- B. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213.16

SECTION 075323 – EPDM ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered ethylene-propylene-diene-terpolymer (EPDM) roofing system.
2. Vapor / Air retarder.
3. Roof insulation.
4. Walkways.
5. Roof Expansion Joints.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 Rough Carpentry for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking
2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at the Project Site at least two weeks before the commencement of roof operations.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's technical representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.

6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. For insulation and roof system component, include copy of roof manufacture's product data.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
 1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
 2. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 3. Flashing details at penetrations.
 4. Tapered insulation, thickness, and slopes.
 5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane and fastening spacings and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
 6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
 7. Tie-in with wall air barrier.
 8. Detail of expansion joint.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 1. Roof membrane and flashings of color required.
- D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
 1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with NYS Building Code requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
 2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for the roof warranty.

- C. Product Test Reports: For components of roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
 - 1. Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed, listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav or listed in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for roofing system for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's roof warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry environment. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Total Systems Labor and Materials Roof Manufacturer Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - 1. Warranty shall include, but not limited to, roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, adhesives, roof metal edge and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from Date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Provide wind loss coverage up to 72 MPH for a three second gust.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and flashings shall remain watertight.
 - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
 - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to Resistance to Foot Traffic Test in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897: Refer to chart in Section 3.3, C below.
- D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- F. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:
 - 1. Zone 1' (Roof Area Inner Field): -47.18 PSF.
 - 2. Zone 1 (Roof Area Field): -82.1 PSF from Zone 2 inner edge to 15 feet toward Zone 1'
 - 3. Zone 2 (Roof Area Perimeter): -108.3 PSF .
 - a. Location: From roof edge to 15 feet from perimeter edge.
 - 4. Zone 3 (Roof Area Corners): -147.7 PSF 5 feet deep from the roof edge and 15 feet away from each corner.
 - 5. Location: in each direction from building corner. 5 feet deep from the roof edge and 15 feet away from each corner.
 - 6. Hail-Resistance Rating: FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data "MH" Moderate Hail.
 - 7. Wind Uplift Load Capacity: 60 psf it's based on the interior wind uplift pressure

2.2 ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-TERPOLYMER (EPDM) ROOFING

- A. EPDM Sheet: ASTM D4637/D4637M, Type I, nonreinforced EPDM sheet with factory-applied 6 inch wide seam tape.
 - 1. Thickness: 60 mils (1.5 mm).
 - 2. Exposed Face Color: Black.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer.

2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
 - 1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard VOC compliant.
- E. Seaming Material: Single-component, butyl splicing adhesive and splice cleaner, Manufacturer's standard, synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 6-inch wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film. Factory-applied seam tape, 6 inch width.
- F. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant, colored to match membrane roofing.
- G. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.
- H. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick with upper sealant lip, prepunched holes 6 inches on center and stainless steel anchors.

- I. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- J. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, molded pipe boot flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.
- K. Counter Flashing: 0.040 inch mill finish aluminum ASTM B209 to cover base flashing termination by 4 inches.
- L. Liquid Flashing: Membrane manufacturer's liquid-applied two-component self-curing polyurethane waterproofing system.

2.4 VAPOR/AIR RETARDER

- A. Self-Adhering-Sheet Vapor / Air Retarder: ASTM D1970, 5 mil polyethylene film laminated to layer of 35 mil rubberized asphalt adhesive, minimum 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) total thickness; maximum permeability ASTM D1970 rating of 0.015 perms; Air Permeance ASTM E 2178 rating of 0.00 L m² @ 75 Pa; cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer by vapor retarder manufacturer.

2.5 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured by EPDM roof membrane manufacturer
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 felt facer on both major surfaces.
 - 1. Compressive Strength: **20 psi (138 kPa)**
 - 2. Size: 48 by 48 inches (1219 by 1219 mm)
 - 3. Revise base layer thickness to suit Project. Insert upper layer insulation thickness to achieve required R-value of roof/ceiling assembly.
 - 4. Thickness:
 - a. Base Layer and Upper Layers: **2.0 inches**
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
 - 1. Material: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 felt facer on both major surfaces
 - 2. Starting Thickness: 2.5 inch thickness
 - 3. Slope:
 - a. Roof Field: 1/4 inch per foot (1:48) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Saddles and Crickets: 1/2 inch per foot (1:24) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening base roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
 - 1. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
 - 2. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.

2.7 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
 - 1. Size: Approximately 36 by 60 inches (914 by 1524 mm).

2.8 FLANGED BELLOWS-TYPE ROOF EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Flanged Bellows-Type Roof Expansion Joint: Factory-fabricated, continuous, waterproof, joint cover consisting of exposed membrane bellows laminated to flexible, closed-cell support foam, and secured along each edge to 3- to 4-inch- wide metal flange.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain flanged bellows-type roof expansion joints approved by roofing manufacturer and that are part of roofing membrane warranty.
 - 2. Joint Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent of joint size.
 - 3. Bellows: EPDM flexible membrane, nominal 60 mils thick.
 - 4. Flanges: Aluminum, 0.032 inch thick.
 - 5. Configuration: 90 degree angle formed to fit as indicated on Drawings.
 - 6. Corner, Intersection, and Transition Units: Provide factory-fabricated units for corner and joint intersections and horizontal and vertical transitions including those to other building expansion joints.
 - 7. Cover Membrane: EPDM flexible membrane, factory laminated to bellows and covering entire joint assembly and curbs.
 - a. Color: Black.
 - 8. Accessories: Provide splicing units, adhesives, and other components as recommended by roof-expansion-joint manufacturer for complete installation.
 - 9. Secondary Seal: Continuous, waterproof membrane within joint and attached to substrate on sides of joint below the primary bellows assembly.
 - a. Drain-Tube Assemblies: Equip secondary seal with drain tubes and seals to direct collected moisture to drain.

- b. Thermal Insulation: Fill space above secondary seal with manufacturer's standard insulation; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E84.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours of performing tests.
 - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

- A. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- B. Coordinate installation and transition of roofing system component serving as an air barrier with air barrier specified under 079100 Weather Barriers.

- C. Provide wind uplift resistance to comply with the following chart for Allowable Stress Design (ASD)
- D. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling roof expansion joints.

Risk Cat =	III	Basic Wind Speed =	-130	Enclosed or Part Open	$G_{C_{pi}} = 0.18$	Building Exposure =	"C"	Roof hgt. h = feet	25	152	X	170
Field of Roof Internal				Roof Zone 1' =	-45.2	PSF ULT Pressure	x 1.67 SF	-75.48	ULT Design Pressure	x 0.625 =	-47.1775	ASD Design Pressure
Field of Roof External				Roof Zone 1 =	-78.7	PSF ULT Pressure	x 1.67 SF	-131.4	ULT Design Pressure	x 0.625 =	-82.1431	ASD Design Pressure
Perimeter				Roof Zone 2 =	-103.8	PSF ULT Pressure	x 1.67 SF	-173.3	ULT Design Pressure	x 0.625 =	-108.341	ASD Design Pressure
Corner				Roof Zone 3 =	-141.5	PSF ULT Pressure	x 1.67 SF	-236.3	ULT Design Pressure	x 0.625 =	-147.691	ASD Design Pressure
If parapet is equal to or more than 3', then, corner pressures equal perimeter pressures												
Roof Zone Size	Zone 3	corners = feet	$0.6h \times 0.2h =$		15	X	5					
	Zone 2	perimeters = $0.6h =$ feet			15							
	Zone 1	External Field = $0.6h =$ feet			15							
	Zone 1'	ld = What's left = feet			92	x	110					

3.4 INSTALLATION OF BASE LAYER ROOF INSULATION

- A. Install 2.0 inch thick base layer roof insulation board with long joints in continuous straight lines, with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
 - 1. At steel roof decks, install base layer roof insulation board at right angle to flutes of deck.
 - a. Locate end joints over crests of steel roof deck.
 - 2. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
 - 3. Cut base roof insulation board to fit tight around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - 4. Fasten base roof insulation board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
 - 5. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners (Zone 3), perimeter (Zone 2), and fields of roof (Zone 1 and Zone 1') according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions and this specification which is more conservative.
 - 6. Secure 4 x 4 roof insulation boards to the steel deck with fasteners and plates at the following densities:
 - a. Zone 1' and Zone 1: 4 fastener/plates per 4 x4 board
 - b. Zone 2: 8 fastener/plates per 4 x4 board
 - c. Zone 3: 12 fastener/plates per 4 x4 board

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR/AIR RETARDER

- A. Self-Adhering-Sheet Vapor/Air Retarder: Prime substrate with manufacturer recommended primer. Install self-adhering-sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 (90 mm).
 - 1. Extend vertically up parapet walls and projections to a minimum height equal to height of insulation and cover board.
 - 2. Broom Vapor / Air Retarder into primer immediately.
 - 3. Tie into wall vapor/air retarder.
 - 4. Seal laps by rolling.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation of Upper Layers of Roof Insulation.
 - 1. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from previous layer of insulation.
 - a. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in adjacent rows.
 - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width.
 - d. At internal roof drains, provide a 4 foot x 8 foot flat area to encompass the primary roof drain and the secondary roof drain. No tapered drain sump shall be installed.
 - 1) The flat area shall be the following sequence:
 - a) Two inch thick roof insulation mechanically attached to the steel deck.
 - b) Vapor /Air Retarder adhered in primer.
 - c) Two layers of two inch thick roof insulation adhered in adhesive beads
 - e. Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
 - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - h. Adhere each layer of insulation above insulation base layer to substrate using adhesive according to this specification. Secure 4 x 4 roof insulation boards to the previous layer at the following adhesive bead spacing:

- i. Zone 1' and Zone 1: 8 inches on center
- j. Zone 2: 6 inches on center
- k. Zone 3: 4 inches on center
- l.
 - 1) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 2) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 3) Fasten insulation according to requirements for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.
 - 4) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
 - 5) Weight roof insulation boards down until the initial set is firmly taken place.
- 2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
 - 1) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 2) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- b. At internal roof drains, insulation shall be full thickness including tapered roof insulation starting layer. No sumps shall be installed.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
- c. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
- d. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED ROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll membrane roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Accurately align roof membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- E. Broom roof membrane into bonding adhesive immediately.
- F. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape.

1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
- H. Factory-Applied Seam Tape Installation: Clean and prime surface to receive tape.
1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
- I. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- J. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.
- F. Provide aluminum counter flashings over termination bars as recommended by the roof manufacturer.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:
 - a. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
 - b. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
 - c. Locations indicated on Drawings.
 - d. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
 2. Provide 6-inch (76-mm) clearance between adjoining pads and any roof membrane seams.

3. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: the Owner may engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
 1. Infrared Thermography: Testing agency shall survey entire roof area using infrared color thermography according to ASTM C1153.
 - a. After roof system is installed, perform an infrared moisture scan.
 - b. After testing, repair leaks, repeat tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.
 - 1) Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.
 - c. Testing agency shall prepare survey report of initial scan indicating locations of entrapped moisture, if any.
- B. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.
- C. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.11 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

3.12 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS _____ of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
 1. Owner: **<Insert name of Owner>**.
 2. Address: **<Insert address>**.
 3. Building Name/Type: **<Insert information>**.

4. Address: <Insert address>.
5. Area of Work: <Insert information>.
6. Acceptance Date: _____.
7. Warranty Period: 2 years
8. Expiration Date: _____.

- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. lightning;
 - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 72 MPH for 3 second wind gust
 - c. fire;
 - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
 2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
 3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
 4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
 5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall

become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.

6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION 075323

SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof hatches.
 - 2. Preformed flashing sleeves.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

2.2 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated single-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, straight sides and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 36 by 36 inches.
- C. Loads: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
 - 1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
 - 2. Finish: Mill phosphatized.
 - 3. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- E. Construction:
 - 1. Insulation: 2-inch-thick, polyisocyanurate board.
 - a. R-Value: 12.0 according to ASTM C1363.
 - 2. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.
 - 3. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
 - 4. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
 - 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 - 6. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, galvanized steel spring latch with turn handles, galvanized steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
 - 1. Provide two-point latch on lids larger than 84 inches.

2.3 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

- A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches high, with removable metal hood and slotted metal collar.

1. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
 2. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.
1. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick
 2. Height: 19 inches.
 3. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.

2.4 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation and mill phosphatized for field painting where indicated.
1. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.
 2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

- E. Underlayment:
 - 1. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
 - 2. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D4397.
 - 3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
 - 4. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

- F. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
 - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 3. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
- E. Roof-Hatch Installation:
1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
 3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve and Flashing Pipe Portal Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by UL, or a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems bearing marking of qualified testing and inspection agency.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 2. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
 3. Grace Construction Products; W.R. Grace & Co. -- Conn.
 4. Hilti, Inc.
 5. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 6. NUCO Inc.
 7. RectorSeal.
 8. Tremco, Inc.
 9. USG Corporation.

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
1. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg at both ambient and elevated temperatures.

- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- C. Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- D. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.
- E. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.
- F. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners

or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:

1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
4. Date of installation.
5. Manufacturer's name.
6. Installer's name.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION 078413

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
2. Urethane joint sealants.
3. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
4. Butyl joint sealants.
5. Latex joint sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079100 "Preformed Joint Seals" for preformed compressible foam and precured joint seals.
2. Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in sound-rated construction.
3. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in paved roads, parking lots, walkways, and curbing.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site with Owner, CM and Architect.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:

1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
3. Joint-sealant formulation.

4. Joint-sealant color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
 1. Joint-sealant location and designation.
 2. Manufacturer and product name.
 3. Type of substrate material.
 4. Proposed test.
 5. Number of samples required.
- D. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.
- E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- F. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
1. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 2. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with glazing and gasket materials.
 3. Stain Testing: Use ASTM C1248 to determine stain potential of sealant when in contact with stone or masonry substrates.
 4. Submit manufacturer's recommended number of pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, joint-sealant backings, and miscellaneous materials.
 5. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 6. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including use of specially formulated primers.
 7. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, staining of, and compatibility with joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
 - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
 - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
 6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C1248.

- B. JS-2 Concrete/ CMU: Silicone, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. The Dow Chemical Company.

2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. JS-1 Traffic: Urethane, S, P, 35, T: Single-component, pourable, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 35, Uses T and NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation.
- B. JS-3 Floor/ Wall/ Ceiling: Urethane, M, NS, 50, T, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Tremco Incorporated.

2.4 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. JS-4 Plumbing Fixtures, Wet Locations: Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
 - b. Pecora Corporation.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated.

2.5 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. JS-5: Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C1311.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Bostik; Arkema.
 - b. GSSI Sealants.
 - c. Pecora Corporation.

2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. JS-6: Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation.
 - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
 - c. Tremco Incorporated.

2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.
 - b. Master Builders Solutions.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), Type O (open-cell material), Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:

- a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
- 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
- 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.

2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide flush joint profile at according to Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at according to Figure 8C in ASTM C1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform one test for each 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces JS-1.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints in brick pavers.
 - b. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - c. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete paving units.
 - d. Joints in stone paving units.
 - e. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - f. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - g. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces JS-2.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
 - b. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
 - c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - d. Joints in dimension stone cladding.
 - e. Joints in glass unit masonry assemblies.
 - f. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
 - g. Joints between metal panels.
 - h. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - i. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
 - j. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
 - k. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces JS-3.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry, concrete, walls and partitions.
 - d. Joints on underside of plant-precast structural concrete beams.
 - e. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement JS-6.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces JS-4.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics JS-5.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Aluminum thresholds.
 - b. Sill plates.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:

- 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
- 2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 083473.13 "Metal Sound Control Door Assemblies" for packaged, acoustically rated hollow-metal door and frame assemblies.
- 2. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.
- 3. Section 134900 "Radiation Protection" for lead-lined, hollow-metal doors and frames.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site with Owner, CM and Architect.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
1. Elevations of each door type.
 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
 7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 8. Details of accessories.
 9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For hollow-metal doors and frames with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated hollow-metal door and frame assembly, fire-rated borrowed-lite assembly, and thermally rated door assemblies for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- B. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire-rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.
- C. Field quality control reports.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Ceco Door: AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
- B. Curries, AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
- C. Steelcraft; ALLEGION pllc

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
 - 2. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.
- C. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.40 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. (2.27 W/K x sq. m) when tested according to ASTM C518.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Standard-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 1; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level C. Typical unless noted Otherwise.
 - 1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.032 inch (0.8 mm).
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
 - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard

- c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm), with minimum A60 (ZF180) coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
 - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
 - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
 - h. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
 - i. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated doors.
2. Frames:
- a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), with minimum A60 (ZF180) coating.
 - b. Construction: Face welded.
3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 BORROWED LITES

- A. Fabricate of metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
- B. Construction: Knocked down or Face welded.
- C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.
- D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
 2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches (610 mm) of frame height above 7 feet (2.1 m).
 3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.

- C. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
 - 1. Sidelite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding, or by rigid mechanical anchors.
 - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- B. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.

1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- C. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with square stops unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
 4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
 5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c. and not more than 2 inches (51 mm) o.c. from each corner.

2.9 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
- B. Form corners of moldings with hairline joints. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
 - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
 - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - 3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 - 4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
 - 5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
 - 6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
 - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
 - 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- B. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

3.4 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
- 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
- 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork".
- 2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
- 3. Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for field finishing doors.
- 4. Section 134900 "Radiation Protection" for lead-lined flush wood doors.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site with Owner, CM and Architect.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

- 1. Door core materials and construction.
- 2. Door edge construction
- 3. Door face type and characteristics.
- 4. Door trim for openings.
- 5. Factory-machining criteria.
- 6. Factory-finishing specifications.

- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

- 1. Door schedule indicating door and frame location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
- 2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.

3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
7. Clearances and undercuts.
8. Requirements for veneer matching.
9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
2. Polymer edging, in manufacturer's standard colors.
3. Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.
4. Frames for light openings, 6 inches (150 mm) long, for each material, type, and finish required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
3. Submit copy of DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Special warranties.

B. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's products to be produced to meet standards as defined by AWI's Quality Certification Program

- B. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 - 1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.
- C. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
 - 1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during remainder of construction period.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Delamination of veneer.
 - b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section.
 - c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 76.2-mm) span.
 - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.
 - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
- B. Doors shall be 5-ply and comply with AWI / WDMA PC5 construction. Doors shall be manufactured by the hot-press method, bonding faces, crossbands and core together in a single operation with Type I glue. Doors manufactured by cold-pressing 2 or 3-ply pre-manufactured door skins to multiple cores in the same press will not be accepted.

2.4 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Doors - SCWD
 - 1. Lambton Doors
 - 2. Masonite Architectural
 - 3. Oshkosh Door Company
 - 4. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty and as indicated on Drawings.
 - 5. Performance Grade:
 - a. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 6. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
 - 7. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch (0.508 mm) thick.

- a. Veneer Grade: AA
 - b. Species: Select white birch, White oak as selected from manufacturer's range.
 - c. Cut: Rotary cut.
 - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.
 - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
8. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A
- a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
 - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors: Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.
 - 1) Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel same color as doors.
 - 2) Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).
 - c. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: 475 lbf (2110 N) in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
9. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
- a. ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2 particleboard.
 - 1) Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware and as follows:
 - a) 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
 - b) 5-inch (125-mm) bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
 - 2) Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
 - b. Glued wood stave.
 - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
 - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Vertical Door Edge: 475 lbf (2110 N).
 - d. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
10. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.

- a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware as follows:
 - 11. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
 - 12. Core: WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
 - a. Screw Withdrawal, Door Face: 475 lbf (2110 N).
 - b. Screw Withdrawal, Vertical Door Edge: 475 lbf (2110 N).
 - 13. Core: Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
 - 14. Construction: Seven plies, hot-pressed or cold-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
 - 15. Adhesives: Type I in accordance with WDMA T.M. 6.

2.5 LIGHT FRAMES

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Species: Species compatible with door faces.
 - 2. Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.
 - 3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.
- B. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.
- C. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; [factory primed for paint] [with baked-enamel- or powder-coated] finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.
 - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
 - 1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
 - 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.

3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
5. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.

1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.

1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.

B. Factory finish doors.

C. Transparent Finish:

1. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.
2. Finish: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A TR-4 Conversion Varnish.
3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Effect: Semifilled finish, produced by applying an additional finish coat to partially fill the wood pores.
5. Sheen: Satin, as selected from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.

1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
2. Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Install frames level, plumb, true, and straight.
 - 1. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3.2 mm in 2400 mm).
 - 2. Anchor frames to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
 - a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
 - b. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
 - 1) For factory-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
 - 3. Install fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
 - 4. Install smoke- and draft-control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
- D. Job-Fitted Doors:
 - 1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
 - a. Do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
 - 2. Machine doors for hardware.
 - 3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
 - 4. Clearances:
 - a. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
 - b. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
 - 5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
 - 6. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
 - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
 - 2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Access doors and frames.
- 2. Fire-rated access doors and frames.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches.
- 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for heating and air-conditioning duct access doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, fire ratings, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Samples: For each type of access door and frame and for each finish specified, complete assembly minimum 6 by 6 inches (150 by 150 mm) in size.

C. Product Locations: For access doors and frames. Coordinate access doors to be provided at locations noted on MEP Drawings for:

- 1. Valves (20)
- 2. Cleanouts (10)
- 3. Dampers (40)
- 4. Controls (10)
- 5. Others as required.
() Indicates approximate quantities of doors required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing and inspecting agency.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of applicable room name and number in which access door is located.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies shall meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges
 1. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. ACUDOR Products, INC.
 - b. Babcock Davis
 - c. J.L. Industries, Inc., Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
 - d. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
 2. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
 3. Provide Access Doors at locations and sizes as indicated and as noted/required in MEP Construction Documentation to include, but not limited to:
 - a. Plumbing / Fire Protection Piping concealed valves, cleanouts, equipment.
 - b. Mechanical valves, dampers, controls
 - c. Electrical panels, shutoffs, raceways
 4. Optional Features: Gasketing, and Masonry anchors at locations in masonry walls
 5. Locations: Wall and ceilings as indicated on MEP Drawings.
 6. Door Size: as required for access to equipment, 16" x 16" minimum
 7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), 16 gage, factory finished.

8. Latch and Lock: Cam latch, screwdriver operated.

2.3 FIRE-RATED ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:

1. Available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. ACUDOR Products, INC.
 - b. Babcock Davis
 - c. J.L. Industries, Inc., Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
 - d. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
2. Description: Door face flush with frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal; with exposed flange, self-closing door, and concealed hinge.
3. Provide Access Doors at locations and sizes as indicated and as noted/required in MEP Construction Documentation at fire-rated wall locations to include, but not limited to:
 - a. Plumbing / Fire Protection Piping concealed valves, cleanouts, equipment.
 - b. Mechanical valves, dampers, controls
 - c. Electrical panels, shutoffs, raceways
4. Optional Features: Gasketing, Piano hinges, Masonry anchors as required at locations as indicated on MEP Drawings.
5. Locations: Walls and ceilings as indicated on MEP Drawings..
6. Door Size: As indicated on MEP Drawings.
7. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated of adjacent construction
8. Temperature-Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes.
9. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), 20 gage, factory finished.
10. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
11. Latch and Lock: Self-latching door hardware, operated by knurled-knob with interior release at locations in areas of public access.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.
- C. Frame Anchors: Same material as door face.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.

- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
 - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
 - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded-metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
 - 2. Factory Finished: Apply manufacturer's standard baked-enamel or powder-coat finish immediately after cleaning and pretreating, with minimum dry-film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
 - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated access door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated access door indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 083113

SECTION 083323 - OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Insulated service doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports, door-opening framing, corner guards, and bollards.
 - 2. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for finish painting of factory-primed doors.
 - 3. Section 111200 "Parking Control Equipment" for parking control equipment interlocked to overhead coiling doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of overhead coiling door and accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles for slats, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
 - 3. Include description of automatic-closing device and testing and resetting instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies, and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
 - 4. For exterior components, include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for excluding and draining moisture to the exterior.
 - 5. Show locations of controls, locking devices, detectors or replaceable fusible links, and other accessories.
 - 6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish charts showing full range of colors and textures available for units with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following components, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
 - 1. Bottom bar.
 - 2. Guides.
 - 3. Brackets.
 - 4. Hood.
 - 5. Locking device(s).
 - 6. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranty.
- B. Maintenance Data: For overhead coiling doors to include in maintenance manuals.
- C. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
 - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain overhead coiling doors from single source from single manufacturer.
1. Obtain operators and controls from overhead coiling-door manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the following design wind loads:
1. Design Wind Load: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (960 Pa), acting inward and outward.
 2. Testing: According to ASTM E330/E330M.
 3. Deflection Limits: Design overhead coiling doors to withstand design wind load without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
 4. Operability under Wind Load: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under design uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20-lbf/sq. ft. (960-Pa) wind load, acting inward and outward.
- B. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Provide impact-protective overhead coiling doors that pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests according to [ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 1] [ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 2] [ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 3] [ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4] [or DASMA 115] for [basic] [enhanced] protection.
1. Large-Missile Test: For overhead coiling doors located within 30 ft. (9.1 m) of grade.
 2. Small-Missile Test: For overhead coiling doors located between 30 ft. (9.1 m) and 60 ft. (18.3 m) above grade.
- C. Seismic Performance: Overhead coiling doors shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

2.3 DOOR ASSEMBLY

- A. Insulated Service Door: Overhead coiling door formed with curtain of interlocking metal slats.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Cornell; a CornellCookson company.
 - b. McKeon Door Company.
 - c. Overhead Door Corporation.

- B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 50,000. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.
 - 1. Include tamperproof cycle counter.
- C. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. (5.1 L/s per sq. m) at 15 and 25 mph (24.1 and 40.2 km/h) when tested according to ASTM E283.
- D. STC Rating: 26.
- E. Insulated Door Curtain R-Value: 4.5 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (0.792 K x sq. m/W).
- F. Insulated Door Assembly U-Factor: 0.90 Btu/deg F x h x sq. ft. (5.1 W/K x sq. m).
- G. Door Curtain Material: Galvanized steel.
- H. Door Curtain Slats: Flat profile slats of 2-5/8-inch (67-mm) center-to-center height.
 - 1. Insulated-Slat Interior Facing: Metal.
 - 2. Gasket Seal. Manufacturer's standard continuous gaskets between slats.
- I. Bottom Bar: Two angles, each not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch (38 by 38 by 3 mm) thick; fabricated from hot-dip galvanized steel and finished to match door.
- J. Curtain Jamb Guides: Galvanized steel with exposed finish matching curtain slats.
- K. Hood: Match curtain material and finish.
 - 1. Shape: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Mounting: Face of wall As indicated on Drawings.
- L. Locking Devices: Equip door with locking device assembly and chain lock keeper.
 - 1. Locking Device Assembly: Cremona-type, both jamb sides locking bars, operable from inside and outside with cylinders.
- M. Manual Door Operator: Chain-hoist operator.
 - 1. Provide operator with through-wall shaft operation.
 - 2. Provide operator with manufacturer's standard removable operating arm.
- N. Electric Door Operator:
 - 1. Usage Classification: Heavy duty, 25 or more cycles per hour and more than 90 cycles per day>.
 - 2. Operator Location: Top of hood as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Safety: Listed according to UL 325 by a qualified testing agency for commercial or industrial use; moving parts of operator enclosed or guarded if exposed and mounted at 8 ft. (2.44 m) or lower.
 - 4. Motor Exposure: Interior.
 - 5. Motor Electrical Characteristics:

- a. Horsepower: 3 hp.
208 V ac, single phase, 60 Hz.
 6. Emergency Manual Operation: Chain type.
 7. Obstruction-Detection Device: Automatic pneumatic sensor edge on bottom bar; self-monitoring type.
 - a. Sensor Edge Bulb Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 8. Control Station(s): Interior mounted where indicated on Drawings.
 9. Other Equipment: Audible and visual signals.
- O. Curtain Accessories: Equip door with weatherseals, push/pull handles, pull-down strap and automatic-closing device.
- P. Door Finish:
1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coated Finish: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 2. Factory Prime Finish: Manufacturer's standard color.
 3. Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Finish as indicated by manufacturer's designations as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.5 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

- A. Door Curtains: Fabricate overhead coiling-door curtain of interlocking metal slats, designed to withstand wind loading indicated, in a continuous length for width of door without splices. Unless otherwise indicated, provide slats of thickness and mechanical properties recommended by door manufacturer for performance, size, and type of door indicated, and as follows:
1. Steel Door Curtain Slats: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled structural-steel sheet; complying with ASTM A653/A653M, with G90 (Z275) zinc coating; nominal sheet thickness (coated) of 0.028 inch (0.71 mm); and as required.
 2. Insulation: Fill slats for insulated doors with manufacturer's standard thermal insulation complying with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E84 or UL 723. Enclose insulation completely within slat faces.
 3. Metal Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match metal of exterior curtain-slat face, with minimum steel thickness of 0.010 inch (0.25 mm).
 4. Plastic Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Extruded PVC plastic with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 450, according to ASTM E84 or UL 723.
- B. Curtain Jamb Guides: Manufacturer's standard angles or channels and angles of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading. Slot bolt holes for guide

adjustment. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent overtravel of curtain, and a continuous bar for holding windlocks.

2.6 HOODS

- A. General: Form sheet metal hood to entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head. Contour to fit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Form closed ends for surface-mounted hoods and fascia for any portion of between-jamb mounting that projects beyond wall face. Equip hood with intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sagging.
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating, complying with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 2. Stainless Steel: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) thick, stainless steel sheet, Type 304, complying with ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666.
 - 3. Aluminum: 0.040-inch- (1.02-mm-) thick aluminum sheet complying with ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), of alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
 - 4. Include automatic drop baffle on fire-rated doors to guard against passage of smoke or flame.
 - 5. Exterior-Mounted Doors: Fabricate hood to act as weather protection and with a perimeter sealant-joint-bead profile for applying joint sealant.
- B. Removable Metal Soffit: Formed or extruded from same metal and with same finish as curtain if hood is mounted above ceiling unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 LOCKING DEVICES

- A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.
- B. Locking Device Assembly: Fabricate with cylinder lock, spring-loaded dead bolt, operating handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bars to engage through slots in tracks.
 - 1. Lock Cylinders: As standard with manufacturer.
 - 2. Keys: Three for each cylinder.
- C. Chain Lock Keeper: Suitable for padlock.
- D. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.

2.8 CURTAIN ACCESSORIES

- A. Weatherseals for Exterior Doors: Equip each exterior door with weather-stripping gaskets fitted to entire exterior perimeter of door for a weather-resistant installation unless otherwise indicated.

1. At door head, use 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, replaceable, continuous-sheet baffle secured to inside of hood or field-installed on the header.
 2. At door jambs, use replaceable, adjustable, continuous, flexible, 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick seals of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene.
- B. Astragal for Interior Doors: Equip each door bottom bar with a replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible gasket of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene as a cushion bumper.
- C. Push/Pull Handles: Equip each push-up-operated or emergency-operated door with lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.
- D. Pull-Down Strap: Provide pull-down straps for doors more than 84 inches (2130 mm) high.
- E. Poll Hooks: Provide pole hooks and poles for doors more than 84 inches (2130 mm) high.
- F. Automatic-Closing Device: Equip each fire-rated door with an automatic-closing device or holder-release mechanism and governor unit complying with NFPA 80 and an easily tested and reset release mechanism.[Testing for manually operated doors shall allow resetting by opening the door without retensioning the counterbalance mechanism][Release mechanism for motor-operated doors shall allow testing without mechanical release of the door.] Automatic-closing device shall be designed for activation by the following:
1. Replaceable fusible links with temperature rise and melting point of [165 deg F (74 deg C)] <Insert temperature> interconnected and mounted on both sides of door opening.
 2. Manufacturer's standard UL-labeled smoke detector and door-holder-release devices.
 3. Manufacturer's standard UL-labeled heat detector and door-holder-release devices.
 4. Building fire-detection, smoke-detection, and -alarm systems.

2.9 COUNTERBALANCE MECHANISM

- A. General: Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.
- B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, seamless or welded carbon-steel pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats and to limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03 in./ft. (2.5 mm/m) of span under full load.
- C. Counterbalance Spring: One or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.
1. Fire-Rated Doors: Equip with auxiliary counterbalance spring and prevent tension release from main counterbalance spring when automatic-closing device operates.
- D. Torsion Rod for Counterbalance Shaft: Fabricate of manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.

- E. Brackets: Manufacturer's standard mounting brackets of either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate.

2.10 MANUAL DOOR OPERATORS

- A. General: Equip door with manual door operator by door manufacturer.
- B. Push-up Door Operation: Lift handles and pull rope for raising and lowering doors, with counterbalance mechanism designed so that required lift or pull for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
- C. Chain-Hoist Operator: Consisting of endless steel hand chain, chain-pocket wheel and guard, and gear-reduction unit with a maximum 30-lbf (133-N) force for door operation. Provide alloy-steel hand chain with chain holder secured to operator guide.

2.11 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS

- A. General: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and operation-cycles requirement specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 2. Control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6, with NFPA 70 Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24-V ac or dc.
- B. Usage Classification: Electric operator and components capable of operating for not less than number of cycles per hour indicated for each door.
- C. Door Operator Location(s): Operator location indicated for each door.
 - 1. Top-of-Hood Mounted: Operator is mounted to the right or left door head plate with the operator on top of the door-hood assembly and connected to the door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Headroom is required for this type of mounting.
 - 2. Front-of-Hood Mounted: Operator is mounted to the right or left door head plate with the operator on coil side of the door-hood assembly and connected to the door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Front clearance is required for this type of mounting.
 - 3. Wall Mounted: Operator is mounted to the inside front wall on the left or right side of door and connected to door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Side room is required for this type of mounting. Wall-mounted operator can also be mounted above or below shaft; if above shaft, headroom is required.
 - 4. Bench Mounted: Operator is mounted to the right or left door head plate and connected to the door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Side room is required for this type of mounting.
 - 5. Through-Wall Mounted: Operator is mounted on other side of wall from coil side of door.

- D. Motors: Reversible-type motor with controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure indicated for each door assembly.
 - 1. Electrical Characteristics: Minimum as indicated for each door assembly. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. (203 mm/s) and not more than 12 in./sec. (305 mm/s), without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
 - 2. Operating Controls, Controllers, Disconnect Switches, Wiring Devices, and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.
- E. Limit Switches: Equip each motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
- F. Obstruction-Detection Devices: External entrapment protection consisting of indicated automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening.
 - 1. Photoelectric Sensor: Manufacturer's standard system designed to detect an obstruction in door opening without contact between door and obstruction.
 - a. Self-Monitoring Type: Designed to interface with door operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensing device. When self-monitoring feature is activated, door closes only with sustained or constant pressure on close button.
 - 2. Electric Sensor Edge: Automatic safety sensor edge, located within astragal or weather stripping mounted to bottom bar. Contact with sensor activates device. Connect to control circuit using manufacturer's standard take-up reel or self-coiling cable.
 - a. Self-Monitoring Type: Four-wire-configured device designed to interface with door operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor edge.
 - 3. Pneumatic Sensor Edge: Automatic safety sensor edge, located within astragal or weather stripping mounted to bottom bar. Contact with sensor activates device.
- G. Control Station: Three-button control station in fixed location with momentary-contact push-button controls labeled "Open" and "Stop" and sustained- or constant-pressure push-button control labeled "Close."
 - 1. Interior-Mounted Units: Full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
 - 2. Exterior-Mounted Units: Full-guarded, standard-duty, surface-mounted, weatherproof type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure, key operated.
- H. Emergency Manual Operation: Equip each electrically powered door with capability for emergency manual operation. Design manual mechanism so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
- I. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Equip operator with hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount

mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.

- J. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.
- K. Audible and Visual Signals: Audible alarm and visual indicator lights in compliance with the accessibility standard.
- L. Portable Radio-Control System: Consisting of two of the following per door operator:
 - 1. Three-channel universal coaxial receiver to open, close, and stop door.
 - 2. Portable control device to open and stop door may be momentary-contact type; control to close door shall be sustained- or constant-pressure type.
 - 3. Remote-antenna mounting kit.

2.12 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.13 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Factory Prime Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer, compatible with field-applied finish. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install overhead coiling doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Install overhead coiling doors, hoods, controls, and operators at the mounting locations indicated for each door.
- C. Accessibility: Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with the accessibility standard.
- D. Fire-Rated Doors: Install according to NFPA 80.
- E. Smoke-Control Doors: Install according to NFPA 80 and NFPA 105.
- F. Power-Operated Doors: Install automatic garage doors openers according to UL 325.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative]:
 - 1. Test door release, closing, and alarm operations when activated by smoke detector or building's fire-alarm system. Test manual operation of closed door. Reset door-closing mechanism after successful test.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. After electrical circuitry has been energized, operate doors to confirm proper motor rotation and door performance.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
 - 1. Adjust exterior doors and components to be weather resistant.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust seals to provide tight fit around entire perimeter.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of coiling-door Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 1. Perform maintenance, including emergency callback service, during normal working hours.
 - 2. Include 24-hour-per-day, seven-day-per-week, emergency callback service.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead coiling doors.

END OF SECTION 083323

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Aluminum-framed storefront systems.
 - 2. Aluminum-framed entrance door systems.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
 - 4. Include point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the following:
 - a. Power requirements for each electrically operated door hardware.

- b. Location and types of switches, signal device, conduit sizes, and number and size of wires.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
 - 1. For Installer.
 - 2. For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated-design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction state in which Project is located.
- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.
- C. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer and that employs a qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AG&M) contractors and that employs glazing technicians certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E699 for testing indicated and accredited by IAS or ILAC Mutual Recognition Arrangement as complying with ISO/IEC 17025.

- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing spandrel panels, venting windows and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.

- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members Supporting Glass: At design wind load, as follows:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans of up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches.
 - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch.
 - a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch clearance between framing members and operable units.
- E. Structural: Test according to ASTM E330/E330M as follows:
 - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures of 25 PSF, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors, do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - 2. When tested at 150% percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors and anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E331 as follows:
 - 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas, including entrance doors, when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 12 lbf/sq. ft.

- G. Energy Performance: Certified and labeled by manufacturer for energy performance as follows:
1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: U-factor for the system of not more than 0.30 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
 - b. Entrance Doors: U-factor of not more than 0.77 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
 2. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: SHGC for the system of not more than 0.26 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 - b. Entrance Doors: SHGC of not more than 0.22 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 3. Air Leakage:
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: Air leakage for the system of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E283.
 - b. Entrance Doors: Air leakage of not more than 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
- H. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.3 STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. EFCO (basis of design).
 2. YKK
 3. Kawneer
- B. Basis of Design Manufacturer: EFCO Series 403X Thermally Broken Storefront.
- C. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Exterior Framing Construction: Dual Thermally broken.
 2. Interior Vestibule Framing Construction: Nonthermal.
 3. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 4. Glazing Plane: Center.
 5. Finish: Superior-performance organic finish.
 6. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
 7. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

- 8. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- D. Storefront Framing: Shall utilize the manufacturer thermally broken subsill with end dams to properly mitigate any water infiltration into the storefront system.
- E. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- F. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- G. Glass and Spandrel Glass: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. EFCO Series D518 Heavy Duty Entrance Doors
- B. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing or automatic operation.
 - 1. Door Construction: 2-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.188-inch-thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - 2. Door Design: Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width.
 - 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
 - 4. Finish: Match adjacent storefront framing finish.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers. Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Automatic Door Operators: Section 087113 "Automatic Door Operators."

- B. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials. Dead-soft, 0.018-inch-thick stainless steel, complying with ASTM A240/A240M, of type recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.
- E. Rigid PVC Filler.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing or metal panels.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- C. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- D. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At interior and exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- E. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- F. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in the color coat.
 - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not install damaged components.
- C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- F. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- H. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.
- I. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF OPERABLE UNITS

- A. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF GLAZING

- A. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE DOORS

- A. Install entrance doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 - 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on mockups. Inexpensive test in "Water-Spray Test" Subparagraph below tests for deficiencies in workmanship only and is not representative of a wind-driven rain event.
 - 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.

- a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
2. Air Leakage: ASTM E783 at 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
 - a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
3. Water Penetration: ASTM E1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft, and shall not evidence water penetration.
- C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 084243 - AUTOMATIC SLIDING ENTRANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Automatically-Operated Sliding Entrances for autopsy rooms.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each configuration of Automatic Sliding Entrance indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of Automatic Sliding Entrances that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: (2) two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Opening Force: Not more than 5 lbf to fully open door.
- B. Air Leakage: Entrance assemblies for smoke control shall be listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on

testing according to UL 1784 and having maximum air leakage according to NFPA 105 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 AUTOMATIC SLIDING ENTRANCE ASSEMBLIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard factory-glazed Automatic Sliding Entrances including door leaves, framing, headers, carrier assemblies, roller tracks, motors, controls, and accessories required for a complete installation as indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Horton Automatics; a division of Overhead Door Corporation. Basis-of Design: Profiler Series 2000-IDS-2, Smoke-rated Automatic Isolation Door System, Type: Trackless 310 Single-Slide
 - b. NABCO Entrances, Inc.
 - c. Stanley Access Technologies.
 - B. Breakaway Hardware: Release hardware that allows indicated panels to swing out in direction of egress to full 90 degrees from closed door position.
 1. Maximum Force to Open Panel: 50 lbf
 2. Release Position: Sliding door fully open.
 - C. Automatic Sliding Entrance:
 1. Performance: Smoke-control assembly.
 2. Configuration: Telescoping three-panel door, with two operable leafs and one sidelite; with breakaway hardware for the sidelight only.
 3. Mounting: Between jambs.
 4. Floor Track Configuration: Trackless
 5. Stile Design: Narrow stile; 2-1/8-inch nominal width
 6. Rail Design: 4-inch nominal height
 7. Muntin Bars: None.
 8. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square.
 9. Glazing: Miniblinds.
 10. Finish: Finish framing, door(s), sidelite(s), and header with Class II, clear anodic finish

2.3 COMPONENTS

- A. Framing Members: Extruded aluminum, minimum 0.125 inch thick and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Nominal Size: 1-3/4 by 6 inches
 2. Retain "Extruded Glazing Stops and Applied Trim" Subparagraph below for separately framed sidelites.

- B. Stile and Rail Doors: 1-3/4-inch- thick glazed doors with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular stile and rail members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are welded, or incorporate concealed tie rods that span full length of top and bottom rails.
 - 1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets for glazing indicated.
- C. Headers: Fabricated from minimum 0.125-inch- thick extruded aluminum, and extending full width of ICU/CCU entrance units to conceal carrier assemblies and roller tracks. Provide hinged or removable access panels for service and adjustment. Secure panels to prevent unauthorized access.
 - 1. Capacity: Capable of supporting doors up to 14 feet without intermediate supports.
 - 2. Provide sag rods for spans exceeding 14 feet.
- D. Carrier Assemblies and Overhead Roller Tracks: Assembly that allows vertical adjustment; consisting of nylon- or delrin-covered, ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a continuous roller track or of ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a nylon- or delrin-covered, continuous roller track.
- E. Fasteners and Accessories: Corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

2.4 HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide units in sizes and types recommended by Automatic Sliding Entrance and hardware manufacturers for entrances and uses indicated. Finish exposed parts to match door finish unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, edge mortised, lever-extension type; located at bottom of each swing-out sidelite.
- C. Weather Stripping: Replaceable components.
- D. Weather Sweeps: Nylon brush sweep mounted to underside of door bottom.
- E. Manufacturer's standard Push Plate controls.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Factory fabricate Automatic Sliding Entrance components to designs, sizes, and thicknesses indicated and to comply with indicated standards.
- B. Framing: Provide Automatic Sliding Entrances as prefabricated assemblies. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to Project site.
- C. Doors: Factory fabricated and assembled in profiles indicated. Reinforce as required to support imposed loads and for installing hardware.

- D. Factory Glazing: Install miniblind glazing at the factory.
- E. Hardware: Factory install hardware to the greatest extent possible; remove only as required for final finishing operation and for delivery to and installation at Project site. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed hardware before applying finishes.
 - 1. Provide sliding weather stripping, mortised into door, at perimeter of sliding surfaces and breakaway sidelites.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Sealants and Joint Fillers: As specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M; of consistency suitable for application.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install automatic entrances according to manufacturer's written instructions
 - 1. Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight.
 - 2. Where aluminum contacts dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
- B. Install Automatic Sliding Entrances plumb, true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack of framing members and doors. Anchor securely in place.
 - 1. Install surface-mounted hardware using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
 - 2. Set headers, carrier assemblies, tracks, operating brackets, and guides level and true to location with anchorage for permanent support.
 - 3. Level recesses for recessed floor tracks using shrinkage-resistant grout.
 - 4. Air Leakage: Install entrance assemblies for smoke-control according to NFPA 105 and as indicated.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- C. Sealants: Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for installing sealants, fillers, and gaskets.
 - 1. Set framing members, floor tracks, and flashings in full sealant bed.
 - 2. Seal perimeter of framing members with sealant.
- D. Adjust force to open door panels.
- E. Adjust smoke-control and pressurized-entrance doors for tight closure.
- F. Test and adjust miniblinds to operate properly.

END OF SECTION 084243

SECTION 08 7100
DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Door hardware for wood doors, steel doors, aluminum framed entrance doors, all glass entrance doors, and miscellaneous hardware items.
- B. Provide hardware not described herein but otherwise required for proper completion of the project, conforming to size, function, quality, and finish of other specified hardware.

1.02 REFERENCED STANDARDS

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - 1. ANSI A117.1 Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
- B. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA):
 - 1. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 Butts and Hinges.
 - 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Exit Devices.
 - 3. ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Door Controls - Closers.
 - 4. ANSI/BHMA A156.5 Auxiliary Locks and Associated Products.
 - 5. ANSI/BHMA A156.6 Architectural Door Trim.
 - 6. ANSI/BHMA A156.7 Template Hinge Dimensions.
 - 7. ANSI/BHMA A156.8 Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders.
 - 8. ANSI/BHMA A156.10 Power Operated Pedestrian Doors.
 - 9. ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Mortise Locks and Latches.
 - 10. ANSI/BHMA A156.14 Sliding and Folding Door Hardware.
 - 11. ANSI/BHMA A156.15 Release Devices: Closer Holders, Electromagnetic and Electromechanical.
 - 12. ANSI/BHMA A156.16 Auxiliary Hardware.
 - 13. ANSI/BHMA A156.18 Materials & Finishes.
 - 14. ANSI/BHMA A156.19 Power Assist & Low Energy Power Operated Doors.
 - 15. ANSI/BHMA A156.21 Thresholds.
 - 16. ANSI/BHMA A156.22 Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems.
 - 17. ANSI/BHMA A156.25 Electrified Locking Devices.
 - 18. ANSI/BHMA A156.26 Continuous Hinges.
 - 19. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 Recommended Practices for Mechanical Keying Systems.
 - 20. ANSI/BHMA A156.29 Exit Locks, Exit Locks with Exit Alarms, Exit Alarms, Alarms for Exit.
 - 21. ANSI/BHMA A156.30 High Security Cylinders.
 - 22. ANSI/BHMA A156.31 Electrified Strikes and Frame Mounted Activators.
 - 23. ANSI/BHMA A156.115 Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors with Steel Frames.
 - 24. ANSI/BHMA A156.115W Hardware Preparation in Wood Doors with Wood or Steel Frames.
- C. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI):
 - 1. ANSI/DHI A115.IG Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware
 - 2. DHI Keying Systems and Nomenclature
 - 3. DHI Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
- D. International Building Code (IBC)

- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 - 1. NFPA 80 Fire Doors and Fire Windows
 - 2. NFPA 252 Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

- F. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
 - 1. UL 10C Positive Pressure Fire Tests Of Door Assemblies
 - 2. UL 305 Panic Hardware
 - 3. UL 437 Drill and Pick Resistant Key Cylinders
 - 4. UL 1034 Burglary-Resistant Electric Locking Mechanisms

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Products other than those designated herein must be approved as substitutions prior to submittal of Door Hardware.

- B. Door Hardware Schedule: Vertical format conforming to DHI "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule." Horizontal format schedules will be rejected without review. Format shall be 8-1/2 by 11 inch page size. Organize Schedule into headings, grouping doors to receive same hardware items, indicating quantity and complete designations of every item required for each door opening. The schedule shall include:
 - 1. Cover sheet indicating name and location of Project; name of Architect; name of Contractor; name, address and phone of hardware supplier, name of hardware consultant preparing the schedule; date of submittal or revised submittal.
 - 2. A list of abbreviations used in schedule.
 - 3. An index of door openings, listed in numerical order, with hardware heading identification cross-referenced to Architect's set identification.
 - 4. Hardware headings shall be listed in numerical order corresponding, as closely as possible, with numerical order of Architect's set numbers.
 - 5. Each hardware heading shall have each door listed in numerical order according to door numbers in the Architect's door schedule, and denoting: location, configuration (single, pair, etc.), type (elevation, etc.), door and frame size(s), door and frame material(s), handing, fire rating, and key set identification.
 - 6. Type, complete model number, style, function, size, hand, and finish of each door hardware item.
 - 7. Manufacturer of each item.
 - 8. Fastenings and other pertinent information.

- C. Manufacturer's Technical Product Data / Catalog Cut Sheets: Clearly marked for each hardware item, including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes. Format shall be 8-1/2 by 11 inch page size.

- D. Wiring Diagrams: No later than 14 days after receipt of reviewed hardware schedule submittal, submit detailed wiring diagrams for power, signaling, monitoring, and control of the access control system electrified hardware or other system electrified components such as sensors, switches, or indicator/ strobe lights; identified by door number(s), and detailed specifically for each type and function of electrified door opening. Format shall be 8-1/2 by 11 inch page size. Include the following:
 - 1. System Description of Operation. Include description of component functions including, but not limited to, the following situations: normal secured/unsecured state of door; authorized access; authorized egress; unauthorized access;

- unauthorized egress; fire alarm and loss of power conditions, and interfaces with other building control systems.
- 2. Elevation single-line diagram, showing interface between electrified door hardware and fire alarm, power, access control, and security systems as applicable.
- 3. Point-to-point wiring diagram for field-installed wiring.
- E. Keying Schedule: In accordance with Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Conform to DHI "Keying Systems and Nomenclature." Format shall be 8-1/2 by 11 inch page size.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: Provide complete operating and maintenance instructions listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guides.
- G. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Obtain each type and variety of door hardware from a single manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Manufacturers, Hardware Supplier, and Installer shall have no less than five years' experience in the provision of Door Hardware for projects similar in size, complexity and type to this Project.
- C. Hardware Schedule and Keying Schedule submittals shall be prepared by a Hardware Consultant holding the credentials of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) issued by the Door and Hardware Institute. Hardware Consultant shall have no less than five years' experience in the scheduling of Door Hardware for projects similar in size, complexity and type to this Project; and shall be available, at no additional cost, during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner regarding door hardware and keying.

1.05 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door hardware for assemblies complying with all applicable regulations, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. At rated doors with panic exit devices, provide devices labeled as "Fire Exit Device."
- B. Comply with all applicable accessibility regulations as set forth in Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) -- Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG) and ANSI A117.1. 2010 Standards for Accessible Design as applicable.
- C. Latching and locking doors that are hand-activated and that are in a path of travel shall be operable with a single effort by lever-type hardware, panic bars, push-pull activating bars, or other hardware designed to be easy to grasp with one hand, not requiring tight grasping, tight pinching or twisting of the wrist; from egress side shall not require the use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.

1. All hand-activated hardware shall be mounted between 34 inches and 48 inches above finished floor.
- D. At sliding doors, when fully open, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.
- E. Door closing devices shall comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
 1. Interior Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door at latch.
 2. Exterior Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door at latch.
 3. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf applied parallel to door at latch.
 4. Fire Rated Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door at latch. To insure latching, may be increased to the minimum force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority, not to exceed 15 lbf.
- F. Where door closers are provided, adjust sweep speed so that from an open position of 90 degrees, the time required to move the door to a position of 12 degrees from the latch is 5 seconds minimum.
- G. Thresholds shall be maximum 1/2 inch in height above floor and landing on both sides of openings. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Each article of hardware shall be delivered individually packaged in the manufacturer's standard commercial carton or container, and shall be properly marked or labeled to be readily identifiable with the approved hardware schedule.
- B. Manufacturer's printed installation instructions, fasteners, and special tools shall be included in each package.
- C. Hardware shall be stored in a dry, secure locked area, complete with shelving for unpacking and sorting of the door hardware.
- D. Deliver all master keys by restricted, receipted delivery directly from the manufacturer to the Owner.

1.07 COORDINATION

- A. Provide hardware templates to the parties involved for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for door hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. When required by door or frame fabricator, furnish physical samples of each mortised and recessed hardware item required.
- C. Coordinate layout and installation of recessed pivots and closers with floor construction.
- D. Electrical System Rough-in: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies, fire alarm system and detection devices, access control system, and security system as applicable.

- E. Pre-Installation Conference: Arrange conference at job site to coordinate door, frame, hardware and electronic security hardware installation; to be attended by the Architect, Owner, Contractor and representative personnel of firms involved in the provision and installation of said items.
- F. Keying Conference: Arrange conference with Owner, or designated representative, and Manufacturer's/ Hardware Supplier's Architectural Hardware Consultant to establish keying requirements. Incorporate keying conference decisions into Keying Schedule.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. In addition to, and not precluding, other warranty requirements in the Contract Documents, the following hardware items shall carry extended minimum warranties as indicated:
 - 1. Hinges: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Locks: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Exit Devices: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Door Closers: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.09 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements herein, provide products by one of the following manufacturers for each type of hardware:
 - 1. Butt Hinges: Hager, Ives, McKinney, Stanley.
 - 2. Continuous Pinned Hinges: Architectural Builders Hardware, Hager, Markar, Select, Stanley.
 - 3. Continuous Geared Hinges: Architectural Builders Hardware, Hager, National Guard Products, Pemko, Select.
 - 4. Pivots: Architectural Builders Hardware, Ives, Rixson.
 - 5. Cylinders and Keying: Per Owner's Requirements.
 - 6. Locksets and Latchsets: Accurate, Corbin Russwin, Sargent, Schlage.
 - 7. Narrow Backset Locksets and Latchsets: Accurate.
 - 8. Exit Devices: Corbin Russwin, Precision, Sargent, Von Duprin.
 - 9. Exterior Weatherized Exit Devices: Detex.
 - 10. Exit Devices for All Glass Doors: CR Laurence, Dorma, PRL Systems.
 - 11. Inset Exit Devices for Aluminum Framed Glass Doors: Adams Rite, Dor-O-Matic by Falcon.
 - 12. Electric Strikes: Deltrex USA, Folger Adam, Hanchett Entry Systems (HES), Rutherford Controls Intl. (RCI), Von Duprin.
 - 13. Electromagnetic Lock Assemblies: Deltrex, Schlage, Securitron.
 - 14. Electrical Power Transfers: Architectural Builders Hardware, Securitron, Von Duprin.
 - 15. Door Position Switches: G.E. Security, Security Door Controls.
 - 16. Power Supplies for Electrified Hardware: Securitron, Security Door Controls, Von Duprin.

17. Flush Bolts and Door Coordinators: Architectural Builders Hardware, Ives, Rockwood, Trimco.
18. Surface Door Closers: LCN 4040XP Series, Norton 9500 Series, Sargent 281 Series.
19. Surface Cam and Roller Door Closers: Dorma TS93 Series, Sargent 421 Series.
20. Overhead Concealed Door Closers: Dorma, LCN, Rixson.
21. Floor Closers: Dorma, Jackson, Rixson.
22. Overhead Holders and Stops: Architectural Builders Hardware, Glynn-Johnson, Rixson.
23. Overhead Surface and Concealed Automatic / Low Energy Door Operators: Besam, Dorma, Horton, Motion Access, Stanley.
24. Automatic Door Actuators: BEA, Besam, Dorma, Horton, Motion Access, Stanley.
25. Electromagnetic Holder / Releases: Architectural Builders Hardware, LCN, Rixson, Security Door Controls.
26. Architectural Door Trim: Architectural Builders Hardware, Ives, Rockwood, Trimco.
27. Auxiliary Hardware: Ives, Rockwood, Trimco.
28. Door Bottoms, Metal Thresholds, Weatherstripping and Gaskets: National Guard Products, Pemko, Zero.
29. Pocket, Folding and Sliding Door Hardware: Cavity Sliders, KN Crowder, Pemko.
30. Key Storage System: Lund, MMF Industries, Telkee.

2.02 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- A. Requirements for grade, materials, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated herein. Furnish items in types, sizes or weight, in accordance with manufacturer's standards, appropriate for the conditions of installation and service, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Products named or identified by make or model number, or other designation and described herein are base products. Base products establish the standards of type, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, warranty, cost, and other characteristics required by the Project.

2.03 FASTENERS

- A. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware items on exterior doors which are exposed when door is closed.
- B. Combination machine screws and expansion shields shall be used for attaching hardware to concrete or masonry.
- C. Fasteners exposed to the weather in the finished work shall be of brass, bronze, or stainless steel.

2.04 BUTT HINGES

- A. Butt hinges shall meet the requirements of ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
- B. Hinge dimensions shall meet the requirements of ANSI/BHMA A156.7.
- C. Base Metal shall be steel plated for fire-rated doors; bronze or stainless steel for exterior out swinging doors; bronze or plated steel elsewhere as scheduled.
- D. Provide hinges with antifriction bearings for doors with closers.

- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide hinges in heights and weights as follows:
 - 1. Doors to 36 inches wide: 4-1/2 inches Standard Weight.
 - 2. Doors over 36 inches to 48 inches wide: 5 inches Heavy Weight.
 - 3. Doors over 48 inches wide: 6 inches Heavy Weight.
 - 4. Doors over 1-3/4 inch thick shall be per hinge manufacturers published listings or recommendations.
- F. Provide in minimum width sufficient to clear trim when door swings 180 degrees, whether or not shown on Drawings to swing 180 degrees.
- G. Number of hinges per leaf shall be as follows:
 - 1. Doors to 60 inches in height: 2 hinges.
 - 2. Doors over 60 to 90 inches in height: 3 hinges.
 - 3. Doors over 90 to 120 inches in height: 4 hinges.
 - 4. For doors over 120 inches in height: 4 hinges plus 1 hinge for every 30 inches, or fraction thereof, door height greater than 120 inches.
- H. Screws: Flat head wood screws not less than 1-1/2 inches long for hinges for wood doors; flat head machine screws elsewhere.
- I. Hinges for reverse bevel doors with locks shall have pins that are made non-removable when the door is in the closed position by means of a set screw in the hinge pin barrel.
- J. Electrified hinges:
 - 1. Coordinate number and size of wires for electrified hardware served.
 - 2. Provide junction box/ mortar shield for each electrified hinge.

2.05 CONTINUOUS GEARED HINGES

- A. Continuous hinges shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.26 requirements.
- B. Type: Heavy duty assembly of 3 interlocking aluminum extrusions. Door leaf and jamb leaf shall be continuously geared together the full hinge length; secured together with full length cover channel permitting 180 degree operation. Vertical door loads carried on integrated thrust bearings spaced no more than 3 inches apart.
- C. Hinges shall have non-removable cap at hinge top to prevent foreign material from becoming lodged in hinge gear mechanism.
- D. Unless otherwise noted, provide factory finished to match door and frame finish.
- E. Hole pattern for fasteners shall be symmetrical and located to template dimensions.

2.06 CYLINDERS, KEYING AND KEY STORAGE

- A. Lock cylinders shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.5 requirements.
- B. Keying system shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.28 requirements.
- C. All cylinders shall be interchangeable core type.
- D. Cylinders at exit devices shall be interchangeable core type. Provide mortise or rim type cylinders as required by device for all exit devices having key locking function.

- E. Cylinders shall be High-Security type, listed and labeled as complying with drill and pick-resistant testing requirements of UL 437.
- F. Keying shall be provided per the Owner's requirements.
- G. Cylinders shall be keyed according to approved Keying Schedule.
- H. Provide a temporary keying system for interim use during construction.
- I. Provide change keys in individual envelopes for each cylinder delivered. Envelopes shall be marked with respective door identification numbers.
- J. Key set symbol, and inscription "Do Not Duplicate" shall be stamped on all keys.
- K. Key set symbol shall be concealed stamped on all cylinders/ removable/ Interchangeable cores.
- L. Keys shall be supplied as follows:
 - 1. Locks: 3 change keys each lock.
 - 2. Master keyed sets: 2 keys each set.
 - 3. Grand master keys: 5 total.
 - 4. Great Grand master keys: 5 total.
 - 5. Interchangeable Core control keys: 2 total.
 - 6. Construction keys: 10 total.
 - 7. Blank keys: 100 total.
- M. Provide Key Storage / Control System conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.5, including key-holding hooks, labels, two sets of key tags with self-locking key holders, key-gathering envelopes, and temporary and permanent markers. Contain system in metal cabinet with baked-enamel finish and key locking door.
 - 1. Key tags and holders shall be inscribed with key-change number and key-control to conform with approved hardware schedule for identification.
 - 2. Key Storage System shall be large enough to accommodate 150 percent of the facility.
- N. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide emergency entrance key vault(s); Knox Company 3200 Series, or equal.
 - 1. Finish Color - Black, Dark Bronze or Aluminum as selected by Architect.
 - 2. Where indicated provide security key override switches for electrically activated openings.
 - 3. Coordinate and provide keying and type per fire/ police department, and other jurisdictional agency requirements.

2.07 LOCKSETS AND LATCHSETS

- A. Mortise Locks and Latches shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Grade 1 requirements.
- B. Auxiliary Locks shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.5 requirements.
- C. Electrified Locks shall also meet ANSI/BHMA A156.25 requirements.
- D. Operating trim shall be lever type: Refer to hardware sets.

- E. Lock functions which include thumb turn trim shall be provided with thumb turns compliant with accessibility code requirements.
- F. Lock Throw: Comply with requirements for length of latch bolts to comply with labeled fire door requirements.
- G. Lock backset shall be 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- H. ADA Thumb-turns shall be used on all locksets requiring thumb-turns, similar to Accurate Lock and Hardware ADA Turn, Corbin Russwin Ergonomic or Schlage L583-363 EZ-Turn.
- I. Electromechanical locksets utilized at fire rated openings shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and shall maintain door in positive latched position when power is off.
- J. Narrow backset locksets to be used when standard width/ backset devices do not fit door stile.

2.08 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Exit devices and exit device accessories shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 requirements.
- B. Electromechanical exit devices shall also meet ANSI/BHMA A156.25 requirements.
- C. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- D. Fire Exit Devices: Complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252.
- E. Outside Trim: Design, material and finish to match locksets, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Adjustable strikes shall be provided for rim type and vertical rod devices.
- G. Fire Exit Removable Mullions: Where indicated, provide removable mullions for use with fire exit devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252. Mullions shall be used only with exit devices for which they have been tested.
- H. Electromechanical exit devices utilized at fire rated openings shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and shall maintain door(s) in positive latched position when power is off.
- I. Narrow backset devices shall be provided to match specified device when standard width chassis/ devices do not fit door stile.
- J. Provide flush end caps at exit devices.
- K. Provided 31- or similar where door thickness is greater than 1.75 inches.

- L. Provide flush end cap (43-, PA-) at all exit devices.

2.09 ELECTRIC STRIKES

- A. Electric strikes shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.31 Grade 1 requirements, and be listed and labeled under UL 1034 Burglary Resistant Electric Locking Equipment.
- B. Electric strikes for fire rated openings shall be listed and labeled for such use by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Fail Secure (fail locked) strikes shall be used at all fire rated openings.

2.10 ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCK ASSEMBLIES

- A. Electromagnetic lock assemblies shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.23 Grade 1 requirements.
- B. Locks shall be field-selectable for 12 or 24 VDC operation, and provide 1,500 lbf minimum holding force for direct pull applications and 2,000 lbf holding force for shear type applications.
- C. Wiring connections shall be via on-board screw terminal connections. Lock shall have built-in circuit/ surge and voltage kickback suppression protection.
- D. Where indicated, locks shall be equipped with concealed sensors to monitor magnetic bond status and door position status.
- E. Locks used on fire rated doors shall be listed and labeled for such use by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.11 FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Automatic flush bolts shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.3
- B. Manual flush bolts shall meet BHMA A156.16 requirements.
 - 1. Bottom bolt shall have 12 inch long operating rod. Top bolt operating rod shall be determined by door height, assuring the operator is located less than 72 inches above the floor.
 - 2. Manual Flush Bolts are not to be utilized except where a pair of non-rated doors serving a room not normally occupied is needed for the movement of equipment.
- C. Provide dust proof strikes for bottom bolts. Dust proof strikes shall meet BHMA A156.16.

2.12 DOOR COORDINATORS

- A. Door coordinators shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.3 requirements.
- B. Door coordinators shall be flat bar type; stop mounted with all necessary filler bars and mounting brackets to accommodate required hardware.

- C. Provide carry bar at each pair of doors equipped with an overlapping astragal, except when automatic or self-latching bolts are used.

2.13 SURFACE DOOR CLOSERS

- A. Door closing devices shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 requirements.
- B. Surface closers shall be fully adjustable with sweep speed, latch speed and back check position valves.
- C. Provide closers size adjusted in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.4; sized as required to insure closing and latching of doors.
- D. Arm selection shall follow the requirements of the manufacturer's recommendations with brackets, drop plates and miscellaneous accessories provided as necessary.
- E. Provide closers with arms designed to permit openings of doors as far as job conditions will permit; unless otherwise indicated closers with arms restricting opening of door will not be acceptable.

2.14 OVERHEAD HOLDERS AND STOPS

- A. Overhead holders and stops shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.8 requirements.
- B. Overhead door holders and stops shall be adjustable from 90 to 110 degrees dead stop or hold open position, as applicable.
- C. Overhead door stops shall have shock absorbers providing 5 to 7 degrees compression before dead stop.
- D. Overhead stops shall not be provided with hold open function when used at fire rated doors.

2.15 LOW ENERGY DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Surface Applied Operator: The operator header shall be mounted to the surface of the door frame or wall. Connecting hardware shall be a double arm arrangement that can either push the door or pull the door open to suit the job condition. Provide parallel arm when operator mounting is on the pull side, and adjacent wall is within 4 inches of the door frame. Provide fire labeled unit for use at rated doors.
- B. Overhead Concealed Operator: The operator header shall be mounted directly over the door and serve as the door frame header. The operator output shaft shall connect to an arm that transmits power to the door via a slide block which moves in track that is recess mounted in the top of the door.
- C. In-Floor Operator Converter: Manufacturer's specialized unit to adapt specified automatic swing door operator to in-floor use. The converter shall be mounted beneath the door leaf and jamb area utilizing a standard pivot setback. Heavy-duty pivot shall incorporate 1200 pound rated, sealed thrust bearings in 1 inch steel bearing plate.
- D. Low Energy Door Operators shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.19 requirements.
 - 1. Provide safety sensors and features to meet A156.19 requirements and all applicable codes.

2. Door shall not open to back check faster than 3 seconds, and shall require no more than 15 lbf applied 1 inch from latch edge to stop door movement.
 3. Door shall remain in fully open position for no less than 5 seconds.
 4. Door shall close from 90 degrees to 10 degrees no faster than 3 seconds, and 10 degrees to fully close no faster than 1-1/2 seconds.
 5. Power operation shall be activated by push plate switch, or other actuators as indicated.
- E. Provide UL labeled operators at fire-rated openings. Provide power-disconnect interface to Fire Alarm; doors to be self closing and latching, in full compliance with Code requirements for "Fire Assembly, Self Closing" doors.
- F. Provide UL labeled operators at smoke barrier openings. Provide hold-open circuitry and power-disconnect interface to Fire Alarm; doors to be automatic closing and latching, in full compliance with Code requirements for "Fire Assembly, Automatic Closing" doors.
- G. Provide outputs and relays on board the operator to allow for coordination of exit device latch retraction, electric strikes, magnetic locks, card readers, safety and motion sensors and specified auxiliary contacts.
- H. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard, fabricated from aluminum with nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

2.16 AUTOMATIC DOOR ACTUATORS

- A. Actuators shall be BEA Touchless actuators. Provide as a standard, one at each side of automated entrance. Touchless Actuators As follows;
1. 10MS21HS1 – Double Gang Box (-20F to 120F).

2.17 ARCHITECTURAL DOOR TRIM

- A. Architectural door trim shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.6 requirements.
- B. Door Protection Plates: Kick, mop, and armor plates shall be 0.050 inch thick brass, bronze, or stainless steel depending on finish indicated. Plates shall have beveled edges, and shall be provided with countersunk mounting holes and No. 6 oval head screw fasteners. Width of kick and armor plates shall be 2 inches less than door width for single doors and 1 inch less for pairs of doors. Width of mop plates shall be 1 inch less than door width. Unless otherwise indicated, height shall be 10 inches for kick and mop plates, and 34 inches for armor plates.
1. At fire rated doors, provide UL labeled protection plates in sizes, types, fasteners and materials only in accordance with door manufacturer's listings for respective ratings.
- C. Door Edging and Astragals: Fabricated from 18 gauge cold-rolled steel or 304 stainless steel as indicated; factory prepared for all mortise hardware; countersunk screw mounting.
1. At fire rated doors, provide UL labeled edge protection in sizes, types, fasteners and materials only in accordance with door manufacturer's listings for respective ratings.
- D. Push and pull plates shall be 0.050 inch thick brass, bronze, or stainless steel depending on finish indicated. Plates shall have beveled edges, and shall be furnished with

countersunk mounting holes and No. 6 oval head screw fasteners. Pull plates shall also be furnished with flat-head through bolts for pull grip.

- E. Push and pull bars and grip handles shall be brass, bronze, or stainless steel depending on BHMA finish indicated.

2.18 AUXILIARY HARDWARE

- A. Auxiliary hardware shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.16 requirements.
- B. Door Stops: Stops shall be of heavy duty construction, provided in finish indicated. Wall bumpers shall have no visible fasteners. Floor stops shall be of height required by floor conditions. Unless otherwise indicated, provide stops at all doors as follows:
 - 1. At exterior, out swinging doors provide heavy duty floor stop Trimco 1214H, or equal, unless stop function is indicated in door closer. At all other doors provide floor stop Ives FS436/ FS438 x Riser FS435/ FS437, wall bumper Ives WS406/ 407CVX/ CCV, or equal. Where it is not possible to properly place a floor or wall type stop, provide heavy duty concealed overhead type stop ABH 1000A Series or equal, or when door closer is indicated on the push side of the door, provide heavy-duty dead stop function in closer.
- C. Silencers: Gray rubber, non-marring configured for metal or wood frames as scheduled. Provide 3 per single door and 2 per pair of doors. Silencers shall be tamper resistant once installed in door frame.

2.19 ELECTRICAL POWER TRANSFERS

- A. Electrical power transfers shall be capable of transferring sufficient electrical current to properly operate electrified hardware in door.
- B. Electrical power transfers used on fire rated doors shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.20 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

- A. Door position switches used on fire rated doors shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.21 POWER SUPPLIES FOR ELECTRIFIED HARDWARE

- A. Power supplies shall be UL listed for applicable use; shall be housed in an approved enclosure; and provide both Class 1 and Class 2 outputs.
- B. Output shall be filtered and regulated. Relay, timer, and logic modules shall be provided as required for interface to related security components; and shall be assembled, connected, and fully contained within the power supply enclosure. A fire alarm emergency release input terminal shall be provided for connection to fire / life safety system at fire-rated openings.
- C. Power supplies shall provide sufficient power capacity for the worst-case condition that could occur in the operating environment without any loss or degradation of operation.

2.22 ELECTRIFIED ACCESSORIES

- A. Electric Door Wire Harnesses: Provide electric/data transfer wiring harnesses with standardized plug connectors to accommodate up to twelve (12) wires. Connectors plug directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Provide sufficient number and type of concealed wires to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Provide a connector for through-door electronic locking devices and from hinge to junction box above the opening. Wire nut connections are not acceptable. Determine the length required for each electrified hardware component for the door type, size and construction, minimum of two per electrified opening.
 - 1. Provide one each of the following tools as part of the base bid contract:
 - a. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) - Electrical Connecting Kit: QC-R001.
 - b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) - Connector Hand Tool: QC-R003.
 - 2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Hager Companies (HA) - Quick Connect.
 - b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) – QC-C Series.
 - c. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) – PoE Series.
- B. Request-to-Exit Motion Sensor: Request-to-Exit Sensors motion detectors specifically designed for detecting exiting through a door from the secure area to a non-secure area. Include built-in timers (up to 60 second adjustable timing), door monitor with sounder alert, internal vertical pointability coverage, 12VDC or 24VDC power and selectable relay trigger with fail safe/fail secure modes.

2.23 DOOR BOTTOMS

- A. Door bottoms shall be of aluminum or extruded bronze of the type and finish indicated and shall provide proper clearance and an effective seal with specified thresholds.
- B. Door bottom shall have a vinyl, neoprene, silicone rubber, polyurethane or brush seal as indicated.
- C. The door bottom shall exclude light when the door is in the closed position and shall inhibit the flow of air through the unit.

2.24 METAL THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.21 requirements.
- B. Thresholds shall be heavy-gauge aluminum or bronze of the configuration and finish indicated, and shall provide an effective seal with door bottom.
- C. Where required, thresholds shall be prepared to accommodate floor closers, pivots, and projecting bolts of latching hardware.
- D. Thresholds at floor closers shall have mitered returns and removable access portion for floor closer maintenance.

- E. Provide thresholds at doors where indicated. Refer to Door Schedule and Drawing details for type and configuration required. Additionally, where combustible flooring passes under doors, provide fire door thresholds in accordance with applicable regulatory requirements.

2.25 METAL HOUSED TYPE WEATHERSTRIP

- A. Metal Housed Type Weatherstrip shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.22 requirements.
- B. Metal Housed Type Weatherstrip shall be aluminum or bronze of the type and finish indicated, comprised of metal retainers with vinyl, neoprene, silicone rubber, polyurethane or brush inserts as indicated.

2.26 GASKETING

- A. Gasketing shall meet ANSI/BHMA A156.22 requirements.
- B. Shall be a compression type product for use with wood or steel doors; labeled for use on smoke-control and fire-rated doors where required.

2.27 FINISHES

- A. Provide hardware in finishes as indicated.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, finishes shall conform to those identified in ANSI/BHMA A156.18. Comply with base material and finish requirements indicated by the following:
 1. BHMA 600: Primed for painting, steel base metal.
 2. BHMA 626: Satin chromium plated over nickel, brass or bronze base metal.
 3. BHMA 628: Satin aluminum, clear anodized, aluminum base metal.
 4. BHMA 630: Satin stainless steel, stainless-steel base metal.
 5. BHMA 702: Satin chromium plated, aluminum base metal.
 6. BHMA 719: Mill finish aluminum, uncoated, aluminum base metal.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine rough-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Steel doors shall be factory prepared for hardware per ANSI/BHMA A156.115.
- B. Wood doors shall be factory prepared for hardware per ANSI/BHMA A156.115W.
- C. Installation shall be in accordance with DHI A115.IG.

- D. Hardware for fire door assemblies shall be installed conforming with NFPA 80, and all other applicable building codes and regulations.
- E. Hardware for smoke door assemblies shall be installed conforming with NFPA 105, and all other applicable building codes and regulations.
- F. Install each door hardware item according to manufacturer's printed instructions, utilizing templates and proper fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- G. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- H. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in other Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
- I. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install overhead surface closers for maximum degree of opening obtainable. Place on room side of corridor doors, stair side of stair doors, secondary corridor side of doors between corridors. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be finished, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 09 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
- J. All wall stops shall be installed with reinforced blocking in wallboard construction. Drywall anchors are not an acceptable means of reinforcement/blocking. Provide intermediate steel plates or channel reinforcement backing at wall stops mounted in wallboard construction.
- K. Do not install permanent key cylinders in locks until the time of preliminary acceptance by the Owner. At the time of preliminary acceptance, and in the presence of the Owner's representative, permanent key all lock cylinders. Record and file all keys in the key control system specified, and turn system over to Owner for sole possession and control.
- L. Key control storage system shall be installed where directed by the Owner.
- M. Thresholds: Thresholds shall be secured with a minimum of 3 fasteners per single door width and 6 fasteners per double door width with a maximum spacing of 12 inches (305 mm). Minimum screw size shall be No. 10 length, dependent on job conditions, with a minimum of 3/4 inch (19 mm) thread engagement into the floor or anchoring device used. Screw heads to be countersunk and flush with face of threshold. Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants." Once installed thresholds shall not rock or cause noise when walked on.

3.03 CONTINUOUS HINGES

- A. Prevent conflicts with other installed hardware mounted in the same location.

- B. Coordinate continuous hinge lengths to prevent conflicts with other door hardware such as door sweeps and door bottoms. Door bottoms shall be installed full width of door to create a full seal.

3.04 DOOR CLOSING DEVICES

- A. Surface closers on doors opening to or from halls and corridors shall be mounted on the room side of the door.
- B. Surface closers on doors opening into stairs or stair vestibules shall be mounted on the stair or stair vestibule side of the door.
- C. Surface closers on exterior doors shall be mounted on the interior side of building utilizing regular arm, or parallel arm mounting as required.
- D. Door closing devices with adjustable spring power shall be adjusted for proper door operation, and compliance with all applicable codes and regulations.
- E. Cutting of gasketing or weatherstripping to accommodate closer installation is not acceptable.

3.05 PUSH-PULL PLATES

- A. Pull plate grip handles shall be through bolted through the door. When push plate is indicated on opposite door side, through bolts shall be countersunk with push plate mounted to conceal through bolts.

3.06 KEY CONTROL STORAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Key control storage system shall be installed where directed by the Architect.
- B. Place keys on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.

3.07 GASKETING/ WEATHERSTRIPPING

- A. Prevent conflicts with other installed hardware mounted in the same location.
- B. Coordinate door sweep and door bottom widths to prevent conflicts with other door hardware such as continuous hinges. Door bottoms shall be installed full width of door to create a full seal.

3.08 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds shall be secured with a minimum of 3 fasteners per single door width and 6 fasteners per double door width with a maximum spacing of 12 inches; with a minimum of 1 inch thread engagement into the floor or anchoring device used. Thresholds over 6 inches in width shall be secured with a double row of fasteners.
- B. Exterior thresholds shall be installed in a bed of sealant with combination expansion anchors and stainless steel machine screws, except that bronze or anodized bronze thresholds shall be installed with expansion anchors with brass screws.

3.09 ASTRAGALS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated install overlapping astragals as follows:
 - 1. At out-swing pairs of doors, mount astragal on active leaf.
 - 2. At in-swing pairs of doors, mount astragal on inactive leaf.

3.10 HARDWARE LOCATIONS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated install hardware as follows or as local codes require:
 - 1. Bottom Hinge: 10 inches from door bottom to bottom of hinge.
 - 2. Top Hinge: 5 inches from door top to top of hinge.
 - 3. Center Hinge(s) or Pivot(s): Spaced equidistantly between top and bottom hinges/ pivots.
 - 4. Lockset / Latchset: 38 inches from finished floor to center of lever.
 - 5. Hospital Push-Pull Latchset/ Lockset: 42 inches from finished floor to center of latch.
 - 6. Exit Device: 38 inches from finished floor to device centerline.
 - 7. Deadlock: 42 inches from finished floor to center key cylinder / thumb turn.
 - 8. Push Plate/ Pull Plate: 42 inches from finished floor to center of pull.
 - 9. Wall Bumper: Centered at point on wall where lever, or other operating trim, first makes contact with wall.
 - 10. Floor Stop: Adjacent to wall; not to exceed 4 inches from face of wall; located 3 inches from latch edge of door; in any case never more than 50 percent of door width from latch edge of door.

3.11 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended.
- B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to adjust door closing devices, compensating for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment, and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
- C. Follow-up Adjustment: Approximately 6 months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer shall perform the following:
 - 1. Examine and readjust each item of door hardware as necessary to ensure function of door hardware.
 - 2. Consult with and instruct Owner's personnel on recommended maintenance procedures.
 - 3. Replace door hardware items that have deteriorated or failed due to faulty design, materials, or installation of door hardware units.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant:
 - 1. Engage a qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.
 - 2. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant shall inspect door hardware and prepare written report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted, and

prepare a specific list of any deficiencies, a copy of which shall be provided to Architect.

3. Contractor shall correct all deficiencies noted in above report.
4. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant shall re-inspect door hardware and prepare a report certifying correction of deficiencies and compliance with requirements.

3.13 COMPLETION

- A. When complete all hardware shall be properly secured in place and all exposed surfaces shall be clean and free from scratches, paint, and other defects and damages.
- B. Contractor shall demonstrate that all keys properly operate the locks as identified in the approved Keying Schedule.

3.14 DOOR HARDWARE SETS

- A. The following is a general listing of hardware requirements. Provide hardware items required by established standards and practices to meet state and local codes, whether or not specifically indicated in the following sets.
- B. Silencers and gasketing, where listed in Hardware Sets, may be omitted at openings where door frames are provided with integral seals if integral seals satisfy all applicable Codes and Regulations.
- C. Refer to Door Schedule and/ or Drawings for door opening information, hardware set assignment, and related requirements.
- D. Door protection items -- mop plates, kick plates, armor plates, and edge guards -- are not indicated in Hardware Sets. Refer to Door Schedule and/ or Drawings for required locations.
- E. Door contacts by security where indicated on security drawings.

HW SET NO.

Set: 1.0

Typical Fail Secure Exit Device Pair with power operator

2	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT	PEM
1	CVR Exit Device, ELR, RX	(12/16) 43 53 55 56 8410 106 x 862 Door Pull	SAR
1	CVR Exit Device, Exit Only	(12/16) 43 53 55 8410 x Exit Only	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Automatic Operator	SW200i x two MS41 Actuators	
1	Closer	UNI-7500	NOR
2	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
2	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
2	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
1	Threshold	425HD or By Door Manufacturer	NGP
2	Sweep	By Door Manufacturer	
	Meeting Stile Astragal	By Door Manufacturer	

Notes: Perimeter gasketing by door manufacturer

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 1.5

Typical Fail Secure Exit Device Pair with power operator

2	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT	PEM
1	CVR Exit Device, ELR, RX	(12/16) 43 53 55 56 8410 106 x 862 Door Pull	SAR
1	CVR Exit Device, Exit Only	(12/16) 43 53 55 8410 x Exit Only	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Automatic Operator	SW200i x two MS41 Actuators	
1	Closer	UNI-7500	NOR
2	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
2	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
2	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
2	Sweep	By Door Manufacturer	
	Meeting Stile Astragal	By Door Manufacturer	

Notes: Perimeter gasketing by door manufacturer

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 2.0

Access Controlled Exterior

1	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT	PEM
1	Rim Exit Device, ELR, RX	43 53 55 56 8510 x 862 Door Pull	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Closer	UNI-7500	NOR
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
1	Threshold	425HD or By Door Manufacturer	NGP
1	Sweep	By Door Manufacturer	

Notes: Perimeter gasketing by door manufacturer

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 2.5

Access Controlled Exterior

1	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT		PEM
1	Rim Exit Device, ELR, RX	43 53 55 56 8510 x 862 Door Pull		SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device		
1	Closer	UNI-7500		NOR
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500		MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required		MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT		SEC
1	Threshold	425HD or By Door Manufacturer		NGP
1	Gasketing	290 x 2891S		PEM
1	Sweep	315CN		PEM
1	Overhead Rain Drip	346		PEM
1	Gasketing	S88BL		PEM

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 3.0

Typical Fail Secure Exit Device Pair

2	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT		PEM
1	CVR Exit Device, ELR, RX	43 53 55 56 8410 106 x 862 Door Pull	SAR	
1	CVR Exit Device, Exit Only	43 53 55 8410 x Exit Only		SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device		
2	Closer	UNI-7500		NOR
2	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500		MCK
2	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required		MCK
2	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT		SEC
1	Threshold	425HD or By Door Manufacturer		NGP
2	Sweep	By Door Manufacturer		
	Meeting Stile Astragal	By Door Manufacturer		

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

Notes: Perimeter gasketing by door manufacturer

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 4.0

Electrical Pair

	Hinge (heavy weight)	TA386 x (NRP at reverse bevel doors)	MCK
1	Keyed Removable Mullion	L980S x stabilizer	SAR
1	Rim Exit Device, Storeroom	[12] 43 55 56 8804 ETL	SAR
1	Rim Exit Device, Exit Only	[12] 43 55 8810	SAR
2	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
2	Door Closer/ Brackets	UNI7500	NOR
1	Threshold	425HD or By Door Manufacturer	NGP
1	Gasketing	290 x 2891S	PEM
2	Sweep	315CN	PEM
1	Overhead Rain Drip	346	PEM
1	Gasketing	S88BL	PEM
1	Mullion Gasket	5110BL	PEM

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

2	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
2	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
2	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 5.0

Typical Classroom Function Exit Device Pair with power operator

2	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT	PEM
1	CVR Exit Device, RX, ELR	43 55 56 NB8613 ETL	SAR
1	CVR Exit Device, RX	43 55 NB8610	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
2	Automatic Operator	SW200i x two MS41 Actuators	
2	Armor Plates	K1062 30" CSK	ROC
2	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
2	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
2	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
1	Threshold	Refer to Details	NGP
1	Gasketing	290 x 2891S	PEM
2	Door Bottom	420/434	PEM

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

Set: 6.0

Loading

2	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1	PEM
2	Pull Plate	70C-RKW	ROC
2	Push Plate	70G PUSH	ROC
2	Magnetic Lock	M680EBDX	SEC
2	Automatic Operator	SW200i x two MS41 Actuators	
2	Armor Plates	K1062 30" CSK	ROC
1	Emergency Exit Button	EEB2	SEC

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Use of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Request to exit switch to shunt door contact
- *Upon loss of power door to unlock.
- *Emergency unlock by wall button
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control Reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses
- * Door Position switch, where indicated by security, to monitor status of door.

Set: 7.0

Typical Classroom Function Lock

	Hinge	TA714 x (NRP at reverse bevel doors)	MCK
1	Classroom Lock	8237 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
	Silencers	608	ROC

Set: 8.0

Typical Storeroom Function Lock Pair

	Hinge	TA714 x (NRP at reverse bevel doors)	MCK
1	Dust Proof Strike	570	ROC
2	Flush Bolt	555/ 557	ROC
1	Fail Secure Lock	RX NAC-82271 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
1	Gasketing	S88 x Head & Jambs	PEM
1	Astragal	S771C	PEM
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 9.0

Typical Classroom Function Lock

	Hinge	TA714 x (NRP at reverse bevel doors)	MCK
1	Classroom Lock	8237 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
	Silencers	608-RKW	ROC

Set: 10.0

Typical Storeroom Function Lock

	Hinge	TA714 x (NRP at reverse bevel doors)	MCK
1	Storeroom Lock	8204 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
	Silencers	608-RKW	ROC

Set: 11.0

Typical Passage Latch

	Hinge	TA714	MCK
1	Passage Latch	8215 LNL	SAR
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
	Silencers	608-RKW	ROC

Set: 12.0

Typical Privacy Latch

	Hinge	TA714	MCK
1	Privacy Latch	49 8266 LNL	SAR
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Kick Plate	K1062 x 10" High x CSK x 4BE	ROC
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
1	Gasketing	S88 x Head & Jambs	PEM

Set: 13.0

Typical Office, Access Controlled

Access Controlled Opening

	Hinge (heavy weight)	TA786	MCK
1	Fail Secure Lock	RX NAC-82271 LNL	SAR

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
1	Gasketing	S88 x Head & Jambs	PEM

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 14.0

Typical Push/ Pull

	Hinge (heavy weight)	TA786	MCK
1	Pull Plate	70C-RKW	ROC
1	Push Plate	70G PUSH	ROC
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Kick Plate	K1062 x 10" High x CSK x 4BE	ROC
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
1	Gasketing	S88 x Head & Jambs	PEM

Set: 15.0

Typical Push/ Pull Bar

1	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1	PEM
1	Push/ Pull	BF15747	ROC
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Threshold	425HD or By Door Manufacturer	NGP
1	Gasketing	By Frame/Door Manufacturer	
1	Sweep	By Frame/Door Manufacturer	

Set: 16.0

Typical Push/ Pull Bar

2	Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1	PEM
2	Push/ Pull	BF15747	ROC
2	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Threshold	425HD or By Door Manufacturer	NGP
1	Gasketing	By Frame/Door Manufacturer	
2	Sweep	By Frame/Door Manufacturer	

Set: 17.0

Access Controlled Opening

	Hinge (heavy weight)	TA786	MCK
1	Fail Secure Lock	RX NAC-82271 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Closer	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
1	Gasketing	S88 x Head & Jambs	PEM

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

Set: 17.1

Access Controlled Opening

	Hinge (heavy weight)	TA786	MCK
1	Electric Lock – Both Sides	RX NAC-82273 LNL	SAR
2	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Closer	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
1	Gasketing	S88 x Head & Jambs	PEM

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 18.0

Typical Passage Latch

	Hinge	TA714	MCK
1	Passage Latch	8215 LNL	SAR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
	Silencers	608-RKW	ROC

Set: 19.0

Access Controlled, Exit Device

	Hinge (heavy weight)	TA786 x (NRP at reverse bevel doors)	MCK
1	Exit Device – Storeroom, ELR, RX[12] 43 55 56 8804 ETL		SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Door Closer/ Brackets	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
	Silencers	608-RKW	
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC

Set: 20.0

Closet

	Sliding Closet Hardware	200SD	JOH
2	Flush Pulls		

Set: 21.0

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

CT/X-Ray

1	Continuous Hinge, Transfer	FM300 EL8	MCK
1	Fail Secure Lock	RX NAC-82271 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Door Closer/ Brackets/Holder	7500 H	NOR
1	Armor Plate	K1050 F 30" CSK	ROC
1	Overhead Stop	9000 Lead Lined	ABH
	Silencers	608-RKW	ROC
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK

Operation:

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

Set: 22.0

CT/X-Ray

1	Continuous Hinge	FM300	MCK
1	Classroom Lock	8204 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Overhead Stop	9000 Lead Lined	ABH
	Silencers	608-RKW	ROC

Set: 23.0

Mother's Room, Access Controlled

Access Controlled Opening

	Hinge (heavy weight)	TA786	MCK
1	Fail Secure, indicator, indicator	V21 RX, PHR NAC-82281 LNL	SAR
1	Cylinder / Core	To Suit Device	
1	Closer	7500	NOR
1	Door Stop	404	ROC
1	Harness – Frame	QC-C1500	MCK
1	Harness – Door	QC-CXXX (Size as required	MCK
1	Electric Power Transfer	EL-CEPT	SEC
1	Gasketing	S88 x Head & Jambs	PEM

Operation:

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- *Door normally closed and secured.
- *Upon use of mechanical key or presentation of authorized credentials door to unlock allowing authorized entry.
- *Built in request to exit switch to allow authorized egress.
- *Door position switch to be tied into security system to monitor status of door.
- *Upon loss of power door to remain locked.
- *Always free egress.
- *Access Control reader by security
- *Coordinate Power with Electrical/LV Contractor
- * Provide Door/Frame Harnesses

END OF SECTION

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, storefront framing.
 - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of product indicated, from manufacturer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of security glazing, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- B. Glazing Standards: GANA Glazing Manual and FGMA Sealant Manual

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated

glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- D. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Glass-Clad Polycarbonate: Manufacturer agrees to replace glass-clad polycarbonate that deteriorates within specified warranty period. Deterioration of glass-clad polycarbonate is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning glass-clad polycarbonate contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glazing, blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced glass-clad polycarbonate standard, yellowing, and loss of light transmission. Verify available warranties and warranty periods with manufacturers listed in Part 2 articles. Revise "Warranty Period" Subparagraph below if glazing manufacturers insist on warranty beginning on date of manufacture. See the Evaluations.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the International Building Code and ASTM E 1300.
1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Structural Drawings."
 2. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.

- B. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - 2. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
 - 3. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.
- D. Bullet Proof Glass: Through the design, manufacturing techniques and glass application shall be of the "non-ricochet" type. This design is intended to permit the encapture and retention of an attacking projectile lessening the potential of a random injury or lateral penetration. Components must be manufactured in strict accordance with the specifications, design and details. All vision panels shall be cut to size with all exposed edges polished. Necessary holes shall be pre drilled and tapped where required. Stainless Steel assembly screws and acrylic spacers shall be provided. Clear anodized angles, channels and anchoring screws shall be provided.
 - 1. No field alterations to the construction of the assembly fabricated under the acceptable standards shall be allowed unless approved by the manufacturer and the architect. Standard manufacturing tolerances shall be +/- 1/16".
 - 2. Materials shall meet or exceed UL 752 requirements.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
 - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
 - 3. Reference for Bullet Proof Glass: Underwriters Laboratory UL 752-Standard for Bullet Resisting Equipment & ASTM E119-98- Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials, NIJ Standard 0108.01-(National Institute of Justice) Standard for Ballistic Resistant Protective Materials
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Fire Rating Glazing: Fire rating listed and labeled by UL for fire rating scheduled at opening locations on drawings, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 119, ASTM E2074-00 and ASTM E2010-01, NFPA 257, UL 9 and UL 10B.

- D. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- E. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
- F. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.
- C. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3. Provide In lieu of annealed float and heat strengthened glass types indicated below in panels required to have safety glazing per the Building Code of New York State Section 2406.3 including but not necessarily limited to in doors and up to 24" from vertical edge of doors and within 18" of floors throughout.
- D. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- E. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition C, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3; and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in GANA's "Engineering Standards Manual."
- F. Silicone-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Type I, Condition C, Quality-Q3.

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: TrueLite Co., Clear HS w/ Harm Bronze Opac #3

2.4 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
 - 1. Sealing System: Dual seals.
 - 2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction

2.5 POLYCARBONATE SECURITY GLAZING

- A. Polycarbonate Sheet: ASTM C1349, Appendix X1, Type II, coated, mar-resistant, UV-stabilized polycarbonate with coating on exposed surfaces and Type I, standard, UV-stabilized polycarbonate where no surfaces are exposed.
- B. Laminated Polycarbonate: Polycarbonate sheets laminated with clear urethane interlayer that complies with ASTM C1349, Appendix X2, and has a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation. Provide laminated units that comply with requirements of ASTM C1349 for maximum allowable laminating process blemishes and haze.
- C. Glass-Clad Polycarbonate: ASTM C1349.
- D. Laminated Glass and Polycarbonate: ASTM C1349.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
 - 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 - 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bostik, Inc.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation.
 - c. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
 - d. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
 - e. Sika Corporation.
 - f. Tremco Incorporated.
 - 2. Glazing Sealant for Fire-Resistive Glazing Products: Sealant used in test assembly to obtain fire-protection rating.
 - 3. Low-Modulus Nonacid-Curing Silicone: With additional movement capability of 100 percent movement in extension and 50 percent movement in compression when tested for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719.
 - a. Available Products:

- a) Dow Corning; 790.
- b) GE Silicones; UltraPruf SCS2300.
- c) NUCO Industries, Inc.; HiFlex 331.
- d) Ohio Sealants, Inc.; VP 275.
- e) Pecora Corporation; 864.
- f) Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-641.
- g) Sonneborn, Div of ChemRex, Inc.; Omniseal.
- h) Tremco; Spectrem 1

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
 - 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 - 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 - 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- B. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- C. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- D. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- E. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

3.2 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- F. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

3.3 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
 - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

3.5 FABRICATION OF SECURITY GLAZING

- A. Fabricate security glazing in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

3.6 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Clear annealed float glass (**GL-1**).
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: ¼" unless noted otherwise on drawings.
- B. Clear fully tempered float glass (**GL-2**).
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: AGC Glass Company North America, Inc.; Guardian Industries Corp. ; Pilkington North America Inc.; PPG Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Minimum Thickness: ¼" unless noted otherwise on drawings.
- C. Bullet Resistant Glazing (**BR-1**):
 - 1. U.L. Level (2) bullet resistant glazing
 - 2. Material: Acrylic

3. Thickness: 1-3/8" +/-
4. Clarity: 90%
5. Coated for abrasion resistance
6. Frame: Extruded Aluminum, non-ricochet type
7. Manufacturers:
 - a. Global security Glazing
 - b. Armortex
 - c. Pacific Bulletproof Co.
 - d. US Armor LLC

3.7 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Vision Glass: Low-E-Coated, Insulating Glass Type : **(IG-1)**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Guardian Super Neutral 54 & AGC Energy Select 73
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: Tinted fully tempered float glass.
5. Tint Color: Gray.
6. Interspace Content: Argon.
7. Indoor Lite: Clear fully tempered float glass.
8. Low-E Coating: Guardian SN54 Sputtered on second surface and AGC Energy Select 73 Sputtered on fourth surface.
9. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .20 maximum.
10. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .17 maximum.
11. Visible Light Transmittance: 52 percent minimum.
12. SGHC: .26 maximum.

B. Laminated Security Glass: Low-E-Coated, Insulating Glass Type : **(SG-1)**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Guardian Super Neutral 54 & Armoured One AOTSG516L
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 1/16 inch.
3. Minimum Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 6 m.
4. Outdoor Lite: Tinted fully tempered float glass.
5. Tint Color: Gray.
6. Interspace Content: Argon.
7. Indoor Lite: Clear fully tempere] float glass.
8. Indoor Lite: Armoured One AOTSG516L clear laminated shooter attack glass with two plies of annealed float glass.
 - a. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3 mm .
 - b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch.
 - c. Security Film Thickness: 0.030 inch.
9. Low-E Coating: Guardian SN54 Sputtered on second surface.
10. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .24 maximum.
11. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .21 maximum.
12. Visible Light Transmittance: 54 percent minimum.
13. SGHC: .28 maximum.

C. Light diffusing Low-E-Coated, Insulating Glass Type : **(LD-1)**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: OKALUX Plus light diffusing insulating glass with capillary slab and glass fiber tissue.
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
3. Minimum Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 6 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: Clear fully tempered float glass.
5. Interspace Content: 9/16" (14mm) overall with 5/16" (8 mm) argon filled cavity and 6mm PMMA acrylic UV stable capillary slab encased in fiber tissue. Capillaries are not to exceed 3 mm diameter to assure proper diffusion.
1. Indoor Lite: Clear annealed laminated float glass.
 - a. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3 mm.
 - b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch.
2. Low-E Coating: Guardian SN68 Sputtered on second surface.
3. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .28 maximum.
4. Visible Light Transmittance: 35 percent minimum.
5. SGHC: 31 percent maximum.
6. Safety glazing required.

D. Low-E-Coated, Insulating Spandrel Security Glass Type : **(IG-2)**

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Guardian Super Neutral 54
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
3. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: Tinted fully tempered float glass.
5. Tint Color: Clear.
6. Interspace Content: Argon.
7. Indoor Lite: Clear fully tempered float glass.
8. Low-E Coating: Guardian SN54 Sputtered on second.
9. Ceramic Spandrel Coating: Viracon, Viraspan applied to the 4th surface of the insulated unit.
 - a. Ceramic Coating Color: To be selected by the Architect from the manufacturers full range of standard colors.
10. Security Film: Armoured One 23Mil security film to be applied to the 4th surface of the insulated unit prior to glass installation.
11. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .24 maximum.
12. Visible Light Transmittance: 0 percent minimum.
13. SGHC: .22 maximum.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 088836 – PRIVACY GLASS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes switchable privacy glass, glazing accessories and supplementary items necessary to complete the work required for their installation.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 01 General Conditions
 - 2. Division 26 Electrical: Electrical connection to switchable privacy glass.

2. REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C 1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass.
- B. ASTM C 1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Treated Flat Glass--Kind HS, Kind FT Coated and Uncoated Glass.
- C. ASTM C 1172 - Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass.
- D. CPSC 16CFR-1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials.
- E. GANA Glazing Manual.
- F. GANA Laminated Glazing Reference Manual
- G. GANA Glass Information Bulletins

3. DEFINITIONS

- A. Connection Nipple: Fitting attached to the edge of the glass that wires pass through to provide strain relief for wires.
- B. Lay Flat Wiring Bar: Alternate to Connection Nipple; Used to run wires parallel with the edge of the glass.
- C. Greenfield: A metallic flexible conduit used to shield the wires coming from the glass
- D. Busbar: Copper foil tape which supplies power to switchable liquid crystal film
- E. Frosted State: The default state of switchable privacy glass; no power running to the glass
- F. Transparent State: The powered state of the glass, with its highest level of clarity.
- G. Off-Axis: When the line of sight to the glass is at an angle; not straight on.

4. SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, including performance characteristics and installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's or fabricator's shop drawings, including plans, elevations, sections, and details, indicating glass dimensions, tolerances, types, thicknesses, and coatings.
- D. Samples: Submit 8" x 11" functioning manufacturer's samples of each type, thickness, and coating.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard warranty for switchable privacy glass units.

5. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Minimum of 5 years' experience manufacturing switchable glass.

B. Installer's Qualifications:

1. Minimum of 5 years' experience in installing and handling laminated glass meeting ASTM C 1172 and CPSC 16CFR-1201.

6. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery:

1. Deliver glass to site in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Deliver glass in manufacturers or fabricator's original containers and packaging with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.

B. Storage:

1. Store glass in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Store glass in clean, dry area indoors.
3. Protect from exposure to direct sunlight and freezing temperatures.
4. Apply temporary coverings loosely to allow adequate ventilation.
5. Protect from contact with corrosive chemicals.
6. Avoid placement of glass edge on concrete, metal, and other hard objects.
7. Rest glass on clean, cushioned pads at 1/4-points.

C. Handling:

1. Handle glass in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Protect glass from damage during handling and installation.
3. Do not slide lites of glass against one another.
4. Do not use sharp objects near unprotected glass.

7. WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty on Switchable Privacy Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which Switchable Privacy Glass manufacturer agrees to replace Switchable Privacy Glass units that fail within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period on the function of the Switchable Privacy Glass Unit: 5 years from date of receipt by purchaser

- a. Defects in material or workmanship causing material obstruction of vision as a result of electrical failure of the switchable film.
- b. Defects in material or workmanship causing the switchable film to no longer switch from frosted to translucent.

2. Warranty Period on the lamination of Switchable Privacy Glass: 5 years from date of shipment

- a. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard of ASTM.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1. MANUFACTURER

A. Basis of design is LC Privacy Glass by Innovative Glass Corp., 120 Commercial Street, Plainview, New York 11803. Phone 516-777-1100. Fax 516.777.1106. Web Site www.innovativeglasscorp.com.

2. FABRICATORS

- A. Acceptable Fabricators: All must be certified by glass manufacturer.

2.3 LAMINATED SWITCHABLE PRIVACY GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Switchable Privacy film: Approx. 0.40 mm thick film
- B. Interlayers: .060 total interlayer thickness typical
- C. Glass Components:
1. Annealed clear OR low iron glass: Clear, transparent, flat, annealed, float glass, conforming to ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
 2. Plastic glazing: Transparent, flat, impact resistant polycarbonate plastic sheet with abrasion resistant coating.
- D. Standard Switchable Glass thickness make-ups:
1. Window **BL-2** into Special Autopsy from Corridor:
9/16" (14mm) = ¼" Glass / LC Interlayer / ¼" Glass
 2. Window **BL-5** into Autopsy from viewing Room:
1" Security Glass (14mm) = ¾" Security Glass / LC Interlayer / ¼" Glass.
- E. Edge treatment of glass to be: edge seal.
- F. Bus bars used to terminate switchable film will be made of copper foil conductive tape and will be positioned on the top of the panel unless otherwise specified.

2.4 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Operating Voltage: 110 – 120 VAC / 50 – 60 Hz
- B. Operating Current: .012 Amps (12mA per SqFt.)
- C. Power consumption: Less than 1 watt per sq ft of privacy glass.
- D. One LCPS-1 Surge Protection Power Module required per independently controlled zone
- E. Bus bars will be visible for 5/8" in from the edge of the glass and installer should account for adequate frame coverage to hide them during installation.
- F. Panels shall be fabricated with 2-Conductor 18Ga Wires; 15-20ft long through Connection Nipple or Lay Flat Wiring Bar.
- G. Wires should be captured in 3/8" Trade Size Greenfield Conduit or "other" suitable conduit for job conditions and routed back to approved junction box that is in accordance with local electrical codes.
- H. Power from the building, the LCPS-1 Power Module and Wires from the glass shall be spliced together at Junction Box.
- I. All wiring to be completed in accordance with manufacturer's wiring instructions.
- J. Electrical controllers used must be capable of controlling 120VAC On/Off
- K. Glass may be integrated into building automation system for automated and remote control. System must have prior approval of glass manufacturer.
- L. Visible haze is expected when Switchable Privacy Glass is in the transparent state. Noticeable haze will be 7-10% depending on substrates used in the glass make-up. Haze will be more noticeable when glass is viewed off-axis (at an angle) and less noticeable when viewed straight on. (Refer to manufacturer's Application Note LC-101)
- M. Operating Temperature Range (installed environment):
Range = 14°F to +122°F
- N. Specular Light Transmittance
1. T (On) – 75%
 2. T (Off) - .01%
- O. Parallel Light Transmittance:
1. T (On) – 70%

- 2. T (Off) – 5%
- P. Total Light Transmittance:
 - 1. T (On) – 75%
 - 2. T (Off) – 51%
- Q. Switchable Glass must be UL Listed
- R. Switching Speed ON/OFF:
 - 1. <15ms/50ms

PART 3 - EXECUTION

1. EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive glass. Notify Architect of conditions that would adversely affect installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

2. PREPARATION

- A. Verify glazing openings are correct size and within tolerance.
- B. Verify glazing channels, recesses, and weeps are clean and free of obstructions.

3. GLAZING

- A. Install glass in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, except where local codes or GANA Glazing Manual indicate more stringent requirements.
- B. Acceptable glazing silicones for field glazing into frames.
 - 1. Only manufacturer's recommended glazing shall be used in any enclosed glazing pocket.

4. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Coated glass, when viewed from minimum of 10 feet, exhibiting slightly different hue or color not apparent in hand samples, will not be cause of rejection of glass units, as determined by Architect.
- B. Verify glass is free of chips, cracks, and other inclusions that could inhibit structural or aesthetic integrity PRIOR TO INSTALLATION.
- C. All glass panels to be electrically tested before and after installation.
- D. Glass shall be demonstrated to Owner after installation.

5. CLEANING

- A. Clean glass promptly after installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Remove labels from glass surface.
- C. Do not use harsh cleaning materials or methods that would damage glass.
 - 1. Refer to the following GANA Glass Information Bulletins:
 - a. GANA 01-0300 - Proper Procedures for Cleaning Architectural Glass Products.
 - b. GANA TD-02-0402 - Heat-Treated Glass Surfaces Are Different.
 - c. Innovative Glass eGlass Cleaning Guide
 - D. Do not use scrapers or other metal tools to clean glass.

6. PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed glass from damage during construction.
- B. Protect installed glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
- C. Remove and replace glass which is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in other ways during construction period, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.
- 2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
- 3. Tile backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
- 2. Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

- 1. Gypsum wallboard.
- 2. Gypsum board, Type X.
- 3. Gypsum ceiling board (**GBC-1**).
- 4. Mold-resistant (**MMR**) gypsum board.
- 5. Noise reducing drywall (**GBC-2**), at Autopsy and Special Autopsy Ceilings.
- 6. Cementitious backer units.
- 7. Interior trim.
- 8. Sound-attenuation blankets.
- 9. Acoustical sealant.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m) in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

- 1. Build mockups for the following:

- a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
- b. Each texture finish indicated.

2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.

- C. Gypsum Ceiling Board (GBC-1): ASTM C1396/C1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board (**MMR**): ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- E. Noise Reducing Drywall (GBC-2): ASTM C1396/C1766.
 - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 3. STC Rating: 50 min.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
 - 2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. Bullnose bead.
 - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - f. Expansion (control) joint.
 - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
 - h. Base-of-Wall Galvanized Moisture Barrier Trim: Galvanized-steel sheet, 2 inches (50 mm) high.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.

3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose] compound.
 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping [drying-type compound.
 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use [setting-type, sandable topping compound coat to produce Level 5 finish.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
- D. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- H. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:

1. Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. Flexible Type: Apply in double layer at curved assemblies.
4. Ceiling Type: As indicated on Drawings.
5. Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.

B. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches (400 mm) minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.

D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

E. Curved Surfaces:

1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch- (300-mm-) long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 3. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 4. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, **rounded or beveled edges**, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 2. Level 2: Utility and service spaces and as indicated on Drawings.
 3. Level 4: At all panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- 4. Level 5: At Public Vestibule 100, Lobby 101, and Waiting 102.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 09 30 13 - CERAMIC/PORCELAIN TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This section specifies interior ceramic and porcelain tile, and marble thresholds, metal edge trim strips, waterproofing membranes, and tile backer board.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 079200, JOINT SEALANTS: Sealing of Joints.
- B. Section 096519, RESILIENT TILE FLOORING: Metal and Resilient Edge Strips at Joints with New Resilient Flooring.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. Samples:
 - 1. Porcelain tile, each type, color, patterns and size.
 - 2. Ceramic wall (or wainscot) tile, each color, size and pattern.
 - 3. Metal Edge Trim shapes, bullnose cap and cove including bullnose cap and base pieces at internal and external corners of vertical surfaces, each type, color, and size.
- C. Product Data:
 - 1. Ceramic and porcelain tile, marked to show each type, size, and shape required.
 - 2. Cementitious backer unit.
 - 3. Dry-set portland cement mortar and grout.
 - 4. Metal Edge Trim strips
 - 5. Elastomeric membrane and bond coat.
 - 6. Reinforcing tape.
 - 7. Leveling compound.
 - 8. Latex-portland cement mortar and grout.
 - 9. Commercial portland cement grout.
 - 10. Fasteners.
- D. Certification:
 - 1. Master grade certificate, ANSI A137.1.

2. Manufacturer's certificates indicating that the following materials comply with specification requirements:

- a. Commercial portland cement grout.
- b. Cementitious backer unit.
- c. Dry-set portland cement mortar and grout.
- d. Elastomeric membrane and bond coat.
- e. Reinforcing tape.
- f. Latex-portland cement mortar and grout.
- g. Factory back mounted tile documentation for suitability for application in wet area.

E. Installer Qualifications:

- 1. Submit letter stating installer's experience.

1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver materials in containers with labels legible and intact and grade-seals unbroken.
- B. Store material to prevent damage or contamination.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installers to be from a company specializing in performing installation of products specified and have a minimum of three (3) years' experience.
- B. Each type and color of tile to be provided from a single source.
- C. Each type and color of mortar, adhesive, and grout to be provided from the same source.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Construction Warranty: Comply with FAR clause 52.246-21, "Warranty of Construction".

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - A10.20-06(R2016)Safe Operating Practices for Tile, Terrazzo and Marble Work
 - A108/A118/A136.1:2019Installation of Ceramic Tile
 - A108.01-18Subsurfaces and Preparations by Other Trades
 - A108.02-19Materials, Environmental, and Workmanship

- A108.1A-17.....Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar
- A108.1B-17.....Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar
- A108.1C-17.....Contractors Option; Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set method with Portland Cement Mortar or Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar
- A108.4-09.....Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive
- A108.5-10.....Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar
- A108.6-10.....Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy
- A108.8-10.....Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout
- A108.9-10.....Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout
- A108.10-17.....Grout in Tilework
- A108.11-18.....Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units
- A108.13-16.....Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone
- A108.17-16.....Crack Isolation Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone
- A118.1-19.....Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar
- A118.3-13.....Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive
- A118.4-19.....Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar
- A118.5-16.....Chemical Resistant Furan Mortars and Grouts
- A118.6-19.....Standard Cement Grouts for Tile Installation
- A118.7-1.....High Performance Cement Grouts for Tile Installation
- A118.8-16.....Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/ Grout
- A118.9-19.....Cementitious Backer Units
- A118.10-14.....Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation

- A118.11-17.....EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Modified Dry-set Mortar
- A118.12-14.....Crack Isolation Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and
Dimension Stone Installation
- A118.13-14.....Bonded Sound Reduction Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile
Installation
- A118.15-19.....Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar
- A136.1-13.....Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile
- A137.1-17.....American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile
- C. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - A666-15.....Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet,
Strip, Plate and Flat Bar
 - C109/C109M-20b.....Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic
Cement Mortars (Using 2 inch. or [50-mm] Cube Specimens)
 - C348-20.....Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-
Cement Mortars
 - C627-18.....Evaluating Ceramic Floor Tile Installation Systems Using the
Robinson-Type Floor Tester
 - C1002-18.....Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Panel
Products
 - C1027-19.....Test Method for Determining Visible Abrasion Resistance of
Glazed Ceramic Tile
 - C1127/C1127M-15.....Standard Guide for Use of High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-
Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with an Integral
Wearing Surface
 - C1178/C1178M-18.....Standard Specification for Coated Glass Mat Water-Resistant
Gypsum Backing Panel
 - C1325-19.....Non-Asbestos Fiber-Mat Reinforced Cementitious Backer Units
 - D4397-16.....Standard Specification for Polyethylene Sheeting for
Construction, Industrial and Agricultural Applications
- D. Code of Federal Regulation (CFR):
 - 40 CFR 59Determination of Volatile Matter Content, Water Content,
Density Volume Solids, and Weight Solids of Surface Coating

E. Tile Council of North America, Inc. (TCNA):

Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation (2020) G. TCNA DCOF AcuTest-2012, Dynamic
Coefficient of Friction Test

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1. GENERAL

- a. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide Standard-grade tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
- b. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

2. TILE PRODUCTS

- a. Tile Type,(T-1): Porcelain Tile
 - 1) Basis-of-Design product: Crossville, Portugal. (Mary Giordano, 508-562-7320)
 - 2) Composition: Porcelain
 - 3) Module Size: 24" x 24"
 - 4) Thickness: 10.5mm
 - 5) Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: 0.60-0.70.
 - 6) Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 7) Installation Method: As shown on finish drawings

- b. Tile Type,(T-2): Porcelain Tile
 - 1) Basis-of-Design product: Crossville, Portugal. (Mary Giordano, 508-562-7320)
 - 2) Composition: Porcelain
 - 3) Module Size: 6" x 24"
 - 4) Thickness: 10.5mm
 - 5) Color: Refer to drawings
 - 6) Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: 0.60-0.70.
 - 7) Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 8) Installation Method: As shown on finish drawings

c. Tile Type,(T-3): Porcelain Tile

- 1) Basis-of-Design product: Crossville, Portugal. (Mary Giordano, 508-562-7320)
- 2) Composition: Porcelain
- 3) Module Size: 12" x 24"
- 4) Thickness: 10.5mm
- 5) Color: Refer to Drawings
- 6) Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: > 0.42
- 7) Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 8) Installation Method: As shown on finish drawings

d. Tile Type, (T-4) Porcelain Tile

- 1) Basis-of-Design product: American Olean, Neospeck. (Mary Giordano, 508-562-7320)
- 2) Composition: Porcelain
- 3) Module Size: 12" x 24"
- 4) Thickness: 5/16"
- 5) Color: Refer to Drawings.
- 6) Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 7) Installation Method: As shown on finish drawings.

e. Tile Type, Glass Tile (T-5, T-6):

- 1) Basis-of-Design product: American Olean, Color Story. (Mary Giordano, 508-562-7320)
- 2) Composition: Ceramic
- 3) Module Size: 8" x 24"
- 4) Tile Color and Pattern: Refer to Drawings.
- 5) Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 6) Installation Method: As shown on finish drawings

3. TILE BACKING PANELS

a. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C 1325, Type A.

- 1) Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a) United States Gypsum Company; DUROCK Cement Board.
 - b) C-Cure; C-Cure Board 990.
 - c) Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
 - d) FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board.
- 2) Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
4. SETTING MATERIALS
- a. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
 - 1) Basis-of-Design product: Laticrete Multi-Max Lite
5. GROUT MATERIALS
- a. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
 - 1) Basis-of-Design product: Laticrete Permacolor Grout.
6. MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- a. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
 - b. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.
 - 1) Grout sealers shall comply with requirements of FloorScore certification.

PART 3 -

3.1 TILE

- A. Comply with ANSI A137.1, Standard Grade, except as modified:
 - 1. Inspection procedures listed under the Appendix of ANSI A137.1.
 - 2. Back mounted tiles in toilets showers. Provide certification that the factory mounted tile has been used successfully in service at three (3) projects and is suitable for wet locations.
 - 3. Factory Blending: For tile with color variations, within the ranges selected during sample submittals blend tile in the factory and package so tile units taken from one (1) package show the same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved samples.
 - 4. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating:
 - a. Protect exposed face surfaces (top surface) of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by pre-coating with a continuous film of hot applied petroleum paraffin wax.

- b. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.
 - c. Pre-wax tiles set or grouted with furan or epoxy or latex modified mortars.
 - B. Stone and Glass Mosaic Tile: Nominal 6 mm (1/4 inch) thick with cushion edges.
- C. Glazed Wall Tile: Cushion edges, glazed Porcelain Paver Tile: Nominal 8 mm (5/16 inch) thick, with cushion edges. Porcelain tile produced by the dust pressed method are to be made of approximately 50 percent feldspar; the remaining 50 percent is to be made up of various high-quality light firing ball clays yielding a tile with a water absorption rate of 0.5 percent or less and a breaking strength of between 176 to 181 kg (390 to 400 pounds).
- D. Metal Edge Trim Strips Shapes:
 - 1. Use trim shape sizes conforming to applicable requirements of adjoining floor and wall tile unless detailed on construction documents or specified otherwise.
 - a. Provide minimal profile L-shape at field terminations of finishes
 - 2. Internal and External Corners:
 - a. External corners including edges: Use bullnose shapes.
 - b. Internal corners: Use cove shapes.
 - c. Wall top edge internal corners: Use special shapes providing integral cove vertical joint with bullnose top edge.
 - d. Wall top edge external corners: Use special shapes providing bullnose vertical and horizontal joint edge.
 - e. For Wall tile installed in dry-set portland cement mortar, latex-portland cement mortar, and organic adhesive (thin set methods), use cove and surface bullnose shapes as applicable.
 - f. Provide cove and bullnose shapes where indicated in construction documents, and required to complete tile work.
 - g. Provide adjustable or specialty trim at locations other than standard 90 degree corners.

3.2 BACKER UNITS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units:
 - 1. Use in showers or wet areas.
 - 2. Conform to ASTM C1325; Type A.
 - 3. Use in maximum lengths available to minimize end to end butt joints.

3.3 JOINT MATERIALS FOR CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

- A. Reinforcing Tape: Vinyl coated woven glass fiber mesh tape, open weave, 50 mm (2 inches) wide. Tape with pressure sensitive adhesive backing will not be permitted.
- B. Tape Embedding Material: Latex-portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A108.01.
- C. Joint material, including reinforcing tape, and tape embedding material, are to be as specifically recommended by the backer unit manufacturer.

3.4 FASTENERS

- A. Screws for Cementitious Backer Units.
 - 1. Standard screws for gypsum board are not acceptable.
 - 2. Minimum 11 mm (7/16 inch) diameter head, corrosion resistant coated, with washers.
 - 3. ASTM C954 for steel 1 mm (0.033 inch) thick.
 - 4. ASTM C1002 for steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick.
- B. Washers: Galvanized steel, 13 mm (1/2 inch) minimum diameter.

3.5 SETTING MATERIALS OR BOND COATS

- A. Conform to TCNA Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation.
- B. Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.02.
- C. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4.
 - 1. For wall applications, provide non-sagging, latex-portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4.
 - 2. Prepackaged Dry-Mortar Mix: Factory-prepared mixture of portland cement; dry, redispersible, ethylene vinyl acetate additive; and other ingredients to which only water needs to be added at Project site.
- D. Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.1. For wall applications, provide non-sagging, latex-portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.1.

3.6 GROUTING MATERIALS

- A. Coloring Pigments:
 - 1. Pure mineral pigments, lime proof and nonfading, complying with ASTM C979/C979M.
 - 2. Coloring pigments may only be added to grout by the manufacturer.
 - 3. Job colored grout is not acceptable.
 - 4. Use is required in Commercial Portland Cement Grout, Dry-Set Grout, and Latex-Portland Cement Grout.

- B. High Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7 with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59 (EPA Method 24).
 - 1. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
- C. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59 (EPA Method 24).
 - 1. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 60 and 100 degrees C (140 and 212 degrees F), respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

3.7 METAL TRIM STRIPS

- A. Tile edge-protection profile strips.
- B. Heavy top type strip with 5 mm (3/16 inch) wide top and 38 mm (1 1/2 inch) long leg. Height to match tile and setting-bed thickness.
- C. Embedded leg perforated and deformed for keying to mortar.
- D. stainless-steel, ASTM A666, 300 Series // exposed-edge material.

3.8 WATER

- A. Clean, potable and free from salts and other injurious elements to mortar and grout materials.

3.9 CLEANING COMPOUNDS

- A. Specifically designed for cleaning masonry and concrete and which will not prevent bond of subsequent tile setting materials including patching and leveling compounds and elastomeric waterproofing membrane and coat.
- B. Materials containing acid or caustic Material are not acceptable.

3.10 POLYETHYLENE SHEET

- A. Polyethylene sheet conforming to ASTM D4397.
- B. Nominal thickness: 0.15 mm (6 mils).

PART 4 - EXECUTION

4.1 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain ambient temperature of work areas at not less than 16 degrees C (60 degrees F), without interruption, for not less than 24 hours before installation and not less than three (3) days after installation.
- B. Maintain higher temperatures for a longer period of time where required by manufacturer's recommendation and ANSI Specifications for installation.
- C. Do not install tile when the temperature is above 38 degrees C (100 degrees F).
- D. Do not install materials when the temperature of the substrate is below 16 degrees C (60 degrees F).
- E. Do not allow temperature to fall below 10 degrees C (50 degrees F) after third day of completion of tile work.

4.2 ALLOWABLE TOLERANCE

- A. Variation in Plane of Wall Surfaces:
 1. Not more than 6 mm in 2438 mm (1/4 inch in 8 feet) from required plane where portland cement mortar setting bed is used.
 2. Not more than 3 mm in 2438 mm (1/8 inch in 8 feet) where dry-set or latex-portland cement mortar or organic adhesive setting materials is used.

4.3 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Patching and Leveling:
 1. Mix and apply patching and leveling compound in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 2. Fill holes and cracks and align surfaces that are out of required plane with patching and leveling compound.
 - a. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
 3. Apply leveling coats of material compatible with wall surface and tile setting material to wall surfaces, other than concrete and masonry that are out of required plane.
- B. Walls:
 1. In showers or other wet areas cover studs with polyethylene sheet.
 2. Apply patching and leveling compound to surfaces that are out of required plane.

Apply leveling coats of material compatible with wall surface and tile setting material to wall surfaces, other than concrete and masonry that are out of required plane.

4.4 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

- A. Remove polyethylene wrapping from cementitious backer units and separate to allow for air circulation. Allow moisture content of backer units to dry down to a maximum of 35 percent before applying joint treatment and tile.
- B. Install in accordance with ANSI A118.9 except as specified otherwise.
- C. Install units horizontally or vertically to minimize joints with end joints over framing members. Units with rounded edges; face rounded edge away from studs to form a "V" joint for joint treatment.
- D. Secure cementitious backer units to each framing member with screws spaced not more than 203 mm (8 inches) on center and not closer than 13 mm (1/2 inch) from the edge of the backer unit or as recommended by backer unit manufacturer. Install screws so that the screw heads are flush with the surface of the backer unit.
- E. Where backer unit joins shower pans or waterproofing, lap backer unit over turned up waterproof system. Install fasteners only through top one-inch of turned up waterproof systems.
- F. Do not install joint treatment for seven (7) days after installation of cementitious backer unit.
- G. Joint Treatment:
 - 1. Fill horizontal and vertical joints and corners with latex-portland cement mortar. Apply fiberglass tape over joints and corners and embed with same mortar.
 - 2. Leave 6 mm (1/4 inch) space for sealant at lips of tubs, sinks, or other plumbing receptors.

4.5 METAL EDGE TRIM STRIPS:

- A. Install metal strips in wall joints between materials where required and as shown otherwise on construction documents.
- B. Set strips in mortar bed to line and level.
- C. At preformed sealant joint: Refer to Section 07 95 13, EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES.
 - 1. Comply with recommendations in TCNA for Vertical and Horizontal Joint Design Essentials. TCNA Systems EJ 171.
 - a. Locate joint in tile surfaces directly above joint in sub-floor or where indicated when used with isolation membranes to allow off-setting of joint location from sub-floor joint.
 - b. Fasten full length to sub-floor using a construction adhesive.

- c. Trowel setting material with full coverage over the entire leg.
2. Set tile up against the joint ensuring that the top edge of the joint is flush or slightly below the top of the tile

4.6 CERAMIC TILE – GENERAL

- A. Comply with ANSI A108/A118/A136 series of tile installation standards applicable to methods of installation and TCNA Installation Guidelines.
- B. Setting Beds or Bond Coats:
 1. Set wall tile installed over concrete backer board in latex-portland cement mortar, ANSI A108.1B.
 2. Set trim shapes in same material specified for setting adjoining tile.
- C. Workmanship:
 1. Lay out tile work so that no tile less than one-half full size is used. Make all cuts on the outer edge of the field.
 2. Set tile firmly in place with finish surfaces in true planes. Align tile flush with adjacent tile unless shown otherwise on construction documents.
 3. Form intersections and returns accurately.
 4. Cut and drill tile neatly without marring surface.
 5. Cut edges of tile abutting penetrations, finish, or built-in items:
 - a. Fit tile closely around electrical outlets, piping, fixtures and fittings, so that plates, escutcheons, collars and flanges will overlap cut edge of tile.
 - b. Seal tile joints water tight as specified in Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS, around electrical outlets, piping fixtures and fittings before cover plates and escutcheons are set in place.
 6. Completed work is to be free from hollow sounding areas and loose, cracked or defective tile.
 7. Remove and reset tiles that are out of plane or misaligned.
 8. Walls:
 - a. Cover walls and partitions, including pilasters, furred areas, and freestanding elements from floor to ceiling, or from floor to nominal heights as indicated in construction documents with tile.
 - b. Finish reveals of openings with tile, except where other finish materials are indicated in construction documents.
 - c. At window openings, provide tile stools and reveals.

- d. Finish wall surfaces behind and at sides of casework and equipment, except those units mounted in wall recesses, with same tile as scheduled for room proper.
9. Joints:
- a. Keep all joints in line, straight, level, perpendicular and of even width unless shown otherwise on construction documents.
 - b. Make joints 2 mm (1/16 inch) wide for glazed wall tile and mosaic tile work.
 - c. Make joints in paver tile, porcelain type; maximum 3 mm (1/8 inch) wide.
10. Back Buttering: For installations indicated below, obtain 100 percent mortar coverage by complying with applicable special requirements for back buttering of tile in referenced ANSI A108/A118/A136 series of tile installation standards:
- a. Tile wall installations in wet areas, including showers, tub enclosures, laundries and swimming pools.
 - b. Tile installed with chemical-resistant mortars and grouts.
 - c. Tile wall installations composed of tiles 203 by 203 mm (8 by 8 inches) or larger.
 - d. Exterior tile wall installations.

4.7 PORCELAIN TILE INSTALLED WITH LATEX PORTLAND CEMENT BONDING MORTAR

- A. Due to the denseness of porcelain tile use latex portland cement bonding mortar that meets the requirements of ANSI A108.01. Mix bonding mortars in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide liquid ratios and comply with dwell times during the placement of bonding mortar and tile.

4.8 CERAMIC AND PORCELAIN TILE INSTALLED WITH ELASTOMERIC BOND COAT

- A. Surface Preparation: Prepare surfaces as specified.
- B. Installation of Elastomeric Membrane: ANSI A108.10 and TCNA F122-14 (on ground concrete) and F122A-14 (above-ground concrete).
 - 1. Prime surfaces, where required, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 2. Install first coat of membrane material in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, in thickness of 0.76 to 1.3 mm (30 to 50 mils).
 - 3. Extend material over flashing rings of drains and turn up vertical surfaces not less than 101 mm (4 inches) above finish floor surface.
 - 4. When material has set, recoat areas with a second coat of elastomeric membrane material for a total thickness of 1.3 to 1.9 mm (50 to 75 mils).
 - 5. After curing test for leaks with 25 mm (1 inch) of water for 24 hours.

C. Installation of Tile in Elastomeric Membrane:

1. Spread no more material than can be covered with tile before material starts to set.
2. Apply tile in second coat of elastomeric membrane material in accordance with the coating manufacturer's instructions in lieu at aggregate surfacing specified in ASTM C1127. Do not install top coat over tile.

4.9 GROUTING

A. Grout Type and Location:

1. Grout for glazed wall and base tile, paver tile and glass mosaic tile portland cement grout, latex-portland cement grout, dry-set grout, or commercial portland cement grout.

B. Workmanship:

1. Install and cure grout in accordance with the applicable standard.
2. Sand Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10.
3. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
4. High Performance Grout: ANSI A118.7.
5. Epoxy Grout: ANSI A108.6.
6. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3.
7. Furan and Commercial Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A118.5 and in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.

4.10 MOVEMENT JOINTS

- A. Prepare tile expansion, isolation, construction and contraction joints for installation of sealant. Refer to Section 07 92 00, JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. TCNA details EJ 171-14.
- C. At expansion joints, rake out joint full depth of tile and setting bed and mortar bed. Do not cut waterproof or isolation membrane.
- D. Rake out grout at joints between tile, at toe of base, and where indicated in construction documents not less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) deep.

4.11 CLEANING:

- A. Thoroughly sponge and wash tile. Polish glazed surfaces with clean dry cloths.
- B. Methods and materials used are not permitted to damage or impair appearance of tile surfaces.
- C. The use of acid or acid cleaners on glazed tile surfaces is prohibited.
- D. Clean tile grouted with epoxy, furan and commercial portland cement grout and tile set in elastomeric bond coat as recommended by the manufacturer of the grout and bond coat.

- - - E N D - - -

SECTION 095113 – ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general conditions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Divisions-1 Specification sections apply to work of this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes

1. Acoustical ceiling panels
2. Exposed grid suspension system
3. Wire hangers, fasteners, main runners, cross tees, and wall angle moldings
4. Perimeter Trim

B. Related Sections

2. Section 092900 – Gypsum Board
3. Section 095423 – Linear Metal Ceiling
4. Section 099123 – Interior Painting
5. Division 21 - Fire Suppression
6. Division 22 – Plumbing
7. Division 23 - HVAC Air Distribution
8. Division 26 - Electrical

C. Alternates

1. Prior Approval: Unless otherwise provided for in the Contract documents, proposed product substitutions may be submitted no later than TEN (10) working days prior to the date established for receipt of bids. Acceptability of a proposed substitution is contingent upon the Architect's review of the proposal for acceptability and approved products will be set forth by the Addenda. If included in a Bid are substitute products that have not been approved by Addenda, the specified products shall be provided without additional compensation.

2. Submittals that do not provide adequate data for the product evaluation will not be considered. The proposed substitution must meet all requirements of this section, including but not necessarily limited to, the following: Single source materials suppliers (if specified in Section 1.5); Underwriters' Laboratories Classified Acoustical performance; Panel design, size, composition, color, and finish; Suspension system component profiles and sizes; Compliance with the referenced standards.

1.3 REFERENCES

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. ASTM A 1008 Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability
2. ASTM A 641 Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
3. ASTM A 653 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process
4. ASTM C 423 Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method
5. ASTM C 635 Standard Specification for Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings
6. ASTM C 636 Recommended Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels
7. ASTM D 3273 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber
8. ASTM E 84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
9. ASTM E 119 Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Material
 - A. Armstrong Fire Guard Products
10. ASTM E 580 Installation of Metal Suspension Systems in Areas Requiring Moderate Seismic Restraint
11. ASTM E 1111 Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Ceilings Systems
12. ASTM E 1414 Standard Test Method for Airborne Sound Attenuation Between Rooms Sharing a Common Ceiling Plenum
13. ASTM E 1264 Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products

B. International Building Code

C. ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2004, Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

D. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code

E. ASCE 7 American Society of Civil Engineers, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

F. International Code Council-Evaluation Services - AC 156 Acceptance Criteria for Seismic Qualification Testing of Non-structural Components

G. International Code Council-Evaluation Services Report - Seismic Engineer Report

1. ESR 1308 - Armstrong Suspension Systems

H. International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials - Seismic Engineer Report

1. 0244 - Armstrong Single Span Suspension System

I. California Department of Public Health CDPH/EHLB Emission Standard Method Version 1.1 2010

J.. U.S. Department of Agriculture BioPreferred program (USDA BioPreferred).

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Continuous/Wall-to-Wall

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of acoustical ceiling unit and suspension system required.

B. Samples: Minimum 6 inch x 6 inch samples of specified acoustical panel; 8 inch long samples of exposed wall molding and suspension system, including main runner and 4 foot cross tees.

C. Shop Drawings: Layout and details of acoustical ceilings show locations of items that are to be coordinated with, or supported by the ceilings.

D. Acoustical Certifications: Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards. For acoustical performance, each carton of material must carry an approved independent laboratory classification of NRC, CAC, and AC.

a. If the material supplied by the acoustical subcontractor does not have an Underwriter's Laboratory classification of acoustical performance on every carton, subcontractor shall be required to send material from every production run appearing on the job to an independent or NVLAP approved laboratory for testing, at the architect's or owner's discretion. All products not conforming to manufacturer's current published values must be removed, disposed of and replaced with complying product at the expense of the Contractor performing the work.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide acoustical panel units and grid components by a single manufacturer.

1. Fire Performance Characteristics: Identify acoustical ceiling components with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting organization.

2. Surface Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested per ASTM E 84 and complying with ASTM E 1264 Classification.

3. Fire Resistance: As follows tested per ASTM E119 and listed in the appropriate floor or roof design in the Underwriters Laboratories Fire Resistance Directory

B. Acoustical Panels: As with other architectural features located at the ceiling, may obstruct or skew the planned fire sprinkler water distribution pattern through possibly delay or accelerate the activation of the sprinkler or fire detection systems by channeling heat from a fire either toward or away from

the device. Designers and installers are advised to consult a fire protection engineer, NFPA 13, or their local codes for guidance where automatic fire detection and suppression systems are present.

C. Coordination of Work: Coordinate acoustical ceiling work with installers of related work including, but not limited to building insulation, gypsum board, light fixtures, mechanical systems, electrical systems, and sprinklers.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaged units in any way.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Space Enclosure:

Standard Ceilings: Do not install interior ceilings until space is enclosed and weatherproof; wet work in place is completed and nominally dry; work above ceilings is complete; and ambient conditions of temperature and humidity are continuously maintained at values near those intended for final occupancy. Building areas to receive ceilings shall be free of construction dust and debris.

HumiGuard Plus Ceilings: Building areas to receive ceilings shall be free of construction dust and debris. Products with HumiGuard Plus performance and hot dipped galvanized steel, aluminum or stainless steel suspension systems can be installed up to 120°F (49°C) and in spaces before the building is enclosed, where HVAC systems are cycled or not operating. Cannot be used in exterior applications where standing water is present or where moisture will come in direct contact with the ceiling.

HumiGuard Max Ceilings: Building areas to receive ceilings shall be free of construction dust and debris. Ceilings with HumiGuard Max performance can be installed in conditions up to 120°F (49°C) and maximum humidity exposure including outdoor applications, and other standing water applications, so long as they are installed with either SS Prelude Plus, AL Prelude Plus, or Prelude Plus Fire Guard XL suspension systems. Products with HumiGuard Max performance can be installed in exterior applications, where standing water is present, or where moisture will come in direct contact with the ceiling. Only Ceramaguard with AL Prelude Plus suspension system can be installed over swimming pools.

1.10 ALTERNATE CONSTRUCTION WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Ceiling material being reclaimed must be kept dry and free from debris.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

B. Contact the Armstrong Recycle Center a consultant will verify the condition of the material and that it meets the Armstrong requirements for recycling. The Armstrong consultant will provide assistance to facilitate the recycling of the ceiling.

C. Recycling may qualify for LEED Credits:

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Acoustical Panel: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Acoustical Panels: Sagging and warping
2. Grid System: Rusting and manufacturer's defects

B. Warranty Period:

1. Acoustical panels: Ten (10) years from date of substantial completion
2. Suspension: Ten (10) years from date of substantial completion
3. Ceiling System: Thirty (30) years from date of substantial completion

C. The Warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.12 MAINTENANCE

A. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed. Packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.

1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Furnish quality of full-size units equal to 10.0 percent of amount installed.
2. Exposed Suspension System Components: Furnish quantity of each exposed suspension component equal to 5.0 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturers:

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

1. See Drawing A800 for Finish Selections Schedule. Provide product from one manufacturer and from one production run. Basis of Design: Armstrong World Industries, Optima PB in sizes and edge details as noted.

B. Other acceptable manufacturers:

1. Certaineed; Saint Gobain
2. USG Corporation

2.2.1 ACOUSTICAL CEILING UNITS

A. Acoustical Panel Ceiling Type: APC-1, APC-2

1. Surface Texture: Fine
2. Composition: Fiberglass
3. Color: White
4. Size: (APC-1) 24 in x 24 in, (APC-2) 48 in x 48 in
5. Edge Profile: (APC-1) PRELUDE XL 15/16 in, (APC-2) Beveled Concealed 15/16 in for interface with PRELUDE XL 15/16" Exposed Tee grid.
6. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C 423; Classified with UL label on product carton 0.90
7. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC) : N/A
8. Articulation Class (AC): ASTM E 1111; Classified with UL label on product carton 190
9. Flame Spread: ASTM E 1264; Class A (UL)
10. Light Reflectance (LR) White Panel: ASTM E 1477; 0.88
11. Dimensional Stability: HumiGuard Plus
12. Recycle Content: Post-Consumer - Pre-Consumer
13. Material Ingredient Transparency: Health Product Declaration (HPD); Declare Label
14. Life Cycle Assessment: Third Party Certified Environment Product Declaration (EPD)
 15. Acceptable Product: OPTIMA PB Concealed, 8538PB No added formaldehyde as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries

2.3.1 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Components:

Main beams and cross tees, base metal and end detail, fabricated from commercial quality hot dipped galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 653. Main beams and cross tees are double-web steel construction with type exposed flange design. Exposed surfaces chemically cleansed, capping prefinished galvanized steel in baked polyester paint. Main beams and cross tees shall have rotary stitching.

- a. Structural Classification: ASTM C 635 Intermediate Duty duty
- b. Color: White and match the actual color of the selected ceiling tile, unless noted otherwise.

c. Acceptable Product: PRELUDE XL 15/16" Exposed Tee as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries

B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung unless otherwise indicated.

C. Wire for Hangers and Ties: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft annealed, with a yield stress load of at least three design load, but not less than 12 gauge.

D. Edge Moldings and Trim:

1. 7800 - 12' Wall Molding

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Do not proceed with installation until all wet work such as concrete, terrazzo, plastering and painting has been completed and thoroughly dried out, unless expressly permitted by manufacturer's printed recommendations. (Exception: HumiGuard Max Ceilings)

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less than half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans. Coordinate panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.

B. Coordination: Furnish layouts for preset inserts, clips, and other ceiling anchors whose installation is specified in other sections.

1. Furnish concrete inserts and similar devices to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordination of other work.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Follow manufacturer installation instructions.

B. Install suspension system and panels in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, and in compliance with ASTM C 636 and with the authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Suspend main beam from overhead construction with hanger wires spaced 4'-0" on center along the length of the main runner. Install hanger wires plumb and straight.

D. Install wall moldings at intersection of suspended ceiling and vertical surfaces. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect or install corner caps.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

E. For reveal edge panels: Cut and reveal or rabbet edges of ceiling panels at border areas and vertical surfaces.

F. Install acoustical panels in coordination with suspended system, with edges resting on flanges of main runner and cross tees. Cut and fit panels neatly against abutting surfaces. Support edges by wall moldings.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Replace damaged and broken panels.

B. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch up of minor finish damage. Remove any ceiling products that cannot be successfully cleaned and or repaired. Replace with attic stock or new product to eliminate evidence of damage.

C. Before disposing of ceilings, contact the Armstrong Recycling Center at 877-276-7876, select option #1 then #8 to review with a consultant the condition and location of building where the ceilings will be removed. The consultant will verify the condition of the material and that it meets the Armstrong requirements for recycling. The Armstrong consultant will provide assistance to facilitate the recycle of the ceiling.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 54 23 – LINEAR METAL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION:

- A. This Section Includes:
 - 1. Suspended metal grid ceiling system including trim.
 - 2. Decorative, linear, formed metal ceiling panels, mechanically mounted on a ceiling suspension system.
 - 3. Accessories:
 - a. Closures, trim, edge molding and all other items required to provide complete installation.
- B. Unit size, texture, finish, and color as specified.

1.2 RELATED WORK:

- A. Access Doors: Section 08 31 13, ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES.
- B. Finish Color: Drawing A800 – Finish Selections Schedule.
- C. Acoustical Ceilings: Section 09 51 00, ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS.
- D. Sprinkler System: Section 21 10 00, WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS.
- E. Interior Lighting: Section 26 51 00, INTERIOR LIGHTING.

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL:

- A. Qualifications:
 - 1. Manufacturer: Approval required for products of proposed manufacturer, to be based upon submission by certifying that:
 - a. Manufacturer has provided linear metal ceiling systems and related accessories as one of its principal products for a minimum of three (3) years.
 - b. Accessories required for linear metal ceiling systems are to be manufacturer's standard or other systems compatible with linear metal ceiling system manufacturer's material. Items are to be of materials and construction which provide desired functional service.
 - 2. Installer: Approved in writing by manufacturer and having a minimum of three (3) years' experience in the installation of linear metal ceilings on projects of equivalent size.
- B. Coordination of Work: Coordinate layout and installation of linear metal ceiling units and suspension system components with other work supported by, or penetrating through, ceilings,

including light fixtures, HVAC equipment (if any), fire-suppression system components (if any), and partition system (if any):

1. Sprinkler heads and light fixtures: Centered width of panel, unless indicated otherwise on construction documents.

HVAC Air Outlets and Inlets: Planned to occur within center of panel systems or provide for equal distance on each side parallel to length of panels.

C. C. Seismic Design:

1. 1. Delegated Design of suspension system for seismic considerations under direct supervision of Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the state where the work is located. Comply with ASTM E580/E580M for ceiling suspension systems requiring seismic restraint.

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

- A. A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.

B. Manufacturer's Literature and Product Data:

1. Manufacturer's standard details and fabrication methods.
2. Data on finishing, hardware, components, and accessories.
3. Recommendations for maintenance and cleaning of finish surfaces.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Submit complete composite fabrication, and installation shop drawings including associated components.
2. Identify panel sections, trim, and other component parts, not included in manufacturer's product data, by name and material and showing design, construction, installation, and anchorage.
3. Layout and installation details, including relation to adjacent work such as walls and bulkheads.
4. Composite reflected ceiling plans, at 1:25 (1/4 inch) scale, showing location of all accessories, mechanical and electrical components. Indicate the following:
 - a. Joint pattern.
 - b. Ceiling suspension members.
 - c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.

- d. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, air outlets and inlets, speakers, sprinkler heads, and access panels. Special moldings at walls, column penetrations, and other junctures with adjoining construction.
 5. Provisions for expansion and contraction.
 6. Anchors and reinforcements.
- D. Samples:
1. Submit pairs of samples of each specified color and finish on 305 mm (12 inch) long sections of extrusions or formed shapes for following:
 - a. Linear metal panel.
 - b. Each exposed molding and trim sections.
 - c. Suspension system members.
 - d. Filler strips.
 - e. Insulation.
 - f. End cap.
 2. Where normal color variations are anticipated, include 2 units in set indicating extreme limits of color variations.
 3. Integrally Colored Anodized or Prefinished Aluminum:
 - a. Sheet not less than 203 by 254 mm (8 by 10 inches).
- E. Certificates:
1. Stating that linear metal ceiling system material has been given specified thickness of anodizing or organic coating finish.
 2. Indicating manufacturer's and installer's meet qualifications as specified.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Materials: Deliver to site in manufacturer's original unopened containers with brand name and type clearly marked.
- B. Materials: Carefully handle and store in dry, watertight enclosures.
- C. Before installation, linear metal ceiling units are to be stored for not less than 48 hours at same temperature and relative humidity as space where they will be installed to assure temperature and moisture conditions in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Uniform temperature of not less than 16 degrees C, (60 degrees F) nor more than 27 degrees C, (80 degrees F) and a relative humidity of not more than 70 percent are to be maintained for a period of 48 hours before, during, and for 48 hours after installation of linear metal ceiling units. After above period, room temperature is not permitted to fall below 13 degrees C (55 degrees F).

1.7 SCHEDULING:

- A. Interior finish work such as fireproofing, installation of metal wall panels, masonry, electrical signage, lighting, sprinkler supply lines, painting and all other adjacent work impacting ceiling installation to be complete and dry before installation. Mechanical, electrical, and other works above ceiling line are to be installed and completed.

1.8 WARRANTY:

- A. Construction Warranty: Comply with FAR clause 52.246-21, "Warranty of Construction".

1.9 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extent referenced. Publications are referred to in text by basic designation only.
- B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
 - 2605-13.....High Performance Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions and Panels
- C. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - A641/A641M-1Zinc-coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
 - A653/A653M-20Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by Hot-Dip Process
 - B209-14.....Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
 - B209M-14Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric)
 - C635/C635M-17.....Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceilings
 - C636/C636M-19.....Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels
 - E90-09(2016)Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions

E580/E580M-20Application of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile
and Lay-in Panels in Areas Requiring Seismic Restraint

D. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):

E. Metal Finishes Manual (2006)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS:

A. Linear Metal Ceiling System LMC-1, General:

1. See drawing A800 for Finish Selections Schedule. Provide each product from one manufacturer and from one production run. Basis of Design: Armstrong Metalworks Linear – Classics planks

Other acceptable products:

- a. USG Ceilings Plus – Planx System
- b. Certainteed Ceilings – Box System

2. Sheet Metal Characteristics: Form metal panels from sheet metal free from surface blemishes where exposed to view in finished unit. Do not use materials whose exposed surfaces exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections.
3. Fabrication: Die-form linear metal panels into unit's standard with manufacturer and finished as specified Sound-Absorptive Pads: Width and length to fill completely between carriers, joined at center of a panel, and to provide an STC rating of 0.70 in accordance with ASTM E90. Refer to Section 07 21 13, THERMAL INSULATION for acoustical insulation sound absorptive pad type and thickness to be used based on STC ratings.
4. Recycled Content of Metal Ceiling Products: up to 25%

B. Accessories: Stabilizer bars, clips, splices, and hold down clips as required for suspended grid system.

C. Linear Metal Panels:

1. General: Formed to snap on and be securely retained on carriers without separate fasteners.
2. Electrogalvanized Steel Panels:
 - a. Minimum Nominal Thickness: 0.68 mm (0.027 inch)
3. Panel Performance: As follows:
 - a. Light Reflectance Coefficient: LR 0.73

- b. Noise Reduction Coefficient: NRC, 0.70 .
- 4. Perforation Pattern: micro-perforated.
- D. Suspension Systems, General:
 - 1. Standard for Metal Suspension Systems: Provide manufacturer's standard types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with ASTM C635/C635M requirements.
 - 2. Anchors: Type as recommended by manufacturer. Size for five (5) times design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, Direct Hung, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Provide manufacturer's standard compression seismic struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- E. Wire for Carriers, Hangers, and Ties: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1, zinc coating, soft temper.
 - 1. Gage: Minimum 12 gage. Supporting a minimum of 1334 N, (300 pounds) ultimate vertical load without failure of supporting material or attachment.
- F. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated, or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- G. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated, or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- H. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 22 mm (7/8 inch) wide, formed with 0.82 mm (0.0365 inch) galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, Coating Designation G90, with bolted connections and 7.6 mm (5/16 inch) diameter bolts.
- I. Edge Moldings and Trim: Manufacturer's standard molding for edges and penetrations of ceiling.
- J. Carriers: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M, cold-rolled, electro-galvanized, 0.55 mm (0.0219 inch) (25 gage) minimum nominal thickness steel.
- K. Miscellaneous Components and Materials:
 - 1. Access Doors: Refer to Section 08 31 13, ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES for requirements. Access doors, required for use in linear metal ceiling system, are to match adjacent ceiling panel units and be designed and equipped with suitable framing and fastenings for removal and replacement without damage. Provide locking device for this type access door as used in general access doors.
- L. Access Identification: Refer to Section 09 91 00, PAINTING for requirements of identification markers for use, with various mechanical systems above ceiling, under this section.

2.2 FINISHES:

- A. Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual".
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by application of strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent ceiling units are not acceptable. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.
- D. Aluminum Finishes:
 - 1. Lacquered Mill Finish: AA-M10C10R1X.
 - a. Organic Coating: Manufacturer's standard, clear, organic coating.
 - 2. High-Performance, Organic Coating: Comply with AAMA 2605.
 - 3. Color and Gloss: Refer to Drawing A800 – Finish Selections Schedule.
- E. Touch-up Paint for Concealed Items: Zinc oxide type.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION:

- A. Ceiling Areas: Conform with details, dimensions and tolerances shown on approved linear metal ceiling system composite reflected ceiling plan shop drawings.
- B. Conditions which may adversely affect linear metal ceiling system installation are to be corrected prior to commencement of linear metal ceiling system installation.
- C. Where linear metal ceiling system is installed adjacent to masonry, wash-down of adjacent masonry is to be completed prior to erection of ceiling system to prevent damage to material finish by cleaning materials.

3.2 PREPARATION:

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of linear metal panel units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using units less than half wide at borders

3.3 INSTALLATION:

- A. Standard for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems: Comply with ASTM C636/C636M and ASTM E580/E580M as applicable to linear metal panel ceiling suspension system.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building structural members and as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb, free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers where required to avoid obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counter splaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension

- system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
3. Secure hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for structure to which hangers are attached as well as for type of hanger involved, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail because of age, corrosion, and elevated temperatures.
 4. Space hangers not more than 1219 mm (48 inches) on center along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise shown on construction documents.
- C. Install edge moldings at edge of each linear metal ceiling area and at locations where edge of units would otherwise be exposed after completion of Work. Level moldings with ceiling suspension system to level tolerance of 3 mm (1/8 inch) in 3657 mm (12 feet).
1. Masonry and Concrete: Fasten with machine screws into lead-shield-type anchors drilled into construction.
 2. Hollow Masonry or Stud Construction: Fasten with toggle bolts or similar self-expanding screw anchors.
- D. Ceiling Access Doors as required:
1. Ceiling access doors are to be located directly under items which require access.
- E. Scribe and cut metal panel units for accurate fit at borders and at interruptions and penetrations by other work through ceilings. Stiffen edges of cut units as required to eliminate evidence of buckling or variations in flatness exceeding referenced standards for stretcher-leveled metal sheet.
- F. Align joints in adjacent courses to form uniform, straight joints parallel to room axis in both directions, unless otherwise indicated in construction documents.
- G. Install panels with butt joints using internal concealed panel splices and in joint configurations shown on construction documents in reflected ceiling plan.

3.4 CLEANING:

- A. Following installation, dirty or discolored surfaces of linear metal ceiling units are to be cleaned, in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations, and left free from defects. Units that are damaged or improperly installed are to be removed and new units provided as directed.

3.5 PROTECTION:

- A. Protect linear metal ceiling systems from damage until final inspection and acceptance.

- - - END - - -

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Thermoplastic-rubber base.
 - 2. Rubber molding accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 3. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 4. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 5. Laboratory Test Reports: For resilient base and stair products and accessories, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE

- A. Provide each product from one manufacturer and from one production run. Basis of Design: Tarkett Commercial Flooring

Other acceptable manufacturers:
 - 1. Roppe
 - 2. Armstrong Commercial Flooring
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
 - 1. Group: solid, homogeneous
 - 2. Style and Location:
 - a. WB-1, Cove, provide in areas as indicated on finish plans

- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm)
- D. Height: 4 inches (102 mm)
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed
- H. Colors: As indicated on drawings.

2.2 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Provide each product from one manufacturer and from one production run. Basis of Design: Tarkett Commercial Flooring

Alternate manufacturers:
 - 1. Roppe
 - 2. Armstrong Commercial Flooring
- B. Description: Rubber reducer strip for resilient floor covering, transition strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: Coordinate with flooring material thicknesses. Provide full range of profiles for Interior Designers selection.
- D. Locations: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As indicated on drawings.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.

2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not more than 9pH.
 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft. (18.6 sq. m) and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 5 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 80 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.2 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:
 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in length.
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.

2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in length.
 - a. Miter corners to minimize open joints.

3.3 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid vinyl floor tile.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and pattern specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 Luxury Vinyl Tile

A. Manufacturers: See Drawing A800 Finish Selections Schedule. Basis of Design: Shaw Industries, Styles; Soundscape, Kind and Thoughtful. Provide product from one manufacturer and from one production run.

Other acceptable products:

1. Armstrong Flooring, Inc.
2. Patcraft; a division of Shaw Industries, Inc.

- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F1700.
 - 1. Class: Class III, Printed Film Vinyl Tile.
 - 2. Type: B, Embossed Surface.
- C. Thickness: 0.197 inch (5mm).
- D. Size: Soundscape: 6 by 48 inches (152 by 1219 mm) Kind and Thoughtful: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm)
- E. Colors and Patterns: As indicated on Finish Drawings.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 7 or more than 10pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft. (304.8 sq. m) and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of [8 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 90 percent relative humidity level measurement.

- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.2 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
 - 1. Lay tiles square with room axis in pattern indicated
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
 - 1. Lay Kind and Thoughtful tiles in quarter turn pattern Lay Soundscape tiles in brick pattern.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- H. Floor to be broom cleaned. Any excess adhesive or scuffs to be removed prior to turning project over to owner.

END OF SECTION 096519

SECTION 096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Resinous flooring.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site >.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Samples: For each resinous floor system required and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material certificates.

- B. Material test reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Flammability: Self-extinguishing in accordance with ASTM D635.

2.2 RESINOUS FLOORING

- A. Resinous Flooring System: Abrasion-, impact-, and chemical-resistant, aggregate-filled, resin-based monolithic floor surfacing designed to produce a seamless floor and integral cove base.
1. Manufacturers: See Drawing A-800 Finish Selections Schedule. Provide each product from one production manufacturer and one production run. Basis of design: Stonhard, Inc.
 - a. Duraflex, Inc.
 - b. Sika Corporation; Flooring.
- B. System Characteristics:
1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 2. Wearing Surface: Textured for slip resistance, Orange-peel texture.
 3. Overall System Thickness: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**.
 4. Critical Radiant Flux: **0.45 W/sq. cm** or greater in accordance with NFPA 253.
- C. Primer: Type recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer for substrate and resinous flooring system indicated.
1. Products:
 - a. Stoneclad
 - b. StoneKote
 - c. Stoneshield
 2. Formulation Description: **High solids.**
- D. Waterproofing Membrane: Type recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer for substrate and resinous flooring system indicated.
- E. Reinforcing Membrane: Flexible resin formulation that is recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer for substrate and resinous flooring system indicated and that inhibits substrate cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring.
1. Products:
 - a. TBD
 2. Formulation Description: **High solids.**
 - a. Provide fiberglass scrim embedded in reinforcing membrane.
- F. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended in writing by manufacturer for installation indicated.
1. Products:

a. TBD

G. Body Coats:

1. Products:
2. Resin: **Urethane**.
3. Formulation Description: **High solids**.
4. Type: **Pigmented**.
5. Installation Method: **Troweled or screeded**.
6. Number of Coats: **One**.
7. Thickness of Coats: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**.
8. Aggregates: **Colored quartz (ceramic-coated silica)**].

H. Grout Coat:

1. Products:
 - a. TBD
2. Resin: **Urethane**.
3. Formulation Description: **High solids**.
4. Type: **Pigmented**.
5. Thickness of Coat: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.

I. Topcoats: Sealing or finish coats.

1. Products:
 - a. TBD
2. Resin: **Urethane**.
3. Formulation Description: **High solids**.
4. Type: **Clear**.
5. Number of Coats: **One**.
6. Thickness of Coats: **8 mils (0.2 mm)**.
7. Finish: **Matte**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare and clean substrates in accordance with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated to ensure adhesion.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
 1. Roughen concrete substrates as follows:

ORANGE COUNTY MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE

- a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
 - b. Comply with requirements in SSPC-SP 13/NACE No. 6, with a Concrete Surface Profile of 3 or greater in accordance with ICRI Technical Guideline No. 310.2R, unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.
2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete in accordance with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed **1000 sq. ft. (304.8 sq. m)]** and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of **3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m)** in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum **75** percent relative humidity level measurement.
 4. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity is not less than **6** or more than **8** pH unless otherwise recommended in writing by flooring manufacturer,
- C. Patching and Filling: Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Control Joint Treatment: Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials in accordance with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply components of resinous flooring system in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness specified.
- B. Primer: Apply primer over prepared substrate at spreading rate recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- C. Waterproofing Membrane: Apply waterproofing membrane **over entire substrate surface**, in thickness recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 1. Apply waterproofing membrane to integral cove base substrates.
- D. Reinforcing Membrane: Apply reinforcing membrane to **entire substrate surface**.

ORANGE COUNTY MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE

- E. Field-Formed Integral Cove Base: Apply cove base mix to wall surfaces before applying flooring coats. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and details, including those for taping, mixing, priming, troweling, sanding, and topcoating of cove base. Round internal and external corners.
 - 1. Integral Cove Base: 4 inches (100 mm) high.
- F. Self-Leveling Body Coats: Apply self-leveling slurry body coats in thickness specified for flooring system.
 - 1. Aggregates: Broadcast aggregates at rate recommended in writing by manufacturer. After resin is cured, remove excess aggregates to provide surface texture indicated.
- G. Troweled or Screeded Body Coats: Apply troweled or screeded body coats in thickness specified for flooring system. Hand or power trowel and grout to fill voids. When body coats are cured, remove trowel marks and roughness using method recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- H. Grout Coat: Apply grout coat to fill voids in surface of final body coat.
- I. Topcoats: Apply topcoats in number indicated for flooring system specified, at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer, and to produce wearing surface specified.
- J. Protect resinous flooring from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096723

SECTION 096813 - TILE CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Modular Carpet Tile. (CPT-1, CPT-2, CPT-3)
2. Modular Walk-off Matt Entryway Carpet Tile (WOM-2)

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For carpet tile installation, plans showing the following:

1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
3. Type of subfloor.
4. Type of installation.
5. Pattern of installation.
6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
7. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
8. Transition details to other flooring materials.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.

- B. Sample warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Master II certification level.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Material Warranty Period: . Lifetime Fiber Performance for Wear, Lifetime for Tuft Bind Strength (edge ravel, yarn pulls, zippering), Lifetime Protection from Delamination Failure, Lifetime Fiber Performance for Static, Lifetime Colorfastness to Atmospheric Contaminants, Lifetime Stain Removal
2. Installation Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET TILE

- A. Manufacturers: See Drawing A800 Finish Selections Schedule. Provide each product from one manufacturer and from one production run. Basis of Design: J+J Flooring, a brand of Engineered Floors, P.O. Box 1287, Dalton, GA, 30722. (800) 241-4586. JFLOORINGGROUP.COM. Please contact ROBERT FORTIER, (860) 881-1540

Other acceptable products:

1. Interface, Inc.
2. Shaw Industries Group, Inc.; Berkshire Hathaway Company.

- B. Carpet Type – CPT-1

1. Product: Kinetix, Put a Cork in It
2. Color: See Finish Selections Schedule
3. Wear Layer: 100% Polyester
4. Backing: Polyester Felt Cushion
5. Dye Method: Solution Dyed
6. Total Weight: Nominal Average, 4.5oz – 5.2oz / sq foot
7. Pattern repeat: N/A
8. Soil Release: Yes
9. Pill test: Yes
10. Standard Size: 24in x 24in
11. Flooring radiant panel: Class 1
12. Smoke Density: Less than 450 (ASTM E 662)
13. Static test: less than 3.0 kv (AATCC-134)
14. Lightfastness test: 1
15. Recycled Content: Minimum of 45% recycled content
16. Closed loop recyclable

C. Carpet Type - CPT-2

1. Product: Fractured Plaid, 7587
2. Color: See Finish Selections Schedule
3. Construction: Tip sheared patterned loop
4. Backing: Nexus Modular
5. Dye Method: Solution/ Yarn Dyed
6. Yarn Type: Encore BCF Type 6 (with recycled content)
7. Face Weight: 23 oz/sq yd
8. Pile Density: 9258 oz/y³
9. Guage: 1/12
10. Stitches: 11.0 stitches per inch
11. Pattern Repeat: N/A
12. Soil Release: Yes
13. Stain Resistance: Yes
14. Bleach Resistance: Yes
15. Standard Size: 24in x 24in
16. Flooring radiant panel: Class 1
17. Smoke Density: Less than 450 (ASTM E 662)
18. Static test: less than 3.0 kv (AATCC-134)
19. Lightfastness test: 1

D. Carpet Type - WOM-2 – Basis-of-Design: Shaw Industries Group, Inc.; Berkshire Hathaway Company, Stepping Out Collection, See Drawings for Style/ Color.

1. Product: Fractured Plaid, 7587
2. Color: See Finish Selections Schedule
3. Construction: Tip sheared patterned loop
4. Backing: Nexus Modular
5. Dye Method: Solution/ Yarn Dyed
6. Yarn Type: Encore BCF Type 6 (with recycled content)
7. Face Weight: 23 oz/sq yd
8. Pile Density: 9258 oz/y³
9. Guage: 1/12
10. Stitches: 11.0 stitches per inch
11. Pattern Repeat: N/A
12. Soil Release: Yes
13. Stain Resistance: Yes
14. Bleach Resistance: Yes
15. Standard Size: 24in x 24in
16. Flooring radiant panel: Class 1
17. Smoke Density: Less than 450 (ASTM E 662)
18. Static test: less than 3.0 kv (AATCC-134)
19. Lightfastness test: 1

E.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile, and are recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
 - 1. Kinetex® Adhesive, an aggressive, pressure-sensitive adhesive designed for the installation of Kinetex textile composite flooring modules is required.
 - 2. Kinetex PreFix®, a quick installation for all Kinetex textile composite flooring products. The release liner easily peels away to reveal a series of pre-applied adhesive strips that securely anchor the Kinetex module in place, (PreFix Primer is required).
 - 3. Commercialon® Premium Modular Pressure Sensitive Adhesive, a premium modular flooring adhesive specifically formulated for bonding J+J Flooring's Nexus® Modular PVC backed carpet to the floor.
 - 4. TileTabs® Connectors for Nexus® backed carpet tiles. A glue-free installation which eliminates the need for full spread adhesive which requires drying time. TileTabs® provide an adhesive-free installation and comply with CRI Green Label Plus (zero calculated emissions).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Concrete Slabs:
 - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft. (304.8 sq. m) and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
 - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider, and protrusions more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers.
- D. Metal Substrates: Clean grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if recommended in writing by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.
- E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 10, "Carpet Tile," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer
- C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Maintain pile-direction patterns recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet tile as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- I. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096813

SECTION 097200 - WALL COVERINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vinyl wall covering.
 - 2. Thermoplastic-polyolefin wall covering.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of each wall-covering type. Indicate pattern placement, seams, and termination points.
- C. Samples: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates in accordance with test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
2. Fire-Growth Contribution: No flashover and heat and smoke release when tested in accordance with NFPA 265

2.2 VINYL WALL COVERING

- A. Wallcovering type (WC-1): Manufacturers, Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one source. Basis of Design: Momentum Textiles and Wallcovering, Style Halcyon

Other acceptable wallcovering manufacturers

1. Arc-Com Fabrics, Inc.
 2. Wolf Gordon
- B. Description: Provide vinyl products in rolls from same production run and complying with the following:
1. FS CCC-W-408D and [Wallcovering Association's W-101 for Type II, Medium Duty.
 2. ASTM E84 - Passes.
 3. NFPA 286 Corner Burn: Passes
 4. Recycled Content: 20% recycled Content (10% post-consumer)
 5. Total Weight: 20 oz. excluding coatings
 6. Width: 54 inches (1372 mm)
 7. Backing: Osnaburg fabric
 8. Repeat: Random
 9. Mildew Resistance: Mildew inhibiting agent added
 10. Color: See Drawing A-800
 11. Mildew inhibiting agent added

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.

- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, and mildew.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
 - 2. Plaster: Allow plaster to cure for at least 90 days. Neutralize areas of high alkalinity. Apply primer/sealer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 3. Metals: If not factory primed, clean and apply metal primer as recommended in writing by metal-primer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 4. Painted Surfaces:
 - a. Check for pigment bleeding. Apply primer/sealer to areas susceptible to pigment bleeding as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer.
 - b. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finishes with fine sandpaper.
- D. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- E. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WALL COVERING

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- C. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
- D. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- E. Match pattern 72 inches (1828 mm) above the finish floor.
- F. Install seams vertical and plumb at least 6 inches (152 mm) from outside corners and 3 inches (76 mm) 6 inches (152 mm) from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- G. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- H. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.
- I. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- J. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION 097200

SECTION 099000 - PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Galvanized metal.
 - 3. Gypsum board.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
- B. Samples: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
- C. Coating Maintenance Manual: Upon conclusion of the project, the Contractor or paint manufacturer/supplier shall furnish a coating maintenance manual, such as the Sherwin Williams "Custodian Project Color and Product Information" report or equal. Manual shall include an Area Summary with finish schedule, Area Detail designating where each

product/color/finish was used, product data pages, Material Safety Data Sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in applying paints and coatings similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance. Installer to have a minimum of three years experience on comparable projects.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain primers for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.
- C. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Sherwin Williams, or approved equal.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide primers, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and with the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.
 - 1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the

exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

- D. Paints and Coatings.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide factory-mixed coatings. When required, mix coatings to correct consistency in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before application. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute coatings or add materials to coatings unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
 - 2. For opaque finishes, tint each coat including primer coat and intermediate coats, one-half shade lighter than succeeding coat, with final finish coat as base color. Or follow manufacturer's product instructions for optimal color conformance.
- E. Primers: Where the manufacturer offers options on primers for a particular substrate, use primer categorized as "best" by the manufacturer.
- F. Metal Primers: Provide primer as indicated unless shop priming specified in other Specifications.
- G. Coating Application Accessories: Provide all primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials required, per manufacturer's specifications
- H. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 INTERIOR SYSTEMS

- A. Drywall: Low Odor (Low VOC) Egg-Shell Finish
 - 1. 1st Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Mar 200 Zero VOC Primer B28 Series (MPI 50)
 - 2nd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Mar 200 Zero VOC Latex Eggshell B20 Series (MPI 42)
 - 3rd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Mar 200 Zero VOC Latex Eggshell B20 Series (MPI 42)
- B. Drywall: Toilet Rooms, Showers and Locker Rooms
 - 1. 1st Coat: Sherwin Williams Premium wall and wood primer B28 Series
 - 2. 2nd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pre Catalyzed Epoxy Semigloss K46 Series (MPI 141)
 - 3. 3rd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pre Catalyzed Epoxy Semigloss K46 Series (MPI 141)
- C. Metal: Semi-Gloss Finish
 - 1. 1st Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Primer B66 Series (MPI 107)
 - 2nd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semigloss B66 Series (MPI 141)
 - 3rd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Semigloss B66 Series (MPI 141)
- D. Epoxy: Semi-Gloss Finish as indicated on room finish schedule
 - 1. 1st Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Primer B66 Series (MPI 107)
 - 2nd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Pre Catalyzed Epoxy Semigloss K46 Series (MPI 141)
 - 3rd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Pre Catalyzed Epoxy Semigloss K46 Series (MPI 141)

2.4 EXTERIOR SYSTEMS

- A. Steel Substrates: Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - 1. 1st Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Primer B66 Series (MPI 107)
 - 2. 2nd Coat: Sherwin Williams Emerald Urethane Trim Enamel K38 Series (MPI 169)
 - 3. 3rd Coat: Sherwin Williams Emerald Urethane Trim Enamel K38 Series (MPI 169)

- B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.3B.
 - 1. 1st Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Primer B66 Series (MPI 107)
 - 2. 2nd Coat: Sherwin Williams Pro Emerald Urethane Trim Enamel K38 Series (MPI 169)
 - 3. 3rd Coat: Sherwin Williams Sherwin Williams Urethane Trim Enamel K38 Series (MPI 169)

- C. Cement Fiberboard: As per manufacturer's requirements.
 - 1. Latex Systems:
 - a. Satin Finish - Early Moisture Resistant Finish:
 - 1. 1st Coat: Sherwin Williams Loxon Concrete & Masonry Primer LX02 Series (MPI 3)
 - 2. 2nd Coat: Sherwin Williams Resilience Latex Satin, K43 Series (MPI 11)
 - 3. 3rd Coat: Sherwin Williams Resilience Latex Satin, K43 Series (MPI 11)

2.5 MASONRY COATINGS

- A. Seal new masonry work with clear drying, permanent, breathable waterproofing sealer as approved by Architect. Apply as required by manufacturer's instructions including environmental conditions and moisture content.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
 - 3. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 - 4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean substrates of substances that could impair the bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning.
 - 1. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
- D. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime.
 - 2. Wood: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.
 - a. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
 - b. Prime, stain, or seal wood to be painted immediately on delivery. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, and paneling.
 - c. If transparent finish is required, backprime with spar varnish.
 - d. Backprime paneling on interior partitions where masonry, plaster, or other wet wall construction occurs on back side.
 - e. Seal tops, bottoms, and cutouts of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or sealer immediately on delivery.
 - 3. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with SSPC's recommendations.
 - a. Blast steel surfaces clean as recommended by paint system manufacturer and according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 .
 - b. Treat bare and sandblasted or pickled clean metal with a metal treatment wash coat before priming.
 - c. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by paint manufacturer, and touch up with same primer as the shop coat.
 - 4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so surface is free of oil and surface contaminants.

5. Aluminum: Remove all oil, grease, dirt, oxide and other foreign material by cleaning per SSPC-SP1, Solvent Cleaning.
 - 6.
 7. Concrete, SSPC-SP13 or NACE 6: This standard gives requirements for surface preparation of concrete by mechanical, chemical, or thermal methods prior to the application of bonded protective coating or lining systems. The requirements of this standard are applicable to all types of cementitious surfaces including cast-in-place concrete floors and walls, precast slabs, masonry walls, and shotcrete surfaces. An acceptable prepared concrete surface should be free of contaminants, laitance, loosely adhering concrete, and dust, and should provide a sound, uniform substrate suitable for the application of protective coating or lining systems.
 8. Cement Composition Siding/Panels: Remove all surface contamination by washing with an appropriate cleaner, rinse thoroughly and allow to dry. Existing peeled or checked paint should be scraped and sanded to a sound surface. Pressure clean, if needed, with a minimum of 2100 psi pressure to remove all dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose particles, laitance, foreign material, and peeling or defective coatings. Allow the surface to dry thoroughly. The pH of the surface should be between 6 and 9, unless the products are designed to be used in high pH environments.
 9. Drywall - Interior: Must be clean and dry. All nail heads must be set and spackled. Joints must be taped and covered with a joint compound. Spackled nail heads and tape joints must be sanded smooth and all dust removed prior to painting.
- E. Material Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.
 3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.
- 3.3 Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to simplify identification of each coat when multiple coats of same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- 3.4 APPLICATION
- A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.
 2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
 3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
 4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.

5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
 7. Paint back sides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
 8. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.
- B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
1. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
 2. Omit primer over metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.
 3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
 4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.
- C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
 2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
 3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
- D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces.
- F. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.

- G. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
- H. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, runs, cloudiness, color irregularity, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.
 - 1. Provide satin finish for final coats.
- I. Complete Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.
- J. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from Project site.
 - 1. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping without scratching or damaging adjacent finished surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage from painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.
- B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.
- C. After work of other trades is complete, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P1.

3.7 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE (Refer to Drawings for additional finish information)

- A. END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 101100 - VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Visual display board assemblies.
 - 2. Display trays.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, finishes, and accessories for visual display units.
- B. Shop Drawings: For visual display units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment to other work.
 - 2. Show locations of panel joints.
 - 3. Include sections of typical trim members.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of visual display unit indicated, for units with factory-applied color finishes, and as follows:
 - 1. Samples of facings for each visual display panel type, indicating color and texture.
 - 2. Actual factory-finish color samples, applied to aluminum substrate.
 - 3. Include accessory Samples to verify color selected.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of visual display unit indicated.
 - 1. Visual Display Panel: Not less than 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm), with facing, core, and backing indicated for final Work. Include one panel for each type, color, and texture required.
 - 2. Trim: 6-inch- (150-mm-) long sections of each trim profile.
 - 3. Display Tray: 6-inch- (150-mm-) long section of each type.
 - 4. Accessories: Full-size Sample of each type of accessory.
- E. Product Schedule: For visual display units..

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each visual display unit, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For visual display units to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver factory-fabricated visual display units completely assembled in one piece. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured unit size, or if unit size is impracticable to ship in one piece, provide two or more pieces with joints in locations indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install visual display units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
 - b. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARD ASSEMBLIES (Items 234 and 119 on Drawing A100):

Provide Basis-of-Design as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved: ASI Visual Display Products, Series 9800

- A. Visual Display Board Assembly: factory fabricated.
1. Assembly: Markerboard.
 2. Corners: Square.
 3. Width: As indicated on Drawing and Schedule, sheet A100.
 4. Height: As indicated on Drawing and Schedule, sheet A100 s.
 5. Mounting Method: Direct to wall.
- B. Markerboard Panel: Porcelain-enamel-faced markerboard panel on core indicated.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- C. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Fabricated from not less than 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) thick, extruded aluminum; standard size and shape.
1. Field-Applied Trim: Manufacturer's standard, screw-on trim with Phillips flat-head screws].
 2. Aluminum Finish: Clear anodic finish.
- D. Joints: Make joints only where total length exceeds maximum manufactured length. Fabricate with minimum number of joints, as indicated on approved Shop Drawings.
- E. Combination Assemblies: Provide manufacturer's standard exposed trim between abutting sections of visual display panels.
- F. Chalk tray: Manufacturer's standard; continuous.
1. Solid Type: Extruded aluminum with ribbed section and smoothly curved exposed ends.

2.3 MARKERBOARD PANELS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Markerboard Panels: Balanced, high-pressure, factory-laminated markerboard assembly of three-ply construction, consisting of moisture-barrier backing, core

material, and porcelain-enamel face sheet with high-gloss finish. Laminate panels under heat and pressure with manufacturer's standard, flexible waterproof adhesive.

1. Face Sheet Thickness: 0.021 inch (0.53 mm) uncoated base metal thickness.
2. Manufacturer's Standard Core: Minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, with manufacturer's standard moisture-barrier backing.
3. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard moisture-resistant thermoplastic type.

B. High-Pressure Markerboard Laminate Panels: Factory-laminated markerboard panel of three-ply construction, consisting of backing, fiberboard core material, and high-pressure markerboard laminate writing surface.

C. Melamine Markerboard Panels: Fabricated from 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, sealed and primed hardboard panels permanently bonded with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper writing surface.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheet: PEI-1002, with face sheet manufacturer's standard two- or three-coat process.

B. High-Pressure Markerboard Laminate: Complying with physical testing requirements of NEMA LD 3.

C. Fiberboard: ASTM C208 cellulosic fiber insulating board.

D. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), Alloy 6063.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation of motorized, sliding visual display units.
- C. Examine walls and partitions for proper preparation and backing for visual display units.
- D. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth where sliding visual display units will be installed.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances, such as dirt, mold, and mildew, that could impair the performance of and affect the smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.
- C. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, projections, depressions, and substances that will impair bond between visual display units and wall surfaces.
- D. Prepare recesses for sliding visual display units as required by type and size of unit.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Factory-Fabricated Visual Display Board Assemblies: Attach concealed clips, hangers, and grounds to wall surfaces and to visual display board assemblies with fasteners at not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. Secure tops and bottoms of boards to walls.
- C. Display Rails: Install rails at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean visual display units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one removable cleaning instructions label to visual display unit in each room.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- C. Cover and protect visual display units after installation and cleaning.

END OF SECTION 101100

SECTION 102113 - PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for supports that attach floor-and-ceiling-anchored compartments to overhead structural system.
2. Section 061053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for blocking overhead support of floor-and-ceiling-anchored compartments
3. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for blocking.
4. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments:

B. Shop Drawings: For solid-plastic toilet compartments.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.

C. Samples: For each type of toilet compartment material indicated.

1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates:

1. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment by manufacturer.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire Performance: Tested in accordance with, and pass the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 286.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Department of Justice "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design"[and [ICC A117.1] for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

2.2 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: See Drawing A-800 Finish Selections Schedule. Provide each product from one manufacturer and from one production run. Basis of Design: Scranton Products, Hiny Hiders
 - 1. AJW Architectural Products.
 - 2. ASI Global Partitions.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor and ceiling anchored.
- C. Entrance-Screen Style: Floor and ceiling anchored.
- D. Door, Panel, Screen, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) thick, seamless, with eased edges, no-sightline system, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.
 - 1. Integral Hinges: Configure doors and pilasters to receive integral hinges.
 - 2. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, stainless steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
 - 3. Color and Pattern: as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- F. Brackets (Fittings):
 - 1. Stirrup Type: Ear or U-brackets, chrome-plated zamac.
 - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
 - a. Polymer Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories, Heavy Duty: Manufacturer's heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.
 - 1. Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick stainless steel continuous, cam type that swings to a closed or partially open position >, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through bolts.

2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, surface-mounted, cast-stainless steel latch unit, designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through bolts.
3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty combination cast-stainless steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent inswinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through bolts.
4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, rubber-tipped, cast-stainless steel bumper at outswinging doors[and entrance-screen doors]. Mount with through bolts.
5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, cast-stainless steel pull at outswinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through bolts.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- C. Brass Castings: ASTM B584.
- D. Brass Extrusions: ASTM B455.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- F. Stainless Steel Castings: ASTM A743/A743M.
- G. Zamac: ASTM B86, commercial zinc-alloy die castings.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of pilasters. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- (610-mm-) wide, inswinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide, outswinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- (813-mm-) wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch (25 mm).
 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
 - a. Locate wall brackets, so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
 3. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
 - a. Locate bracket fasteners, so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels and adjust, so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on inswinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on outswinging doors and doors in entrance screensto return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113.19

SECTION 102123 - CUBICLE CURTAINS AND TRACK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cubicle-curtain tracks and carriers, and Cubicle Curtains - (Item 246 on Drawing A100):

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for supplementary wood framing and blocking for mounting items requiring anchorage.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. For each type of curtain fabric indicated, include durability, laundry temperature limits, fade resistance, applied curtain treatments, and fire-test-response characteristics.

- B. Shop Drawings: For curtains and tracks.

- 1. Show layout and types of cubicles, sizes of curtains, number of carriers, anchorage details, and conditions requiring accessories. Indicate dimensions taken from field measurements.
- 2. Include details of blocking for track support.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 10 inches (254 mm) in size.

- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of curtain material indicated.

- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of product required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:

- 1. Curtain Fabric: Not less than 10 inches (254 mm) square and showing complete pattern repeat, from dye lot used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Mark top and face of material.
- 2. Mesh Top: Not less than 10 inches (254 mm) square.
- 3. Curtain Track: Not less than 10 inches (254 mm) long.

4. Curtain Carrier: Full-size unit.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For curtains, tracks, and hardware to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Curtain Carriers and Track End Caps: (5) Full-size units.
 2. Curtains: (3) Full-size units.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Cubicle Curtains: Provide curtain fabrics with the following characteristics:
 1. Laundering: Launderable to a water temperature of not less than 160 deg F (71 deg C) .
 2. Flame Resistance: Provide fabrics identical to those that have passed NFPA 701 when tested by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Identify fabrics with appropriate markings of a qualified testing agency.

2.2 CUBICLE-CURTAIN SUPPORT SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 1. InPro Corporation (IPC).
 2. General Cubicle; C/S Construction Specialties.
 3. Nelson.
 4. Standard Textile.
- B. Extruded-Aluminum Curtain Track: Not less than 1-1/4 inches wide by 3/4 inch high (32 mm wide by 19 mm high).
 1. Track Minimum Wall Thickness: Manufacturer's standard.
 2. Curved Track: Factory-fabricated, 12-inch- (305-mm-)radius bends.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel.
- C. Curtain Track Accessories: Fabricate splices, end caps, connectors, end stops, coupling and joining sleeves, wall flanges, brackets, ceiling clips, and other accessories from same material and with same finish as track.

1. Suspended-Track Support: Not less than 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) square tube.
 2. End Stop: Removable with carrier hook.
- D. Curtain Roller Carriers: Two nylon rollers and nylon axle with chrome-plated steel hook.
- E. Exposed Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- F. Concealed Fasteners: Stainless steel.

2.3 CURTAINS

- A. Fabric: Curtain manufacturer's standard, 100 percent polyester; inherently and permanently flame resistant, stain resistant, and antimicrobial.
1. Basis of Design:
 - a. InPro Corporation
 2. Pattern: Mingle
 3. Width: Equal to track length from which curtain is hung plus 10 percent added fullness, but not less than 12 inches (305 mm) added fullness.
 4. Color: Fuse, Or As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Curtain Grommets: Two-piece, rolled-edge, rustproof, nickel-plated brass; spaced not more than 6 inches (152 mm) o.c.; machined into top hem.
- C. Mesh Top: Not less than 22-inch- (559-mm-) high mesh top.
1. Mesh: No. 50 nylon mesh.
- D. Snap Attachments: Provide manufacturer's standard nickel-plated brass snap attachments for modular panels.
- E. Curtain Tieback: Nickel-plated brass chain; one at each curtain termination.

2.4 CURTAIN FABRICATION

- A. Continuous Curtain Panels:
1. Width: Equal to track length from which curtain is hung plus 10 percent of added fullness, but not less than 12 inches (305 mm) of added fullness.
 2. Length: Equal to floor-to-ceiling height, minus depth of track and carrier at top, and minus clearance above the finished floor of 15 inches (381 mm).
 3. Mesh Top: Top hem of mesh not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) and not more than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide, triple thickness, reinforced with integral web, and double lockstitched. Double lockstitch bottom of mesh directly to 1/2-inch (13-mm) triple thickness, top hem of curtain fabric.
 4. Bottom Hem: Not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) and not more than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide, triple thickness, reinforced, and double lockstitched.

5. Side Hems: Not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) and not more than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide, with triple turned edges, and single lockstitched.
6. Vertical Seams: Not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide, double turned and double stitched.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install tracks level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. For tracks of up to 20 feet (6.0 m) in length, provide track fabricated from single, continuous length.
 1. Curtain-Track Mounting: Surface.
- C. Surface-Track Mounting: Fasten tracks to ceilings at intervals recommended by manufacturer. Fasten tracks to structure at each splice and tangent point of each corner. Center fasteners in track to ensure unencumbered carrier operation. Attach track to ceiling as follows:
 1. Attach track to suspended ceiling grid with manufacturer's proprietary clip.
- D. Suspended-Track Mounting: Install track with manufacturer's standard tubular aluminum suspended supports at intervals and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Fasten supports to structure. Provide supports at each splice and tangent point of each corner. Secure ends of track to wall with flanged fittings or brackets.
- E. Track Accessories: Install splices, end caps, connectors, end stops, coupling and joining sleeves, and other accessories as required for a secure and operational installation.
- F. Curtain Carriers: Provide curtain carriers adequate for 6-inch (152-mm) spacing along full length of curtain plus an additional carrier.
- G. Cubicle Curtains: Hang curtains on each curtain track. Secure with curtain tieback.

END OF SECTION 102123

SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall guards.
2. Impact-resistant handrails.
3. Corner guards.
4. End-wall guards.
5. Abuse-resistant wall coverings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for metal and plastic protective trim units, according to BHMA A156.6, used for armor, kick, mop, and push plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.

1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following products, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:

1. Wall Guards: 12 inches (300 mm) long. Include examples of joinery, corners, end caps, top caps, and field splices.
2. Corner and End-Wall Guards: 12 inches (300 mm) long. Include example top caps.

3. Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering: 6 by 6 inches (150 by 150 mm) square.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of handrail.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type of exposed plastic material.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.
 1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Wall-Guard and Handrail Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of cover installed, but no fewer than two, 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long units.
 2. Corner-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of cover installed, but no fewer than two, 48-inch- (1200-mm-) long units.
 3. Mounting and Accessory Components: Amounts proportional to the quantities of extra materials. Package mounting and accessory components with each extra material.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
 1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) during the period plastic materials are stored.
 2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
 3. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C).
 - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.
 - b. Store handrail covers in a horizontal position.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1.

2.3 WALL GUARDS

- A. Crash Rail: Heavy-duty assembly consisting of continuous snap-on plastic cover installed over concealed retainer; designed to withstand impacts.
 - 1. Basis-of Design
 - a. **WG-1** as indicated on Drawings
 - b. **WG-2** as indicated on Drawings
 - c. Others in compliance with Specifications, and as approved.
 - 2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.100-inch (2.5-mm) wall thickness; ` + as follows: in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.]
 - a. Profile: Flat.

- 1) Dimensions: Nominal 6 inches high by 1 inch deep (150 mm high by 25 mm deep)
- 2) Surface: Uniform.
- b. Color and Texture: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
3. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.080-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
4. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips designed for heavy-duty performance.
5. Bumper: Continuous, resilient bumper cushion(s).
6. End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; matching color cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
7. Accessories: Concealed splices and mounting hardware.
8. Mounting: Surface mounted directly to wall.

2.4 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard, assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
 1. Basis-of Design
 - a. CG-1 as indicated on Drawings
 - b. CG-2 as indicated on Drawings
 - c. CG-3 as indicated on Drawings
 - d. CG-4 as indicated on Drawings
 - e. Others in compliance with Specifications, and as approved.
 2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.078-inch (2.0-mm) wall thickness; as follows: in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Profile: Nominal 3-inch- (75-mm-) long leg and 1/4-inch (6-mm) corner radius.
 - b. Height: 4 feet (1.2 m).
 - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 3. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
 4. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
 5. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.

2.5 END-WALL GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover, End-Wall Guard <Insert drawing designation>: Manufacturer's standard assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over [continuous retainer] [continuous retainer at each corner, with end of wall covered by semirigid, abuse-resistant wall covering]; including mounting hardware.
 1. Basis-of Design
 - a. CG-1 as indicated on Drawings
 - b. CG-2 as indicated on Drawings

- c. CG-3 as indicated on Drawings
- d. CG-4 as indicated on Drawings
- e. Others in compliance with Specifications, and as approved.
2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.100-inch (2.5-mm) wall thickness; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Profile: Nominal 3-inch- (75-mm-) long leg and 1/4-inch (6-mm) corner radius.
 - b. Height: 4 feet (1.2 m).
 - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
4. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.

2.6 ABUSE-RESISTANT WALL COVERINGS

- A. Abuse-Resistant Sheet Wall Covering: Fabricated from semirigid, plastic sheet wall-covering material.
 1. Basis-of Design
 - a. WP-2 as indicated on Drawings
 - b. WP-3 as indicated on Drawings
 - c. WP-6 as indicated on Drawings
 - d. Others in compliance with Specifications, and as approved.
 2. Basis-of Design
 - a. WP-4 as indicated on Drawings. (Custom image upcharge allowance: \$500.)
 - b. WP-5A as indicated on Drawings (Custom image upcharge allowance: \$500.)
 - c. WP-5B as indicated on Drawings (Custom image upcharge allowance: \$500.)
 - d. Others in compliance with Specifications, and as approved.
 3. Basis-of Design
 - a. WP-7 as indicated on Drawings
 - b. Others in compliance with Specifications, and as approved.
 4. Size: 48 by 120 inches (1219 by 3048 mm) for roll.
 5. Sheet Thickness: 0.060 inch (1.5 mm).
 6. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 7. Height: As indicated.
 8. Trim and Joint Moldings: Extruded rigid plastic that matches wall-covering color.
 9. Mounting: Adhesive.
- B. Laminated, Impact-Resistant Wall Panels: Rigid wall panels consisting of semirigid, plastic sheet wall covering material factory laminated to high-impact-resistant core, with moisture-resistant vapor barrier factory laminated to reverse side of panel for stability.
 1. Basis-of Design – Panelized system at Entry
 - a. WP-1 as indicated on Drawings – See mounting Detail 4/A608 on Drawings.
 - b. Others in compliance with Specifications, and as approved.
 2. Composition: 0.04-inch- (1.02-mm-) thick plastic sheet laminated to 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick particleboard or medium-density fiberboard core.
 3. Sheet Size: 48 by 96 inches (1219 by 2438 mm).
 4. Height: As indicated.
 5. Sheet Edge: Square.
 6. Trim and Joint Moldings: Extruded rigid plastic that matches wall-covering color.

7. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
8. Mounting: Adhesive.

2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Polycarbonate Plastic Sheet: ASTM D6098, S-PC01, Class 1 or Class 2, abrasion resistant; with a minimum impact-resistance rating of 15 ft.-lbf/in. (800 J/m) of notch when tested according to ASTM D256, Test Method A.
- C. Solid Wood: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated, free of appearance defects, and selected for compatible grain and color.
- D. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- E. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- C. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.
- D. Wood Handrails: Miter corners and ends of wood handrails for returns.

2.9 FINISHES

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, fire rating, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
 - 1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. Mounting Heights: Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
- C. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
 - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
 - 2. Where splices occur in horizontal runs of more than 20 feet (6.1 m), splice aluminum retainers and plastic covers at different locations along the run, but no closer than 12 inches (305 mm) apart.
 - 3. Adjust end and] top caps as required to ensure tight seams.
- D. Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering: Install top and edge moldings, corners, and divider bars as required for a complete installation.
- E. Door-Frame Protectors: Install on both door jams.
- F. Fire Doors: Install protection according to the listing of each item.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 102600

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Public-use washroom accessories.
2. Private-use shower room accessories.
3. Private-use bathroom accessories.
4. Healthcare accessories.
5. Childcare accessories.
6. Underlavatory guards.
7. ~~Custodial accessories.~~

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for ceramic toilet and bath accessories.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
3. Include electrical characteristics.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each finish specified, full size.

1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
 - C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.
 - D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For grab bars and shower seats.
 1. Include structural design calculations indicating compliance with specified structural-performance requirements.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 WARRANTY
- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 2. Warranty Period: [10] years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Toilet-Compartment Occupancy-Indicator Systems: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace toilet-compartment occupancy-indicator systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: [Five] years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Hand Dryers: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace hand dryers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OWNER-FURNISHED MATERIALS

- A. Owner-Furnished Materials: Coordinate with Owner for Products to match existing facility standard equipment and Products to match existing facility's existing supplier's contracts.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf (1112 N) concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.
 - 2. Shower Seats: Installed units are able to resist 360 lbf (1601 N) applied in any direction and at any point.

2.3 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser TTH:
 - 1. Description: Roll-in-reserve dispenser with hinged front secured with tumbler lockset.
 - 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - 3. Operation: Spindleless with tension-spring controlled delivery .
 - 4. Capacity: Designed for 4-1/2- or 5-inch- (114- or 127-mm-) diameter tissue rolls.
 - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- C. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-2888
 - 1. Description: Roll-in-reserve dispenser with hinged front secured with tumbler lockset.
 - 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - 3. Operation: Spindleless with tension-spring controlled delivery .
 - 4. Capacity: Designed for 4-1/2- or 5-inch- (114- or 127-mm-) diameter tissue rolls.
 - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- D. Paper Towel (Folded) Dispenser PTD:
 - 1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-2620
 - 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - 3. Minimum Capacity: 400 C-fold or 525 multifold towels.
 - 4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 - 5. Lockset: Tumbler type.
 - 6. Refill Indicator: Pierced slots at sides or front.
- E. Automatic Paper Towel (Roll) Dispenser APTD:
 - 1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-72974
 - 2. Description: Automatic motion sensing mechanism with user-adjustable delay and paper towel length; electrically operated, with adapter for 110- to 240-V ac power supply.
 - 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - 4. Minimum Capacity: 8-inch- (203-mm-) wide, 800-foot- (244-m-) long roll.
 - 5. Material and Finish: ABS plastic, gray .
 - 6. Lockset: Tumbler type.

F. Waste Receptacle WR:

1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-3644
2. Mounting: Open top, Semirecessed.
3. Minimum Capacity: 12 gallon.
4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
5. Liner: Disposable vinyl liner.
6. Lockset: Tumbler type for waste receptacle.

G. Soap Dispenser LSD:

1. Description: Designed for manual operation and dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
2. Mounting: Vertically oriented, surface mounted.
3. Capacity: 40 fl-oz..
4. Materials: .Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin)
5. Lockset: Tumbler type.
6. Refill Indicator: Window type.

H. Grab Bar GB

1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-6806 x 36, Bobrick B-6806 x 48, Bobrick B-6806 x 24 (vertical)
2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.

I. Sanitary-Napkin and Tampon Vendor NOT INCLUDED:

J. Sanitary-Napkin Disposal Unit NOT INCLUDED:

K. Mirror Unit MR:

1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-165 2436
2. Frame: Stainless steel channel .
 - a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Size: 24" W x 36" H or as indicated on Drawings.
4. Hangers: Manufacturer's standard rigid, tamper and theft resistant.

L. Robe Hook RH

1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-67274Description: Double-prong unit.

2. Mounting: Concealed.
3. Material and Finish:Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin)

2.4 PUBLIC-USE SHOWER ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use shower room accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Shower Curtain Rod
 1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-207 x 3.
 2. Description: 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) outside diameter, straight rod.
 3. Configuration: As indicated on Drawings
 4. Mounting Flanges: Concealed fasteners; in manufacturer's standard material and finish matching rod .
 5. Rod Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- C. Shower Curtain
 1. `Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick B-204-2 Shower Curtain and B-204-1 Shower Curtaibn Hooke, Qty. (8)
 2. Size: Minimum 12 inches (305 mm) wider than opening by 72 inches (1829 mm) high.
 3. Material: Nylon-reinforced vinyl, minimum 9 oz. (255 g) or 0.008-inch- (0.2-mm-) thick vinyl, with integral antibacterial and flame-retardant agents.
 4. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
 5. Grommets: Corrosion resistant at minimum 6 inches (152 mm) o.c. through top hem.
 6. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless steel, spring wire curtain hooks with snap fasteners , sized to accommodate specified curtain rod. Provide one hook per curtain grommet.

2.5 LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of laundry accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Wheeled Medical Hamper (Item 209 on Drawing A100):
 1. Basis-of-Design as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved: R & B Wire Products, Inc. "Single Tall Medium-Duty Medical Hamper – 35” High" # 692, and (4) re-usable bags #641, 640, with high impact ABS lid, color as selected from manufacturer’s full range, and foot pedal operation of lid.
 2. 7/8” steel tubing, (Chrome finish.)
 3. Approximate size: 20” by 17 3/4 “ width by 35” height.
 4. 3” wheels.

2.6 HEALTHCARE ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of healthcare accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Wheeled Waste Receptacle (Item 215 on Drawing A100):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved: Toter "Curbside Collection Trash Cart," inches, 24 gallon, nesting, color as selected from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Integral molded saddle and metal lift bar.
 - 3. Approximate size: 24 1/2" by 19 3/4 " width by 34 1/2" height.
 - 4. 10" wheels, 224 lbs. capacity.
 - 5. 10-year warranty
- C. Wheeled Regulated Medical Waste Cart (Item 222 on Drawing A100):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved: Unifuse "MW-151 – MW Series 150 Gallon Regulated Medical Waste Cart," inches, 150 gallon, double bottom, nesting, color: Red.
 - 2. Lockable, with 360 degree rubber gasket and reinforced rim.
 - 3. Embossed biohazard permanent markings
 - 4. Approximate size: 51" by 31" width by 34" height.
 - 5. (4) 5" x 2" wheels on casters", 400 lbs. capacity
 - 6. 10-year warranty
- D. Open Head Regulated Medical Tissue Waste Drum (Item 223 on Drawing A100):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved: the Cary Company "56BL3Y 30 Gallon Plastic Drum," HDPE, nesting, color: Yellow.
 - 2. Chemical and weather resistant, Cover with Metal Lever Lock Ring Closure.
 - 3. Biohazard permanent markings
 - 4. Approximate size: 21" by 21" width by 29" height.
- E. Portable Triangular Hamper w/ Damping Lid (Item 238 on Drawing A100):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved: R&B Wire, Inc. "669 – Series Standard Triangular Hamper." Approximate size: 21" by 21" width by 32" height inches, 150 gallon, and triangular antimicrobial Hamper Bag.
 - 2. Adjustable height, 1" tubular steel, powder coated.
 - 3. (2) Foot pedals operate lid.
 - 4. Warranty

2.7 HAND DRYER: NOT INCLUDED

2.8 CHILDCARE ACCESSORIES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain childcare accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Diaper-Changing Station DCS:

1. Basis-of Design: Bobrick Bathroom Accessories as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Bobrick /Koala Kare KB200-05Description: Horizontal unit that opens by folding down from stored position and with child-protection strap.
 - a. Engineered to support minimum of 250-lb (113-kg) <Insert value> static load when opened.
2. Mounting: Surface mounted, with unit projecting not more than 4 inches (102 mm) from wall when closed.
3. Operation: By pneumatic shock-absorbing mechanism.
4. Material and Finish: HDPE in manufacturer's standard color as selected from manufacturer's full range.
5. Liner Dispenser: Provide built-indispenser for disposable sanitary liners.

2.9 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS:

A. Underlavatory Guard

1. Basis-of Design: Truebro as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Truebro Lav Guard 2.>
2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.10 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

Retain one of two options in "Source Limitations" Paragraph below or revise to suit Project. Retain first option if manufacturers can provide all custodial accessories required for Project.

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of custodial accessory from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Janitor's Cart: (Item #136 on Drawing A100):

1. Basis-of Design: Rubbermaid Commercial as indicated, or pending conformance to the Specifications, others as approved.: Rubbermaid Commercial Janitor Cart with Zipper Yellow Vinyl Bag #RCP-617388.
2. Description: Molded plastic with (3) integral shelves, front platform for 32 gallon trash can or mop bucket.

3. Size: Approx. 12 $\frac{3}{4}$ inches (406 mm) long by 46 inches (152 mm) deep.

2.11 MATERIALS

Retain this article if not naming manufacturers' products or if material descriptions are used in part to determine product selection.

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch- (0.8-mm-) minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch- (0.9-mm-) minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.12 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of [six] keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

- C. Shower Seats: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguisher.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples 6 by 6 inches (150 by 150 mm) square.

F. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated. Match existing facility's standard (CONFIRM Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type 3-A:40-B:C, 10-lb (4.6-kg))
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET: **FEC**

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
 - 1. American Specialties, Inc.
 - 2. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - 3. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - 4. Others, as approved.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.043-inch- (1.09-mm-) thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
 - 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm)] backbend depth.
- E. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim. Provide surface-mounted cabinets at all fire-rated walls as indicated on Drawings
- F. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.

- G. Door Material: Steel sheet.
- H. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.
- I. Door Glazing: Acrylic sheet.
 - 1. Acrylic Sheet Color: Clear transparent acrylic sheet.
- J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide recessed door pull and friction latch, manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- K. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as directed by Architect.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
 - 2) Application Process: Decals.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Black.
 - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
- L. Materials:
 - 1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
 - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
 - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Transparent Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), 3 mm thick, with Finish 1 (smooth or polished).

2.3 REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semi-recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated, or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: 42 inches (1067 mm)] above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
 - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification:
 - 1. Apply decals at locations indicated.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers provided by Contactor.
- B. Owner-Furnished Material: Owner's Supplier and equipment size for facility's standard hand-carried fire extinguishers.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with Owner to match existing facility's standard (CONFIRM Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type 3-A:40-B:C, 10-lb (4.6-kg))

- B. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - c. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
- 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
- 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
- 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.

- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container 3-A:40-B:C, 10-lb (4.6-kg) nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in manufacturer's standard enameled-steel container.

- 1. UL-rated.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.

- a. American Specialties, Inc.
- b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
- c. Larsens Manufacturing Company.

Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer

- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

- 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

- a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Mounting Brackets: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches (1067 mm) above finished floor.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

SECTION 105100 - SECURITY PRODUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Security wall panels for gypsum wall assemblies.
 - 2. Sliding, transaction drawers.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for security windows. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in adjacent construction. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, weights and finishes for equipment.
- B. Shop Drawings: For transaction drawers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Hardware

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store on raised blocks to prevent moisture damage.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.7 WARRANTY

1. Warranty Period: Min. one year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS FOR TRANSACTION DRAWER

A. Ready Access, model RA-MDTD13x9x8.

B. Shuresafe, model 670198.

C. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. Ballistics Resistance:

- a. Security panels to be Listed and labeled as Level 4 when tested according to UL 752.
- b. Transaction drawer to have Level 3 bullet resistant faceplate insert.

D. Materials:

1. Security Panels: Reinforced polyester laminate.
2. Transaction Drawer: Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A666 or ASTM A240/A240M, austenitic stainless steel, Type 304.

2.2 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

2.3 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.

B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.

2.4 TRANSACTION DRAWER ACCESSORIES

A. Removable full length deal tray.

B. Interior lock.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of transaction drawer.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of transaction drawer connections before security window installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of transaction drawer.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Fasteners: Install transaction drawers using fasteners recommended by manufacturer with head style appropriate for installation requirements, strength, and finish of adjacent materials. Provide stainless-steel fasteners in stainless-steel materials.
- B. Sealants: Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for installing sealants, fillers, and gaskets.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended in writing by manufacturer for this purpose.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed products to verify compliance with requirements. Prepare inspection reports and indicate compliance with and deviations from the Contract Documents.
- B. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional work. Prepare inspection reports.
- C. Prepare field quality-control certification that states installed products and their installation comply with requirements in the Contract Documents.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust transaction drawers to provide a tight fit at contact points for smooth operation and secure enclosure.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean surfaces promptly after installation of transaction drawers. Take care to avoid damaging the finish.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transaction drawers.

END OF SECTION 085653

SECTION 105113 - METAL LOCKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Welded corridor lockers, (Single AND double-tier as indicated on Drawings.)
 - 2. Built-In Combination Locks
 - 3. Locker benches.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of metal locker and bench.
- B. Shop Drawings: For metal lockers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show locker trim, locks, and accessories.
 - 3. Include locker identification system and numbering sequence. Coordinate with Owner.
- C. Samples: For each color specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard size:
 - 1. Lockers and equipment.
 - 2. Combination Locks
 - 3. Locker benches.
- F. Product Schedule: For lockers.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For adjusting, repairing, and replacing locker doors and latching mechanisms to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. The following metal locker hardware items equal to [10] percent of amount installed for each type and finish installed, but no fewer than five units:
 - a. Locks.
 - b. Blank identification plates.
 - c. Hooks.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver metal lockers until spaces to receive them are clean, dry, and ready for their installation.
- B. Deliver master and control keys combination control charts to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of recessed openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of work specified in other Sections to ensure that metal lockers can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures.
 - b. Faulty operation of latches and other door hardware.
2. Damage from deliberate destruction and vandalism is excluded.
3. Warranty Period for Welded Metal Lockers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain metal lockers, locker benches, and accessories from single source from single locker manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: For lockers and locker benches indicated to be accessible, comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design," the ABA standards of the Federal agency having jurisdiction and ICC A117.1.

2.3 WELDED CORRIDOR LOCKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI Storage Solutions, an ASI Group company; Welded Corridor Lockers or available manufacturers offering comparable products that may be incorporated into the Work to include, but not limited to the following:
 1. Penco Products, Inc.
 2. Republic Storage Systems, LLC.
- B. Single and Double-tier configuration as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Doors: One piece; fabricated from 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; formed into channel shape with double bend at vertical edges and with right-angle single bend at horizontal edges.
 1. Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard reinforcing angles, channels, or stiffeners for doors more than 15 inches (381 mm) wide; welded to inner face of doors.
 2. Door Style: Vented panel as follows:
 - a. Louvered Vents: No fewer than six louver openings at top and bottom for single-tier, three louver openings at top and bottom for double-tier lockers.
 - b. Security Vents: Manufacturer's standard, stamped horizontal or vertical.
- D. Body: Assembled by welding body components together. Fabricate from unperforated steel sheet with thicknesses as follows:

1. Tops, Bottoms, and Sides: 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal thickness.
 2. Backs: 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal thickness.
 3. Shelves: 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal thickness, with double bend at front and single bend at sides and back.
- E. Frames: Channel formed; fabricated from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom main frames factory welded into vertical main frames. Form continuous, integral, full-height door strikes on vertical main frames.
1. Cross Frames between Tiers: Channel formed and fabricated from same material as main frames; welded to vertical main frames.
- F. Hinges: Welded to door and attached to door frame with no fewer than two factory-installed rivets per hinge that are completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.
1. Continuous Hinges: Manufacturer's standard, steel, full height.
- G. Recessed Door Handle and Latch: Stainless steel cup with integral door pull, recessed so locking device does not protrude beyond door face; pry and vandal resistant.
1. Single-Point Latching: Nonmoving latch hook with steel padlock loop that projects through recessed cup and is finished to match metal locker body.
 - a. Latch Hook: Equip each door with one latch hook, fabricated from 0.120-inch (3.04-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded midway up full-height door strike; with resilient silencer.
- H. Locks: Built-in combination locks.
- I. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch (9 mm) high.
- J. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.
- K. Coat Rods: 1-inch- (25-mm-) diameter steel, chrome finished, Manufacturer's standard.
- L. Legs: 6 inches (152 mm) high; formed by extending vertical frame members, or fabricated from 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to bottom of locker.
1. Closed Front and End Bases: Fabricated from 0.036-inch (0.91-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- M. Continuous Zee Base: Fabricated from, manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
1. Height: 4 inches (102 mm).
- N. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet, with a pitch of approximately 20 degrees.
1. Closures: Vertical-end type.

2. Extend sloped tops over locker filler panel extensions and neatly field-miter at interior corners of locker runs. Field paint to match locker finishes.
- O. Recess Trim: Fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- P. Filler Panels: Fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet. Finish to match lockers.
- Q. Boxed End Panels: Fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- R. Finished End Panels: Fabricated from 0.024-inch (0.61-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet to cover unused penetrations and fasteners, except for perimeter fasteners, at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
- S. Materials:
 1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with A60 (ZF180) zinc-iron, alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.
- T. Finish: Powder coat minimum 2 Mils (0.051mm) thick.
 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 LOCKER BENCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. ASI Storage Solutions.
 2. Penco Products, Inc.
 3. Republic Storage Systems, LLC.
- B. Provide bench units with overall assembly height of 17-1/2 inches (445 mm).
- C. Bench Tops: Manufacturer's standard one-piece units, with rounded corners and edges.
 1. Size: Minimum 24 inches wide by 1-1/2 inches thick (610 mm wide by 38 mm thick).
 2. Laminated clear hardwood with one coat of clear sealer on all surfaces and one coat of clear lacquer on top and sides.
- D. Fixed-Bench Pedestals: Manufacturer's standard supports, with predrilled fastener holes for attaching bench top and anchoring to floor, complete with fasteners and anchors, and as follows:
 1. Tubular Steel:
 - a. 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) diameter steel tubing threaded on both ends, with standard pipe flange at top and bell-shaped cast-iron base; with baked-enamel or powder-coat finish; anchored with exposed fasteners.

- 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

E. Materials:

1. Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
2. Plastic Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGP.
3. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
4. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, cold rolled.
5. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate metal lockers square, rigid, without warp, and with metal faces flat and free of dents or distortion. Make exposed metal edges safe to touch and free of sharp edges and burrs.
1. Form body panels, doors, shelves, and accessories from one-piece steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Provide fasteners, filler plates, supports, clips, and closures as required for complete installation.
- B. Fabricate each metal locker with an individual door and frame; individual top, bottom, and back; and common intermediate uprights separating compartments.
- C. Equipment: Provide each locker with an identification plate and the following equipment:
1. Single-Tier Units: Shelf, one double-prong ceiling hook, and two single-prong wall hooks.
 2. Double-Tier Units: One double-prong ceiling hook and two single-prong wall hooks.
 3. Coat Rods: For each compartment of each locker.
 4. Open-Front Athletic Lockers: Two single-prong wall hooks bolted to locker back and coat rod.
- D. Welded Construction: Factory preassemble metal lockers by welding all joints, seams, and connections; with no bolts, nuts, screws, or rivets used in assembly of main locker groups. Factory weld main locker groups into one-piece structures. Grind exposed welds smooth and flush.
- E. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:
1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.
 2. Where hooks, coat rods, or additional shelves are provided, locate no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor.
- F. Continuous Zee Base: Fabricated in lengths as long as practical to enclose base and base ends; finished to match lockers.
- G. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated in lengths as long as practical, without visible fasteners at splice locations; finished to match lockers.

1. Sloping-top corner fillers, mitered.
- H. Recess Trim: Fabricated with minimum 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) face width and in lengths as long as practical; finished to match lockers.
- I. Filler Panels: Fabricated in an unequal leg angle shape; finished to match lockers. Provide slip-joint filler angle formed to receive filler panel.
- J. Boxed End Panels: Fabricated with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide edge dimension, and designed for concealing fasteners and holes at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
 1. Provide one-piece panels for double-row (back-to-back) locker ends.
- K. Finished End Panels: Fabricated to conceal unused penetrations and fasteners, except for perimeter fasteners, at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
 1. Provide one-piece panels for double-row (back-to-back) locker ends.
- L. Center Dividers: Full-depth, vertical partitions between bottom and shelf; finished to match lockers.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Zinc- or nickel-plated steel, slotless-type, exposed bolt heads; with self-locking nuts or lock washers for nuts on moving parts.
- B. Anchors: Material, type, and size required for secure anchorage to each substrate.
 1. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls, and elsewhere as indicated, for corrosion resistance.
 2. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and floors or support bases, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lockers level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.

1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 36 inches (910 mm) o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
 2. Anchor single rows of metal lockers to walls near top and bottom of lockers and to floor.
 3. Anchor back-to-back metal lockers to floor.
- B. Welded Lockers: Connect groups together with manufacturer's standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on face frames.
- C. Equipment:
1. Attach hooks with at least two fasteners.
 2. Identification Plates: Identify metal lockers with identification indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Attach plates to each locker door, near top, centered, with at least two aluminum rivets.
 - b. Attach plates to upper shelf of each open-front metal locker, centered, with a least two aluminum rivets.
- D. Trim: Fit exposed connections of trim, fillers, and closures accurately together to form tight, hairline joints, with concealed fasteners and splice plates.
1. Attach recess trim to recessed metal lockers with concealed clips.
 2. Attach filler panels with concealed fasteners. Locate filler panels where indicated on Drawings.
 3. Attach sloping-top units to metal lockers, with closures at exposed ends.
 4. Attach boxed end panels using concealed fasteners to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers.
 5. Attach finished end panels using fasteners only at perimeter to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers.
- E. Fixed Benches: Provide no fewer than two pedestals for each bench, uniformly spaced not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) apart. Securely fasten tops of pedestals to undersides of bench tops, and anchor bases to floor.
- 3.3 ADJUSTING
- A. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Adjust doors and latches to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- 3.4 PROTECTION
- A. Protect metal lockers from damage, abuse, dust, dirt, stain, or paint. Do not permit use during construction.
- B. Touch up marred finishes, or replace metal lockers that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by locker manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 105113

SECTION 105330 – PRE-ENGINEERED CANOPIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Description of Work

1. Work in this section includes furnishing and installation of extruded aluminum overhead cantilever supported canopies.
2. Related Items and Considerations
 0. Flashing of various designs may be required. Generic flashing supplied by Mapes. Specialty flashing to be supplied by installer.
 1. Determine wall construction, make-up and thickness.
 2. Ensure adequate wall condition to carry canopy loads where required.
 3. Consider water drainage away from canopy where necessary.
 4. Any necessary removal or relocation of existing structures, obstructions or materials.

1.3 Field Measurement

1. Confirm dimensions prior to preparation of shop drawings when possible.
2. If requested, supply manufacturer s standard literature and specifications for canopies.
3. Submit shop drawings showing structural component locations/positions, material dimensions and details of construction and assembly.

1.4 Performance Requirements

1. Canopy must conform to local building codes.
2. PE Stamped calculations are required and must be signed and sealed by an engineer licensed within the state canopy is installed.

1.5 Deliver, Storage, Handling

1. Deliver and store all canopy components in protected areas.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.1 Basis of Design Manufacturer

1. Mapes Canopies
Lincoln, Nebraska
Phone: 1-888-273-1132.
Fax: 1-877-455-6572.

2.2 Materials

1. Decking shall consist of a 2 3/4" Extruded .078" Decking.

2. Intermediate framing members shall be extruded aluminum, alloy 6063-T6, in profile and thickness shown in current Mapes brochures.
3. Cantilever supported brackets shall be standard finish.
4. Fascia shall be standard extruded 12" Smooth Face style.

2.3 Finishes

1. Finish type shall be 2-Coat Kynar Finish.

2.4 Fabrication

1. Ship with the materials precut to size for field assembly.
2. All connections shall be mechanically assembled utilizing 3/16 fasteners with a minimum shear stress of 350 lb. Pre-welded or factory-welded connections are not acceptable.
3. Concealed drainage. Water shall drain from covered surfaces into intermediate trough and be directed to Downspout from Rear Gutter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Inspection

1. Confirm that surrounding area is ready for the canopy installation.
2. Installer shall confirm dimensions and elevations to be as shown on drawings provided by canopy manufacturer.
3. Erection shall be performed by an approved installer and scheduled after all concrete, masonry and roofing in the area is completed.

3.2 Installation

1. Installation shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer's shop drawings. Particular attention should be given to protecting the finish during handling and erection.
2. After installation, entire system shall be left in a clean condition.

END OF SECTION 107313

SECTION 107313 - EXTERIOR SUN CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 Work Included

- A. Furnish and install architectural aluminum curtain wall complete with integral exterior sunshade device and related components as shown on drawings and specified in this section.
- B. Sunshade shall be designed as an integral part of EFCO Series 403X Storefront System. Other manufacturers requesting approval to bid their product as an equal must submit the following information fifteen days prior to close of bidding.
 - 1. A proposal drawing showing full size details of all sunshade and curtain wall components including all anchors, sunshade supports, and building attachments.
 - 2. Engineering calculations documenting compliance with requirements of Section 1.05.
- C. Single Source Requirement
 - 1. All products listed in Section 1.02 shall be by the same manufacturer.

1.02 Related Work

- A. Section 08 41 13 – Aluminum – Framed Entrances and Storefronts
- B. Section 08 44 13 – Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls

1.03 Items Furnished but Not Installed

1.04 Items Installed but Not Furnished

1.05 Performance Requirements

- A. Sunshade must be designed to resist 34 psf wind load.
- B. Sunshade must be designed to resist 80 psf snow load.

1.06 References

1.07 Submittals

- A. Contractor shall submit shop drawings; finish samples, test reports, and warranties.
 - 1. Samples of materials as may be requested without cost to owner, i.e., metal, glass, fasteners, anchors, frame sections, mullion section, corner section, etc.

1.08 Warranties

- A. Total Storefront Installation
 - 1. The responsible contractor shall assume full responsibility and warrant for one year the satisfactory performance of the total curtain wall installation. This includes the glass (including insulated units), glazing, sunshade device anchorage and setting system, sealing, flashing, etc. as it relates to air, water, and structural adequacy and the specifications and approved shop drawings.

2. Any deficiencies due to such elements not meeting the specifications shall be corrected by the responsible contractor at their expense during the warranty period.
- B. Sunshade Material and Workmanship
1. Provide written guarantee against defects in material and workmanship for 10 years from the date of final shipment.
- C. Finish
1. Warranty period shall be for 20 years from the date of final shipment.
 2. Provide organic finish warranty based on AAMA standard 2605.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 Materials

- A. Aluminum
1. Extruded aluminum shall be 6063-T6 alloy and temper.
- B. Anchors
1. Perimeter and floor line anchors shall be aluminum or steel. All steel anchors shall be properly insulated from the aluminum.

2.02 Fabrication

- A. General
1. All aluminum horizontal extrusions (blades) shall have a minimum wall thickness of .063" (1.5 mm) to .125" (3 mm).
 2. Sunshade "arms" and mullion clips shall be extrusions with a nominal wall thickness of .25" (6 mm).
- B. Sunshade Device
1. Horizontal components (blades) shall be mechanically fastened by means of extruded aluminum screw splines.

2.03.1 Finishes

1. Organic
 - a. Liquid Fluoropolymer Aluminum Extrusion Coatings, AAMA 2605-20: Minimum 70 percent PVDF resin by weight, in color coat [and clear topcoat, if required]. Color as selected from one of the following:
 - I. EFCO Ultrapon Color Card
 - II. Sherwin-Williams Coil Coatings Fluropon Color Card – [Fluropon] [Fluropon Classic] [Fluropon Classic II] [Fluropon Premiere]
 - III. Sherwin-Williams Coil Coatings Metal Trends Color Card - Sherwin-Williams Coil Coatings Fluropon Color Card – [Fluropon] [Fluropon Classic] [Fluropon Classic II] [Fluropon Premiere]

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 Inspection

A. Job Conditions

1. All openings shall be prepared by others to the proper size and shall be plumb, level, and in the proper location and alignment as shown on the architect's drawings.

3.02 Installation

- A. Use only skilled tradesmen with work done in accordance with approved shop drawings and established specifications, and erect all curtain wall components to all building bench marks and column center lines.

- B. Plumb and align storefront faces in a single plane for each wall plane, and erect curtain wall materials square and true. Adequately anchor to maintain positions permanently when subjected to normal thermal movement, building movement, and specified wind loads.

- C. Adjust windows in storefront for proper operation after installation.

- D. Furnish and apply sealants to provide a weather tight installation at all joints and intersections and at opening perimeters. Wipe off excess material, leave all exposed surfaces and joints clean and smooth.

3.03 Anchorage

- A. Adequately anchor to maintain positions permanently when subjected to normal thermal movement, specified building movement, and specified wind loads.

3.04 Protection and Cleaning

- A. The general contractor shall protect the aluminum materials and finish against damage from construction activities and harmful substances. The general contractor shall remove any protective coatings as directed by the architect, and shall clean the aluminum surfaces as recommended for the type of finish applied.

- B. A bi-annual sweetwater rinse is recommended to prohibit dirt, dust, and debris from accumulation on the surface of the coating and to help maintain the aesthetic of the coating.

END OF SECTION 107313

SECTION 107516 - GROUND-SET FLAGPOLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes ground-set flagpoles made from aluminum.
- B. Owner-Furnished Material: Flags (Nylon or Cotton.)

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operating characteristics, fittings, accessories, and finishes for flagpoles.
- B. Shop Drawings: For flagpoles.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, and attachment details. Show general arrangement, jointing, fittings, accessories, grounding, anchoring, and support.
 - 2. Include section, and details of foundation system.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For flagpoles.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flagpoles to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Spiral wrap flagpoles with heavy paper and enclose in a hard fiber tube or other protective container.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flagpoles as complete units, including fittings, accessories, bases, and anchorage devices, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design flagpole assemblies.
- B. Seismic Performance: Flagpole assemblies shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Structural Performance: Flagpole assemblies, including anchorages and supports, shall withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine according to NAAMM FP 1001. Basic wind speed for Project location is 50 mph (Flagged,) 94 MPH (Unflagged.).
 - 2. Base flagpole design on nylon or cotton flags of maximum standard size suitable for use with flagpole or flag size indicated, whichever is more stringent.

2.3 ALUMINUM FLAGPOLES

- A. Aluminum Flagpoles: Cone-tapered flagpoles fabricated from seamless extruded tubing complying with ASTM B241/B241M, Alloy 6063, with a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm).
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. American Flagpole.
 - b. Concord American Flagpole.
 - c. US Flag & Flagpole Supply, LLC.
- B. Exposed Height:
 - 1. Center Poles: 30 feet.
 - 2. (2) Flanking Poles: 25 feet.
- C. Construct flagpoles in one piece if possible. If more than one piece is necessary, comply with the following:
 - 1. Fabricate shop and field joints without using fasteners, screw collars, or lead caulking.
 - 2. Provide flush hairline joints using self-aligning, snug-fitting, internal sleeves.
- D. Metal Foundation Tube: Manufacturer's standard corrugated-steel foundation tube, 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) wall thickness with 3/16-inch (4.8-mm) steel bottom plate and support plate; 3/4-

inch- (19-mm-) diameter, steel ground spike; and steel centering wedges welded together. Galvanize foundation tube after assembly. Furnish loose hardwood wedges at top of foundation tube for plumbing pole.

1. Flashing Collar: Same material and finish as flagpole.
- E. Finial Ball: Flush-seam ball, sized as indicated or, if not indicated, to match flagpole-butt diameter.
1. 0.063-inch (1.6-mm) spun aluminum, finished to match flagpole.
- F. Internal Halyard, Winch System: Manually operated winch with control stop device and removable handle, stainless-steel cable halyard, and concealed revolving truck assembly with plastic-coated counterweight and sling. Furnish flush access door secured with cylinder lock. Finish truck assembly to match flagpole.
1. Halyard Flag Snaps: Chromium-plated bronze swivel snap hooks with neoprene or vinyl covers. Furnish two per halyard.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M.
- B. Drainage Material: Crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; coarse aggregate.
- C. Sand: ASTM C33/C33M, fine aggregate.
- D. Elastomeric Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane joint sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Natural Satin Finish: AA-M32, fine, directional, medium satin polish; buff complying with AA-M20; seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41 or AA-M12C22A31.
 1. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare uncoated metal flagpoles that are set in foundation tubes by painting below-grade portions with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Foundation Excavation: Excavate to neat clean lines in undisturbed soil. Remove loose soil and foreign matter from excavation and moisten earth before placing concrete. Place and compact drainage material at excavation bottom.
- C. Provide forms where required due to unstable soil conditions and for perimeter of flagpole base at grade. Secure and brace forms to prevent displacement during concreting.
- D. Foundation Tube: Place foundation tube, center, and brace to prevent displacement during concreting. Place concrete. Plumb and level foundation tube and allow concrete to cure.
- E. Sleeves: Locate and secure sleeves in forms by bracing to reinforcement and forms.
- F. Anchor Bolts: Locate and secure anchor bolts in forms with templates and by tying to reinforcement.
- G. Place concrete, as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Compact concrete in place by using vibrators. Moist-cure exposed concrete for no fewer than seven days or use nonstaining curing compound.
- H. Trowel exposed concrete surfaces to a smooth, dense finish, free of trowel marks, and uniform in texture and appearance. Provide positive slope for water runoff to perimeter of concrete base.

3.2 FLAGPOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install flagpoles where indicated and according to Shop Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Foundation Tube: Place flagpole in tube, seated on bottom plate between steel centering wedges, and install hardwood wedges to secure flagpole in place. Place and compact sand in foundation tube and remove hardwood wedges. Seal top of foundation tube with a 2-inch (50-mm) layer of elastomeric joint sealant and cover with flashing collar.
- C. Baseplate: Cast anchor bolts in concrete foundation. Install baseplate on washers placed over leveling nuts on anchor bolts and adjust until flagpole is plumb. After flagpole is plumb, tighten retaining nuts and fill space under baseplate solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout. Finish exposed grout surfaces smooth and slope 45 degrees away from edges of baseplate.

END OF SECTION 107516

SECTION 111319 - STATIONARY LOADING DOCK EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Stationary loading dock lifts (scissor lifts).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for curb angles and platform edge channels.
 - 2. Section 083323 "Overhead Coiling Doors".
 - 3. Section 083613 "Sectional Doors".

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Operating Range: Maximum amount of travel above and below the loading dock level.
- B. Working Range: Recommended amount of travel above and below the loading dock level for which loading and unloading operations can take place.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of loading dock equipment indicated to be attached to or recessed into concrete or masonry, and furnish anchoring devices with templates, diagrams, and instructions for their installation
- B. Coordinate installation of cast-in-place items. Furnish setting drawings and templates.
- C. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of loading dock equipment with connections to power supplies and interlocked equipment.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for stationary loading dock equipment.

2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For stationary loading dock equipment.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of anchors and each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Product Test Reports: For each dock leveler, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

1. Indicate compliance of dock levelers with requirements in MH 30.1 for determining rated capacity based on comprehensive testing within last two years of current products.
2. Submittal Form: According to MH 30.1.

D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For stationary loading dock equipment to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with stationary loading dock equipment, including dimensions, slopes of driveways, and required heights of loading equipment, by field measurements before fabrication.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace dock levelers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including cracked or broken structural support members, load-bearing welds, and front and rear hinges.
 - b. Faulty operation of operators, control system, or hardware.
 - c. Deck plate failures including cracked plate or permanent deformation in excess of 1/4 inch (6 mm) between deck supports.
 - d. Hydraulic system failures including failure of hydraulic seals and cylinders.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Structural Assembly: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Hydraulic System: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Warranty shall be for unlimited usage of leveler for the specified rated capacity over the term of the warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STATIONARY LOADING DOCK LIFTS

- A. General: Stationary, scissors-type, single-leg, hydraulic dock lift of capacity, size, and construction indicated; complete with controls, safety devices, and accessories required. Basis of Design: Kelley Dock Lifts (Exterior Scissor Lifts) Pit-mounted KDL-Series, or products by others in compliance with Specifications and as approved.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Standard: MH 29.1.
- D. Rated Capacity: Lifting capacity of not less than 8000 lb (3629 kg) with axle loads of 6000 lb (at ends and 4000 lb at sides.
- E. Platform: Nonskid, safety-tread heavy hot-dip galvanized- steel deck plate.
 - 1. Platform Size: 72 inches (1829 mm) long by 72 inches (1829 mm) wide
 - 2. Platform Guarding: Enclosure to comply with requirements in MH 29.1.

3. Removable Guard Rails: Provide hot-dip galvanized-steel guard rails on two sides of platform with a single, removable chain across each end. Provide guard rails not less than 39 inches (991 mm) high with midrail and 4-inch- (102-mm-) high, kick plate at bottom.
- F. Bridge: Nonskid, safety-tread, hot-dip galvanized-steel plate.
1. Hinged Bridge: Hinged, throw-over bridge bolted to full-length, heavy-duty, piano-type hinge welded to toe guard at end of platform. Provide bridge complete with heavy-duty lifting chains. Chamfer edge of bridge to minimize obstructing wheels of material-handling vehicles.
 2. Size: 18 inches (457 mm) long by 72 inches (1829 mm) wide.
 3. Locations: End.
- G. Function: Dock lifts shall compensate for differences in height between truck bed and loading platform.
1. Vertical Travel and Travel Speed: 15 mph.
 2. Vertical Travel: Maximum of 60 (1524) inches (mm) from a lowered height of 12 (305) inches (mm) for a total raised height of 72 (1829) inches (mm).
 3. Travel Speed: Nominal raising speed of 15 (.075) fpm (m/s).
 4. Hinged Throw-over Bridge Operation: Manual.
- H. Hydraulic Operating System: Self-contained, electric, hydraulic power unit for raising and lowering lift; of size, type, and operation needed for capacity of lift indicated; controlled from a remotely located push-button station.
1. Power Unit: Consisting of continuous-duty motor, high-pressure gear pump, valve manifold, oil-line filters, and oil reservoir.
 - a. Equip manifold with relief valve, check valve, pressure-compensated flow-control valve, and solenoid valve and with provisions for lowering lift manually if power fails.
 - b. Equip reservoir, valve manifold, and pressure line with oil-line filters.
 2. Cylinders: Equip lift with not less than two heavy-duty, high-pressure, hydraulic, ram-type cylinders. Rams shall be manufacturer's standard, either direct-displacement-plunger or rod-and-piston type with positive internal stops. Cylinder rods shall be chrome plated and polished.
 - a. Rate of Descent Protection: Pressure-compensated flow control or hydraulic velocity fuse to limit down speed for each cylinder.
 3. Remote-Control Station: Multibutton control station of the constant-pressure type with UP and DOWN push buttons. Controller shall consist of magnetic motor starter with three-pole adjustable overloads and 24-V control transformer with 4-A, fused secondary prewired to terminal strips and enclosed in NEMA ICS 6, Type 12 waterproof exterior box.
 - a. Upper-Travel-Limit Switch: Equip unit with manufacturer's standard, adjustable, upper-travel-limit switch.

- I. Construction: Fabricate lift from structural-steel shapes rigidly welded and reinforced for maximum strength, safety, and stability. Design assembly to withstand deformation during both operating and stored phases of service. Provide mounting brackets and removable lifting eyes for ease of installation.
 - 1. Scissors Mechanism: Fabricate leg members from heavy, hot-dip galvanized- steel-formed tube or plate members to provide maximum strength and rigidity.
 - 2. Scissors Configuration: [Single leg] [Multiple width] [Multiple length].
 - 3. Bearings: Pivot points with permanently lubricated antifriction bushings or sealed ball-bearings for minimum maintenance.
 - 4. Maintenance Leg: Removable, safety maintenance leg or hinged, safety maintenance bars.
 - 5. Mounting: Pit.
- J. Materials:
 - 1. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
 - 2. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from steel plate complying with ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 55 (380).
 - 3. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold formed.
- K. Dock Lift Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on factory finish unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish loading dock equipment after assembly and testing.
- B. Hot-Dip Galvanizing: Comply with the following:
 - 1. ASTM A123/A123M for iron and steel loading dock equipment.
 - 2. ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M for iron and steel hardware for loading dock equipment.
- C. Spray Zinc Metallizing: ASTM B833.
- D. Electrodeposited Zinc Coatings: ASTM B633.
- E. Steel Prime Paint Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
- F. Baked-on Factory Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - 1. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Toe Guards: Paint to comply with ANSI Z535.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical systems for loading dock equipment to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls and floors of pits for suitable conditions where recessed loading dock equipment is to be installed. Pits shall be plumb and square and properly sloped for drainage from back to front of loading dock.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Set curb angles in concrete edges of dock-leveler recessed pits with tops flush with loading platform. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- B. Set curb angles in concrete edges of truck-leveler recessed pits with tops flush with driveway. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- C. Place self-forming pan system for edge-of-dock levelers in proper relation to loading platform before pouring concrete.
- D. Clean recessed pits of debris.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install loading dock equipment as required for a complete installation.
 - 1. Rough-in electrical connections.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STATIONARY LOADING DOCK LIFTS

- A. Attach dock lifts securely to floor of recessed pit.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRUCK RESTRAINTS

- A. Attach truck restraints in a manner that complies with requirements for arrangement and height required for device to engage vehicle rear-impact guard. Interconnect control panel and signals with dock leveler.
 - 1. Pit-Mounted Units: Anchor truck restraints to concrete pit with expansion anchors and bolts.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust loading dock equipment to function smoothly and safely, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Test dock levelers for vertical travel and adjust to maintain operating range indicated.
- C. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished loading dock equipment, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of loading dock equipment Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper loading dock equipment operation at rated speed and capacity. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain loading dock equipment.

END OF SECTION 111319

SECTION 10 1700 - MEDICAL EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Specification Section 1017800 Mortuary Equipment for specialized mortuary specific equipment indicated on the A-100 series drawings, to be furnished and installed by the contractor.
- C. Specification Section 102800 Toilet, Bath and Laundry Accessories for additional equipment indicated on the A-100 series drawings, to be furnished and installed by the contractor.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes: [equipment list number]
 - 1. Wall Mounted Computer Work Station [203].
 - 2. Combination Lab Refrigerator / Freezer [205].
 - 3. Drying Cabinet [206].
 - 4. Biological Safety Cabinet [211].
 - 5. Large Capacity Drying Cabinet [220].

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit in accordance with Section 01 3300
 - 1. Submit for each product furnished by Contractor
- B. Product Data: Submit for Each Product
 - 1. Include data to indicate standard mounting and utility connection details
 - 2. Include information for factory finishes, hardware, glass, sealants, accessories and other related components
 - 3. Include wiring diagrams and rough-in requirements for items requiring electrical connections
- C. Informational Submittals:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's printed instruction manual
- D. Close Out Submittals:
 - 1. Operational and Maintenance Data
 - 2. Warranty – 5 years

1.3 Quality Assurance

- A. Installer Qualifications: Acceptable to manufacturer with experience on at least five projects with similar nature in the past five years.

- B. Warranty: warrant installed products to be free from defects in material and workmanship for the time period specified under product descriptions.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

- A. Product Designations: Drawings indicate size and configurations of laboratory equipment by referencing designated manufacturer's catalog numbers. Other manufacturers of laboratory equipment of similar size and configurations and complying with Specifications may be considered.
- B. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products indicated below or comparable products meeting the same performance requirements. Substitutions must be submitted before Bid approval. See Section 016000 "Product Requirements."

2.3 WALL MOUNTED COMPUTER WORK STATION [203]

A. Basis of Design

1. afc Industries

- Flexible Computer Station Wall Mount
- Catalog # SKU 772483

B. Design and Performance Requirements

1. Product Type: Complete Foldable Computer Workstation with ergonomic wall mount design.
2. Standard CPU holder.
3. Pneumatically height adjustable swing type monitor arm.
4. Foldable keyboard tray with sliding mouse tray and underside mouse storage.
5. VESA compliant monitor holder
2. Dimensions: Height: 30", Width: 19.4", Depth: 8 to 54"
3. Color: White

2.2 COMBINATION LAB REFRIGERATOR / FREEZER [205]

A. Basis of Design

1. Staber Industries, Inc.

- Model # C20ss-SAEE-TS

B. Design and Performance Requirements

1. Capacity: Refrigerator: 10 Cu. Ft., Freezer: 10Cu. Ft.
2. Temperature Range (Refrigerator): 1 degree C to 12 degree C (factory preset 4 degree C)
3. Temperature Range (Freezer) -20 degree C to 0 degree C (factory preset -20 degree C)
4. Electrical:
- Voltage 115V/60Hz

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- Plug Type NEMA 5-15P (2 plugs)
- 5. Interior Finish: Aluminum
- 6. Doors/Compartment: 1 solid, hinged
- 7. Shelves/Compartment: 2 adjustable, epoxy - coated
- 8. Interior Dimensions:
 - D x W x H / Compartment: 28.75 x 20 x 28"
- 9. Exterior Dimensions
 - D x W x H / Compartment: 35 x 26 x 82.3"
- 10. Shipping Weight: 420 lbs.
- 11. Warranty: two years on parts and labor

2.3 DRYING CABINET [206]

A. Basis of Design

1. Labconco

- 3' Protector Evidence Drying Cabinet with UV light
- Catalog # 3400001

B. Design and Performance Requirements

- 1. Product Type: Evidence Drying Cabinet
- 2. Nominal Width: 3'
- 3. Built in Options: UV Light
- 4. Blower Requirements: Built-in Blower
- 5. Conformance: CE
- 6. Power Cord & Plug: 230 volts
- 7. Electrical : 230 volts, 50/60 Hz 2 amps
- 8. Dimensions:
 - D x W x H / Compartment: 36 x 28 x 79"
- 9. Shipping Weight: 450 lbs.

2.1 BIOLOGICAL SAFETY CABINET [211]

A. Basis of Design

1. Thermo Scientific

- 1300 Series Class II Type 2 One-Piece Stainless Steel Interior, 10" front opening #1370 (5 foot)

B. Design and Performance Requirements

- 1. Exterior Dimensions: 63 x 61.6 x 31.5 (WHD)
- 2. Interior Dimensions: 59.1 x 30.7 x 24.8 (WHD)
- 3. Electrical Data:
 - Voltage: 120
 - Frequency: 60
- 4. Filter Specification: H14 HEPA EN 1822,99.995%@MPPS
- 5. Certification: NSF/ANSI 49, UL, CE
- 6. Ergonomics:

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- Lighting Power >120
 - SmartPort Two 3" plugged cable ports, one on each side wall
 - Receptacles 2 GFI duplex
7. Front Opening: 10"
- Sound Pressure Level <65
 - Energy Consumption, operating set point 310
 - Energy Consumption, Night Set-Back mode 120
 - Heat output, operating mode (non vented) 1058
 - Heat output, Night Set-Back mode 410
(Lights off, non-vented)
 - Exhaust/inflow air volume 431
 - Exhaust volume thimble ducted 560
8. Stands:
- Electric adjustable for 5' cabinet
 - Work surface height of 28.9 to 36.9 inches
9. Exhaust Transitions
- Thimble duct exhaust transition
10. User Convenience Equipment
- Interior tubing retainer clips (6 per kit)
 - Hanging shelf for base stand
 - Stainless Steel armrest (set of two)
 - Adjustable footrest
 - Replacement SmartPort grommets (4 per kit)
 - Ergolign Saddle Stool 23" to 30.5" adjustable seat height
 - IV bag holder kit with 12 hooks
11. Alternative drain valve
- Stainless steel ball valve (replaces standard non-corrosive PVC drain valve)
12. Sidewall Utilities
- UV light option

2.3 LARGE CAPACITY DRYING CABINET [220]

A. Basis of Design

1. Staber Industries, Inc.

- Large Capacity Commercial Drying Cabinet
- Catalog # 2230-S

B. Design and Performance Requirements

- 1. Product Type: Evidence Drying Cabinet
- 2. Exterior Dimensions: Height: 80", Width: 55.5", Depth: 31.5"
- 3. Interior Capacity: 63.0 Cubic Feet
- 4. Total Shelf Area: 8.0 Sq. Ft. x 4 shelves = 32.0 Sq. Ft.
- 5. Electric Connection: 208V-220V, 60 HZ, 30 Amp Breaker.
- 6. Shipping Weight:: 510 Lbs.

PART 3 EXECUTION

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions and proceed with work in accordance with the contract documents

1. Verify utility connections are installed.
2. Verify mounting brackets, plates and supports are installed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

B. Install equipment plumb, level, square and free from warp or twist while maintaining dimensional tolerances and alignment with surrounding construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 117800 - MORTUARY EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Specification Section 1017000 Medical Equipment for other equipment indicated on the A-100 series drawings, to be furnished and installed by the contractor.

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes: [equipment list number]

- 1. Autopsy carts [221].
- 2. Autopsy sinks [230].
- 3. Body fork-lifts [208].
- 4. Body crane lift beams.
- 5. Cabinets [252 & 213 & 251].
- 6. Cadaver storage racks [233].
- 7. Dissecting tables [228 & 239].
- 8. Grossing stations [210].
- 9. S.S. Evidence Table [217].
- 10. Ventilated Cabinet [212].
- 11. Imaging System [250]
- 12. Floor Scale [201].
- 13. Body Refrigerator [248].
- 14. Bone Boiling Kettle [235].
- 15. Bariatric Transfer Carrier [200]
- 16. Transport Carrier [202]
- 17. Refrigerators [216 & 218]
- 18. Rolling Privacy Screen [241]

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include equipment accessories, components and features that will be included for Project.
- 2. Key equipment using same designation as indicated on Drawings.

- B. Shop Drawings: For built-in equipment attached to other work and other items indicated:

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment to other work.

2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, support blocking locations, required clearances, roughing-in and utility service requirements, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Key equipment using same designation as indicated on Drawings.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Experienced installer who have completed installation of products similar to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in a record of successful in-service performance. Where required by product manufacturer, installers shall be authorized, trained, and approved by product manufacturer.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install equipment until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings and construction contiguous with laboratory accessories by field measurements before fabrication.

1. Establish Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabrication without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Allow for trimming and fitting.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

A. Product Designations: Drawings indicate size and configurations of laboratory equipment by referencing designated manufacturer's catalog numbers. Other manufacturers of laboratory equipment of similar size and configurations and complying with Specifications may be considered.

B. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products indicated below or comparable products meeting the same performance requirements. Substitutions must be submitted before Bid approval. See Section 016000 "Product Requirements."

1.8 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products indicated below by Mopec or comparable products by one of the following:
 - 1. Mortech Manufacturing Co.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain laboratory equipment of the same kind or function through a single source, from a single manufacturer.
- A. Product Designations: Drawings indicate size and configurations of laboratory equipment by referencing designated manufacturer's catalog numbers. Other manufacturers of laboratory equipment of similar size and configurations and complying with Specifications may be considered. See Section 016000 "Product Requirements."

1.9 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Certification: Provide electric and fuel-burning equipment and components that are evaluated by UL for fire, electric shock, and casualty hazards according to applicable safety standards, and that are UL certified for compliance and labeled for intended use.
- C. Safety Glass: Products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
 - 1. Glass: Clear tempered glass complying with ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality-Q3; not less than 5.0 mm thick.
 - 2. Permanently mark safety glass with certification label of Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.10 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, stretcher-leveled standard for flatness; Type-304 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Stainless Steel Plates, Shapes and Bars: ASTM A276; Type-304.
- C. Stainless Steel Pipe: ASTM A312; Type-304.
- D. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269; Type-304.
- E. Glass for Glazed Doors: Clear tempered glass complying with ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality-Q3; not less than 5.0 mm thick.
- F. Stainless Steel Finish: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, with no evidence of welds and free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
 - 2. Grain Direction for Fillers and Closure Panels: Match adjoining stainless steel surface.
 - 3. When polishing is complete, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove foreign matter and leave surface clean.

G. Sealants:

1. Sealant Joints Between Built-in Equipment and Adjoining Construction: Refer to Division 07 Section "Sealants."

1.11 AUTOPSY CARTS [222]

A. Autopsy Cart Type-A (Hydraulic with Top): Mopec – Cart Model DC100 with Top Model GA100.

1. Chassis: High impact PVC chassis.
2. Cart Size with Top: **80.5-inch long by 32-inch wide.**
3. Cart Elevation: From 30.5-inch to 43.75-inch.
4. Twin pedestal hydraulics.
5. Dual end wheel brake activators built-in.
6. Top: Stainless steel, removable, tiltable top with drain hole and plug.
7. Weight Capacity: 700 pounds.
8. Casters with locking mechanisms.
9. Compatible with autopsy sinks.

B. Autopsy Cart Type-B (Bariatric): Mopec Model DC400.

1. Chassis: Stainless steel.
2. Cart Size with Top: **80.5-inch long by 40-inch wide with 1.5-inch by 2-inch return flange.**
3. Top: Stainless steel, non-removable top with drain hole and plug.
4. Weight Capacity: 1,000 pounds.
5. Casters with locking mechanisms.
6. Compatible with autopsy sink.

1.12 AUTOPSY SINKS [232]

A. Autopsy Sink Type-A (Wall Mount, Center Approach): Mopec – Model CC100.

1. Construction: Formed sheet metal work surface and backsplash over tube frame; welded.
2. Material: Stainless steel, **Type-316.**
3. Size: **114-inch wide by 28-inch deep by 61-inch high (34-inch high work surface).**
4. Utilities:
 - a. Electrical: 3-wire, 120VAC.
 - b. Water: Pre-piped within the equipment.
 - c. Waste: 1.5-inch diameter acid waste piping with trap.
5. Accessories:
 - a. Hydro aspirator with reversing flow valve, hose hanger and 8-foot clear PVC tubing at both ends.
 - b. Cold water body rinse with vacuum breaker and serrated hose fitting; hose hanger and 8-foot clear PVC tubing.
 - c. Two (2) Hot and cold-water fixtures with wrist blade handles and 8-inch swing spout with vacuum breaker.
 - d. Four (40 interchangeable, removable, perforated grid plates with 1/2-inch recess and 3/4-inch diameter holes on 2-inch centers.
 - e. Two (2) hand spray assemblies, heavy duty brass chrome plated hand piece with 8-foot, high pressure hose and J-hook.

- f. Specimen scale located in the center of the bench over the center sink.
- g. User operated concealed task lighting to be positioned at both ends of the counter over the area for cutting.
- h. At center sink provide a user operated 2 (two) horsepower under sink mounted grinder / disposal with removable strainer in the sink.
- i. Two (2) GFCI duplex outlets with waterproof covers.
- j. Two (2) instrument drawers and rinse basket grid plate.
- k. Autopsy cart latch, compatible with autopsy carts.

1.13 BODY FORK-LIFT [208]

A. Body Fork-Lift Type-A (Hydraulic): Mopec – Model JD307.

- 1. Minimum Lift Height: 0-inches.
- 2. Maximum Lift Height: 84-inches.
- 3. 34-inch inverted forks.
- 4. Accessories:
 - a. Support Bar with Body Straps: Mopec – Model JD600.
 - 1) Four (4) nylon straps, 3-inch by 54-inch.
 - 2) One (1) support bar, 60-inches long.
 - b. High-Capacity Cadaver Lift Bar: Mopec – Model JD610.
 - 1) Five (5) heavy duty nylon slings, 2-inch by 96-inch.
 - 2) One (1) heavy duty support bar, 60-inch long.

1.14 BODY CRANE LIFT BEAM [not numbered]

A. Body Crane Lift Beam Type-A: Mopec – Model JD3004.

- 1. 4-foot I-beam with leg assembly, trolley with 360-deg rotation, adjustable riser beam and 6-inch casters with swivel and brake.
- 2. Accessories:
 - a. Power Operated Hoist: Mopec PowerLift with 1,000-pound capacity, with hand-held lift controller, 115 V 20' line power cord, and adjustable nylon straps.

1.15 CABINETS [252 & 213 & 251]

A. Cabinet Type-A [252] (Tall Cabinet, 22-Inch, Solid Swing, 2-Door): Mopec – Model LD307-36MOD.

- 1. Cabinet Size: **36-inch long by 22-inch deep by nominal 84-inch high.**
- 2. Material: Stainless steel.
- 3. Doors: Stainless steel swing doors.
- 4. Shelves: Five (5) adjustable shelves, perforated.
- 5. Accessories:
 - a. Stainless steel cabinet hardware.
 - b. Ventilation Cuff for Tall Storage Cabinets: Mopec – Model LV200, 6-inch diameter.

B. Cabinet Type-B [213] (Tall cabinet, 22-Inch, Solid Swing, 1-Door): Mopec – Model LC313-24

1. Cabinet Size: **36-inch long by 22-inch deep by nominal 84-inch high.**
2. Material: Stainless steel
3. Doors: Stainless steel swing doors.
4. Shelves: Five (5) adjustable shelves, perforated.
5. Accessories:
 - a. Stainless steel cabinet hardware.
 - b. Ventilation Cuff for Tall Storage Cabinets: Mopec – Model LV200, 6-inch diameter.

C. Cabinet Type-C [251] (Mobile Storage Cabinet): Mopec – Model KUST

1. Size: 27" L x 18" W x 32" H
2. Includes:
 - a. All welded construction (except casters)
 - b. Stainless steel #4 polished shelves in durable 16 gauge
 - c. Bolt on casters, 2 swivel & 2 rigid, for superior tracking
 - d. Tubular handle with smooth radius bend-standard
 - e. (3) 7 in. H drawers with pull handle
 - f. (1) left-hand hinged solid door w/ball catch assembly
 - g. (1) right-hand hinged solid door w/ball catch assembly
 - h. 1.5" / 4cm lip for retention on cabinet top

1.16 CADAVER STORAGE RACKS [234]

A. Cadaver Storage Rack Type-A (Stationary, 32" x 5-Tier, Cantilever): Mopec – Model IA32501.

1. Rack Size: **22-inch long by 26-inch deep by nominal 80-inch high.**
2. Heavy-duty cantilever storage rack, 5 tier.
3. Material: Stainless steel.
4. Adjustable arms
5. Capacity: 500 lbs per arm.
6. Adjustable leveling pads.
7. Modular construction.
8. 5 stainless steel body trays design to work with Autopsy Carts

1.17 DISSECTING TABLES [226 & 229]

A. Dissecting Table Type-A: Mopec – Model HA400CUST [226]

1. Size: **60-inch long by 30-inch wide by nominal 37-inch high.**
2. Material: Stainless steel.
3. Tabletop: Designed with 2-inch marine edge; top sloped 1.5-inch to drain hole.
4. Fully welded construction with heavy-duty undercarriage subframe. Four (4) upright legs, two (2) cross leg support tubes and two (2) lateral support tubes.
5. Casters: Heavy-duty wheels, swivel/locking type.
6. Medical Paper Roll holder, 30-inch wide
7. Drawers: Two (2) drawers, 20-inch wide by 20-inch deep by 6-inch high.

- B. Dissecting Table Type-B: Mopec – Model HA210CUST [229]
 - 1. Size: **24-inch long by 30-inch wide by nominal 34-inch high.**
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Tabletop: Creased for drainage.
 - 4. Frame: 1.625-inch diameter tubing legs, fully welded construction with heavy-duty undercarriage subframe.
 - 5. Casters: Heavy-duty wheels, swivel/locking type.
 - 6. Post style option socket (for use with post style book holder, instrument tray and leg support).

1.18 GROSSING STATIONS [210]

- A. Grossing Station Type-A: Mopec – Model MB 400, Maestro Lite, Elevating Grossing Station.
 - 1. Size: 60" Long by 29" Wide by 79" High
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Sink, right-hand side of grossing station; faucet mixing/flow control, 19" L by 14" W by 10" D
 - 4. Backdraft ventilation; dual 8-inch duct stubs.
 - 5. Side/column accessory mounts
 - 6. 14" Stainless steel shelf
 - 7. Organizer Bin - (1) small stainless steel
 - 8. Organizer Bin - (1) large stainless steel
 - 9. Elevation system and control switch for up/down in height.
 - 10. Utilities:
 - a. Electrical: Pre-wired within the equipment, 115v- 60 hz - 1 ph - 1 circuit - 20 amps
 - b. Waterproof LED light
 - c. Water: Pre-piped within the equipment. Cvx f 2bfcfe
 - 11. Accessories:
 - a. One (1) perforated grid plate.
 - b. One (1) large and one (1) small organizer bin.
 - c. Mopec peg board system.
 - d. Stainless Steel C-Fold paper towel dispenser
 - e. One (1) sliding work surface cutting board, Removable polyethylene cutting board-color white, 23" L by 16" W by 3/4" H
 - f. 1/2-HP disposal.
 - g. One (1) GFCI receptacle.
 - h. Magnetic tool bar

1.19 EVIDENCE TABLE [218 & 240]

- A. Stainless Steel Evidence Table Type-A: Mopec – Model HA400CUST
 - 1. Size: **60-inch long by 30-inch wide by nominal 37-inch high.**
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Tabletop: Designed with 2-inch marine edge; top sloped 1.5-inch to drain hole.
 - 4. Fully welded construction with heavy-duty undercarriage subframe. Four (4) upright legs, two (2) cross leg support tubes and two (2) lateral support tubes.
 - 5. Casters: Heavy-duty wheels, swivel/locking type.
 - 6. Medical Paper Roll holder, 30-inch wide
 - 7. Drawers: Two (2) drawers, 20-inch wide by 20-inch deep by 6-inch high.

1.20 VENTILATED CABINETS [212 & 213]

- A. Cabinet Type-A (Tall Cabinet, Swing, 2-Door): Purafil – Model CA-2000V.
 - 1. Cabinet Size: **55-inch long by 27-inch wide by nominal 85-inch high.**
 - 2. Material: CRS.
 - 3. Sealent: Joints are sealed with RTV silicon rubber.
 - 4. Doors: Swing doors on front only.
 - 5. Gasket: Door gasket is compressible
 - 6. Shelves: Five (5) adjustable shelves, perforated.
 - 7. Airflow: 1000 CFM allows for 100 percent of recirculation air.
 - 8. Accessories:
 - a. Stainless steel cabinet hardware.
 - b. Ventilation Cuff for Tall Storage Cabinets.
 - c. VFD Keypad

1.21 IMAGING SYSTEM [not numbered]

- A. Basis-of Design Many: Lodox, Exero-dr high speed digital radiology with low emission and scatter radiation.
- B. Full-Body Imaging System
 - 1. Image Quality
 - a. Contrast resolution: > 16 000 grey levels (14 bits) - After log compression
 - b. Fundamental pixel size: 60 μm (1x1 binning)
 - c. Maximum size: 1 800 mm x 680 mm (70.9" x 26.8") (full body size, measured at lowest table height on tabletop)
 - 2. Scanner Throughput
 - a. Linear scanning rate or speed (3 settings): 35 mm/s, 70 mm/s, and 140 mm/s
 - b. Beam width (FWHM @ 1000mm from focal spot): 1.4 – 2.8 mm
 - c. Instantaneous frame rate (X-ray exposure duration at any one point): 22 – 88 milliseconds small slit
 - d. Full field scan time (AP): <13 seconds (nominally 12.98 s at normal speed)
 - e. Time from "end-of-scan" until a diagnostic image becomes available on the DVS screen: < 15 seconds (normal resolution image on a stand-alone 100 Mbits/s ethernet base-T network)
 - f. Best case time between two successive X-rays on the same body: 28 seconds (provided heat capacity of X-ray tube < 20%)
 - 3. Image Flexibility
 - a. Radial angles: 0 to 90 degrees. The supine or prone body can be X-rayed in any radial angle from AP (or PA) to the supine lateral positions.
 - b. Caudal-cranial / Cranio-caudal angles: 0 to 10 degrees. Projections can easily be accomplished by angling imaging transversely tabletop as needed.
 - c. Longitudinal angles: The trolley (gurney) top height can be adjusted vertically by 802.5 to 1 142.5 mm. Adjusting only one side of the trolley gives Trendelenburg angles up to ± 10 degrees.
 - 4. Machine Dimensions
 - a. Weight: 1 500 kg / 3 307 lbs
 - b. Maximum dimensions : L x W x H: 2 810 mm x 2 276 mm x 2 271 mm (110.6" x 89.6" x 89.4")
 - c. Room height requirement: 2 450 mm (96.5")
 - d. Operation envelope: L x W x H: 2 834 mm x 2 322 mm x 2 322 mm (111.6" x 91.4" x 91.4")
 - e. Ideal room area: L x W 6 000 mm x 3 000 mm (236.2" x 118.1")
 - 5. Detector System
 - a. Detector: Proprietary ultra-low noise TDI CCD detector

- b. X-ray to light conversion: Gadox = GdOS2: Tb
- 6. Power
 - a. The 208v/3p for system structure power
- C. Smart Trolley
 - 1. Dimensions : L x W x H: 2 448 mm x 704 mm x 803 mm (96.4" x 27.7" x 31.6")
 - 2. Weight capacity & positioning: 300 kg (660 lbs.). Height can be adjusted from 802.5 to 1 142.5 mm. Allows Trendelenburg angles ± 10 degrees. Automatically rises and lowers to accommodate C-arm movement when shifting from AP to lateral orientation.
 - 3. Body loading / unloading: Brake function - lock trolley in desired position.
 - 4. Tabletop attenuation (aluminum equivalence): Bariatric (300 kg): 1.5 mm (max)

1.22 FLOOR SCALE [201]

- A. Recessed Floor Scale: Mopec – Model BB155
 - 1. Scale Size: 72-inches by 48-inches.
 - 2. Material: Stainless Steel
 - 3. Pit frame: is one-piece welded unit no field welding required.
 - 4. Pit Dimensions: are determined by the pit frame and accessories [see structural drawings]
 - 5. Electrical: a 3/4-inch diameter conduit from scale, under slab and up inside the wall, interface cable is recommended
 - 6. Scale Controller: a wall mounted touchscreen panel should be provided.

1.23 BONE BOILING KETTLE [236]

- A. Electric Steam Tri-leg Kettle by Southbend, Model KELS-100, 24kW, 100 Gallon (379 Liter)
 - 1. Size: KELS-100, in (mm) 35.5" D (902) by 48" H (1219) by 40" W (1016)
 - 2. Self-generating, electric, tri-leg kettle, 208 VAC, 3 Phase, 50/60 Hz.
 - 3. ASME Code stamped, National Board Registered, c-CSA-us and NSF certified
 - 4. Design Intent: A double wall kettle interior shall form a steam jacket around the lower 2/3 of the kettle.
 - 5. The jacket enclosure shall contain distilled water which is factory sealed.
 - 6. The bottom of the kettle shall be of hemispherical design for superior heat circulation.
 - 7. Kettle will be mounted on 3 stainless steel tubular legs fitted with a 4-hole adjustable foot for securing unit to the floor.
- B. Construction:
 - 1. shall be all welded #4 finish stainless steel type 304.
 - 2. The liner shall be standard 316 for high acid content cooking.
 - 3. The controls shall be integrally mounted and shall include:
 - a. a power switch,
 - b. thermostat,
 - c. pilot light,
 - d. low water light,
 - e. vacuum/ pressure gauge,
 - f. safety valve,
 - g. low water shut off.
 - 4. Shipping Weight: KELS-100, 480 lbs. (218 kg)
- C. The kettle shall be standard with removable elements.
 - 1. The 100-gallon models are supplied with a spring-assist, hinged, stainless steel, domed cover.

2. The kettle shall include a 2" (50 mm) draw-off valve with perforated strainer.
3. The kettle shall operate in a temperature range of 165°F to 285°F (74°C to 140°C) at a maximum pressure of 50 psi (345kPa). Includes faucet bracket

D. Accessories:

1. Single pantry faucet with swing spout (SF-18)
2. Double pantry faucet with swing spout (DF-18)
3. One piece lift off cover (C-)
4. Triple basket assembly (TBA-)
5. Solid stainless-steel disc for draw-off valve (TSS-)
6. Graduated measuring strip (CMS-)
7. Strainer hook (SH)
8. Draw-off valve hose kit (DVHK-2)
9. Calibrated thermostat dial "F"
10. Perforated strainer for draw-off valve (TPS-)

1.24 30-BODY WALK-IN COOLER

A. Construction: NO FLOOR 32'-10" X 22'-6" X 10'-5" (L) (W) (Ht.)

1. Dow RF 400 High Density Foam Rail (Tongue & Groove), BASF Autofroth 100-B-1103 Resin / 9300A Isocyanate High Density Insulation (Foam in Place) / NSF Approved / LARR #12678
2. Wall Thickness: 4 Inch High Density Rail
3. Wall Finish (Unexposed Exterior): 26ga. Stucco Embossed Galvanized Steel (Standard) Wall Finish (Interior): 22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with Anti-Microbial Wall Finish (Exposed Exterior): 22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with Anti-Microbial
4. Ceiling Type: Cam Down Ceiling-Requires 6 inches Overhead Clearance
5. Ceiling Thickness: 5 Inch High Density Rail
6. Ceiling Finish Interior: 22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with Anti-Microbial
7. Ceiling Finish Exterior: 26ga. Stucco Embossed Galvanized Steel (Standard)
8. Door Size: 48" X 84" (W) (Ht.) 2 Heated Door Flush Style Door
9. Door Finish Interior: 22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with Anti-Microbial
10. Door Finish Exterior: 22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with Anti-Microbial
11. Door Accessories:
 - a. 2 Hold Open Hinge after 130° opening and manually pushed to close
 - b. 4 Non-Spring-Loaded Hinge
 - c. 2 Handle / Strike Key/Padlock
 - d. 2 Door Closure K-1094
 - e. 2 Heated Door
 - f. 2 Kickplate Ext. & Int.
 - g. 2 Flush Style Door
12. Accessories:
 - a. 8 48" Vapor Proof LED Light Fixture
 - b. 4 Junction Box - Blank (Foamed In Place)
 - c. 2 Modularm IP-1, panic alarm and light switch
 - d. 2 Modularm MC-1, magnetic contacts
 - e. 162 6" Cove Base (Ln Ft.) with 22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with AntiMicrobial
 - f. 108 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" Ceiling Tie-Down Angle w22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with Anti-Microbial
 - g. 108 1-1/2" x 2-3/4" Floor Tie-Down Angle with 16ga Smooth Galv.
 - h. 1 Misc. Trim, Butyl, Silicone, Top Cap trim, Plugs and Extra hardware.
 - i. 20 1" x 4" Vertical closure trim with 22ga. Smooth White Galv. Steel with AntiMicrobial
13. Buy-Outs:
 - a. 2 11GA Stainless Steel ceiling Support with Suspended Brackets
 - b. 1 Custom Control System (Total Control)
 - c. 1 Odor Control (Camfil System)

- d. Refrigeration with 100% Redundancy System:
- 14. SPLIT SYSTEM - Remote- Air-Cooled
 - a. 2 RFO350E4SEA - SCROLL Unit - 3.5HP - R448A 208/230 - 3ph - 60hz. 28,482BTU's
- 15. INCLUDES: fixed high/fixed low pressure control standard defrost kit Liquid line with components: Sealed Filter & Sight Glass - Air Defrost Timer 4 RL6A130ADA LOW PROFILE R448A AIR DEFROST WALK-IN UNIT COOLER (115-/1/60HZ)
- 16. INCLUDED: Dual Steel EC Motor, Air defrost, thermostatic expansion valve Electronic Room Thermostat / Liquid Line Solenoid Valve 2 4 Years Extended warranty.
- 17. Camfil System (Odor Control Option)

1.25 BARIATRIC TRANSFER CARRIER [200]

A. Bariatric Transfer Carrier – Mopec – Model DC400

- 1. Used in conjunction with Wall Mounted Autopsy Sinks or as a simple viewing Stretcher.
- 2. Weight capacity: 1,000 Lbs
- 3. Top is non-removable and includes a drain
- 4. Total-lock caster system with non-corrosive 8" heavy-duty wheels.
- 5. Cart top measures 80.5" x 40" x 1-1/2" return flange of 2".
- 6. Optional frame and cover available for Discreet Transport can be ordered separately.
- 7. Does not elevate or tilt.

1.26 TRANSPORT CARRIER [202]

A. Autopsy Cart Elev w/ GA100 Top – Mopec – Model DB100

- 1. DB000 Autopsy cart with GA100 Top
- 2. All stainless-steel construction
- 3. Dimensions: 80.5" Long x 32" Wide x 35" High with one side elevation to 42-1/2"
- 4. Tilting mechanism: Hand crank with hydraulic lift system with 7-1/2" of lift adjustment.
- 5. Tilting only on one side of the cart.
- 6. Heavy duty 1.5" stainless steel tubing frame.
- 7. Heavy duty 8" casters with Total Lock.
- 8. Weight capacity 500 pounds.
- 9. GA100: Heavy-duty stainless-steel construction (with or without drain hole).
- 10. ALL DA, DB, DC, DD, and DF series carts are compatible with all CA, CB, and CC series autopsy sinks.

1.27 REFIGERATORS [216 & 218]

A. Refrigerator Type A (2 Door Upright) – Mopec – Model KG200

- 1. Stainless steel front, aluminum end panels and interior. Heavy duty, epoxy coated steel shelves.
- 2. 3" non-CFC polyurethane foam insulation
- 3. Self-closing doors with chrome plated floor line handles. Magnetic snap door gasket. Cylinder lock in each door.

B. Refrigerator Type B (1 Door Upright) – Mopec – Model KG100

1. Stainless steel
2. 4 swivel casters (5 ¾"Ø)
3. Key door lock
4. Magnetic door gaskets for positive seal
5. 3 adjustable shelves

1.28 ROLLING PRIVACY SCREEN [241]

A. Mobile Three Panel Privacy Screen (Antimicrobial) – R&B Wire Products, Inc. – Model PSS-3C/AML

1. Hinged 3-panel design. White powder coated tubular base and frame. Wide Base with minimum (4) 2" wheel casters.
2. Approximate size (when fully extended:) 81"L x 69"H. Individual panels: 27"W x 55"H, b.o. screens 17.5" a.f.f.
3. Antimicrobial, flame-retardant vinyl panels, washable, color as selected from manufacturer's full range.
4. Self-closing doors with chrome plated floor line handles. Magnetic snap door gasket. Cylinder lock in each door.

B. Refrigerator Type B (1 Door Upright) – Mopec – Model KG100

1. Stainless steel
2. 4 swivel casters (5 ¾"Ø)
3. Key door lock
4. Magnetic door gaskets for positive seal
5. 3 adjustable shelves

1.29

1.30 ROLLING PRIVACY SCREEN [241]

A. Mobile Three Panel Privacy Screen (Antimicrobial) – R&B Wire Products, Inc. – Model PSS-3C/AML

1. Hinged 3-panel design. White powder coated tubular base and frame. Wide Base with minimum (4) 2" wheel casters.
2. Approximate size (when fully extended:) 81"L x 69"H. Individual panels: 27"W x 55"H, b.o. screens 17.5" a.f.f.
3. Antimicrobial, flame-retardant vinyl panels, washable, color as selected from manufacturer's full range.
4. Self-closing doors with chrome plated floor line handles. Magnetic snap door gasket. Cylinder lock in each door.

B. Refrigerator Type B (1 Door Upright) – Mopec – Model KG100

1. Stainless steel
2. 4 swivel casters (5 ¾"Ø)
3. Key door lock

4. Magnetic door gaskets for positive seal
5. 3 adjustable shelves

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Connect equipment to utilities.
 2. Provide cutouts in equipment, neatly formed, where required to run service lines through equipment to make final connections.
- B. Complete equipment assembly where field assembly is required.
 1. Provide closed butt and contact joints that do not require a filler.
 2. Grind field welds on stainless-steel equipment until smooth and polished to match adjacent finish.
- C. Install equipment with access and maintenance clearances that comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Built-In Equipment: Place units in final location after finishes have been completed in each area. Securely anchor to supporting substrate with concealed fasteners where possible. Verify that clearances are adequate for proper function and that rough openings are completely concealed.
 1. Seal joints between built-in equipment and adjoining construction.
- E. Freestanding and Countertop Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.

2.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage factory authorized service representatives to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. Perform visual, mechanical, plumbing and electrical inspection and testing for each product according to manufacturers' written recommendations. Certify compliance with each manufacturer's equipment performance parameters.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After installation, start units to confirm proper operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.
 5. After making corrections, retest products that failed to perform.
 6. Where equipment is connected to exhaust system, adjust equipment, building exhaust fans, and building HVAC systems, or replace equipment and make other corrections until tested equipment performs.
 7. Coordinate field testing of equipment connected to exhaust system with requirements of Division 23 Sections "Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC."

- C. Product will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

2.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of equipment, repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean and adjust equipment as required to produce ready-for-use condition. Adjusts hardware and moving parts to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy for this purpose.
- D. Protect equipment from damage during remainder of the construction period.

2.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 123570 - HEALTHCARE CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Stainless steel healthcare casework.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring healthcare casework.
 - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for reinforcements in metal-framed partitions for anchoring healthcare casework.
 - 3. Section 123616 "Metal Countertops" for stainless steel countertops, sinks, and shelves.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of framing and reinforcements for support of healthcare casework.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For healthcare casework.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachments to other work, including locations of blocking and reinforcements required for installation.
 - 2. Show fabrication details, including types and locations of hardware.
 - 3. Indicate locations of and clearances from adjacent walls, doors, windows, other building components, and equipment.
 - 4. Include coordinated dimensions for equipment specified in other Sections.
 - 5. Indicate manufacturer's catalog numbers for casework.

- C. Keying Schedule: Include schematic keying diagram, and index each key set to unique designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finished surfaces during handling and installation with protective covering of polyethylene film or other suitable material.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Established Dimensions: Where casework is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where casework is to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
- B. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support casework by field measurements before enclosing them, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STAINLESS STEEL HEALTHCARE CASEWORK

- A. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
 - 1. Nominal Stainless Steel Thicknesses:
 - a. Sides, Ends, Fixed Backs, Bottoms, Cabinet Tops, Soffits, and Items Not Otherwise Indicated: 0.050 inch. Bottoms may be 0.038 inch if reinforced.
 - b. Back Panels, Doors, Drawer Fronts and Bodies, and Shelves: 0.038 inch except 0.050 inch for unreinforced shelves more than 36 inches long.
 - c. Intermediate Horizontal Rails, Center Posts, Tubular Legs, and Top Gussets: 0.062 inch.
 - d. Drawer Runners and Hinge Reinforcements: 0.078 inch.
 - e. Leveling and Corner Gussets: 0.109 inch.

2.3 ENAMELED-STEEL HEALTHCARE CASEWORK

- A. Steel Sheet: Cold-rolled commercial steel (CS) sheet, complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M; matte finish; suitable for exposed applications.
 - 1. Nominal Steel Thicknesses:
 - a. Sides, Ends, Fixed Backs, Bottoms, Cabinet Tops, Soffits, and Items Not Otherwise Indicated: 0.048 inch. Bottoms may be 0.036 inch if reinforced.
 - b. Back Panels, Doors, Drawer Fronts and Bodies, and Shelves: 0.036 inch except 0.048 inch for unreinforced shelves more than 36 inches long.
 - c. Intermediate Horizontal Rails, Center Posts, and Top Gussets: 0.060 inch.

- d. Drawer Runners and Hinge Reinforcements: 0.075 inch.
- e. Leveling and Corner Gussets: 0.105 inch.

2.4 CASEWORK HARDWARE

- A. Provide healthcare casework manufacturer's standard, commercial-quality, heavy-duty hardware complying with requirements indicated for each type.
- B. Door Hinges: Stainless steel, five-knuckle hinges complying with BHMA A156.9, Grade 1, with antifriction bearings and hospital tips. Provide two hinges for doors 48 inches high or less, and provide three for doors more than 48 inches high.
- C. Hinged-Door and Drawer Pulls: Back-mounted pulls of stainless steel. Provide two pulls for drawers more than 24 inches wide.
 - 1. Design: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Overall Size: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Door Catches: Nylon-roller spring catches. Provide two catches on doors more than 48 inches high.
- E. Drawer Slides: Side-mounted, epoxy-coated-steel, self-closing, ball-bearing drawer slides; designed to prevent rebound when drawers are closed; complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B05091.
 - 1. Provide Grade 1HD-100 for drawers not more than 6 inches high and 24 inches wide.
 - 2. Provide Grade 1HD-200 for drawers more than 6 inches high or 24 inches wide.
 - 3. Provide Grade 1HD-100 for computer keyboard drawers.
 - 4. Provide full extension type where Grade 1HD-100 or Grade 1HD-200 is indicated.
- F. Locks: Cam or half-mortise type; brass with chrome-plated finish; complying with BHMA A156.11, Type E07281, E07111, or E07021.
 - 1. Lock Locations: Provide on drawers and doors.
 - 2. Keying: Key locks alike within each room, and key each room separately.
 - a. Masterkey for up to 100 key changes.
 - 3. Key Quantity: Minimum of two keys per lock.
 - 4. Master Key System: Key all locks to be operable by master key.
 - a. Master Keys: Provide two.

2.5 CASEWORK FABRICATION

- A. General: Assemble and finish units at point of manufacture. Use precision dies for interchangeability of like-size drawers, doors, and similar parts. Perform assembly on precision jigs to provide units that are square. Reinforce units with angles, gussets, and channels. Integrally frame and weld to form a dirt- and vermin-resistant enclosure. Maintain uniform clearance around door and drawer fronts of 1/16 to 3/32 inch.

- B. Metal Flush Doors: Outer and inner pans that nest into box formation, with full-height channel reinforcements at center of door. Fill doors with noncombustible, sound-deadening material.
- C. Hinged Doors: Mortise doors for hinges and reinforce with angles welded inside inner pans or hollow-metal stiles at hinge edge.
- D. Metal Drawers: Fronts made from outer and inner pans that nest into box formation, with no raw metal edges at top. Sides, back, and bottom fabricated in one piece with rolled or formed top of sides for stiffening and comfortable grasp for drawer removal.
- E. Metal Shelves: Front, back, and ends formed down, with edges returned horizontally at front and back to form reinforcing channels.
- F. Shelf Supports: Provide clips, brackets, pilasters, or other means to support shelves from cabinet ends and to allow height of shelves to be adjusted in increments of not more than 2 inches.
- G. Sloping Tops: Unless tops are concealed by other construction, provide sloping tops on cabinets with tops 60 inches or more above the finished floor. Slope tops 25 degrees or more and construct of same material and with same finish as cabinets.
- H. Toe Space: Unless casework is fully recessed, provide metal toe space, fully enclosed, 4 inches high by 3 inches deep, with no open gaps or pockets.
- I. Filler Strips: Provide as needed to close spaces between casework and walls, ceilings, and indicated equipment. Fabricate from same material and with same finish as casework and with hemmed or flanged edges.
- J. Trim Flanges: Formed metal trim fabricated from same material and with same finish as casework. Provide at perimeter of recessed cabinets.

2.6 STAINLESS STEEL FINISH

- A. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directional-satin finish matching ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish, with no evidence of welds and free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces clean.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of healthcare casework.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF HEALTHCARE CASEWORK

- A. Install casework level, plumb, and true in line; shim as required using concealed shims. Where healthcare casework abuts other finished work, apply filler strips and scribe for accurate fit, with fasteners concealed where practical. Do not exceed the following tolerances:
 - 1. Variation of Tops of Base Cabinets from Level: 1/16 inch in 10 feet.
 - 2. Variation of Bottoms of Upper Cabinets from Level: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
 - 3. Variation of Faces of Casework from a True Plane: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
 - 4. Variation of Adjacent Surfaces from a True Plane (Lippage): 1/32 inch.
 - 5. Variation in Alignment of Adjacent Door and Drawer Edges: 1/16 inch.
- B. Recessed Cabinets: Set cabinets in openings and fasten to partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions with fasteners spaced not more than 24 inches o.c. Bolt adjacent cabinets together with joints flush, tight, and uniform.
- C. Base Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions with fasteners spaced not more than 16 inches o.c. Bolt adjacent cabinets together with joints flush, tight, and uniform.
- D. Wall Cabinets: Fasten to hanging strips, masonry, partition framing, blocking, or reinforcements in partitions. Fasten each cabinet through the back, near the top, at not less than 16 inches o.c. unless continuously hung from hanging strips.
- E. Install door and drawer hardware uniformly and precisely.
- F. Adjust operating hardware so doors and drawers align and operate smoothly without warp or bind and so contact points meet accurately. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Clean finished surfaces, touch up as required, and remove or refinish damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish as approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 123570

SECTION 123616 - METAL COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Stainless-steel countertops.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For metal fabrications.
 - 1. Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Detail fabrication and installation, including field joints.
 - 2. For countertops, show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in metal countertops.
 - 3. For wall-mounted shelves, indicate requirements for blocking or reinforcements in supporting construction.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products only after casework and supports on which they will be installed has been completed in installation areas.
- B. Keep finished surfaces of products covered with polyethylene film or other protective covering during handling and installation.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Established Dimensions: Where products are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where products are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STAINLESS-STEEL FABRICATIONS

- A. Countertops: Fabricate from 0.062-inch-thick, stainless-steel sheet. Provide smooth, clean exposed tops and edges in uniform plane, free of defects. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch over the base cabinets.
 - 1. Joints: Fabricate countertops without field-made joints.
 - 2. Weld shop-made joints.
 - 3. Sound deaden the undersurface with heavy-build mastic coating.
 - 4. Extend the top down to provide a 1-inch-thick edge with a 1/2-inch return flange.
 - 5. Form the backsplash coved to and integral with top surface, with a 1/2-inch-thick top edge and 1/2-inch return flange.
 - 6. Provide raised (marine) edge around perimeter of tops containing sinks; pitch tops containing sinks two ways to provide drainage without channeling or grooving.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 316L.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Manufacturer's standard sealant that complies with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and the following:
 - 1. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealant: Mildew resistant, single component, nonsag, neutral curing, silicone.
- C. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directional satin finish matching No. 4 finish, with no evidence of welds and free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces clean.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal countertops level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
- B. Field Jointing: Where possible, make field jointing in the same manner as shop jointing; use fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Prepare edges to be joined in shop so Project-site

processing of top and edge surfaces is not required. Locate field joints where shown on Shop Drawings.

- C. Secure countertops to cabinets with Z- or L-type fasteners or equivalent; use two or more fasteners at each front, end, and back.
- D. Abut top and edge surfaces in one true plane, with internal supports placed to prevent deflection.
- E. Seal junctures of countertops, splashes, and walls with sealant for countertops.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective work as directed on completion of installation.
- B. Clean finished surfaces. Remove and replace damaged products or touch up and refinish damaged areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Architect.
- C. Protection: Provide 6-mil plastic or other suitable water-resistant covering over countertop surfaces. Tape to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 123616

SECTION 123623 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes
 - 1. Plastic-laminate-clad countertops.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plastic-laminate-clad countertops.
 - 1. Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Detail fabrication and installation, including field joints.
 - 2. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate-clad countertops.
 - 3. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.
- C. Samples: Plastic laminates in each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required in manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For plastic laminates.
- E. Samples for Verification: As follows:
 - 1. Plastic Laminates: For each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) in size.
 - 2. Wood-Grain Plastic Laminates: For each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required, 12 by 24 inches (300 by 600 mm) in size.
 - 3. Fabrication Sample: For each type and profile of countertop required, provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material applied to one edge.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For the following:
 - 1. Composite wood and agrifiber products.
 - 2. High-pressure decorative laminate.
 - 3. Chemical-resistant, high-pressure decorative laminate.
 - 4. Adhesives.
- C. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. Shop Certification: AWI's Quality Certification Program accredited participant.
- B. Installer Qualifications: AWI's Quality Certification Program accredited participant.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver countertops only after casework and supports on which they will be installed have been completed in installation areas.
- B. Store countertops in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.
- C. Keep surfaces of countertops covered with protective covering during handling and installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install countertops until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FABRICATORS

- A. Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, available fabricators offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, as follows: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.:

2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of plastic-laminate-clad countertops indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. Provide inspections of fabrication and installation together with labels and certificates indicating that countertops comply with requirements of grades specified.
 - 2. If the Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.
- B. Grade: Premium.
- C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS or Grade HGP.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Formica Corporation.
 - b. Laminart LLC.
 - c. Nevamar Company, LLC.
 - d. Wilsonart LLC.
- D. Chemical-Resistant, High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGP, and as follows:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Formica Corporation.
 - b. Pionite; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand.
 - c. Wilsonart LLC.
 - 2. Laminate has the following ratings when tested with indicated reagents according to NEMA LD 3, Test Procedure 3.9.5:
 - a. Nitric Acid (30 Percent): Moderate effect.
 - b. Sulfuric Acid (77 Percent): Moderate effect.
 - c. Hydrochloric Acid (37 Percent): Moderate effect.

- d. Phosphoric Acid (75 Percent): No effect.
 - e. Acetic Acid (98 Percent): No effect.
 - f. Formaldehyde: No effect.
 - g. Ethyl Acetate: No effect.
 - h. Ethyl Ether: No effect.
 - i. Phenol (85 Percent): Moderate effect.
 - j. Benzene: No effect.
 - k. Xylene: No effect.
 - l. Butyl Alcohol: No effect.
 - m. Furfural: No effect.
 - n. Methyl Ethyl Ketone: No effect.
 - o. Sodium Hydroxide (25 Percent): No effect.
 - p. Sodium Sulfide (15 Percent): No effect.
 - q. Ammonium Hydroxide (28 Percent): No effect.
 - r. Zinc Chloride: No effect.
 - s. Gentian Violet: No effect.
 - t. Methyl Red: No effect.
- E. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
- 1. As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
 - 2. Match Architect's sample.
 - 3. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
 - a. Solid colors, gloss or matte finish.
 - b. Solid colors with core same color as surface, gloss or matte finish.
 - c. Wood grains, gloss or matte finish with grain running parallel to length of countertop.
 - d. Patterns, gloss or matte finish.
- F. Edge Treatment: As indicated on Drawings.
- G. Core Material: Particleboard or MDF made with exterior glue [As selected by fabricator to comply with quality standard].
- H. Core Material at Sinks: Particleboard or MDF made with exterior glue
- I. Core Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- 1. Build up countertop thickness to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) at front, back, and ends with additional layers of core material laminated to top.
- J. Backer Sheet: Provide plastic-laminate backer sheet, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL, on underside of countertop substrate.
- K. Paper Backing: Provide paper backing on underside of countertop substrate.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wire-Management Grommets: Circular, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.
 - 2. Outside Diameter: 2 inches (51 mm).
 - 3. Color: Black,
- B. Paper Slots: 17 inches (432 mm)] long by 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) wide by 1 inch (25 mm) deep; molded-plastic, paper-slot liner with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) lip.
 - 1. Color: Black.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement or Resorcinol as selected by fabricator to comply with requirements.
 - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- B. Fabricate countertops to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch (25 mm) over base cabinets. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - 1. Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times countertop fabrication will be complete.
 - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended, and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- D. Shop cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately, and use templates or roughing-in

diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

1. Seal edges of cutouts by saturating with varnish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing countertops, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
 1. Provide cutouts for appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately, and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
 2. Seal edges of cutouts by saturating with varnish.
- C. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in the same manner as shop jointing, using dowels, splines, adhesives, and fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Prepare edges to be joined in shop so Project-site processing of top and edge surfaces is not required. Locate field joints where shown on Shop Drawings.
 1. Secure field joints in countertops with concealed clamping devices located within 6 inches (150 mm) of front and back edges and at intervals not exceeding 24 inches (600 mm). Tighten according to manufacturer's written instructions to exert a constant, heavy-clamping pressure at joints.
- D. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.
- F. Countertop Installation: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.

1. Install countertops level and true in line. Use concealed shims as required to maintain not more than a 1/8-inch-in-96-inches (3-mm-in-2400-mm) variation from a straight, level plane.
2. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
3. Seal joints between countertop and backsplash, if any, and joints where countertop and backsplash abut walls with mildew-resistant silicone sealant or another permanently elastic sealing compound recommended by countertop material manufacturer.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace countertops. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean countertops on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.
- C. Protection: Provide Kraft paper or other suitable covering over countertop surfaces, taped to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches (1220 mm) o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 123623.13

SECTION 123661 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid surface material countertops.
2. Solid surface material backsplashes.
3. Solid surface material end splashes.
4. Solid surface material apron fronts.
5. Solid surface material sinks.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 224100 " Plumbing Fixtures" for sinks and plumbing fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For countertop materials and sinks.

B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Countertop material, 6 inches (150 mm) square.
2. Wood trim, 8 inches (200 mm) long.
3. One full-size solid surface material countertop, with front edge and backsplash, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), of construction and in configuration specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA SS-1.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
 - b. Formica Corporation.
 - c. Wilsonart LLC.
 - 2. Type: Provide Standard type.
 - 3. Integral Sink Bowls: Comply with CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

4. Colors and Patterns: Match Architect's samples as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Solid Wood Edges and Trim: Clear hard maple lumber, free of defects, selected for compatible grain and color, and kiln dried to 7 percent moisture content.

2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top, wood-trimmed edge if indicated in Drawings..
 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- C. Countertops: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-)] thick, solid surface material with wood-trimmed edges or front edge built up with same material as indicated on Drawings.
- D. Backsplashes: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, solid surface material.
- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
1. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in the shop.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.
1. Joint Locations if UN-avoidable: Not within 18 inches (450 mm) of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches (900 mm) long would result.
- G. Cutouts and Holes:
1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch (5 mm) into fixture opening.
 2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
 3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m), 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch (0.4-mm) difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane. No visible fasteners permitted.
- D. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
 - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- E. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- F. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to

finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.

1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- H. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123661.16

SECTION 124816 - ENTRANCE FLOOR GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Recessed floor grilles and frames.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Items penetrating floor grilles and frames, including door control devices.
 2. Divisions between grille sections.
 3. Perimeter floor moldings.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Mats Inc - Dual Trak (Basis of Design)
 2. Babcock-Davis.
 3. McGill Architectural Products.

2.2 ENTRANCE FLOOR GRILLES, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

2.3 FLOOR GRILLES

- A. Aluminum Floor Grilles Type 6061-T6: Provide manufacturer's standard floor grilles with extruded members, top-surfaced tread rails. Coordinate products and installation with selected manufacturer's requirements, as follows:
 - 1. Aluminum Color: Clear.
 - 2. Tread Rail Spacing: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. with 1/8- to 3/16-inch- (3.2- to 4.8-mm-) wide openings between treads.
 - 3. Top Surface: Serrated aluminum and fusion-bonded, level-cut-pile nylon carpet insert; 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) high, 28 oz./sq. yd. (950 g/sq. m)].
 - a. Top Surface Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
 - 4. Grille Size: as indicated on drawing A-600
 - 5. Mat Grating: 5/8 inch (15.8 mm) deep.
 - 6. Pit Grating: 1-5/8 inches deep.
- B. Lockdown: Manufacturer's standard.

2.4 FRAMES

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard frames of size and style for grille type.

2.5 SUPPORT SYSTEM

- A. Drainage Pit Applications: Provide manufacturer's special deep-pit frame and integral pan support extrusion system with intermediate support beams, sized and spaced as recommended by manufacturer for indicated spans and equipped with vinyl support cushions.

2.6 DRAIN PANS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard, 0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, stainless steel sheet drain pan with NPS 2 (DN 50) drain outlet for each floor-grille unit. Coat bottom of pan with protective coating recommended by manufacturer.

2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- B. Stainless Steel Plate Sheet, and Strip: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Stainless Steel Flat Bars: ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless Steel Angles: ASTM A276 or ASTM A479/A479M, Type 304.
- E. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).

- F. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate floor grilles to greatest extent possible in sizes as indicated.
- B. Fabricate frame members in single lengths or, where frame dimensions exceed maximum available lengths, provide minimum number of pieces possible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install recessed floor grilles and frames and drain pans to comply with manufacturer's written instructions at locations indicated and with top of floor grilles and frames in relationship to one another and to adjoining finished flooring as recommended by manufacturer. Set floor-grille tops at height for most effective cleaning action. Coordinate top of floor-grille surfaces with doors that swing across grilles to provide clearance under door.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. After completing frame installations, provide temporary filler of plywood or fiberboard in floor-grille recesses and cover frames with plywood protective flooring. Maintain protection until construction traffic has ended and Project is near Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 124816

SECTION 124900 - MANUALLY OPERATED WINDOW TREATMENTS

Chain and Clutch Operated FlexShade or Equivalent

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Manually operated, roll-up fabric interior window shades including mounting and operating hardware.
- B. Related Sections: Nominal sizes list at the end of this section.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01330 - Submittal Procedures:
 - 1. List of proposed products and product data.
 - 2. Shop drawings showing window openings, dimensions, and attachment methods.
 - 3. Samples [for selection by Designer]
 - a. Fabrics
 - b. Metal finishes
 - c. Full scale Shade Sample if other than product specified
 - 4. Window Shade Schedule listing rooms, field verified window dimensions, quantities, type of shade, fabric, and color.
 - 5. Manufacturer's installation and maintenance instructions.
 - 6. Standard manufacturer's defect warranty documents indicating compliance with requirements of Section 1.9 below.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Obtain roller shades through one source from a single manufacturer with a minimum of twenty years' experience in manufacturing products comparable to those specified in this section. If manufacturer does not meet minimum experience requirement, please submit life cycle test data showing minimum 2000 complete operational cycles for each year of warranty showing no failure and that shade remains fit for use as a operable shade).
- B. NFPA Flame-Test: Passes NFPA 701. Materials tested shall be identical to products proposed for use. Show complete manufacturer data and certification from

manufacturer that the fabrics sourced for this project comply with the test data provided.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver window shades until building is enclosed and construction within spaces where shades will be installed is substantially complete.
- B. Deliver products in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with labels intact.
- C. Label containers and shades according to Window Shade Schedule.
- D. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Install roller shades after finish work and ambient temperature, humidity and ventilation conditions are maintained at levels recommended for project upon completion.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Hardware and Shade Fabric: Draper® standard twenty-five-year limited warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Draper, Inc., 411 S. Pearl P. O. Box 425; Spiceland, IN 47385-0425. 765-987-7999
- B. Manufacturers of equivalent products submitted and approved in accordance with Section 01630 – Product Substitution Procedures.

2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED WINDOW SHADES

FlexShade as noted in Schedule (or equivalent product):

- A. Type: Manually Operated Window Shades with Independent Control: Manually operated, vertical roll-up, fabric window shade with components necessary for complete installation; Clutch-operated FlexShade® as manufactured by Draper, Inc.
- B. Operation: Bead chain and clutch operating mechanism allowing shade to stop when chain is released. Designed never to need adjustment or lubrication. Provide limit stops to prevent shade from being raised or lowered too far.

- C. Clutch mechanism: Fabricated from high carbon steel and molded fiberglass reinforced polyester or injected molded nylon.
- D. Spring-assist bead chain clutch mechanism: Adjustment-free system includes spring assist components to reduce lifting forces required to raise the shade. Manufacturer shall provide estimated torque for shade unit. Spring-assist is recommended on estimated non-spring-assist torque above 6 lb-in; required on shades with an estimated torque higher than 15 lb-in.
- E. Bead chain loop: Stainless steel bead chain hanging at side of window.
- F. Chain Location: To be determined at the time of ordering and fixed.
- G. Bead Chain Hold Down: P-Clip (standard)
- H. Mounting: Mounted to inside of window; with fascia.
- I. Endcaps: Stamped steel with universal design suitable to mounting to ceiling, wall, and jamb. Provide size compatible with roller size.
- J. Endcap covers: To match fascia color.
- K. Fascia: L shaped aluminum extrusion to conceal shade roller and hardware. Snaps onto endcaps without requiring exposed fasteners of any kind. Fascia can be mounted continuously across two or more shade bands. No notching required.
- L. Shade size and material: As indicated on Window Shade Schedule.
- M. Roller Tube: Fabricated from extruded aluminum, galvanized steel, or enameled steel. Diameter, wall thickness, and material selected by manufacturer to accommodate shade type and size. Minimum roller diameter 1.5".
- N. Idler Assembly: Provide roller idler assembly of molded nylon with adjustable or spring-loaded length idler pin to facilitate easy installation, and removal of shade for service.
- O. Brackets: Plated stamped steel suitable for mounting to wall. Provide size compatible with roller size and with fasteners appropriate for installation conditions.
- P. Slat: Closed pocket elliptical slat: 1 inch aluminum elliptical slat inside of a 1-5/8 inch pocket with heat sealed ends.

2.3 FABRIC

- A. As indicated on Window Shade Schedule.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Field verify window dimensions prior to fabrication.
- B. Coordinate requirements for blocking and structural supports to ensure adequate means for installation of window shades.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install roller shades level, plumb, square, and true. Allow proper clearances for window operation hardware.
- C. Install window shades at locations indicated on drawings and approved Window Shade Schedule.
- D. Install the following items to conceal roller and operating mechanism. Do not use exposed fasteners.
 - a. Fascias
 - b. Endcaps

3.4 TESTING AND DEMONSTRATION

- A. Test window shades to verify that operating mechanism and other operating components are functional. Correct deficiencies.
 - a. Chain and clutch.
- B. Demonstrate operation of shades to Owner's designated representatives.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

3.6 SCHEDULES

- A. Refer to Drawings for shade types and locations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 134900 - RADIATION PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Lead sheet, strip, and plate.
2. Lead-lined gypsum board.
3. Lead glass.
4. Lead-lined hollow-metal doors.
5. Lead-lined hollow-metal frames.
6. Informational signs.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete floor topping over lead shielding in concrete slabs.
2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel framing members for bracing wall shielding.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Lead Equivalence: The thickness of lead that provides the same attenuation (reduction of radiation passing through) as the material in question under the specified conditions.

1. Lead equivalence specified for materials used in diagnostic x-ray rooms is as measured at 100 kV unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to radiation protection, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Sequence and schedule of radiation protection work in relation to other work.
 - b. Supplementary lead shielding at duct, pipe, and conduit penetrations of radiation protection.
 - c. Methods of attaching other construction and equipment to lead-lined finishes.

- d. Notification procedures for work that requires modifying radiation protection.
- e. Requirements for field quality control.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Doors and Frames: Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of radiation-protected areas, indicating lead thickness or lead equivalence of components. Show components and installation conditions not fully dimensioned or detailed in product data.
 - 1. Show ducts, pipes, conduit, and other objects that penetrate radiation protection; include details of penetrations.
 - 2. Show details of joints between radiation protection materials.
 - 3. Include door details, including elevations, frame dimensions and profile, glazed light, and clearances and undercuts.
 - 4. Include observation window details, including elevations, frame dimensions and profile, glazed light, and clearances.
- C. Samples: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Product Schedule: For observation windows and doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For assemblies with radiation protection materials, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Miscellaneous metal members that support -framing and equipment.
 - 2. Items penetrating radiation protection materials, including the following:
 - a. Electrical services.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Sprinklers.
 - d. Access panels.
- B. Sample Warranty: For warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Lead-Lined Gypsum Panels: Store inside under cover, and keep dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.
- B. Lead-Lined, Hollow-Metal Doors and Frames: Comply with requirements in Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for delivery, storage, and handling.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install radiation protection until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of radiation protection product from single source from single manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide materials and workmanship, including joints and fasteners, that maintain continuity of radiation protection at all points and in all directions equivalent to materials specified in thicknesses and locations indicated.
- B. Materials, thicknesses, and configurations of radiation protection products indicated are based on radiation protection design to be prepared by Owner's radiation health physicist. This design is available to Contractor upon request.
- C. Lead-Lined Assemblies: Unless otherwise indicated, provide lead thickness in lead-lined assemblies of not less than lead thickness indicated for assemblies in which they are installed or 1/16" whichever is greater.
- D. Lead Glazing: Unless otherwise indicated, provide lead equivalence of not less than that indicated for assembly in which glazing is installed or 1/16" whichever is greater.
- E. Fire-Rated and Smoke-Control Door and Frame Assemblies: Comply with Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames"..

2.3 LEAD SHEET, STRIP, AND PLATE

- A. ASTM B749, Alloy UNS No. L51121 (chemical-copper lead).

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. MarShield Custom Radiation Shielding Products, a division of Mars Metal Company.
 - b. Radiation Protection Products, Inc.
 - c. Ray-Bar Engineering Corp.

2.4 LEAD-LINED GYPSUM BOARD

- A. 5/8-inch- (15.9-mm-) thick gypsum board complying with Section 092900 "Gypsum Board," of width and length required for support spacing and to prevent cracking during handling, and with a single sheet of lead laminated to the back of the board.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Raybar Engineering Corp., USA
 - b. MarShield Custom Radiation Shielding Products, a division of Mars Metal Company.
 - c. Radiation Protection Products, Inc.
 2. Lead Sheet Lining: Full width of board and height as required by Physicist's Report.
 3. Furnish 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide lead strips for backing joints.
 4. Furnish finishing materials, accessories, and trim for lead-lined gypsum board complying with Section 092900 "Gypsum Board."

2.5 LEAD GLASS

- A. Lead-barium, polished glass containing not less than 60 percent heavy metal oxides, including not less than 48 percent lead oxide by weight.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. MarShield Custom Radiation Shielding Products, a division of Mars Metal Company.
 - b. Radiation Protection Products, Inc.
 - c. Ray-Bar Engineering Corp.
 2. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
 3. Tempered Safety Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), lead glass with thickness as needed to provide lead equivalence indicated.

2.6 LEAD-LINED HOLLOW-METAL DOORS

- A. Steel doors complying with NAAMM-HMMA 861, except as indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. MarShield Custom Radiation Shielding Products, a division of Mars Metal Company.
 - b. Ray-Bar Engineering Corp.
 - c. Republic Doors and Frames; a Allegion brand.
 - d. Security Metal Products; a brand of ASSA ABLOY.
 2. Provide single continuous sheet of lead of thickness not less than that required for partition in which door is installed extending from top to bottom and edge to edge, supported by hat-channel stiffeners. Do not weld stiffeners through lead lining.
 3. Line-inverted channels at top and bottom of doors with lead sheet of same thickness used in door and close with filler channels to provide flush top and bottom edges.
 4. Shield cutouts for locksets with lead sheet of same thickness used in door. Overlap lining of cutouts with lining of door by 1 inch (25 mm).
 5. Prepare doors to receive glazed lights; Factory cut and trim openings through doors. Furnish removable stops for glazed openings.
 6. Furnish lead-lined astragals for pairs of doors.
 7. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated with 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) clearance at heads and jambs and minimum clearance at bottom.
- B. Metal Frames for Glazed Lights: Lead-lined frame formed of 0.048-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; factory primed for paint finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated.

2.7 LEAD-LINED HOLLOW-METAL FRAMES

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Steel frames complying with NAAMM-HMMA 861, except as indicated.
- a. MarShield Custom Radiation Shielding Products, a division of Mars Metal Company.
 - b. Ray-Bar Engineering Corp.
 - c. Republic Doors and Frames; a Allegion brand.
 - d. Security Metal Products; a brand of ASSA ABLOY.
 2. Provide knocked down frames where indicated and where installed in existing partitions.
 3. Provide borrowed lite observation window frames of split or telescoping design with welded corners, allowing frame to be installed after construction of partition.
 - a. Construct so lead lining overlaps glazing material perimeter by at least 3/8 inch (9.5 mm), and furnish removable stops.
 - b. Form sill with an opening for sound transmission. Offset sound passage to make opening lightproof and to maintain required lead equivalence at all points and in all directions.

4. Provide door and observation window frames from steel sheet with minimum thickness of 0.0667 inch (1.7 mm).
 5. Furnish with additional reinforcements and internal supports to adequately carry the weight of lead-lined doors. Install reinforcements and supports before installing lead lining.
 6. Line frame with lead sheet of thickness not less than that required for doors and walls where frames are used. Form lead sheet to match frame contour, continuous in each jamb and across the head, lapping the stops. Form lead shields around areas prepared to receive hardware. Fabricate lead lining wide enough to maintain an effective lap with lead of adjacent shielding.
 7. Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
 - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 8. ANSI/WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.
- B. Prepare doors to receive glazed lights; factory cut and trim openings through doors. Provide removable wood stops for glazed lights.
- C. Metal Frames for Glazed Lights: Lead-lined frame formed of 0.048-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; factory primed for paint ; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated.
- D. Shield cutouts for locksets with lead sheet of same thickness used in door. Lap lining of cutouts with door lining.
- E. Furnish lead-lined astragals for pairs of doors.
- F. Factory fit doors to suit frame openings indicated with 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) clearance at heads and jambs and minimum clearance at bottom. Factory machine doors for hardware not surface applied.

2.8 INFORMATIONAL SIGNS

- A. High-Pressure-Laminate Signs: High-pressure laminate engraving stock with contrasting face and core, machine engraved from master templates for accurately formed letters, numbers, and symbols.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
 2. Provide copy indicated or as directed.
 3. Indicate lead equivalence in millimeters and heights of radiation protection in inches (millimeters).
- B. Rooms Where the Level of Protection Is Uniform Throughout: Provide one sign for each room indicating lead equivalence of partitions, ceilings, floors, doors, and other portions of radiation protection enclosure. Indicate height of radiation protection above floor, or indicate that partitions are radiation protected to full height.
- C. Mounting: Provide manufacturer's standard two-faced tape.

2.9 DOOR AND DOOR FRAME FABRICATION

- A. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with door hardware schedule and templates furnished, as specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Glazing Compounds, Gaskets, and Accessories: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Accessories and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard fasteners and accessories as required for installation, maintaining same lead equivalence as rest of system.
- C. Asphalt Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- D. Asphalt Felt: ASTM D226/D226M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates with Installer present for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of radiation protection.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF LEAD-LINED GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install and finish lead-lined gypsum board in accordance with Section 092900 "Gypsum Board."
- B. Install lead-lined gypsum board panels with long edge parallel to supports and lead lining facing supports. Provide blocking at end joints. Install using fasteners and construction adhesive.
- C. Install lead-lined gypsum board panels in sequence, so lead lining that extends beyond edge of gypsum board is covered by next panel installed.
- D. At joints where lead lining does not extend beyond edge of gypsum board panels, install lead strips 2 inches (50 mm) wide and same thickness as lead lining to face of framing and blocking. Secure lead strips with construction adhesive.
- E. Provide shims at face of supports and blocking, where lead lining does not overlap, to provide a uniform plane across panel surfaces.
- F. Fasten lead-lined gypsum board to framing, with steel drill screws spaced as recommended in writing by lead-lined gypsum board manufacturer.

- G. Openings: Extend lead-lined gypsum board into frames of openings, lapping lead lining with lead frames or frame linings at least 1 inch (25 mm). Arrange board around openings, so neither horizontal nor vertical joints occur at corners of openings.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF LEAD-LINED DOORS AND DOOR FRAMES

- A. Install lead-lined steel doors and door frames in accordance with Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."
 - 1. Apply a coat of asphalt mastic or paint to lead lining in door frames where lead comes in contact with masonry or concrete.
- B. Install lead-lined wood doors in accordance with Section 081416 "Flush Wood Doors."
- C. Lead-Lined Hollow-Metal Door Frames: Comply with ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 840 unless otherwise indicated. Except for frames located in existing walls or partitions, place frames before constructing walls. Set frames accurately in position, plumb, and brace securely until permanent anchors are set.
 - 1. Provide three anchors per jamb, located adjacent to hinge on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb.
 - 2. In masonry construction, use wire or T-strap anchors, and apply a coat of asphalt mastic or paint to lead lining where lead comes in contact with masonry or grout.
 - 3. In metal stud construction, use wall anchors attached to studs with screws.
 - 4. In wood stud construction, use strap anchors attached to studs with screws.
- D. Lead-Lined Split-Frame Observation Windows: Install lead-lined hollow-metal frames with split or telescoping design, with leaded side of frame on radiation side of wall.
- E. Lap lead lining of frames over lining in walls at least 1 inch (25 mm).
- F. Lead Lining of Frames: Line inside of frames with lead of thickness of not less than that required in doors and walls where frames are used. Form lead to match frame contour, continuous in each jamb and across the head, lapping the stops. Form lead shields around areas prepared to receive hardware. Lap lining over lining in walls at least 1 inch (25 mm).
- G. Install leaded side of frame on radiation side of wall. Lap lead lining of frames over lining in walls at least 1 inch (25 mm).
- H. Lead Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Hardware: Line covers, escutcheons, and plates to provide effective shielding at cutouts and penetrations of frames and doors. See Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for other installation requirements.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PENETRATING ITEMS

- A. At penetrations of lead linings, provide lead shields to maintain continuity of protection.

- B. Provide lead linings, sleeves, shields, and other protection in thickness of not less than that required in assembly being penetrated.
- C. Secure shields at penetrations using adhesive or wire ties but not penetrating fasteners unless indicated on Drawings.
- D. Outlet Boxes and Conduit: Cover or line with lead sheet lapped over adjacent lead lining at least 1 inch (25 mm). Wrap conduit with lead sheet for a distance of not less than 10 inches (250 mm) from box.
- E. Duct Openings: Unless otherwise indicated, line or wrap ducts with lead sheet for distance from partition/ceiling equal to 3 times the largest opening dimension. Lap lead sheet with adjacent lead lining at least 1 inch (25 mm).
- F. Piping: Unless otherwise indicated, wrap piping with lead sheet for a distance of not less than 10 inches (250 mm) from point of penetration.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections after radiology equipment has been installed and placed in operating condition.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove and replace radiation protection that inspection reports indicate does not comply with specified requirements.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Lock radiation-protected rooms once doors and locks are installed, and limit access to only those persons performing work in the rooms.

END OF SECTION 134900

SECTION 210500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 3. Sleeves.
 - 4. Escutcheons.
 - 5. Grout.
 - 6. Fire-suppression equipment and piping demolition.
 - 7. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 8. Painting and finishing.
 - 9. Concrete bases.
 - 10. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Mechanical sleeve seals.
2. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for fire-suppression installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for fire-suppression items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAgl, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Plastic Piping: ASTM F 493.

2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. [Available] Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: [EPDM] [NBR] interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: **Plastic, Carbon steel, Stainless steel.** Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: **Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating** of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.5 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: **Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.**
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: **Polished chrome-plated.**
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With [set screw] [spring clips] [set screw or spring clips] and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With [concealed] [exposed-rivet] hinge, [set screw] [spring clips] [set screw or spring clips], and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.7 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FIRE-SUPPRESSION DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: **One-piece**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: **One-piece, stamped-steel type** and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with **polished chrome-plated, rough-brass** finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with **concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips**.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with **set screw**.
 - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. **Steel Pipe Sleeves:** For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
 - b. **Steel Sheet Sleeves:** For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.

- c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
 - Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
 - R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
 - S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
 - T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
 - U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.
- 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
 - B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
 - D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
 - E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
 - F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
 - G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
 - I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- 3.4 PAINTING
- A. Painting of fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
 - B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- 3.5 CONCRETE BASES
- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.

1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use **3000-psi (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Sections "**Cast-in-Place Concrete, Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete.**"

3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.7 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.8 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for fire-suppression equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 210500

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings** or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- C. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**product indicated on Drawings**] **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 5. Proco Products, Inc.
 6. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.
- C. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
1. Sealing Elements: **EPDM-rubber** interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 2. Pressure Plates: **Carbon steel Stainless steel**.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: **Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Presealed Systems.
- C. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas [**2 inches (50 mm)**] **<Insert dimension>** above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)** or as indicated on Drawings: **Cast-iron wall sleeves.**
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** or as indicated on Drawings: **Cast-iron wall sleeves.**
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than [NPS 6 (DN 150)] <Insert pipe size>: [Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system].
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** or as indicated on Drawings and Larger: **Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.**
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)** <Insert pipe size>: **Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.**
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping [NPS 6 (DN 150)] or as indicated and Larger: [Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system] [Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system] [Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system] [Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves] <Insert material>.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than [NPS 6 (DN 150)] or as indicated: [Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves] [PVC-pipe sleeves] [Stack-sleeve fittings] [Sleeve-seal fittings] [Molded-PE or -PP sleeves] [Molded-PVC sleeves] <Insert material>.
 - b. Piping [NPS 6 (DN 150)] <Insert pipe size> and Larger: [Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves] [PVC-pipe sleeves] [Stack-sleeve fittings] <Insert material>.
 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than [NPS 6 (DN 150)] or as indicated: **Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.**
 - b. Piping [NPS 6 (DN 150)] or as indicated and Larger: **Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.**

END OF SECTION 210517

SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With **polished, chrome-plated** finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With **polished, chrome-plated** finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, [**concealed**] [**and**] [**exposed-rivet**] hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange[**with holes for fasteners**].
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass[**or split-casting brass**] type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type **or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge**.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass[**or split-casting brass**] type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type[**or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge**] [**or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge**].
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass[**or split-casting brass**] type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type[**or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge**].
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass **or split-casting brass** type with **polished, chrome-plated** finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type **or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge**.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass **or split-casting brass** type with **polished, chrome-plated** finish.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type **or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge**.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 210518

SECTION 211100 - FACILITY FIRE-SUPPRESSION WATER-SERVICE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fire-suppression water-service piping and related components outside the building **and service entrance piping through floor into the building.**
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for fire-suppression standpipes inside the building.
 - 2. Division 21 Section "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for wet-pipe fire-suppression sprinkler systems inside the building.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: For piping and specialties including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and specialty sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations, and elevations.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with the "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-suppression water-service piping.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
 2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
 3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
 2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS – NOT USED

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Soft Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)**, water tube, annealed temper.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)**, water tube, drawn temper.
- C. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
- D. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Viega; Plumbing & Heating Systems.
 2. Standard: UL 213.
 3. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
- F. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with cut, rounded-grooved ends.
- B. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end.
- C. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end.

D. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - c. Star Pipe Products.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
3. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

E. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.

1. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

F. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.

1. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

G. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

2.3 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PE, Fire-Service Pipe: FM Global approved, with minimum thickness equivalent to **Class 150 and Class 200**.
- B. Molded PE Fittings: FM Global approved; PE butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.

2.4 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS – NOT USED

2.5 FIBERGLASS PIPE AND FITTINGS – NOT USED

2.6 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**

- a. EBAA Iron, Inc.
 - b. ROMAC Industries Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products.
2. Description: Compound, ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections. Assemble components for offset and expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
- B. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. EBAA Iron, Inc.
 2. Description: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and one or two flexing sections for up to 15-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
- 2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING
- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
 - B. Material: **Linear low-density PE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) or High-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm)** minimum thickness.
 - C. Form: **Sheet or tube.**
 - D. Color: **Black or natural.**
- 2.8 JOINING MATERIALS
- A. Gaskets for Ferrous Piping and Copper-Alloy Tubing: ASME B16.21, asbestos free.
 - B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series.
 - C. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
- 2.9 PIPING SPECIALTIES
- A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Division.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. ROMAC Industries Inc.
 - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
 - g. Viking Johnson.
2. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners, and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
3. Standard: AWWA C219.
4. Center-Sleeve Material: **Manufacturer's standard.**
5. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
6. Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa)** minimum.
7. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

2.10 CORPORATION VALVES AND CURB VALVES – NOT USED

2.11 GATE VALVES

A. AWWA Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. American AVK Company; Valves & Fittings Division.
 - b. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; American Flow Control Division.
 - c. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 - d. American R/D.
 - e. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - g. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
 - h. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - i. M&H Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - j. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - k. NIBCO INC.
 - l. Tyler Pipe; a division of McWane, Inc.; Utilities Division.
 - m. U.S. Pipe.
2. 200-psig (1380-kPa), AWWA, Iron, Nonrising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
06/06 (R 03/08)

- a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with cast-iron or bronze double-disc gate, bronze gate rings, bronze stem, and stem nut.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C500.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - d. End Connections: Mechanical joint.
 - e. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
3. 200-psig (1380-kPa), AWWA, Iron, Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C509.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - d. End Connections: Mechanical or push-on joint.
 - e. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
4. 250-psig (1725-kPa), AWWA, Iron, Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C509.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
 - d. End Connections: Mechanical or push-on joint.
 - e. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
5. 200-psig (1380-kPa), AWWA, Iron, OS&Y, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with cast-iron double disc, bronze disc and seat rings, and bronze stem.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C500.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - d. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
6. 200-psig (1380-kPa), AWWA, Iron, OS&Y, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze, gray-iron, or ductile-iron gate; resilient seats; and bronze stem.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C509.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - d. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
7. 250-psig (1725-kPa), AWWA, Iron, OS&Y, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze, gray-iron, or ductile-iron gate; resilient seats; and bronze stem.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C509.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - d. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Class 125, Bronze, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
06/06 (R 03/08)

- a. Description: Class 125, Type 1; bronze with solid wedge and malleable-iron handwheel.
- b. Standard: MSS SP-80.
- c. Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- d. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.

B. UL-Listed or FM-Approved Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**

- a. American AVK Company; Valve & Fittings Division.
- b. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; American Flow Control Division.
- c. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
- d. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- g. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
- h. Hammond Valve.
- i. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
- j. M&H Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
- m. NIBCO INC.
- n. Shurjoint Piping Products.
- o. Troy Valve; a division of Penn-Troy Manufacturing, Inc.
- p. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- q. United Brass Works, Inc.
- r. U.S. Pipe.
- s. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. 175-psig (1200-kPa), UL-Listed or FM-Approved, Iron, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Iron body and bonnet, bronze seating material, and inside screw.
- b. Standards: UL 262 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
- c. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200) minimum.
- d. End Connections: Mechanical or push-on joint.
- e. Indicator-Post Flange: Include on valves used with indicator posts.

3. 250-psig (1725-kPa), UL-Listed or FM-Approved, Iron, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Iron body and bonnet, bronze seating material, and inside screw.
- b. Standards: UL 262 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
- c. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
- d. End Connections: Mechanical or push-on joint.
- e. Indicator-Post Flange: Include on valves used with indicator posts.

4. 175-psig (1200-kPa), UL-Listed or FM-Approved, Iron, OS&Y, Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
06/06 (R 03/08)

- b. Standards: UL 262 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
 - d. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
5. 250-psig (1725-kPa), UL-Listed or FM-Approved, Iron, OS&Y Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.
 - b. Standards: UL 262 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
 - d. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
6. UL-Listed or FM-Approved, OS&Y Bronze, Gate Valves:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following:**
 - 1) Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - 2) Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - 3) Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - 4) NIBCO INC.
 - 5) United Brass Works, Inc.
 - b. Description: Bronze body and bonnet and bronze stem.
 - c. Standards: UL 262 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 - d. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
 - e. End Connections: Threaded.

2.12 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
- 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 - b. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - c. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
 - d. Flowserve.
 - e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - f. M&H Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - g. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - h. U.S. Pipe.
- 3. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.
- 4. Standard: MSS SP-60.

5. Tapping Sleeve: Cast-iron, ductile-iron, or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Sleeve shall match size and type of pipe material being tapped and have recessed flange for branch valve.
6. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, [metal] [resilient]-seated gate valve with one raised-face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.

2.13 BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. AWWA Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. DeZurik/Copes-Vulcan; a unit of SPX Corporation.
 - b. Milliken Valve Company.
 - c. Mosser Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - e. Pratt, Henry Company.
 - f. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description: Rubber seated.
3. Standard: AWWA C504.
4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Body Type: **Wafer or flanged.**
6. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).

B. UL Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. Pratt, Henry Company.
3. Description: Metal on resilient material seating.
4. Standards: UL 1091 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
5. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
6. Body Type: **Wafer or flanged.**
7. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).

2.14 CHECK VALVES

A. AWWA Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. American AVK Company; Valves & Fittings Division.
 - b. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; American Flow Control Division.
 - c. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
 - d. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - g. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - h. M&H Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - j. NIBCO INC.
 - k. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description: Swing-check type with resilient seat; with interior coating according to AWWA C550 and ends to match piping.
3. Standard: AWWA C508.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).

B. UL-Listed or FM-Approved Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 - b. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
 - e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - f. Kidde Fire Fighting.
 - g. Matco-Norca.
 - h. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - i. NIBCO INC.
 - j. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - k. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - l. United Brass Works, Inc.
 - m. Victaulic Company.
 - n. Viking Corporation.
 - o. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description: Swing-check type with pressure rating, rubber-face checks unless otherwise indicated, and ends matching piping.
3. Standards: UL 312 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
4. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa).**

2.15 DETECTOR CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 2. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - 3. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - 4. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
 - 5. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - 6. Mueller Co.; Hersey Meters Division.
 - 7. Victaulic Company.
 - 8. Viking Corporation.
 - 9. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- C. Description: Galvanized cast-iron body, bolted cover with air-bleed device for access to internal parts, and flanged ends. Include one-piece bronze disc with bronze bushings, pivot, and replaceable seat. Include threaded bypass taps in inlet and outlet for bypass meter connection. Set valve to allow minimal water flow through bypass meter when major water flow is required.
- D. Standards: UL 312 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
- E. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
- F. Water Meter: AWWA C700, disc type, at least one-fourth size of detector check valve. Include meter, bypass piping, gate valves, check valve, and connections to detector check valve.

2.16 WATER METERS

- A. Water meters will be furnished by utility company.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - 1. AMCO Water Metering Systems.
 - 2. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - 3. Carlon Meter.
 - 4. Hays Fluid Controls.
 - 5. McCrometer.
 - 6. Mueller Co.; Hersey Meters Division.
 - 7. Neptune Technology Group Inc.
 - 8. Sensus Metering Systems.
- C. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Description: With bronze main case.

2. Standard: AWWA C700.
3. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)**.

D. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

1. Standard: AWWA C701.
2. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)**.

E. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. Standard: AWWA C702.
2. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)**.

F. Remote Registration System:

1. Description: Utility company's standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
2. Standard: AWWA C706.
3. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)** .

G. Remote Registration System:

1. Description: Utility company's standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
2. Standard: AWWA C707.
3. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)**.
4. Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.
5. Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.

2.17 DETECTOR-TYPE WATER METERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**]:

1. Badger Meter, Inc.
2. Mueller Co.; Hersey Meters Division.
3. Neptune Technology Group Inc.
4. Sensus Metering Systems.

B. AWWA, Detector Check Water Meters:

1. Description: Main line, turbine meter with second meter on bypass.
2. Standard: AWWA C703.
3. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)**.
4. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).

5. Bypass Meter: [AWWA C701, turbine] [AWWA C702, compound]-type, bronze case.
 - a. Size: At least one-half nominal size of main-line meter.

C. Fire-Protection, Detector Check Water Meters:

1. Description: Main-line turbine meter with strainer and second meter on bypass.
2. Standards: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)**.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
5. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine-type, bronze case.
 - a. Size: At least NPS 2 (DN 50).

D. Remote Registration System:

1. Description: Utility company's standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
2. Standard: AWWA C706.
3. Registration: Flow in [**gallons (liters)**] [**cubic feet (cubic meters)**].

E. Remote Registration System:

1. Description: Utility company's standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
2. Standard: AWWA C707.
3. Registration: Flow in **gallons (liters)**.
4. Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.
5. Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company's requirements for type and quantity.

2.18 PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme; a division of The Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Division.

2.19 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Division.
3. Standard: **ASSE 1013 or AWWA C511**.
4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
5. Pressure Loss: **12 psig (83 kPa)** maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.
6. Size: **<Insert NPS (DN)>**.
7. Design Flow Rate: **<Insert gpm (L/s)>**.
8. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: **<Insert gpm (L/s)>**.
9. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: **<Insert psig (kPa)>** for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; **<Insert psig (kPa)>** for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
10. Body Material: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; **[cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved] [steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved] [stainless steel]** for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
11. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; **[flanged] <Insert type>** for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
12. Configuration: Designed for **[horizontal, straight through] [vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet] [vertical] <Insert configuration>** flow.
13. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.

B. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Division.
3. Standard: **ASSE 1015 or AWWA C510**.
 4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Pressure Loss: [**5 psig (35 kPa)**] <Insert value> maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.
 6. Size: <Insert NPS (DN)>.
 7. Design Flow Rate: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
 8. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
 9. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: <Insert psig (kPa)> for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; <Insert psig (kPa)> for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 10. Body Material: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; [**cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved**] [**steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved**] [**stainless steel**] for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 11. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; [**flanged**] <Insert type> for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 12. Configuration: Designed for [**horizontal, straight through**] <Insert configuration> flow.
 13. Accessories: Ball valves with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; OS&Y gate valves with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- C. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection Backflow Preventer Assemblies:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Division.
 3. Standards: ASSE 1047 and UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 5. Pressure Loss: [**12 psig (83 kPa)**] <Insert value> maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.
 6. Size: <Insert NPS (DN)>.
 7. Design Flow Rate: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
 8. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
 9. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: <Insert psig (kPa)>.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
06/06 (R 03/08)

10. Body Material: [**Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved**] [**Steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved**] [**Stainless steel**].
 11. End Connections: Flanged.
 12. Configuration: Designed for [**horizontal, straight through**] [**vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet**] [**vertical**] <Insert configuration> flow.
 13. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: UL 262, "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.
 - c. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- D. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation**> or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Division.
 3. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
 4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 5. Pressure Loss: [**5 psig (35 kPa)**] <Insert value> maximum, through middle one-third of flow range.
 6. Size: <Insert NPS (DN)>.
 7. Design Flow Rate: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
 8. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.
 9. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: <Insert psig (kPa)>.
 10. Body Material: [**Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved**] [**Steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved**] [**Stainless steel**].
 11. End Connections: Flanged.
 12. Configuration: Designed for [**horizontal, straight through**] [**vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet**] [**vertical**] <Insert configuration> flow.
 13. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: UL 262, "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing, approved; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- E. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Flomatic Corporation.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Division.
2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.20 WATER METER BOXES

- A. Description: Cast-iron body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" on cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
 1. Option: Base section may be cast-iron, PVC, clay, or other pipe.
- B. Description: Cast-iron body and double cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" on top cover; and with separate inner cover; air space between covers; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
- C. Description: Polymer-concrete body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER" on cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping. Include vertical and lateral design loadings of 15,000 lb minimum over 10 by 10 inches (6 800 kg minimum over 254 by 254 mm) square.

2.21 CONCRETE VAULTS – NOT USED

2.22 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURES – NOT USED

2.23 FIRE HYDRANTS – NOT USED

2.24 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings:**
 1. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
 2. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.

3. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
4. Kidde Fire Fighting.
5. Potter Roemer.
6. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.

- C. Description: Freestanding, with cast-bronze body, thread inlets according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department hose threads, and threaded bottom outlet. Include lugged caps, gaskets, and chains; lugged swivel connection and drop clapper for each hose-connection inlet; 18-inch- (460-mm-) high brass sleeve; and round escutcheon plate.
- D. Standard: UL 405.
- E. Connections: Two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one [NPS 4 (DN 100)] [NPS 6 (DN 150)] outlet.
- F. Connections: [**Three**] [**Four**] NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one NPS 6 (DN 150) outlet.
- G. Connections: Six NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one [NPS 6 (DN 150)] [NPS 8 (DN 200)] outlet.
- H. Inlet Alignment: [**Inline, horizontal**] [**Square**].
- I. Finish Including Sleeve: [**Polished chrome plated**] [**Rough chrome plated**] [**Polished bronze**].
- J. Escutcheon Plate Marking: "[**AUTO SPKR**] [**&**] [**STANDPIPE**]."

2.25 ALARM DEVICES

- A. General: UL 753 and "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing, of types and sizes to mate and match piping and equipment.
- B. Water-Flow Indicators: Vane-type water-flow detector, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) working pressure; designed for horizontal or vertical installation; with two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches to provide isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal when cover is removed.
- C. Supervisory Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal valve in other than fully open position.
- D. Pressure Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal increase in pressure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with excavating, trenching, and backfilling requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with water utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
- B. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
- C. Make connections larger than NPS 2 (DN 50) with tapping machine according to the following:
 - 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
 - 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
 - 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
 - 4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- D. Make connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:
 - 1. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company's standards.
 - 2. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
 - 3. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
 - 4. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
 - 5. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
 - 6. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.
- E. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
- F. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 - 1. Install encasement for tubing according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- G. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
 - 1. Install encasement for piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- H. Install PE pipe according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 645.

- I. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645 and AWWA M23.
- J. Install fiberglass AWWA pipe according to AWWA M45.
- K. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least [**30 inches (750 mm)**] <Insert dimension>, with top at least [**12 inches (300 mm)**] <Insert dimension> below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
 - 1. Under Driveways: With at least [**36 inches (910 mm)**] <Insert dimension> of cover over top.
 - 2. Under Railroad Tracks: With at least [**48 inches (1220 mm)**] <Insert dimension> of cover over top.
 - 3. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least [**12 inches (300 mm)**] <Insert dimension> of additional cover.
- L. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
- M. Extend fire-suppression water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building fire-suppression water-service piping systems at locations and pipe sizes indicated.
 - 1. Terminate fire-suppression water-service piping at building [**floor slab**] [**wall**] until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building's fire-suppression water-service piping systems when those systems are installed.
- N. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- O. Comply with requirements in Division 21 Sections for fire-suppression-water piping inside the building.
- P. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure rating same as or higher than systems pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in tubing NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adaptors, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside and inside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Copper-Tubing, Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.
- G. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use proprietary crimping tool and procedure recommended by copper, pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer.
- H. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
- I. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts.
- J. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- K. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
- L. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139.
- M. Fiberglass Piping Bonded Joints: Use adhesive and procedure recommended by piping manufacturer.
- N. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD, and with system working pressure.
- O. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.

3.4 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
 - 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
 - 2. Locking mechanical joints.
 - 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
 - 4. Bolted flanged joints.
 - 5. Heat-fused joints.
 - 6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.

7. <Insert devices>.

- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches in fire-suppression water-service piping according to NFPA 24 and the following:
 - 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
 - 2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
 - 3. Bonded-Joint Fiberglass, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M45.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
- C. UL-Listed or FM-Approved Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
- D. UL-Listed or FM-Approved Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
- E. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- F. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.
- G. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Install in vault or aboveground between shutoff valves. [**Install full-size valved bypass.**]
- H. Support valves and piping, not direct buried, on concrete piers. Comply with requirements for concrete piers in Division 03 Section "[**Cast-in-Place Concrete**] [**Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete**]."

3.6 DETECTOR CHECK VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install in vault or aboveground.
- B. Install for proper direction of flow. Install bypass with water meter, gate valves on each side of meter, and check valve downstream from meter.
- C. Support detector check valves and piping on concrete piers. Comply with requirements for concrete piers in Division 03 Section "[**Cast-in-Place Concrete**] [**Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete**]."

3.7 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.
- B. Water Meters: Install [**displacement**] [**turbine**]-type water meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller in meter boxes with shutoff valves on water meter inlets. Include valves on water meter outlets, and include valved bypass around meters unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Meters: Install [**compound**] [**turbine**]-type water meters NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger in meter vaults. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets, and include valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- D. Water Meters: Install detector-type water meters in meter vault according to AWWA M6. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets, and include full-size valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- E. Support water meters and piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger on concrete piers. Comply with requirements for concrete piers in Division 03 Section "[**Cast-in-Place Concrete**] [**Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete**]."

3.8 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS

- A. Rough-in piping and specialties for water meter installation according to utility company's written instructions.

3.9 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
- C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Support NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger backflow preventers and piping on concrete piers. Comply with requirements for concrete piers in Division 03 Section "[**Cast-in-Place Concrete**] [**Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete**]."

3.10 WATER METER BOX INSTALLATION

- A. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.
- B. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top [**2 inches (50 mm)**] <Insert dimension> above surface.

3.11 CONCRETE VAULT INSTALLATION

- A. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.

3.12 PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURE INSTALLATION

- A. Install concrete base level and with top approximately [**2 inches (50 mm)**] <Insert dimension> above grade.
- B. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.
- C. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

3.13 FIRE HYDRANT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.
- B. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants: Install with valve below frost line. Provide for drainage.
- C. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.
- D. UL-Listed or FM-Approved Fire Hydrants: Comply with NFPA 24.

3.14 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire-department connection to mains.
- B. Install protective pipe bollards [**on two sides of**] [**on three sides of**] <Insert arrangement> each fire-department connection. Pipe bollards are specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."

3.15 ALARM DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with NFPA 24 for devices and methods of valve supervision. Underground valves with valve box do not require supervision.
- B. Supervisory Switches: Supervise valves in open position.
 - 1. Valves: Grind away portion of exposed valve stem. Bolt switch, with plunger in stem depression, to OS&Y gate-valve yoke.
 - 2. Indicator Posts: Drill and thread hole in upper-barrel section at target plate. Install switch, with toggle against target plate, on barrel of indicator post.
- C. Locking and Sealing: Secure unsupervised valves as follows:

1. Valves: Install chain and padlock on open OS&Y gate valve.
2. Post Indicators: Install padlock on wrench on indicator post.

- D. Pressure Switches: Drill and thread hole in exposed barrel of fire hydrant. Install switch.
- E. Water-Flow Indicators: Install in water-service piping in vault. Select indicator with saddle and vane matching pipe size. Drill hole in pipe, insert vane, and bolt saddle to pipe.
- F. Connect alarm devices to building's fire-alarm system. Wiring and fire-alarm devices are specified in Division 28 Sections.

3.16 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fire-suppression water-service piping to [**utility water main**] [**existing water main**] <**Insert piping system**>. Use [**tapping sleeve and tapping valve**] [**service clamp and corporation valve**] <**Insert method**>.
- B. Connect fire-suppression water-service piping to interior fire-suppression piping.
- C. Connect waste piping from concrete vault drains to [**sanitary sewerage system. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for connection to sanitary sewer**] [**storm-drainage system. Comply with requirements in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for connection to storm sewer**].

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Use test procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described below.
- B. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- C. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times the working pressure for two hours.
1. Increase pressure in 50-psig (350-kPa) increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for one hour; decrease to 0 psig (0 kPa). Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for one more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts (1.89 L) per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.18 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground[**detectable**] warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground fire-suppression water-service piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic fire-suppression water-service piping or fire-suppression water-service piping with electrically insulated fittings, on main electrical meter panel. Comply with requirements for identifying devices in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.19 CLEANING

- A. Clean[**and disinfect**] fire-suppression water-service piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
 - 2. Use purging[**and disinfecting**] procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
 - 3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
 - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging[**and disinfecting**] activities.

3.20 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground fire-suppression water-service piping [**NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller**] <Insert pipe size range> shall be[**one of**] the following:
 - 1. [**Hard**] [**Soft**] copper tube, [**ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A)**] [**ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)**]; [**wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed**] [**copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed**] joints.
 - 2. NPS 2 (DN 50) PE, [**Class 150**] [**Class 200**], fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.

- B. Underground fire-suppression water-service piping NPS 3 (DN 80) shall be **[one of]** the following:
1. **[Hard] [Soft]** copper tube, **[ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A)] [ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)]**; **[wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed] [copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed]** joints.
 2. Grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 3. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, **[ductile- or gray-iron, standard-pattern] [or] [ductile-iron, compact-pattern]** fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and gasketed joints.
 4. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron compact-pattern fittings; and gasketed joints.
 5. PE, **[Class 150] [Class 200]**, fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
- C. Underground fire-suppression water-service piping NPS 4 (DN 100) shall be **[one of]** the following:
1. **[Hard] [Soft]** copper tube, **[ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A)] [ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)]**; **[wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed] [copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed]** joints.
 2. Grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 3. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, **[ductile- or gray-iron, standard-pattern] [or] [ductile-iron, compact-pattern]** fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and gasketed joints.
 4. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron compact-pattern fittings; and gasketed joints.
 5. PE, **[Class 150] [Class 200]**, fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
 6. PVC, **[Class 150] [Class 200]** pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC fittings of same class as pipe; and gasketed joints.
 7. Fiberglass, RTRP, **[Class 150] [Class 200]**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
- D. Underground fire-suppression water-service piping **[NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300)]** **<Insert pipe size range>** shall be **[one of]** the following:
1. Grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, **[ductile- or gray-iron, standard-pattern] [or] [ductile-iron, compact-pattern]** fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and gasketed joints.
 3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron compact-pattern fittings; and gasketed joints.
 4. PE, **[Class 150] [Class 200]**, fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
 5. PVC, **[Class 150] [Class 200]** pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC fittings of same class as pipe; and gasketed joints.
 6. Fiberglass, RTRP, **[Class 150] [Class 200]**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
- E. **[Aboveground] [and] [vault]** fire-suppression water-service piping **[NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller]** **<Insert pipe size range>** shall be hard copper tube, **[ASTM B 88, Type K**

(ASTM B 88M, Type A)] [ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)]; [wrought- or cast-copper-alloy, solder-joint fittings; and brazed] [copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed] joints.

- F. [Aboveground] [and] [vault] fire-suppression water-service piping [NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100)] <Insert pipe size range> shall be[one of] the following:
1. Hard copper tube, [ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A)] [ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)]; [wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed] [copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed] joints.
 2. Grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- G. [Aboveground] [and] [vault] fire-suppression water-service piping [NPS 5 to NPS 12 (DN 125 to DN 300)] <Insert pipe size range> shall be grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- H. Underslab fire-suppression water-service piping [NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller] <Insert pipe size range> shall be [hard] [soft] copper tube, [ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A)] [ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)]; [wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed] [copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed] joints.
- I. Underslab fire-suppression water-service piping [NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100)] <Insert pipe size range> shall be[one of] the following:
1. [Hard] [Soft] copper tube, [ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A)] [ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)]; [wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed] [copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed] joints.
 2. Grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 3. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, [ductile- or gray-iron, standard-pattern] [or] [ductile-iron, compact-pattern] fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and restrained, gasketed joints.
 4. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron compact-pattern fittings; and restrained, gasketed joints.
- J. Underslab fire-suppression water-service piping [NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300)] <Insert pipe size range> shall be[one of] the following:
1. Grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-end, ductile-iron pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; mechanical-joint, [ductile- or gray-iron, standard-pattern] [or] [ductile-iron, compact-pattern] fittings; glands, gaskets, and bolts; and restrained, gasketed joints.
 3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron compact-pattern fittings; and restrained, gasketed joints.

3.21 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
- B. Underground fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be corporation valves or curb valves with ends compatible with piping.
- C. Meter box fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be meter valves.
- D. Vault fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be **[Class 125, MSS, bronze, nonrising stem]** **[or]** **[UL-listed or FM-approved, OS&Y, bronze,]** gate valves.
- E. Underground fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger shall be **[one of]** the following:
1. 200-psig (1380-kPa), AWWA, iron, nonrising-stem, **[metal]** **[resilient]**-seated gate valves.
 2. 250-psig (1725-kPa), AWWA, iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves.
 3. **[175-psig (1200-kPa)] [250-psig (1725-kPa)]**, UL-listed or FM-approved, iron, nonrising-stem gate valves.
- F. Indicator-post underground fire-suppression water-service valves NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger shall be **[175-psig (1200-kPa)] [250-psig (1725-kPa)]**, UL-listed or FM-approved, iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator-post flange.
- G. Standard-pressure, **[aboveground]** **[and]** **[vault]** fire-suppression water-service shutoff valves NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger shall be **[one of]** the following:
1. 200-psig (1380-kPa), AWWA, iron, OS&Y, **[metal]** **[resilient]**-seated gate valves.
 2. 250-psig (1725-kPa), AWWA, iron, OS&Y, resilient-seated gate valves.
 3. **[175-psig (1200-kPa)] [250-psig (1725-kPa)]**, UL-listed or FM-approved, iron, OS&Y gate valves.
 4. **[AWWA]** **[or]** **[UL-listed or FM-approved]** butterfly valves.
- H. Fire-suppression water-service check valves NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger shall be **[one of]** the following:
1. **[AWWA]** **[or]** **[UL-listed or FM-approved]** check valves.
 2. UL-listed or FM-approved detector check valves.

END OF SECTION 211100

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Fire-protection valves.
3. Fire-department connections.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Excess-pressure pumps.
6. Alarm devices.
7. Manual control stations.
8. Control panels.
9. Pressure gages.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for standpipe piping.
2. Division 21 Section "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for dry-pipe sprinkler piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175 psig (1200 kPa) maximum.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.
- B. Deluge Sprinkler System: Open sprinklers are attached to piping connected to water supply through deluge valve. Fire-detection system, in same area as sprinklers, opens valve. Water flows into piping system and discharges from attached sprinklers when valve opens.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.
- B. Delegated Design: Design sprinkler system(s), including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: **[10] [20] <Insert number>** percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
 - a. Building Service Areas: **Ordinary Hazard, Group 1**
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rooms: **Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.**
 - c. General Storage Areas: **Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.**
 - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: **Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.**
 - e. Office and Public Areas: **Light Hazard.**
 - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: **0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. (4.1 mm/min. over 139-sq. m).**
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: **0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. (6.1 mm/min. over 139-sq. m) area.**
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: **0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. (8.1 mm/min. over 139-sq. m) area.**
 - d. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: Per UL listing.
 - 5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
 - a. Office Spaces: **120 sq. ft. (11.1 sq. m)] [225 sq. ft. (20.9 sq. m).**
 - b. Storage Areas: **130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).**
 - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: **130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).**
 - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: **[130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m)] <Insert dimension>.**
 - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
 - 6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: **100 gpm (6.3 L/s) for 30 minutes.**
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: **250 gpm (15.75 L/s) for 60 to 90 minutes.**

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. **Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.**
- B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
 - C. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
 - D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - E. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Domestic water piping.
 2. HVAC hydronic piping.
 3. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - F. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer **and professional engineer**.
 - G. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
 - H. Welding certificates.
 - I. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
 - J. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
 - K. Field quality-control reports.
 - L. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications:
 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
06/06 (R 03/08)

- a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
 - B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
 - C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - D. NFPA Standards: Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
 - 2. NFPA 13R, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height."
 - 3. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS – NOT USED
- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- 1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS
- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard Weight, **Black-Steel Pipe**: ASTM A 53/A 53M, **Type E, Grade B**. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30, **Black-Steel Pipe**: ASTM A 135; ASTM A 795/A 795M, **Type E**; or ASME B36.10M, wrought steel; with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Thinwall [**Galvanized-**] [**and**] [**Black-**]Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Schedule 10, **Black-Steel Pipe**: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 (DN 125) and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10 (DN 150 to DN 250), plain end.
- E. **Black-Steel Pipe Nipples**: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- F. **Uncoated**, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.
- G. **Uncoated**, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- H. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- I. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- J. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
- K. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
- L. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
 - c. National Fittings, Inc.
 - d. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - e. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - f. Victaulic Company.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa)**.
 - 3. **Uncoated**, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

- M. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM-approved, 175-psig (1200-kPa) pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Victaulic Company.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B** water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Viega; Plumbing & Heating Systems.
 2. Standard: UL 213.
 3. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
- G. Grooved-Joint, Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 2. Grooved-End, Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze castings.
 3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper-tube dimensions, with design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

H. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. T-DRILL Industries Inc.
2. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

2.4 CPVC PIPE AND FITTINGS – NOT USED

2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: **AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.**
 1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
 2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.6 COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING – NOT USED

2.7 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

- A. General Requirements:
 1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
- B. Ball Valves:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**product indicated on Drawings**] **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Victaulic Company.
3. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
 4. Valves NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
 5. Valves NPS 2 and NPS 2-1/2 (DN 50 and DN 65): Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
 6. Valves NPS 3 (DN 80): Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
- C. Bronze Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide; **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Fivalco Inc.
 - b. Global Safety Products, Inc.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 3. Standard: UL 1091.
 4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
 5. Body Material: Bronze.
 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- D. Iron Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Fivalco Inc.
 - c. Global Safety Products, Inc.
 - d. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Pratt, Henry Company.
 - h. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - i. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - j. Victaulic Company.
 3. Standard: UL 1091.
 4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
 5. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 6. Style: Lug or wafer.
 7. End Connections: Grooved.
- E. Check Valves:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
06/06 (R 03/08)

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AFAC Inc.
 - b. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 - c. Anvil International, Inc.
 - d. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - g. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - h. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - i. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
 - j. Fivalco Inc.
 - k. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
 - l. Groeniger & Company.
 - m. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - n. Matco-Norca.
 - o. Metraflex, Inc.
 - p. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - q. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - r. NIBCO INC.
 - s. Potter Roemer.
 - t. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - u. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - v. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - w. United Brass Works, Inc.
 - x. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
 - y. Victaulic Company.
 - z. Viking Corporation.
 - aa. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
3. Standard: UL 312.
4. Pressure Rating: **[250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum] [300 psig (2070 kPa)]**.
5. Type: Swing check.
6. Body Material: Cast iron.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Bronze OS&Y Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - d. NIBCO INC.

- e. United Brass Works, Inc.
- 3. Standard: UL 262.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
 - 5. Body Material: Bronze.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- G. Iron OS&Y Gate Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **[product indicated on Drawings] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 - b. American Valve, Inc.
 - c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - g. Hammond Valve.
 - h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - j. NIBCO INC.
 - k. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - l. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - m. United Brass Works, Inc.
 - n. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - o. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.
 - 3. Standard: UL 262.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: **[250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum] [300 psig (2070 kPa)]**.
 - 5. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 - 6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- H. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Fivalco Inc.
 - c. Global Safety Products, Inc.
 - d. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.

- g. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - i. Victaulic Company.
- 3. Standard: UL 1091.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
 - 5. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
 - a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
 - b. Body Material: Bronze.
 - c. End Connections: Threaded.
 - 6. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
 - a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
 - b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 - c. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.
 - 7. Valve Operation: Integral **electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, single-circuit, supervisory switch visual** indicating device.
- I. NRS Gate Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation**> or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 - b. American Valve, Inc.
 - c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - 3. Standard: UL 262.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: **[250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum] [300 psig (2070 kPa)]**.
 - 5. Body Material: Cast iron with indicator post flange.
 - 6. Stem: Nonrising.
 - 7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- J. Indicator Posts:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation**> or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
 - b. American Valve, Inc.
 - c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
3. Standard: UL 789.
 4. Type: Horizontal for wall mounting.
 5. Body Material: Cast iron with extension rod and locking device.
 6. Operation: [**Wrench**] [**Hand wheel**].

2.8 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.

B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
 - b. United Brass Works, Inc.

C. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Affiliated Distributors.
 - b. Anvil International, Inc.
 - c. Barnett.
 - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - e. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - f. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
 - g. Flowserve.
 - h. FNW.
 - i. Jomar International, Ltd.
 - j. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - k. Kitz Corporation.
 - l. Legend Valve.
 - m. Metso Automation USA Inc.
 - n. Milwaukee Valve Company.

- o. NIBCO INC.
- p. Potter Roemer.
- q. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- r. Southern Manufacturing Group.
- s. Stewart, M. A. and Sons Ltd.
- t. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- u. Victaulic Company.
- v. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

D. Globe Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
 - b. United Brass Works, Inc.

E. Plug Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Southern Manufacturing Group.

2.9 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. General Requirements:

- 1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
- 2. Pressure Rating:
 - a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
 - b. High-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: **250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.**
- 3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

B. Alarm Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
- 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AFAC Inc.
 - b. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
 - c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.

- d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - e. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
 - f. Victaulic Company.
 - g. Viking Corporation.
3. Standard: UL 193.
 4. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
 5. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, **retarding chamber**, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
 6. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
 7. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.

C. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation**> or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AFAC Inc.
 - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
3. Standard: UL 1726.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
5. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
6. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
7. End Connections: Threaded.

2.10 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Exposed-Type, Fire-Department Connection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product name or designation**> or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AFAC Inc.
 - b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
 - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - d. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
 - e. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
 - f. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - g. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - h. Wilson & Cousins Inc.
3. Standard: UL 405.
4. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.

5. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
6. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
7. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
8. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
9. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
10. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
11. Number of Inlets: **Two**.
12. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to **AUTO SPKR.**"
13. Finish: **Polished chrome plated**
14. Outlet Size: **NPS 6 (DN 150)**.

2.11 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. National Fittings, Inc.
 - c. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 213.
3. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.**
4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
5. Type: Mechanical-T and -cross fittings.
6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
 - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.**

4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

C. Branch Line Testers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
 - b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - c. Potter Roemer.
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
4. Body Material: Brass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet: Threaded.
7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
 - b. Triple R Specialty.
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
 - e. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.**
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. CECA, LLC.
 - b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
 - c. Merit Manufacturing; a division of Anvil International, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1474.

3. Pressure Rating: **250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.**
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible, Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Fivalco Inc.
 - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
 - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.**
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.12 SPRINKLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**

1. AFAC Inc.
2. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
3. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
4. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
5. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
6. Victaulic Company.
7. Viking Corporation.

B. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175 psig (1200 kPa) maximum.
3. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
4. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: **[250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum] [300 psig (2070 kPa)].**

C. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: **UL 1767.**
2. Nonresidential Applications: **UL 199.**
3. Residential Applications: **UL 1626.**

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
06/06 (R 03/08)

4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- D. Open Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element Removed: UL 199.
1. Characteristics:
 - a. Nominal [**1/2-inch (12.7-mm)**] <Insert value> Orifice: With Discharge Coefficient K [**between 5.3 and 5.8**] <Insert value>.
 - b. Nominal [**17/32-inch (13.5-mm)**] <Insert value> Orifice: With Discharge Coefficient K [**between 7.4 and 8.2**] <Insert value>.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes:
1. Chrome plated.
 2. Bronze.
 3. Painted.
- F. Special Coatings:
1. Wax.
 2. Lead.
 3. Corrosion-resistant paint.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: [**Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat**] [**Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch (25-mm) vertical adjustment**] [**Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat**].
 2. Sidewall Mounting: [**Chrome-plated steel**] [**Plastic, white finish**], one piece, flat.
- H. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Viking Corporation.
 2. Standard: UL 199.
 3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler to be installed in mechanical spaces only.

2.13 EXCESS-PRESSURE PUMPS – NOT USED

2.14 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Viking Corporation.
 2. Standard: UL 753.
 3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
 4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
 5. Size: 10-inch (250-mm) diameter.
 6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
 7. Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
 8. Outlet: NPS 1 (DN 25) drain connection.
- C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
 - b. Notifier; a Honeywell company.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 2. Standard: UL 464.
 3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
 4. Size: **6-inch (150-mm) minimum**-diameter.
 5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
- D. Water-Flow Indicators:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. ADT Security Services, Inc.
 - b. McDonnell & Miller; ITT Industries.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - d. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 - e. Viking Corporation.
 - f. Watts Industries (Canada) Inc.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
 - a. AFAC Inc.
 - b. Barksdale, Inc.
 - c. Detroit Switch, Inc.
 - d. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - e. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 - f. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - g. United Electric Controls Co.
 - h. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following**:
 - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
 - b. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - d. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

G. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]**:

- a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
2. Standard: UL 346.
 3. Type: Electrically supervised.
 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 5. Design: Signals that controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.

2.15 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Description: UL listed or FM approved, hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.16 CONTROL PANELS – NOT USED

2.17 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
 2. Ashcroft, Inc.
 3. Brecco Corporation.
 4. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: **0 to 250 psig (0 to 1725 kPa) minimum.**
- E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, **backflow preventer**, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. **Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."**
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, **backflow preventer**, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. **Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."**
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements for installation of sprinkler piping in NFPA 13.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation in NFPA 13.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 (DN 8) and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.
- N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- O. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Division 21 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 21 Section "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- J. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- K. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- L. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- M. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- N. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- O. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- P. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- Q. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

- R. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- S. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

- A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and with NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

3.7 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Alarm Valves: Include bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
 - 3. Deluge Valves: Install in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

3.8 EXCESS-PRESSURE PUMP INSTALLATION – NOT USED

3.9 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of [**narrow dimension of**] acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.10 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type, fire-department connections.
- B. Install yard-type, fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install **two** protective pipe bollards **around on sides of** each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."
- C. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

3.11 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Start and run excess-pressure pumps.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.
- C. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

3.14 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain **specialty valves**.

3.15 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with **grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints**.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller**, shall be **one of the following**:
 - 1. **Standard-weight**, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. **Standard-weight**, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. **Standard-weight**, black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
 - 4. [**Standard-weight**, black-steel pipe with **cut- or roll-**grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 5. **Standard-weight**, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
 - 6. **Type L (Type B)**, hard copper tube with plain ends; **cast- or wrought-**copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 7. **Type L (Type B)**, hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 8. NPS 2 (DN 50), **Type L (Type B)**, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

3.16 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: **Upright sprinklers.**
 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: **Pendent sprinklers.**
 3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: **Upright sprinklers.**
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
1. **Upright Pendent and Sidewall** Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211313

SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
5. Sleeves.
6. Escutcheons.
7. Grout.
8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
9. Painting and finishing.
10. Concrete bases.
11. Supports and anchorages.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.

- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAgl, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - f. Viking Johnson.
 - 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
 - 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
 - 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

- g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: [EPDM] [NBR] interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: [Carbon steel] [Stainless steel]. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: [Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating] [Stainless steel] of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated

- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: [Polished chrome-plated and rough brass].
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With [set screw or spring clips] and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: [One-piece or split-casting], cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: [One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge] and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with [polished chrome-plated] finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and [set screw or spring clips].
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with [set screw or spring clips].
 - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use [4000-psi (20.7-MPa)], 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.

- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 220500

SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
2. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
3. Rubber packless expansion joints.
4. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
5. Pipe loops and swing connections.
6. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.
- E. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex Pression Ltd.
 - d. Metraflex, Inc.
 - e. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
3. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
4. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C) and 340 psig at 450 deg F (2340 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.
 - b. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F (4830 kPa at 21 deg C) and 500 psig at 450 deg F (3450 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.
6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F (2070 kPa at 21 deg C) and 225 psig at 450 deg F (1550 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F (2890 kPa at 21 deg C) and 315 psig at 450 deg F (2170 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Stainless-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C) and 325 psig at 600 deg F (2250 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F (4830 kPa at 21 deg C) and 515 psig at 600 deg F (3550 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F (1380 kPa at 21 deg C) and 145 psig at 600 deg F (1000 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F (1900 kPa at 21 deg C) and 200 psig at 600 deg F (1380 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
9. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F (860 kPa at 21 deg C) and 90 psig at 600 deg F (625 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F (1130 kPa at 21 deg C) and 120 psig at 600 deg F (830 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.

B. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Adscos Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. American BOA, Inc.
 - c. Badger Industries, Inc.
 - d. Expansion Joint Systems, Inc.
 - e. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - f. Flexicraft Industries.
 - g. Flex Pression Ltd.
 - h. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - i. Flo Fab inc.
 - j. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - k. Metraflex, Inc.
 - l. Proco Products, Inc.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- m. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
 - n. Tozen Corporation.
 - o. Unaflex.
 - p. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
 - q. Universal Metal Hose; a subsidiary of Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - r. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
 - s. WahlcoMetroflex.
- 3. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
 - 4. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
 - 5. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) unless otherwise indicated.
 - 6. Configuration: Single joint with base and double joint with base class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single- or multiply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
 - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Solder joint or threaded.
 - c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged.
- C. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.; a div. of Vibration Isolation Products of Texas, Inc.
 - b. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - c. Flexicraft Industries.
 - d. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - e. Garlock Sealing Technologies.
 - f. General Rubber Corporation.
 - g. Mason Industries, Inc.; Mercer Rubber Co.
 - h. Metraflex, Inc.
 - i. Proco Products, Inc.
 - j. Red Valve Company, Inc.
 - k. Tozen Corporation.
 - l. Unaflex.
 - m. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 3. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
 - 4. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-NMEJ-703.
 - 5. Arch Type: Single or multiple arches with external control rods.
 - 6. Spherical Type: Single or multiple spheres with external control rods.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 40 to DN 100): 150 psig (1035 kPa) at 220 deg F (104 deg C).
8. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 140 psig (966 kPa) at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
9. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 140 psig (966 kPa) at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
10. Material for Fluids Containing Acids, Alkalies, or Chemicals: BR, CSM, or EPDM.
11. Material for Fluids Containing Gas, Hydrocarbons, or Oil: Buna-N or CR.
12. Material for Water: BR, Buna-N, CR, CSM, EPDM, or NR.
13. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

2.2 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Anvil International, Inc.
 2. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 3. Victaulic Company.
- C. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
- D. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
- E. Nipples: Galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
- F. Couplings: Five, Seven, 10, or 12, flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, Buna-N gasket suitable for diluted acid, alkaline fluids, and cold and hot water, EPDM gasket suitable for cold and hot water, and bolts and nuts.

2.3 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Adscos Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- d. Flexicraft Industries.
 - e. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - g. Metraflex, Inc.
 - h. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
 - i. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
 - j. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
3. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.
- D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install two guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Black-Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 42, riser clamp welded to anchor.
 - 3. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 220516

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
 - 3. <
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
 - 6.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Presealed Systems.

- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 2. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 3. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150)] and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 22 0519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Light-activated thermometers.
5. Thermowells.
6. Dial-type pressure gages.
7. Gage attachments.
8. Test plugs.
9. Test-plug kits.
10. Sight flow indicators.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
2. Division 21 fire-suppression piping Sections for fire-protection pressure gages.
3. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
4. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters inside the building.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Ashcroft Inc.
 2. Ernst Flow Industries.
 3. Marsh Bellofram.
 4. Miljoco Corporation.
 5. Nanmac Corporation.
 6. Noshok.
 7. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 8. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 9. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 10. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 11. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 13. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 14. Winters Instruments - U.S.
- C. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- D. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) or 5-inch (127-mm) <Insert dimension> nominal diameter.
- E. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C).
- F. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- G. Connector Size: [1/2 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension>, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- H. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
- I. Window: Plain glass.
- J. Ring: Stainless steel.
- K. Element: Bimetal coil.
- L. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- M. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Marsh Bellofram.
 - c. Miljoco Corporation.
 - d. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - e. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - f. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - g. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 4. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 4-1-1/2-inch (114-mm)].
 5. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 6. Movement: Mechanical dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C).
 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 9. Window: Glass.
 10. Ring: Stainless steel.
 11. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 12. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 13. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Marsh Bellofram.
 - d. Miljoco Corporation.
 - e. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - f. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - g. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - h. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - i. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 3. Standard: ASME B40.200.

4. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
5. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C).
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Connector Type(s): Union joint, [back] [bottom]; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
12. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
13. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
5. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
6. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue[or red] organic liquid.
7. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C).
8. Window: Glass or plastic.
9. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
10. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

B. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings; or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Flo Fab Inc.
 - b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - c. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - d. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - f. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - g. Winters Instruments - U.S.
3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4. Case: Cast aluminum, 7-inch (178-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
5. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
6. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
7. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C).
8. Window: Glass.
9. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
10. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.4 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES or CSA.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.5 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - d. Flo Fab Inc.
 - e. Marsh Bellofram.
 - f. Miljoco Corporation.
 - g. Noshok.
 - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - k. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 - o. Winters Instruments - U.S.
3. Standard: ASME B40.100.
4. Case: Liquid-filled; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) nominal diameter.
5. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
6. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
7. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
8. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa).
9. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
10. Window: Glass.
11. Ring: Stainless steel.
12. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.

- c. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - d. Flo Fab Inc.
 - e. Marsh Bellofram.
 - f. Miljoco Corporation.
 - g. Noshok.
 - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - k. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 - o. Winters Instruments - U.S.
3. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 4. Case: Liquid-filled type; cast aluminum, drawn steel or metal; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
 5. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 7. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 8. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 9. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 10. Window: Glass.
 11. Ring: Stainless steel.
 12. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.6 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.7 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Flow Design, Inc.
 2. Miljoco Corporation.
 3. National Meter, Inc.

4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

- C. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- D. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- E. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) or NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- F. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C).
- G. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber.

2.8 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Flow Design, Inc.
 2. Miljoco Corporation.
 3. National Meter, Inc.
 4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- C. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- D. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least [25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C)
- E. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least [0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C)
- F. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with [2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least [0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa).

- G. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.9 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Archon Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - 3. Emerson Process Management; Brooks Instrument.
 - 4. Ernst Co., John C., Inc.
 - 5. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - 6. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA; KOBOLD Messring GmbH.
 - 7. OPW Engineered Systems; a Dover company.
 - 8. Penberthy; A Brand of Tyco Valves & Controls - Prophetstown.
- C. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
- D. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- E. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
- F. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F (93 deg C)>.
- G. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
- H. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, [metal] [plastic]-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- C. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523 – GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.
5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
7. Bronze lift check valves.
8. Bronze swing check valves.
9. Iron swing check valves.
10. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
11. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
12. Iron, center-guided check valves.
13. Iron, plate-type check valves.
14. Bronze gate valves.
15. Iron gate valves.
16. Bronze globe valves.
17. Iron globe valves.
18. Lubricated plug valves.
19. Chainwheels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
3. Division 33 water distribution piping Sections for general-duty and specialty valves for site construction piping.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
 - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves.
 - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
 - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
 - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
 - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
 - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
 - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Hammond Valve.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass or Stainless Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Kitz Corporation.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Brass.

- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Reduced.
- j. Drain: Threaded Connection

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. DynaQuip Controls.
- d. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
- g. Jomar International, LTD.
- h. Kitz Corporation.
- i. Legend Valve.
- j. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- n. RuB Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.
- k. Drain: Threaded Connection

C. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass or Stainless Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Jomar International, LTD.
- b. Kitz Corporation.
- c. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.
 - k. Drain: Threaded Connection

D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze or Stainless Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
 - f. Legend Valve.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.
 - k. Drain: Threaded Connection

E. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze or Stainless Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- b. DynaQuip Controls.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- e. NIBCO INC.
- f. Red-White Valve Corporation.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.
- k. Drain: Threaded Connection

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- f. DeZurik Water Controls.
- g. Flo Fab Inc.
- h. Hammond Valve.
- i. Kitz Corporation.
- j. Legend Valve.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

B. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. American Valve, Inc.
- c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.
- f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- g. DeZurik Water Controls.
- h. Flo Fab Inc.
- i. Hammond Valve.
- j. Kitz Corporation.
- k. Legend Valve.
- l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- n. NIBCO INC.
- o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- p. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- q. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- r. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated[or -coated] ductile iron.

C. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. American Valve, Inc.
- c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- g. DeZurik Water Controls.
- h. Flo Fab Inc.
- i. Hammond Valve.
- j. Kitz Corporation.
- k. Legend Valve.
- l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- m. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
- n. NIBCO INC.
- o. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- p. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- q. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- r. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
- s. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Stainless steel.

2.5 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.

- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Kitz Corporation.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Powell Valves.
 - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

2.7 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Kitz Corporation.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.

- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Powell Valves.
- j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded[or solder joint].
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron or, bronze.

B. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Kitz Corporation.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Powell Valves.
- h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- i. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.8 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Flo Fab Inc.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Legend Valve.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. Powell Valves.
- k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Flo Fab Inc.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Legend Valve.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. Powell Valves.
- k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. <Insert manufacturer's name>.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

D. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - e. NIBCO INC.
 - f. Powell Valves.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.

- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.9 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. Kitz Corporation.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Powell Valves.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded[or solder joint].
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.10 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.

- h. Powell Valves.
- i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.11 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
- d. Pattern: Regular or short.
- e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

2.12 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
 2. Roto Hammer Industries.
 3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
 2. Attachment: For connection to ball, butterfly and plug valve stems.
 3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile or cast iron of type and size required for valve.
 4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for ball, butterfly, gate, globe and plug valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, gate, or plug valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 - 3. Throttling Service: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
 - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.5 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG (1035 kPa) OR LESS)

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: One, Two or Three piece, full port, brass or bronze]with brass bronze, or stainless-steel trim.
3. Bronze Lift Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, ductile-iron [stainless-steel disc.
3. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: [175] [300] CWP.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves: [Class 125] [Class 250], [metal] [nonmetallic-to-metal] seats.
5. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS or OS&Y.

3.6 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 TO 200 PSIG (1035 TO 1380 kPa))

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: One, Two or Three piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass, bronze or stainless-steel trim.
3. Bronze Lift Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125.

- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, ductile-iron stainless-steel disc.
 3. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
 4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
 5. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
 6. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, globe, metal seat.
 7. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: single plate; metal seat.
 8. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.

3.7 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
 3. Ball Valves: One, Two, or Three piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass, bronze, or stainless-steel trim.
 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
 5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 NRS.
 6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
 3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, ductile-iron or stainless-steel disc.
 4. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
 5. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
 6. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
 7. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
 8. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 globe, metal seat.
 9. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 single plate; metal seat.
 10. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 NRS.
 11. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 22 0529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 21 fire-suppression piping Sections for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.
3. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
4. Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Metal framing systems.
 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
 4. Pipe stands.
 5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.
- D. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings] or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - d. GS Metals Corp.
 - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - g. Wesanco, Inc.
3. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
4. Standard: MFMA-4.
5. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturred lips.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc.
9. Paint Coating: Vinyl.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 2. Clement Support Services.
 3. ERICO International Corporation.
 4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
 5. PHS Industries, Inc.
 6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- E. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

- H. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. See Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for requirements for pipe positioning systems for plumbing fixtures.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- P. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

- a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).

2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Red.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Aluminum
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels [**with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles**] [, **complying with ASME A13.1,**] on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.

5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: White.
 - b. Letter Color: Black.
2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: White.
 - b. Letter Color: Black.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), round.
 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural.
 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Black.
 - b. Hot Water: Black.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220700 - PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Submittals: Product Data for each type of plumbing insulation material.
- B. Quality Assurance: Labeled with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 according to ASTM E 84.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation **with factory-applied FSK jacket**.
- D. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ.
- E. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB; and having factory-applied **[ASJ] [FSK jacket]**.
 - 1. Nominal Density: 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more.
 - 2. Thermal Conductivity (k-value) at 100 Deg F ((55 Deg C):) 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less.
- F. Polyolefin Insulation: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- I. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

- J. Factory-Applied Jackets: When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 - 2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
- K. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
- L. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements of the Midwest Insulation Contractors Association's "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards" for insulation installation on pipes and equipment.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall, Partition, and Floor Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations. Seal penetrations. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Installation:
 - 1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
 - 2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows: Install mitered sections of pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Insulation Installation:
 - 1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes: Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

F. Polyolefin Insulation Installation:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows: Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

G. Interior Piping System Applications: Insulate the following piping systems:

1. Domestic hot water.
2. Recirculated domestic hot water.
3. Roof drain bodies and horizontal rainwater leaders of storm water piping.
4. Exposed water supplies and sanitary drains of fixtures for people with disabilities.

H. Do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:

1. Flexible connectors.
2. Sanitary drainage and vent piping.
3. Drainage piping located in crawlspaces unless otherwise indicated.
4. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings, except for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
5. Piping specialties, including air chambers, unions, strainers, check valves, plug valves, and flow regulators.

3.2 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawlspaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

B. Domestic Cold Water:

1. **NPS 1 (DN 25)** 2 inch and Smaller: Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: Thickness as scheduled.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: Thickness as scheduled.
 - c. Polyolefin: Thickness as schedule.
2. **NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)** <Insert pipe size> and Larger: Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric 1.5 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1.5 inch thick.
 - c. Polyolefin: 1.5 inch thick.

C. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. **NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) 2 inch and Smaller:** Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1.5 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1.5 inch thick.
 - c. Polyolefin: 1.5 inch thick.

2. **NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) <Insert pipe size> and Larger:** Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1.5 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1.5 inch thick.
 - c. Polyolefin: 1.5 inch thick.

D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1.5 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1.5 inch thick.
 - c. Polyolefin: 1.5 inch thick.

E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be **one of** the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1.5 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1.5 inch thick.
 - c. Polyolefin: 1.5 inch thick.

3.3 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE – NOT USED

END OF SECTION 220700

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
 5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
 2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
 3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- E. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
 - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied [ASJ] [ASJ-SSL]: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 - 6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
 - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 2. Type I, 850 Deg F (454 Deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C).
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.

- b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Phenolic Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.

- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
- e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
- 5. Color: White or gray.
- 6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
- 5. Color: Aluminum.
- 6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for pipe.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system.
 - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 - 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.

- b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
 - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).

4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the followin]:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) or 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

2.13 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Engineered Brass Company.
 - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
 - c. McGuire Manufacturing.
 - d. Plumberex.
 - e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
 - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least **2 inches (50 mm)** below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- 4.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

- a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
 - 1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- C. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- D. Stormwater and Overflow:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- E. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- F. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
- G. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
- H. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
- I. Hot Service Drains:
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be[one of] the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
- J. Hot Service Vents:
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be[one of] the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: [1-1/2 inches (38 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Water Piping:
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- C. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be[one of] the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- D. Hot Service Drains:
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be[one of] the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- E. Hot Service Vents:
- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be[one of] the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3.14 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Loose-fill insulation, for belowground piping, is specified in Division 33 piping distribution Sections.
- B. Sanitary Waste Piping, All Sizes, Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- C. Chilled Water, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

3.15 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. PVC20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth [0.016 inch (0.41 mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth] 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) thick.

3.16 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. PVC: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
 - 2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
 - 3. Stainless Steel, Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish 0.020 inch (0.51mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. PVC: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
 - 2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick
 - 3. Stainless Steel, Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish 0.020 inch (0.51mm) thick.

3.17 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
2. Encasement for piping.
3. Specialty valves.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Water meters furnished by utility company for installation by Contractor.
6. Water meters.

B. Related Section:

1. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Domestic water piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following products:

1. Specialty valves.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Water meters.
6. Backflow preventers and vacuum breakers.
7. Water penetration systems.

B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article.

C. Coordination Drawings: For piping in equipment rooms and other congested areas, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Fire-suppression-water piping.

2. Domestic water piping.
 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic, potable domestic water piping and components Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.
- C. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without Architect, Construction Manager or Owner written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, drawn temper.
 1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
5. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
 - 2) NIBCO INC.
 - 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
 - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
6. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) NVent LLC.
 - b. Description: Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22; with stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.
7. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) T-DRILL Industries Inc.
 - b. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
8. Grooved-Joint Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Anvil International.
 - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - 3) Victaulic Company.
- b. Copper Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M) copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
 - c. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, annealed temper.
1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
 2. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
 - 2) NIBCO INC.
 - 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
 - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
 - c. NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 2. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
 - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
 2. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.

- a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- C. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151.
 - 1. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Anvil International.
 - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - 3) Star Pipe Products.
 - 4) Victaulic Company.
 - b. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
 - c. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Couplings: AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ENCASUREMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Form: Sheet or Tube.
- C. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.
- D. Color: Black or Natural.

2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - f. Smith-Blair, Inc; a Sensus company.
 - g. Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 2. Description:
 - a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Couplings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
 2. Description:
 - a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

- c. End Connections: Female threaded.
- d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.

F. Dielectric Nipples:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C)
 - c. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - 2. Flexicraft Industries.
 - 3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
 - 4. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - 5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - 6. Mercer Rubber Co.
 - 7. Metraflex, Inc.
 - 8. Proco Products, Inc.
 - 9. Tozen Corporation.
 - 10. Unaflex, Inc.
 - 11. Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.9 WATER METERS

A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AALIAN; a Venture Measurement Product Line.
 - b. ABB.
 - c. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - d. Carlon Meter.
 - e. Mueller Company; Water Products Division.
 - f. Schlumberger Limited; Water Division.
 - g. Sensus Metering Systems.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C700.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. End Connections: Threaded.

B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AALIAN; a Venture Measurement Product Line.
 - b. ABB.
 - c. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - d. Hays Fluid Controls.
 - e. Master Meter, Inc.
 - f. McCrometer.
 - g. Mueller Company; Water Products Division.
 - h. Schlumberger Limited; Water Division.
 - i. SeaMetrics Inc.
 - j. Sensus Metering Systems.
2. Description:

- a. Standard: AWWA C701.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
- c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
- d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
- e. Case: Bronze.
- f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
- g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

C. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABB.
 - b. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - c. Master Meter, Inc.
 - d. Mueller Company; Water Products Division.
 - e. Schlumberger Limited; Water Division.
 - f. Sensus Metering Systems.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C702.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. Pipe Connections: Flanged.

D. Fire-Service-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - b. Mueller Company; Water Products Division.
 - c. Schlumberger Limited; Water Division.
 - d. Sensus Metering Systems.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C703 and UL listing.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) working pressure.
 - c. Body Design:

- 1) Proportional, Detector-Type Water Meters: With meter on bypass.
 - a) Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine, type with bronze case; size not less than one-half nominal size of main-line meter.
 - 2) Turbine-Type Water Meters: With strainer, and with meter on bypass.
 - a) Strainer: Full size, matching water meter.
 - b) Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine type with bronze case; not less than NPS 2 (DN 50).
 - d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
 - g. Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
- E. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
- F. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
- K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- N. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- O. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- P. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- Q. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- R. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- S. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- T. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.

- U. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
- V. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Copper-Tubing, Push-on Joints: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.

- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2104. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- I. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll groove end of tube. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for roll-grooved joints.
- J. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
- K. Steel-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut or roll groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
 - 2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.
- E. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open

to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.6 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flange kits
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.
- C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.

3.8 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Rough-in domestic water piping for water meter installation, and install water meters according to utility company's requirements.
- B. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility company.
- C. Install water meters according to AWWA M6, utility company's requirements, and the following:

- D. Install displacement-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Install turbine-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Install compound-type water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on valved bypass around meter. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- G. Install fire-service water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on full-size valved bypass around meter. Support meter, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- H. Install remote registration system according to standards of utility company and of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.9 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.

2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 6. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 7. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- I. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.

3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

3.11 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Piping Tests:
 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of **50 psig (345 kPa)** above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.14 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

- 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Water Samples shall be submitted to a NYS DOH approved lab with the results sent to the A/E of record for review.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- E. Water samples shall be submitted to a NYS DOH approved lab with the results sent to the A/E of record for review.

3.15 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, shall be one of the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger, shall be one of the following:
1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A); wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
 3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
 4. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- F. Under-building slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), shall be one of the following:
1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
 2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
 3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A); wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); cast- or wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
- I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

- J. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200), shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); cast- or wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

- K. Aboveground, combined domestic-water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN300), shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

3.16 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS – NOT USED

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Hose stations.
9. Hose bibbs.
10. Drain valves.
11. Water hammer arresters.
12. Air vents.
13. Trap-seal primer valves.
14. Trap-seal primer systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig (860 kPa), unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
 - 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
 - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - 3. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 - 4. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3 (DN 8 to DN 80), as required to match connected piping.
 - 5. Body: Bronze.
 - 6. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 - 7. Finish: Rough bronze.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
12/03 (R 06/05)

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Legend Valve.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Prier Products, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
3. Standard: ASSE 1011.
4. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
4. Standard: ASSE 1020.
5. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
6. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
7. Size: As Shown
8. Design Flow Rate: As Shown
9. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As Shown
10. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As Shown
11. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

D. Laboratory-Faucet Vacuum Breakers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
3. Standard: ASSE 1035.
4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 (DN 8 or DN 10) matching faucet size.
5. Body: Bronze.
6. End Connections: Threaded.
7. Finish: Chrome plated.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - e. Legend Valve.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
3. Standard: ASSE 1012.
4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
5. Size: As Shown
6. Body: Bronze.
7. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
8. Finish: Chrome plated.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
4. Standard: ASSE 1013.
5. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
6. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
7. Size: As Shown
8. Design Flow Rate: As Shown
9. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As Shown
10. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As shown for sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; As shown for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
11. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
12. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
13. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
14. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

C. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.

4. Standard: ASSE 1015.
5. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
7. Size: As Shown
8. Design Flow Rate: As Shown
9. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As Shown
10. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As Shown for sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; As Shown for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
11. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
12. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
13. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
14. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

D. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
 - f. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - g. Legend Valve.
 - h. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
 - j. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - k. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
3. Standard: ASSE 1024.
4. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
5. Size: As Shown
6. Body: Bronze with union inlet.

E. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection Backflow-Preventer Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE
12/03 (R 06/05)

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 4. Standard: ASSE 1047 and FMG approved or UL listed.
 5. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 6. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 7. Size: As Shown
 8. Design Flow Rate: As Shown
 9. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As Shown
 10. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As Shown
 11. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
 12. End Connections: Flanged.
 13. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
 14. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
 - c. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- F. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 4. Standard: ASSE 1048 and FMG approved or UL listed.
 5. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 6. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 7. Size: As Shown
 8. Design Flow Rate: As Shown

9. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As Shown
10. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As Shown
11. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
12. End Connections: Flanged.
13. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
14. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

G. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
3. Standard: ASSE 1052.
4. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water (30-kPa) back pressure.
5. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20).
6. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Capacity: At least 3-gpm (0.19-L/s) flow.

H. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Flomatic Corporation.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
4. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
3. Standard: ASSE 1003.
4. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Size: As Shown
6. Design Flow Rate: As Shown
7. Design Inlet Pressure: As Shown
8. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: As Shown
9. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
10. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
11. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).

B. Water Control Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valves.
 - b. Flomatic Corporation.
 - c. OCV Control Valves.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Ames Fluid Control Systems.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Watts ACV.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
4. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve.
5. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.

6. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
 - a. Size: As Shown
 - b. Pattern: Angle-valve design.
 - c. Trim: Stainless steel.
7. Design Flow: As Shown
8. Design Inlet Pressure: As Shown
9. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: As Shown
10. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

2.4 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. TAC Americas.
 - f. Taco, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
4. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
5. Body: Brass or bronze,
6. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2 (DN 50).
7. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. TAC Americas.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
4. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
 5. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).
- C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
 3. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
 4. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
 5. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller.
 6. Body: Copper alloy.
 7. Port: Standard or full port.
 8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 9. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
 10. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
 11. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.5 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - e. Legend Valve.
 - f. Leonard Valve Company.
 - g. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - h. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - i. Taco, Inc.
 - j. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - k. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
4. Standard: ASSE 1017.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
6. Type: Thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
7. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
8. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
9. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
10. Tempered-Water Setting: As Shown
11. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: As Shown
12. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.

2.6 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers <Insert drawing designation if any>:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron[**with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and**] for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller;flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. StrainersNPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: **[0.020 inch (0.51 mm)] [0.033 inch (0.84 mm)] [0.062 inch (1.57 mm)] <Insert size>**.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): **[0.045 inch (1.14 mm)] [0.062 inch (1.57 mm)] [0.125 inch (3.18 mm)] <Insert size>**.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: **[0.10 inch (2.54 mm)] [0.125 inch (3.18 mm)] [0.25 inch (6.35 mm)] <Insert size>**.
6. Drain: **[Pipe plug] [Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve]**.

2.7 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes: SH-1

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - k. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
3. Mounting: Recessed.
4. Material and Finish: **Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel** box and faceplate.
5. Faucet: Combination, valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water, valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
6. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper, water tubing.
7. Drain: **NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)** standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
8. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch- (1500-mm-) long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
9. Drain Hose: One 48-inch- (1200-mm-) long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

2.8 HOSE STATIONS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. ARCHON Industries, Inc.
 2. Armstrong International, Inc.
 3. Cooney Brothers, Inc.
 4. DynaFluid Ltd.
 5. Leonard Valve Company.

6. Strahman Valves, Inc.
7. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
8. <Insert manufacturer's name.>

C. Hot- and Cold-Water Hose Stations HB-2:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1.
2. Type Faucet: **Blending** valve.
3. Cabinet: Stainless-steel enclosure with exposed valve handles, hose connection, and hose rack. Include thermometer in front.
4. Hose-Rack Material: Stainless steel.
5. Body Material: Bronze **with stainless-steel wetted parts**.
6. Body Finish: Rough bronze **or chrome plate**.
7. Mounting: **Wall, with reinforcement**.
8. Supply Fittings: Two **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)** gate, globe, or ball valves and check valves and **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)** copper, water tubing. Omit check valves if check stops are included with fitting.
9. Hose: Manufacturer's standard, for service fluid, temperature, and pressure; **25 feet (7.6 m)** long.
10. Nozzle: With hand squeeze on-off control.
11. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or factory-installed, nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

2.9 HOSE BIBBS – NOT USED

2.10 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants HB-1:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

3. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for [**concealed**] [**exposed**]-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
5. Operation: Loose key.
6. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25).
8. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
9. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
10. Box and Cover Finish: **Polished nickel bronze**.
11. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
12. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: **Polished nickel bronze**.
13. Operating Keys(s): [**One**] [**Two**] with each wall hydrant.

2.11 GROUND HYDRANTS – NOT USED

2.12 POST HYDRANTS – NOT USED

2.13 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.14 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.

- b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. PPP Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - j. <Insert manufacturer's name>.
3. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
 4. Type: [**Metal bellows**] [**Copper tube with piston**].
 5. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.15 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating: 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F (60 deg C).
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: [**NPS 3/8 (DN 10)**] [**NPS 1/2 (DN 15)**] minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

2.16 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. PPP Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

3. Standard: ASSE 1018.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
5. Body: Bronze.
6. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
7. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
8. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
3. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum, trap makeup connection.
4. Size: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum.
5. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

2.17 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER SYSTEMS

A. Trap-Seal Primer Systems <Insert drawing designation if any>:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. PPP Inc.
 - b. <Insert manufacturer.>
4. Standard: ASSE 1044,
5. Piping: NPS 3/4, ASTM B 88, Type L (DN 20, ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper, water tubing.
6. Cabinet: [**Recessed**] [**Surface**]-mounting steel box with stainless-steel cover.
7. Electric Controls: 24-hour timer, solenoid valve, and manual switch for 120-V ac power.
8. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1001.
9. Number Outlets: [**Four**] [**Six**] [**Eight**] <Insert number>.
10. Size Outlets: [**NPS 1/2 (DN 15)**] [**NPS 5/8 (DN 18)**].

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves[**and bypass with globe valve**]. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- E. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- F. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
 - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each **control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump**.
- H. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
 - 1. Install shutoff valve on outlet if specified.
 - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- J. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

- K. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- L. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- M. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- N. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
 - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 - 4. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
 - 5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
 - 6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
 - 7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection backflow-preventer assemblies.
 - 8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
 - 9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 10. Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 11. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
 - 12. Manifold, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 13. Photographic-process, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 14. Primary water tempering valves.
 - 15. Outlet boxes.
 - 16. Hose stations.
 - 17. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
 - 18. Trap-seal primer systems.

- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check backflow-prevention assembly, and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
2. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
3. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
4. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- ##### A. Low Voltage:
- As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data:
- For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
-
- ##### B. Operation and Maintenance Data:
- For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- ##### A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
- Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
-
- ##### B. UL Compliance:
- Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- ##### A.
- Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
-
- ##### B.
- Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
-
- ##### C.
- Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
 3. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
 4. TACO Incorporated.
 5. WILO USA LLC - WILO Canada Inc.
- C. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- D. Pump Construction:
1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
 2. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
 3. Impeller: Plastic.
 4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. Capacity: As Shown on Drawings
 2. Total Dynamic Head: As Shown on Drawings
 3. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig (860 kPa).
 4. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F (104 deg C).
 5. Inlet and Outlet Size: As Shown on Drawings
 6. Pump Speed: As Shown on Drawings
 7. Pump Control: Thermostat.
 8. Motor Horsepower: As Shown on Drawings
 9. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: 120.
 - b. Phases: Single.
 - c. Hertz: 60.
 - d. Full-Load Amperes: As Shown on Drawings

- e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: As Shown on Drawings
- f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: As Shown on Drawings

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.

2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 - 1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
 - 2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F (18 to 93 deg C)
 - 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X
 - 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 5. Transformer: Provide if required.
 - 6. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac 120 V, ac.
 - 7. Settings: Start pump at [**105 deg F (41 deg C)**] [**110 deg F (43 deg C)**] [**115 deg F (46 deg C)**] <Insert temperature> and stop pump at [**120 deg F (49 deg C)**] [**125 deg F (52 deg C)**] <Insert temperature>.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of size required to support pump weight.

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.
- E. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
- F. Install timers [**on wall in engineer's office**] <Insert location>.
- G. Install time-delay relays in piping between water heaters and hot-water storage tanks.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
 2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 3. Install pressure gage[**and snubber**] at suction of each pump and pressure gage[**and snubber**] at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with Division 26 Sections for electrical connections, and wiring methods.
- E. Connect [**pressure switches,**] [**thermostats,**] [**time-delay relays,**] [**and**] [**timers**] to pumps that they control.

- F. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. **[Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform] [Perform]** startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Set **[pressure switches,] [thermostats,] [timers,] [and] [time-delay relays]** for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 7. Start motor.
 - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 - 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa).

B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For sovent drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Architect's, Construction Manager's or Owner's written permission.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - c. Fernco Inc.
 - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - g. Stant.

- h. Tyler Pipe.
 - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- D. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp.
 - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - f. Stant.
 - g. Tyler Pipe.
 - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 - 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- E. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. MG Piping Products Company.
 - 2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
 - 3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- 2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS
- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
 - B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
 - C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type B and Type C), water tube, drawn temper.
 - D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, annealed temper.
 - E. Copper Pressure Fittings:

1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 2. Fernco Inc.
 3. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 4. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 1. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 2. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 3. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 2. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
- b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
- c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 2. Dresser, Inc.
 3. EBAA Iron, Inc.
 4. JCM Industries, Inc.
 5. Romac Industries, Inc.
 6. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
 7. The Ford Meter Box Company, Inc.
 8. Viking Johnson.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 2. Central Plastics Company.
 3. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 4. Jomar International Ltd.
 5. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 6. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 7. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 8. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

- b. Description:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C)
 - 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- 3. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - 2. Central Plastics Company.
 - 3. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - 4. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 5. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
 - b. Description:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C)
 - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
 - 5. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - c. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Calpico, Inc.
 - 3. Central Plastics Company.
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - d. Description:
 - 1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - 3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- 4. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Elster Perfection.
2. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
3. Matco-Norca, Inc.
4. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
5. Victaulic Company.

b. Description:

1. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C)
3. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
4. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- O. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- P. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Solvent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and solvent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- Q. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- R. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- S. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- T. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
 - B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
 - C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- G. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
 - 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
 - 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
 - a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 - 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
 - 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flange kits.
 - 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:

1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
 2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
 3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
 6. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- H. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 4. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 5. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg (250 Pa). Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.

5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and solvent stack fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and solvent stack fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Extra Heavy or Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Extra Heavy or Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50) shall be any of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150) shall be any of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Hard or Soft copper tube, Type L (Type B); wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
 3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
 4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
 5. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.
- K. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
5. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials. **** END OF SECTION ****

SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 Section "Sump Pumps" for storm drainage pumps.
2. Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for storm drainage piping outside the building.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).

B. Seismic Performance: Storm drainage piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.

C. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, and details.

D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For storm drainage piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm-Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm-drainage service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm-drainage service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, or Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service classes.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - c. Fernco Inc.
 - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - g. Stant.
 - h. Tyler Pipe.
2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Clamp-All Corp.
 - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
 - f. Stant.
 - g. Tyler Pipe.
2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

D. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. MG Piping Products Company.
2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

1. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
- 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.

c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

2. Pressure Transition Couplings:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
- 2) Dresser, Inc.
- 3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
- 4) Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The)
- 5) JCM Industries, Inc.
- 6) Romac Industries, Inc.
- 7) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
- 8) Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.

b. Standard: AWWA C219.

c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.

d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.

e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.

f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

2. Dielectric Unions:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.

- 2) Central Plastics Company.
- 3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
- 4) Jomar International Ltd.
- 5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
- 6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
- 7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

b. Description:

- 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
- 2) Central Plastics Company.
- 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
- 4) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 5) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

b. Description:

- 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- 3) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
- 2) Calpico, Inc.
- 3) Central Plastics Company.
- 4) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

b. Description:

- 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
- 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).

- 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.

5. Dielectric Nipples:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Elster Perfection.
- 2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
- 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
- 4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
- 5) Victaulic Company.

- b. Description:

- 1) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
- 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- 3) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.

- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- O. Install engineered controlled-flow drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.

- P. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to storm sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- Q. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- R. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- S. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- T. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fittings. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- F. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
4. In Underground Force-Main Piping:
 - a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flange kits.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
 2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

- C. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 - 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 - 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 - 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 6. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.

3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
6. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).

G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Extra Heavy or Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, cast-iron, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Underground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Extra Heavy or Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, cast-iron, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221413

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof drains.
 - 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
 - 3. Cleanouts.
 - 4. Backwater valves.
 - 5. Trench drains.
 - 6. Channel drainage systems.
 - 7. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 8. Flashing materials.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.

- b. Marathon Roofing Products.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Tyler Pipe.
 - f. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
 4. Body Material: Cast iron
 5. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch (357-mm) diameter.
 6. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: As Shown on Drawings.
 7. Flow-Control Weirs: As Shown on Drawings.
 8. Outlet: As Shown on Drawings.
 9. Extension Collars: As Shown on Drawings.
 10. Underdeck Clamp: As Shown on Drawings.
 11. Expansion Joint: As Shown on Drawings.
 12. Sump Receiver Plate: As Shown on Drawings.
 13. Dome Material: As Shown on Drawings.
 14. Perforated Gravel Guard: As Shown on Drawings.
 15. Vandal-Proof Dome: As Shown on Drawings.
 16. Water Dam: As Shown on Drawings.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Test Tees:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
4. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
5. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
6. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head.
7. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

2.3 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Body Material: Cast iron.
6. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
7. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
8. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed or open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
9. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Cast-Iron, Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
4. Body Material: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
5. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
6. Inlet: Threaded.
7. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Tyler Pipe.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
3. Standard: ASME A112.6.3, for trench drains.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. Flange: As Shown on Drawings.
6. Clamping Device: As Shown on Drawings.
7. Outlet: As Shown on Drawings.
8. Grate Material: As Shown on Drawings.
9. Grate Finish: As Shown on Drawings.
10. Dimensions of Frame and Grate: As Shown on Drawings.
11. Top-Loading Classification: As Shown on Drawings.

2.5 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
3. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
4. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
5. Size: Same as connected pipe.
6. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
7. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
8. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).

- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 07 Sections.
 - 1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
 - 3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
- C. Install downspout boots at grade with top 12 inches (305 mm) above grade. Secure to building wall.
- D. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- E. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
 - 4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- F. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

- G. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- H. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
- I. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
- J. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- K. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- L. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- N. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.
- O. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
 - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm) and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.

- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Submittals: Product Data.
- B. Comply with requirements of applicable NSF, AWWA, or FDA and EPA regulatory standards for tasteless and odorless, potable-water-tank linings.
- C. Comply with performance efficiencies prescribed in ASHRAE 90.2, "Energy Efficient Design of New Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- D. Warranties: Submit a written warranty executed by manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within [**five**] <Insert number> years from date of Substantial Completion. Failures include, but are not limited to, tanks and elements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER HEATERS, GENERAL

- A. Insulation: Suitable for operating temperature and required insulating value. Include insulation material that surrounds entire tank except connections and controls.
- B. Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
- C. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input and pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into tank.
- D. Drain Valve: Factory or field installed.

2.2 ELECTRIC WATER HEATERS

- A. **Available** Products:
 - 1. Bock 50 SFA or equivalent.
- B. Household, Storage, Electric Water Heaters: 45 gal. capacity; steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating. Nine electric, screw-in, immersion-type heating elements with adjustable thermostat for each element and wiring arrangement for nonsimultaneous operation with maximum 150-A circuit.

- C. Light-Commercial, Storage, Electric Water Heaters: UL 174 or UL 1453, but listed by manufacturer for commercial applications; or UL 1453, [~~45-gal.~~ (170-L)] capacity. Steel tank with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating[, **ASME labeled**]. Two electric, screw-in, immersion-type heating elements with adjustable thermostat for each element and wiring arrangement for simultaneous operation with maximum 60-A circuit.[**NSF 5 construction.**]

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install temperature and pressure relief valves and extend to closest floor drain.
- B. Install vacuum relief valves in cold-water-inlet piping.
- C. Install shutoff valves and unions at hot- and cold-water piping connections.
- D. Make piping connections with dielectric fittings where dissimilar piping materials are joined.
- E. Electrically ground units according to authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION 223300

SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS – NOT USED

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:

1. Faucets for lavatories, showers and sinks.
2. Laminar-flow faucet-spout outlets.
3. Flushometers.
4. Toilet seats.
5. Protective shielding guards.
6. Fixture supports.
7. Shower receptors.
8. Water closets.
9. Urinals.
10. Lavatories.
11. Commercial sinks.
12. Individual showers.
13. Service sinks.
14. Service basins.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 10 Section "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories."
2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.
3. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers."
4. Division 31 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for exterior plumbing fixtures and hydrants.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.

- D. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.
- E. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.
- F. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- G. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- I. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
- B. LEED Submittal:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit WE [2] [3.1] [3.2] [2 and 3.1] [2, 3.1, and 3.2]: Documentation indicating flow and water consumption requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities" [**Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act";**] for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
 2. Plastic Bathtubs: ANSI Z124.1.
 3. Plastic Lavatories: ANSI Z124.3.
 4. Plastic Laundry Trays: ANSI Z124.6.
 5. Plastic Mop-Service Basins: ANSI Z124.6.
 6. Plastic Shower Enclosures: ANSI Z124.2.
 7. Plastic Sinks: ANSI Z124.6.
 8. Plastic Urinal Fixtures: ANSI Z124.9.
 9. Plastic Whirlpool Bathtubs: ANSI Z124.1 and ASME A112.19.7M.
 10. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
 11. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
 12. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
 13. Stainless-Steel Commercial, Handwash Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
 14. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
 15. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
 16. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
 17. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
 18. Whirlpool Bathtub Fittings: ASME A112.19.8M.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
 2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
 3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
 6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.

11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
 12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for **shower** faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
 2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
 3. Deck-Mounted Bath/Shower Transfer Valves: ASME 18.7.
 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 5. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
 6. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
 7. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 8. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 10. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
 11. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 12. Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
 3. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
 4. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
 5. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
 6. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
 2. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
 3. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
 4. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
 5. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 6. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
 7. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
 8. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 9. Plastic Shower Receptors: ANSI Z124.2.
 10. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
 11. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.
 12. Whirlpool Bathtub Equipment: UL 1795.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of whirlpools that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures of unit shell.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls, blowers, pumps, heaters, and timers.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 2. Warranty Period for Commercial Applications: Three year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 3. Flushometer Valve, Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 12 of each type.
 4. Provide hinged-top wood or metal box, or individual metal boxes, with separate compartments for each type and size of extra materials listed above.
 5. Flushometer Tank, Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.
 6. Water-Closet Tank, Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed.
 7. Toilet Seats: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed.
 8. Dry Urinal Trap-Seal Cartridges: Equal to 200 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 12 of each type.
 9. Dry Urinal Trap-Seal Liquid: Equal to 1 gal (3.8 L) for each urinal installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory Faucets
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Chicago Faucets.
 - d. Delta Faucet Company.
 - e. Eljer.
 - f. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - g. Fisher Manufacturing Co.
 - h. Grohe America, Inc.
 - i. Just Manufacturing Company.
 - j. Kohler Co.
 - k. Moen, Inc.
 - l. Royal Brass Mfg. Co.
 - m. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
 - n. Speakman Company.
 - o. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - p. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
 - q. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - r. Bradley Corporation.
 - s. Brasstech Inc.; Newport Brass Div.
 - t. Broadway Collection.
 - u. Central Brass Manufacturing Company.
 - v. Chicago Faucets.
 - w. Delta Faucet Company.
 - x. Eljer.
 - y. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - z. Fisher Manufacturing Co.
 - aa. Franke Consumer Products, Inc.; Kitchen Systems Div.
 - bb. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - cc. Geberit Manufacturing, Inc.
 - dd. Grohe America, Inc.
 - ee. Hansgrohe Inc.
 - ff. Hydrotek International, Inc.
 - gg. Intersan Manufacturing Company.
 - hh. Just Manufacturing Company.
 - ii. Kohler Co.
 - jj. Moen, Inc.
 - kk. Pegler, Ltd.
 - ll. Price Pfister, Inc.
 - mm. Rohl LLC.
 - nn. Royal Brass Mfg. Co.
 - oo. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
 - pp. Speakman Company.
 - qq. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - rr. Water Management, Inc.

- ss. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- tt. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
- uu. American Standard Companies, Inc.
- vv. Bradley Corporation.
- ww. Brasstech Inc.; Newport Brass Div.
- xx. Broadway Collection.
- yy. Central Brass Manufacturing Company.
- zz. Chicago Faucets.
- aaa. Delta Faucet Company.
- bbb. Eljer.
- ccc. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- ddd. Fisher Manufacturing Co.
- eee. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- fff. Geberit Manufacturing, Inc.
- ggg. Grohe America, Inc.
- hhh. Hansgrohe Inc.
- iii. Hydrotek International, Inc.
- jjj. Intersan Manufacturing Company.
- kkk. Just Manufacturing Company.
- lll. Kohler Co.
- mmm. Moen, Inc.
- nnn. Paul Decorative Products.
- ooo. Pegler, Ltd.
- ppp. Phoenix Products, Inc.
- qqq. Price Pfister, Inc.
- rrr. Rohl LLC.
- sss. Royal Brass Mfg. Co.
- ttt. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
- uuu. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
- vvv. St. Thomas Creations.
- www. Speakman Company.
- xxx. Symmons Industries, Inc.
- yyy. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- zzz. Water Management, Inc.
- aaaa. WhiteRock Corp.
- bbbb. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- cccc. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
- dddd. American Standard Companies, Inc.
- eeee. Delta Faucet Company.
- ffff. Eljer.
- gggg. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- hhhh. Moen, Inc.
- iiii. Phoenix Products, Inc.
- jjjj. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
- kkkk. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
- llll. WhiteRock Corp.
- mmmm. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- nnnn. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- oooo. Phoenix Products, Inc.

pppp. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
qqqq. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Operation.

4. Description: Two-handle mixing valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
 - a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
 - b. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 - c. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm (1.5 L/min.).
 - d. Maximum Flow: 0.25 gal. (0.95 L).
 - e. Centers: 4 inches (102 mm).
 - f. Mounting: Deck, concealed.
 - g. Valve Handle(s): Wrist blade, 4 inches (102 mm).
 - h. Inlet(s): NPS 3/8 (DN 10) tubing, plain end.
 - i. Spout: Rigid type.
 - j. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
 - k. Operation: Noncompression, manual.
 - l. Drain: Grid.
 - m. Tempering Device: Thermostatic.

2.2 BATHTUB FAUCETS – NOT USED

2.3 BATHTUB/SHOWER FAUCETS – NOT USED

2.4 SHOWER FAUCETS

A. Shower Faucets, <Insert drawing designation>:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Brasstech Inc.; Newport Brass Div.
 - c. Broadway Collection.
 - d. Central Brass Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Chicago Faucets.
 - f. Delta Faucet Company.
 - g. Eljer.
 - h. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.

- i. Hansgrohe Inc.
 - j. Kohler Co.
 - k. Leonard Valve Company.
 - l. Moen, Inc.
 - m. Paul Decorative Products.
 - n. Pegler, Ltd.
 - o. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - p. Price Pfister, Inc.
 - q. Rohl LLC.
 - r. Royal Brass Mfg. Co.
 - s. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
 - t. Speakman Company.
 - u. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
 - v. St. Thomas Creations.
 - w. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - x. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - y. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
 - z. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Operation.
 - aa. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Operation.
 - bb. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - cc. Broadway Collection.
 - dd. Hansgrohe Inc.
 - ee. Leonard Valve Company.
 - ff. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - gg. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - hh. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - ii. Chicago Faucets.
 - jj. Grohe America, Inc.
 - kk. Lawler Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - ll. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - mm. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: Single-handle [**pressure-balance**] [**thermostatic**] [**thermostatic and pressure-balance**] valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and shower head, arm, and flange. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and outlet with diverter valve.
- a. Body Material: [**Solid brass**] <Insert material>[**with nonmetallic trim**].
 - b. Finish: [**Polished chrome plate**] [**Polished brass**] <Insert finish>.
 - c. Maximum Flow Rate: [**2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.)**] <Insert value>, unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Diverter Valve: [**Not required**] [**Integral with mixing valve**] [**Not integral with mixing valve**].
 - e. Mounting: [**Exposed**] [**Concealed**].
 - f. Backflow Protection Device for Hand-Held Shower: [**Required**] [**Not required**].
 - g. Operation: [**Compression, manual**] [**Noncompression, manual**] [**Sensor**].
 - h. Antiscald Device: [**Integral with mixing valve**] [**Separate unit**] [**Not required**].
 - i. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.

- j. Supply Connections: [**NPS 1/2 (DN 15)**] [**NPS 1/2 (DN 15), union**] [**Sweat**].
- k. Shower Head Type: [**Ball joint**] [**Without ball joint**] [**Ball joint and head integral with mounting flange**] [**Integral with mounting flange**] [**Hand held, slide-bar mounted**] [**Hand held, hook mounted**].
- l. Shower Head Material: [**Metallic**] [**Nonmetallic**] [**Combined, metallic and nonmetallic**] with chrome-plated finish.
- m. Spray Pattern: [**Fixed**] [**Adjustable**].
- n. Integral Volume Control: [**Required**] [**Not required**].
- o. Shower-Arm Flow-Control Fitting: [**Not required**] [**1.5 gpm (5.7 L/min.)**] [**2.0 gpm (7.6 L/min.)**].
- p. Temperature Indicator: [**Not required**] [**Integral with faucet**].

2.5 SINK FAUCETS

A. Sink Faucets,:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. Broadway Collection.
 - d. Chicago Faucets.
 - e. Delta Faucet Company.
 - f. Dormont Manufacturing Company.
 - g. Eljer.
 - h. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - i. Fisher Manufacturing Co.
 - j. Grohe America, Inc.
 - k. Just Manufacturing Company.
 - l. Kohler Co.
 - m. Moen, Inc.
 - n. Royal Brass Mfg. Co.
 - o. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
 - p. Speakman Company.
 - q. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
 - r. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
 - s. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - t. Bradley Corporation.
 - u. Brasstech Inc.; Newport Brass Div.
 - v. Broadway Collection.
 - w. Central Brass Manufacturing Company.
 - x. Chicago Faucets.

- y. Delta Faucet Company.
- z. Eljer.
- aa. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- bb. Fisher Manufacturing Co.
- cc. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- dd. Grohe America, Inc.
- ee. Hansgrohe Inc.
- ff. Hydrotek International, Inc.
- gg. Intersan Manufacturing Company.
- hh. Just Manufacturing Company.
- ii. Kohler Co.
- jj. Moen, Inc.
- kk. Pegler, Ltd.
- ll. Price Pfister, Inc.
- mm. Rohl LLC.
- nn. Royal Brass Mfg. Co.
- oo. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
- pp. Speakman Company.
- qq. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- rr. Water Management, Inc.
- ss. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- tt. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
- uu. American Standard Companies, Inc.
- vv. Bradley Corporation.
- ww. Brasstech Inc.; Newport Brass Div.
- xx. Central Brass Manufacturing Company.
- yy. Chicago Faucets.
- zz. Delta Faucet Company.
- aaa. Eljer.
- bbb. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
- ccc. Fisher Manufacturing Co.
- ddd. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- eee. Grohe America, Inc.
- fff. Hansgrohe Inc.
- ggg. Hydrotek International, Inc.
- hhh. Intersan Manufacturing Company.
- iii. Just Manufacturing Company.
- jjj. Kohler Co.
- kkk. Moen, Inc.
- lll. Paul Decorative Products.
- mmm. Pegler, Ltd.
- nnn. Phoenix Products, Inc.
- ooo. Price Pfister, Inc.
- ppp. Rohl LLC.
- qqq. Royal Brass Mfg. Co.
- rrr. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
- sss. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
- ttt. St. Thomas Creations.
- uuu. Speakman Company.

- vvv. Symmons Industries, Inc.
- www. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
- xxx. Water Management, Inc.
- yyy. WhiteRock Corp.
- zzz. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- aaaa. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
- bbbb. American Standard Companies, Inc.
- cccc. Delta Faucet Company.
- dddd. Eljer.
- eeee. Moen, Inc.
- ffff. Phoenix Products, Inc.
- gggg. Sayco; a Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc. Company.
- hhhh. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
- iiii. WhiteRock Corp.
- jjjj. Wolverine Brass, Inc.
- kkkk. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
- llll. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
- mmmm. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Operation.

4. Description: . Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
- a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass
 - b. Finish: Polished chrome plate
 - c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.), unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Mixing Valve: Single control.
 - e. Backflow Protection Device for Hose Outlet: Not required.
 - f. Backflow Protection Device for Side Spray: Not required.
 - g. Centers: 3-3/8 inches (86 mm) 4 inches (102 mm) 6 inches (152 mm), 8 inches (203 mm) Adjustable.
 - h. Mounting: Deck, Back/wall, exposed, concealed.
 - i. Handle(s): Lever, Knob, Knob, nonmetallic, Cross, four arm, Wrist blade, 4 inches (102 mm) Elbow, 6 inches (152 mm).
 - j. Inlet(s): NPS 3/8 (DN 10) plain-end tubing, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) tubing with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) male adapter, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) male shank, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) female shank.
 - k. Spout Type: Swivel gooseneck.
 - l. Spout Outlet: Aerator, Swivel aerator/spray, or Laminar flow.
 - m. Vacuum Breaker: Required.
 - n. Operation: Compression, manual Noncompression, manual or Sensor.
 - o. Drain: Stopper with chain or Lift and turn.

2.6 LAMINAR-FLOW FAUCET-SPOUT OUTLETS – NOT USED

2.7 FLUSHOMETERS

A. Flushometers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Coyne & Delany Co.
 - b. Delta Faucet Company.
 - c. Sloan Valve Company.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
 - e. Hydrotek International, Inc.
 - f. Sloan Valve Company.
 - g. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - h. Coyne & Delany Co.
 - i. Delta Faucet Company.
 - j. Hydrotek International, Inc.
 - k. Sloan Valve Company.
 - l. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - m. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
4. Description: Flushometer for urinal and water-closet-type fixture. Include brass body with corrosion-resistant internal components control stop with check valve, vacuum breaker, copper or brass tubing, and polished chrome-plated finish on exposed parts.
 - a. Internal Design: Diaphragm or piston operation.
 - b. Style: Concealed.
 - c. Inlet Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20)].
 - d. Trip Mechanism: Oscillating, lever-handle actuator
 - e. Consumption: 1.5 gal./flush (5.7 L/flush
 - f. Tailpiece Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20)], NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)], or NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) length to top of bowl.

2.8 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats,:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.

- c. Centoco Manufacturing Corp.
 - d. Church Seats.
 - e. Eljer.
 - f. Kohler Co.
 - g. Olsonite Corp.
 - h. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.; Beneke Div.
 - i. Sperzel.
 - j. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - k. Centoco Manufacturing Corp.
 - l. Church Seats.
 - m. Kohler Co.
 - n. Olsonite Corp.
 - o. Pressalit A/S.
 - p. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.; Beneke Div.
 - q. Sperzel.
4. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture.
- a. Material: Molded, solid plastic with antimicrobial agent.
 - b. Configuration: Closed or Open front with or without cover.
 - c. Size: Elongated.
 - d. Hinge Type: CK, check, SS, self-sustaining, SC, self-sustaining, check, SR, self-raising.
 - e. Class: Standard commercial.
 - f. Color: White

2.9 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Engineered Brass Co.
 - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a Subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
 - c. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Plumberex Specialty Products Inc.
 - e. TCI Products.
 - f. TRUEBRO, Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
- 3. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. TRUEBRO, Inc.
3. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

2.10 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Josam Company.
2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

C. Water-Closet Supports:

1. Description: Combination carrier designed for accessible and standard mounting height of wall-mounting, water-closet-type fixture. Include single or double, vertical or horizontal, hub-and-spigot or hubless waste fitting as required for piping arrangement; faceplates; couplings with gaskets; feet; and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.

D. Urinal Supports:

1. Description: Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture or II, urinal carrier with hanger and bearing plates for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.

E. Lavatory Supports:

1. Description: Type **[I, lavatory carrier with exposed arms and tie rods]** **[II, lavatory carrier with concealed arms and tie rod]** **[III, lavatory carrier with hanger plate and tie rod]** for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.

F. Sink Supports:

1. Description: Type **[I, sink carrier with exposed arms and tie rods]** **[II, sink carrier with hanger plate, bearing studs, and tie rod]** **[III, sink carrier with hanger plate and exposed arms]** for sink-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.

2.11 INTERCEPTORS – NOT USED

2.12 SHOWER RECEPTORS

A. Shower Receptors, **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **[the product indicated on Drawings]** **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - b. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - c. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**
 - d. Aker Plastics Co., Inc.
 - e. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - f. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - g. LASCO Bathware.
 - h. Mustee, E. L. & Sons, Inc.
 - i. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
 - j. Swan Corporation (The).
 - k. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**
 - l. Acryline USA, Inc.
 - m. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - n. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - o. Jacuzzi, Inc.
 - p. Jason International, Inc.
 - q. Kohler Co.
 - r. LASCO Bathware.
 - s. Praxis Industries, Inc.; Aquarius Products.
 - t. Royal Baths Manufacturing Co.
 - u. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**

- v. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - w. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - x. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - y. Precast Terrazzo Enterprises, Inc.
 - z. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
 - aa. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - bb. Bradley Corporation.
 - cc. Formica Corporation.
 - dd. Jacuzzi, Inc.
 - ee. Lippert Corporation.
 - ff. Swan Corporation (The).
 - gg. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: [Cast-polymer] [FRP] [PMMA] [Precast-terrazzo] [Solid-surface] base for built-up-type shower fixture.
- a. Type: [Standard, residential] [Handicapped/wheelchair].
 - b. Size: [32 by 32 inches (813 by 813 mm)] [36 by 36 inches (914 by 914 mm)] [32 by 42 inches (813 by 1067 mm)] [48 by 60 inches (1219 by 1524 mm)] <Insert dimensions>.
 - c. Color: [White] <Insert color>.
 - d. Outlet: [Cast-in-floor drain] [Drain] with [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)] [NPS 2 (DN 50)] [NPS 3 (DN 80)] outlet.

2.13 DISHWASHER AIR-GAP FITTINGS – NOT USED

2.14 DISPOSERS – NOT USED

2.15 HOT-WATER DISPENSERS – NOT USED

2.16 WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [the product indicated on Drawings] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - b. <Insert manufacturer's name.>

- c. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - d. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - e. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - f. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - g. Capizzi.
 - h. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - i. Eljer.
 - j. Kohler Co.
 - k. St. Thomas Creations.
 - l. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - m. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - n. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - o. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - p. Eljer.
 - q. Kohler Co.
 - r. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description [Accessible, wall] [Wall]-mounting, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for [flushometer-tank] [gravity-type tank] [flushometer valve] operation.
- a. Style: [Close coupled] [One piece].
 - 1) Bowl Type: [Elongated] [Round front] with siphon-jet design.
 - 2) Design Consumption: [1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush)] [3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush)].
 - 3) Tank: [Gravity type with trim] [Flushometer-tank type with trim and pressurized tank]. Include cover.
 - 4) Trip Mechanism: [Lever-handle] [Push-button] <Insert type> actuator.
 - 5) Color: [White] <Insert color>.
 - b. Supply: [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)] <Insert size> chrome-plated brass or copper with [wheel-handle] [screwdriver] [loose-key] <Insert type> stop.
 - c. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - 1) Bowl Type: [Elongated] [Round front] with [siphon-jet] [blowout] design.
 - 2) Design Consumption: [1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush)] [3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush)] <Insert rate>.
 - 3) Color: [White] <Insert color>.
 - d. Flushometer: <Insert designation.>
 - e. Toilet Seat: <Insert designation.>
 - f. Fixture Support: Water-closet support <Insert designation> combination carrier.
- B. Water Closets, <Insert drawing designation>:
- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Barclay Products, Ltd.
 - c. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - e. Duravit USA, Inc.
 - f. Eljer.
 - g. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - h. Kohler Co.
 - i. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - j. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - k. Sanitarios Azteca, S.A. de C.V.
 - l. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
 - m. St. Thomas Creations.
 - n. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - o. Water Management, Inc.
 - p. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - q. Capizzi.
 - r. St. Thomas Creations.
 - s. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - t. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - u. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - v. Kohler Co.
 - w. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - x. St. Thomas Creations.
 - y. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - z. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - aa. Eljer.
 - bb. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - cc. Water Management, Inc.
 - dd. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - ee. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - ff. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - gg. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - hh. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - ii. Capizzi.
 - jj. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - kk. Eljer.
 - ll. Kohler Co.
 - mm. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - nn. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - oo. Sanitarios Azteca, S.A. de C.V.
 - pp. St. Thomas Creations.
 - qq. TOTO USA, Inc.

- rr. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: [Accessible, floor] [Floor]-mounting, floor-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for [gravity-type tank] [flushometer tank] [flushometer valve] operation.
- a. Style: [Close coupled] [One piece].
- 1) Bowl Type: [Elongated] [Round front] with [siphon-jet] <Insert type> design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
 - 2) Height: [Standard] [Accessible] [Juvenile] [Child].
 - 3) Design Consumption: [1 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush)] [1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush)] [3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush)] <Insert rate>.
 - 4) Tank: [Gravity type with trim] [Flushometer-tank type with trim and pressurized tank]. Include cover.
 - 5) Trip Mechanism: [Lever-handle] [Push-button] <Insert type> actuator.
 - 6) Color: [White] <Insert color>.
- b. Supply: [NPS 3/8 (DN 10)] [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)] chrome-plated brass or copper with [wheel-handle] [screwdriver] [loose-key] <Insert type> stop.
- c. Style: Flushometer valve.
- 1) Bowl Type: [Elongated] [Round front] with [siphon-jet] [reverse-trap] [blowout] [siphon-vortex] [siphon-wash] [washdown] design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
 - 2) Height: [Standard] [Accessible] [Juvenile] [Child].
 - 3) Design Consumption: [1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush)] [3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush)] <Insert rate>.
 - 4) Color: [White] <Insert color>.
- d. Flushometer: <Insert designation.>
- e. Toilet Seat: <Insert designation.>
- C. Water Closets, <Insert drawing designation>:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [the product indicated on Drawings] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - b. Eljer.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - e. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - f. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.

- g. Eljer.
 - h. Water Management, Inc.
 - i. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - j. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - k. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - l. Eljer.
 - m. Kohler Co.
 - n. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description [**Accessible, floor**] [**Floor**]-mounting, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for [**gravity-tank**] [**flushometer-tank**] [**flushometer-valve**] operation.
- a. Style: Close coupled.
 - 1) Bowl Type: Elongated with siphon-jet design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
 - 2) Height: [**Standard**] [**Accessible**].
 - 3) Design Consumption: [**1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush)**] <Insert rate>.
 - 4) Tank: Gravity type with trim. Include cover.
 - 5) Trip Mechanism: [**Lever-handle**] <Insert type> actuator.
 - 6) Color: [**White**] <Insert color>.
 - b. Supply: [**NPS 1/2 (DN 15)**] <Insert size> chrome-plated brass or copper with [**wheel-handle**] [**screwdriver**] [**loose-key**] <Insert type> stop.
 - c. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - 1) Bowl Type: Elongated with siphon-jet design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
 - 2) Height: [**Standard**] [**Accessible**].
 - 3) Design Consumption: [**1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush)**] [**3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush)**].
 - 4) Color: [**White**] <Insert color>.
 - d. Flushometer: <Insert designation.>
 - e. Toilet Seat: <Insert designation.>
 - f. Wall Support: Manufactured waste fitting with seal and fixture bolts.

2.17 URINALS

A. Urinals, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Capizzi.
 - d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - e. Duravit USA, Inc.
 - f. Eljer.
 - g. Kohler Co.
 - h. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - i. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - j. Sanitarios Azteca, S.A. de C.V.
 - k. St. Thomas Creations.
 - l. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - m. <Insert manufacturer's name.>

4. Description: [**Accessible, wall**] [**Wall**]-mounting, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
 - a. Type: [**Blowout**] [**Siphon jet**] [**Blowout with extended shields**] [**Siphon jet with extended shields**] [**Washout with extended shields**].
 - b. Strainer or Trapway: [**Integral cast strainer**] [**Separate removable strainer**] [**Open trapway**] with integral trap.
 - c. Design Consumption: [**0.5 gal./flush (1.9 L/flush)**] [**1 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush)**] [**1.5 gal./flush (5.7 L/flush)**] <Insert rate>.
 - d. Color: [**White**] <Insert color>.
 - e. Supply Spud Size: [**NPS 3/4 (DN 20)**] [**NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)**] [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)**].
 - f. Outlet Size: [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)**] [**NPS 2 (DN 50)**] [**NPS 3 (DN 80)**].
 - g. Flushometer: <Insert designation.>
 - h. Fixture Support: Urinal <Insert designation> chair carrier.

B. Urinals, <Insert drawing designation>:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - d. Eljer.

- e. Kohler Co.
 - f. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - g. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - h. St. Thomas Creations.
 - i. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - j. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**
4. Description [**Accessible, wall**] [**Wall**]-mounting, bottom-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
- a. Type: [**Washout**] [**Washdown**].
 - b. Strainer or Trapway: [**Integral cast strainer**] [**Separate removable strainer**] [**Open trapway**].
 - c. Design Consumption: [**0.5 gal./flush (1.9 L/flush)**] [**1 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush)**] **<Insert rate>**.
 - d. Color: [**White**] **<Insert color>**.
 - e. Supply Spud Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
 - f. Outlet Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
 - g. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - h. Flushing Device: Fixture manufacturer's standard matching fixture.
 - i. Flushometer: **<Insert designation.>**
 - j. Fixture Support: Urinal **<Insert designation>** chair carrier.
- C. Urinals, **<Insert drawing designation>**:
- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**
 - 4. Description Stall-type, bottom-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
 - a. Type: [**Straight front**] [**Sloped front**], with seam cover for [**21-inch (535-mm)**] [**24-inch (610-mm)**] centers.
 - b. Strainer or Trapway: Separate removable strainer.
 - c. Design Consumption: 1 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush).
 - d. Color: [**White**] **<Insert color>**.

- e. Supply Spud Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
- f. Outlet Size: NPS 2 (DN 50).
- g. Flushometer: **<Insert designation.>**

D. Urinals, **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Commercial Enameling Company.
 - b. Eljer.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**
4. Description: Wall-mounting, bottom-outlet, trough-type, enameled, cast-iron fixture modified for flushometer valve operation.
 - a. Style: Similar to wash sink with back and without pedestal.
 - b. Size: [**36 inches (915 mm)**] [**48 inches (1219 mm)**] [**60 inches (1525 mm)**] [**72 inches (1830 mm)**].
 - c. Color: [**White**] **<Insert color>**.
 - d. Drain: Separate removable dome strainer.
 - e. Design Consumption: [**Not applicable**] **<Insert rate>**.
 - f. Supply: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
 - g. Outlet Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
 - h. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch-(1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - i. Flushing Device: Fixture manufacturer's standard, with washdown pipe, matching fixture.
 - j. Fixture Support: Sink **<Insert designation>** chair carrier.

E. Urinals, **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Falcon Waterfree Technologies.

- b. Waterless Co.
 - c. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - d. Duravit USA, Inc.
 - e. Falcon Waterfree Technologies.
 - f. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description [**Accessible, wall**] [**Wall**]-mounting, back-outlet dry, [**plastic**] [**vitreous-china**] fixture designed for liquid-trap-seal operation.
- a. Type: Without water supply.
 - b. Trap-Seal Method: Proprietary cartridge or trap system.
 - c. Color: [**White**] <Insert color>.
 - d. Outlet Size: [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)**] [**NPS 2 (DN 50)**]. Include transition coupling, if required.
 - e. Trap-Sealing Liquid: Proprietary.
 - f. Fixture Support: Urinal <Insert designation> chair carrier.

2.18 BIDETS – NOT USED

2.19 LAVATORIES

A. Lavatories, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Commercial Enameling Company.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - f. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - g. Barclay Products, Ltd.
 - h. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - i. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - j. Eljer.
 - k. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - l. Kohler Co.
 - m. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - n. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - o. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.

- p. St. Thomas Creations.
 - q. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - r. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: [Accessible, wall] [Wall] [Wall-and-pedestal]-mounting, [enameled, cast-iron] [vitreous-china] fixture.
- a. Type: [With back] [Ledge back] [Shelf back] [Slab] [Pedestal].
 - b. Size: [18 by 15 inches (457 by 381 mm)] [19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm)] [20 by 18 inches (508 by 457 mm)] [24 by 20 inches (610 by 508 mm)] <Insert dimensions> rectangular.
 - c. Faucet Hole Punching: [One hole] [Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers] [Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers].
 - d. Faucet Hole Location: [Top] [Front wall] [Inclined panel].
 - e. Pedestal: [Not required] [Required].
 - f. Color: [White] <Insert color>.
 - g. Faucet: Lavatory <Insert designation> [with pop-up waste] [for separate drain].
 - h. Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
 - i. Drain: [See faucet] [Grid] [Grid with offset waste] <Insert drain>.
 - 1) Location: [Not applicable] [Near back of bowl] <Insert location>.
 - j. Drain Piping: [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)] chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)], [0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-)] [0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-)] thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - k. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 [ABS] [or] [PVC], [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)] P-trap; [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)], tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - 1) Exception: Omit P-trap if hair interceptor is required.
 - l. Hair Interceptor: [Not required] <Insert designation.>
 - m. Protective Shielding Guard(s): <Insert designation.>
 - n. Fixture Support: Lavatory <Insert designation.>

B. Lavatories, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [the product indicated on Drawings] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Commercial Enameling Company.

- b. Eljer.
 - c. Kohler Co.
 - d. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - e. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
 - f. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - g. Benjamin Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - h. Royal Baths Manufacturing Co.
 - i. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - j. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - k. Bootz Plumbingware Co.
 - l. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - m. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - n. Eljer.
 - o. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - p. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - q. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - r. Avonite, Inc.
 - s. Bradley Corporation.
 - t. DuPont, Corian Products.
 - u. Formica Corporation.
 - v. Lippert Corporation.
 - w. Rynone Manufacturing Corp.
 - x. Swan Corporation (The).
 - y. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - z. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - aa. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - bb. Intersan Manufacturing Company.
 - cc. Just Manufacturing Company.
 - dd. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - ee. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - ff. Barclay Products, Ltd.
 - gg. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - hh. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - ii. Eljer.
 - jj. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
 - kk. Kohler Co.
 - ll. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - mm. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - nn. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
 - oo. St. Thomas Creations.
 - pp. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - qq. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: [Accessible] [Counter-mounting] [Undercounter-mounting], [enameled, cast-iron] [FRP] [PMMA] [porcelain-enameled, formed-steel] [solid-surface] [stainless-steel] [vitreous-china] fixture.
- a. Type: [Flat rim with ledge] [Self-rimming].

- b. Rectangular Lavatory Size: [18 by 15 inches (457 by 381 mm)] [19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm)] [20 by 18 inches (508 by 457 mm)] [24 by 20 inches (610 by 508 mm)] <Insert dimensions>.
- c. Oval Lavatory Size: [19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm)] [20 by 17 inches (508 by 432 mm)] <Insert dimensions>.
- d. Round Lavatory Size: [18 inches (457 mm)] [19 inches (483 mm)] <Insert dimensions> in diameter.
- e. Faucet Hole Punching: [One hole] [Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers] [Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers].
- f. Faucet Hole Location: [Top] [Front wall] [Inclined panel].
- g. Color: [White] <Insert color>.
- h. Faucet: Lavatory <Insert designation> [with pop-up waste] [for separate drain].
- i. Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
- j. Drain: [See faucet] [Grid] [Grid with offset waste] <Insert drain>.
 - 1) Location: [Not applicable] [Near back of bowl] <Insert location>.
- k. Drain Piping: [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)] chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)], [0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-)] [0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-)] thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
- l. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 [ABS] [or] [PVC], [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)] P-trap; [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)], tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - 1) Exception: Omit P-trap if hair interceptor is required.
- m. Hair Interceptor: [Not required] <Insert designation>.
- n. Protective Shielding Guard(s): <Insert designation.>

C. Lavatories, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [the product indicated on Drawings] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - b. RSI Home Products.
 - c. Rynone Manufacturing Corp.
 - d. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - e. Avonite, Inc.
 - f. DuPont, Corian Products.
 - g. Formica Corporation.

- h. Lippert Corporation.
 - i. Swan Corporation (The).
 - j. Wilsonart International.
 - k. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: [**Accessible**] countertop with integral bowl fixtures for mounting on base unit.
- a. Backsplash: [**Integral with countertop**] [**Separate, same material as countertop**] [**Not required**].
 - b. Overall Rectangular Top Size: [**25 by 17 inches (635 by 432 mm)**] [**31 by 19 inches (787 by 483 mm)**] [**49 by 22 inches (1245 by 559 mm)**] [**73 by 22 inches (1854 by 559 mm)**] <Insert dimensions> with [**1**] [**2**] [**3**] [**4**] bowl(s).
 - 1) Bowl Size: Oval [**19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm)**] [**20 by 17 inches (508 by 432 mm)**] <Insert dimensions>.
 - c. Faucet Hole Punching: [**One hole**] [**Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers**] [**Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers**].
 - d. Faucet Hole Location: [**Countertop**] <Insert location>.
 - e. Color: [**White**] <Insert color>.
 - f. Faucet(s): Lavatory <Insert designation> [**with pop-up waste**] [**with separate drain**] for each bowl.
 - g. Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
 - h. Drain(s): [**See faucets**] [**Grid**] [**Grid with offset waste**] <Insert drain>.
 - 1) Location: [**Not applicable**] [**Near back of bowl**] <Insert location>.
 - i. Drain Piping: [**NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)**] [**NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)**] chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; [**NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)**] [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)**], [**0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-)**] [**0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-)**] thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - j. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 [**ABS**] [**or**] [**PVC**], [**NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)**] [**NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)**] P-trap; [**NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)**] [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)**], tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - k. Hair Interceptor(s): <Insert designation> for bowls as indicated.
 - l. Protective Shielding Guard(s): <Insert designation> for bowls as indicated.
- D. Lavatories, <Insert drawing designation>:
- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - d. Eljer.
 - e. Kohler Co.
 - f. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - g. Peerless Pottery, Inc.
 - h. St. Thomas Creations.
 - i. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**
4. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting, vitreous-china fixture designed for people in wheelchairs.
- a. Type: **[Ledge back] [Shelf back] [Slab] <Insert type>**.
 - b. Size: **[20 by 26 inches (508 by 660 mm)] <Insert dimensions>** minimum; rectangular.
 - c. Faucet Hole Punching: **[One hole] [Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers] [Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers] [Three holes, 8-inch (203-mm) centers] [Three holes, 12-inch (305-mm) centers]**.
 - d. Color: **[White] <Insert color>**.
 - e. Faucet: Lavatory **<Insert designation>** for separate drain.
 - f. Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
 - g. Drain: **[Grid] [Grid with offset waste]**.
 - h. Drain Piping: **[NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)]** chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; **[NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)]**, 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - i. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 **[ABS] [or] [PVC], [NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40)]** P-trap; **[NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)]**, tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - j. Fixture Support: Lavatory **<Insert designation>**.

2.20 COMMERCIAL SINKS

A. Commercial Sinks, **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **[the product indicated on Drawings] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.
 - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - c. Just Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Metal Masters Foodservice Equipment Co., Inc.

- e. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
- 4. Description: [One] [Two] [Three]-compartment, counter-mounting, stainless-steel commercial sink with backsplash.
 - a. Overall Dimensions: <Insert dimensions.>
 - b. Metal Thickness: [0.050 inch (1.3 mm)] <Insert dimension>.
 - c. Compartment:
 - 1) Dimensions: <Insert dimensions.>
 - 2) Drain: [Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain] [Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste] <Insert drain>.
 - a) Location: [Centered in compartment] [Near back of compartment] [Near left side of compartment] [Near right side of compartment] <Insert location>.
 - d. Each Compartment:
 - 1) Dimensions: <Insert dimensions.>
 - 2) Drains: [Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain] [Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper] [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste] <Insert drain>.
 - a) Location: [Centered in compartment] [Near back of compartment] <Insert location>.
 - e. Faucet(s): Sink <Insert designation>.
 - 1) Number Required: [One] [Two].
 - 2) Mounting: Deck.
 - f. Supplies: [NPS 1/2 (DN 15)] [NPS 3/4 (DN 20)] chrome-plated copper with stops or shutoff valves.
 - g. Drain Piping: [NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)] [NPS 2 (DN 50)] chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; [0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass] [copper pipe] waste to wall; [continuous waste;]and wall escutcheon(s).

B. Commercial Sinks, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.
 - b. AERO Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Amtekco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - e. Just Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Marlo Manufacturing.
 - g. Metal Masters Foodservice Equipment Co., Inc.
 - h. <Insert manufacturer's name.>

4. Description: [**One**] [**Two**] [**Three**]-compartment, freestanding, stainless-steel commercial sink with backsplash.
 - a. Overall Dimensions: <Insert dimensions.>
 - b. Metal Thickness: [**0.050 inch (1.3 mm)**] [**0.063 inch (1.6 mm)**] <Insert dimension>.
 - c. Compartment:
 - 1) Dimensions: <Insert dimensions.>
 - 2) Drain: [**Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain**] [**Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain**] [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper**] [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste**] <Insert drain>.
 - a) Location: [**Centered in compartment**] [**Near back of compartment**] [**Near left side of compartment**] [**Near right side of compartment**] <Insert location>.
 - d. Each Compartment:
 - 1) Dimensions: <Insert dimensions.>
 - 2) Drains: [**Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain**] [**Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain**] [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper**] [**NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste**] <Insert drain>.
 - a) Location: [**Centered in compartment**] [**Near back of compartment**] <Insert location>.
 - e. Drainboard(s): [**Not required**] [**Both**] [**Left**] [**Right**] side(s).
 - 1) Dimensions Each: [**Not applicable**] <Insert dimensions>.
 - f. Supports: Adjustable-length, steel legs.
 - g. Faucet(s): Sink <Insert designation>.

- 1) Number Required: **[One]** **[Two]**.
- 2) Mounting: In backsplash.

- h. Supplies: **[NPS 1/2 (DN 15)] [NPS 3/4 (DN 20)]** chrome-plated copper with stops or shutoff valves.
- i. Drain Piping: **[NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)] [NPS 2 (DN 50)]** chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; **[0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass] [copper pipe]** waste to wall; **[continuous waste;]**and wall escutcheon(s).

C. Commercial Sinks, **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **[the product indicated on Drawings]** **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.
 - b. AERO Manufacturing, Inc.
 - c. Amtekco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - e. Just Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Marlo Manufacturing.
 - g. Metal Masters Foodservice Equipment Co., Inc.
 - h. **<Insert manufacturer's name.>**
4. Description: Wall-mounting, stainless-steel, commercial, handwash-sink fixture.
 - a. Type: Basin with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
 - b. Size; Approximately 17 by 16 by 5 inches (432 by 406 by 127 mm).
 - c. Faucet: Back-mounting, chrome-plated, solid-brass, gooseneck type with individual valves.
 - d. Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated copper with stops.
 - e. Drain: Grid.
 - f. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
 - g. Fixture Support: Sink **<Insert designation>** for wall-mounting installation.

2.21 SHAMPOO BOWLS – NOT USED

2.22 WASH FOUNTAINS – NOT USED

2.23 BATHTUBS – NOT USED

2.24 INDIVIDUAL SHOWERS

A. Individual Showers, <Insert drawing designation>:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Aker Plastics Co., Inc.
 - b. Aqua Glass Corporation.
 - c. Clarion Bathware.
 - d. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - e. LASCO Bathware.
 - f. Praxis Industries, Inc.; Aquarius Products.
 - g. Sterling Plumbing Group, Inc.
 - h. Swan Corporation (The).
 - i. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - j. Acryline USA, Inc.
 - k. Aker Plastics Co., Inc.
 - l. Aqua Bath Company, Inc.
 - m. Aqua Glass Corporation.
 - n. Aquatic Industries, Inc.
 - o. Clarion Bathware.
 - p. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - q. Jacuzzi, Inc.
 - r. Kohler Co.
 - s. LASCO Bathware.
 - t. Praxis Industries, Inc.; Aquarius Products.
 - u. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: [**Accessible,**] [**FRP**] [**PMMA**] shower enclosure with slip-resistant bathing surface and shower rod with curtain.
 - a. Size: [**36 by 34 inches (915 by 865 mm)**] [**42 by 36 inches (1065 by 915 mm)**] [**43 by 39 inches (1090 by 990 mm)**] [**48 by 34 inches (1220 by 865 mm)**] [**52 by**

36 inches (1320 by 915 mm)] [60 by 36 inches (1525 by 915 mm)] [72 by 36 inches (1830 by 915 mm)] <Insert dimensions>.

- b. Surround: One piece[**or sealed, multiple piece**].
- c. Surround: One piece.
- d. Color: [**White**] <Insert color>.
- e. Drain Location: [**Left side**] [**Center**] [**Right side**].
- f. Accessibility Options: Include grab bar and bench.
- g. Faucet: Shower <Insert designation>.
- h. Drain: Grid, NPS 2 (DN 50).

B. Individual Showers, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Description: Components for built-up shower.
 - a. Shower Faucet: <Insert designation>.
 - b. Receptor: [**Not required**] <Insert shower receptor designation>.

C. Individual Showers, <Insert drawing designation>:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - b. Mustee, E. L. & Sons, Inc.
 - c. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
 - d. Swan Corporation (The).
 - e. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
- 4. Description: Factory-fabricated, [**accessible**,]cabinet type with faucet and receptor.
 - a. Size: [**30 by 30 inches (760 by 760 mm)**] [**32 by 32 inches (815 by 815 mm)**] [**36 by 36 inches (915 by 915 mm)**] [**36 by 39 inches (915 by 990 mm)**] [**45 by 39 inches (1145 by 990 mm)**] <Insert dimensions>.
 - b. Material: [**Steel**] [**Composite**] [**Plastic**], [**front**] [**corner**] [**front and rear**] access.
 - c. Color: [**Not applicable**] <Insert color>.
 - d. Accessibility Options: Grab bar and bench.
 - e. Faucet: Shower <Insert designation>.
 - f. Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper tubing[**with ball, gate, or globe valves**].
 - g. Drain: Grid, NPS 2 (DN 50).

2.25 GROUP SHOWERS – NOT USED

2.26 WHIRLPOOL BATHTUBS – NOT USED

2.27 KITCHEN SINKS – NOT USED

2.28 SERVICE SINKS

A. Service Sinks, <Insert drawing designation>:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [**the product indicated on Drawings**] <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Commercial Enameling Company.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
 - f. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
 - g. Eljer.
 - h. Kohler Co.
 - i. <Insert manufacturer's name.>
4. Description: Trap-standard- and wall-mounting, [**enameled, cast-iron fixture with roll-rim**] [**vitreous-china fixture**] with [**plain**] [**two faucet holes in**] back and rim guard on front and sides.
 - a. Size: [**22 by 18 inches (560 by 460 mm)**] or [**24 by 20 inches (610 by 510 mm)**].
 - b. Size: [**19 by 16 inches (480 by 405 mm)**] [**22 by 20 inches (560 by 510 mm)**].
 - c. Color: White.
 - d. Faucet: Sink <Insert designation>.
 - e. Drain: Grid with [**NPS 2 (DN 50)**] [**NPS 3 (DN 80)**] outlet.
 - f. Trap Standard: [**NPS 2 (DN 50)**] [**NPS 3 (DN 80)**] enameled, cast iron with cleanout and floor flange.
 - g. Fixture Support: Sink <Insert designation>.

B. Service Sinks,:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
 - b. Commercial Enameling Company.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
4. Description: Floor-mounting, enameled, cast-iron fixture with front apron, raised back, and coated, wire rim guard.
 - a. Size: 28 by 28 inches (710 by 710 mm).
 - b. Color: White.
 - c. Faucet: Sink
 - d. Drain: Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) or NPS 3 (DN 80) outlet.

2.29 SERVICE BASINS – NOT USED

2.30 LAUNDRY TRAYS – NOT USED

2.31 SACRISTY SINKS – NOT USED

2.32 OWNER-FURNISHED FIXTURES

A. New, Owner-furnished fixture.

1. Provide the following:
 - a. Lavatory Faucet:
 - b. Lavatory, Laminar-Flow Faucet Spout:
 - c. Bathtub Faucet:
 - d. Bathtub/Shower Faucet:
 - e. Shower Faucet:
 - f. Sink Faucet:
 - g. Sink, Laminar-Flow Faucet Spout:
 - h. Flushometer:
 - i. Toilet Seat:
 - j. Direct-Connected Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40) NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), NPS 2 (DN 50) chrome-plated, cast-brass, cast-brass, or plastic P-trap, and tubular waste to wall with wall flange.

- k. Indirect Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) NPS 2 (DN 50) chrome-plated-brass, brass or copper, plastic tubular waste.
- l. Protective Shielding Guard(s):
- m. Fixture Support: <
- n. Interceptor:
- o. Shower Receptor:
- p. Disposer:
- q. Hot-Water Dispenser:

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
 - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
 - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
 - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install floor-mounting, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.
- G. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- H. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

- I. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- J. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- L. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- M. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- N. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- O. Install trap-seal liquid in dry urinals.
- P. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- Q. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- R. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- S. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- T. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
 - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- U. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch were indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
- V. Install hot-water dispensers in back top surface of sink or in countertop with spout over sink.
- W. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

- X. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust disposers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units and controls.
- C. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
 - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
 - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 224700 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following water coolers and related components:
 - 1. Drinking fountains.
 - 2. Pressure water coolers.
 - 3. Water-station water coolers.
 - 4. Remote water coolers.
 - 5. Fixture supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Water Cooler: Fixture that can be approached and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Cast Polymer: Dense, cast-filled-polymer plastic.
- C. Drinking Fountain: Fixture with nozzle for delivering stream of water for drinking.
- D. Fitting: Device that controls flow of water into or out of fixture.
- E. Fixture: Drinking fountain or water cooler unless one is specifically indicated.
- F. Remote Water Cooler: Electrically powered equipment for generating cooled drinking water.
- G. Water Cooler: Electrically powered fixture for generating and delivering cooled drinking water.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each fixture indicated. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities" Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act" for fixtures for people with disabilities.
- C. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- D. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for style classifications.
- E. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI 1010, "Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers," for water coolers and with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for type and style classifications.
- F. ASHRAE Standard: Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant, unless otherwise indicated.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 100 percent of amount installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 2 of each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

- A. Water Coolers:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Halsey Taylor.
 - c. Haws Corporation.
 - d. Larco, Inc.
 - e. Oasis Corporation.
 - f. Sunroc Corp.

4. Description: ARI 1010, Type PB, pressure with bubbler, Style FW, flush-to-wall water cooler.
 - a. Cabinet: All stainless steel .
 - b. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
 - c. Control: Push button.
 - d. Supply: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) with ball, gate, or globe valve.
 - e. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
 - f. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum horizontal waste and trap complying with ASME A112.18.2.
 - g. Cooling System: Electric, with pre-cooler hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
 - 1) Capacity: 5 gph (0.0053 L/s), 8 gph (0.0084 L/s), 10 gph (0.0105 L/s), 14 gph (0.0147 L/s) of 50 deg F (10 deg C) cooled water from 80 deg F (27 deg C) inlet water and 90 deg F (32 deg C) ambient air temperature.
 - 2) Electrical Characteristics: 1/6, 1/5, 1/4 hp; 120-V ac; single phase; 60 Hz.

2.2 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Josam Co.
 2. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
 6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

- C. Description: ASME A112.6.1M, water cooler carriers. Include vertical, steel uprights with feet and tie rods and bearing plates with mounting studs matching fixture to be supported.
 1. Type I: Hanger-type carrier with two vertical uprights.

2. Type II: Bilevel, hanger-type carrier with three vertical uprights.
3. Supports for Accessible Fixtures: Include rectangular, vertical, steel uprights instead of steel pipe uprights.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water and waste piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation. Verify that sizes and locations of piping and types of supports match those indicated.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Use carrier off-floor supports for wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use mounting frames for recessed water coolers, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Set freestanding and pedestal drinking fountains on floor.
- D. Set remote water coolers on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Use chrome-plated brass or copper tube, fittings, and valves in locations exposed to view. Plain copper tube, fittings, and valves may be used in concealed locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install off-floor supports affixed to building substrate and attach wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install mounting frames affixed to building construction and attach recessed water coolers to mounting frames, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install fixtures level and plumb. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

- F. Install pipe escutcheons at wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding pipe fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water Cooler Testing: After electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 - 1. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - 2. Report test results in writing.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust water cooler temperature settings.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing fixture installation, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 224700

SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. HVAC demolition.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:

1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epcos Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epcos Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
 - 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless Steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless Steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HVAC DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - 4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - 7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.

- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type and set screw.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - i. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - h. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa) , 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast In-Place Concrete."

3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.9 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.10 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.

- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.

3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 2. Split phase.
 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Flexible, ball-joint, packed expansion joints.
2. Slip-joint packed expansion joints.
3. Expansion-compensator packless expansion joints.
4. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
5. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
6. Rubber packless expansion joints.
7. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
8. Pipe loops and swing connections.
9. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.
- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.
- E. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex Pression Ltd.
 - d. Metraflex, Inc.
 - e. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
 - 3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
 - 4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C) and 340 psig at 450 deg F (2340 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.
 - 5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F (2070 kPa at 21 deg C) and 225 psig at 450 deg F (1550 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.
 - 6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C) and 325 psig at 600 deg F (2250 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F (1380 kPa at 21 deg C) and 145 psig at 600 deg F (1000 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F (860 kPa at 21 deg C) and 90 psig at 600 deg F (625 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
9. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 14 (DN 350) and Larger: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F (1130 kPa at 21 deg C) and 120 psig at 600 deg F (830 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Adsc0 Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - d. Flexicraft Industries.
 - e. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - g. Metraflex, Inc.
 - h. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
 - i. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
 - j. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install packed-type expansion joints with packing suitable for fluid service.
- C. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- D. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.
- E. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

- D. Install expansion loops at every 100 ft. minimum.
- E. Metraflex mechanical expansion can be substituted per manufacturers recommendations for distance or every 100 ft. Whichever requirement is more stringent.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install two guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
 3. Others as approved by Engineer.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Presealed Systems.
 2. Others as approved by Engineer.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing.
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Cast-iron wall sleeves.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) size > and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves <Insert.
2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 0518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and set screw fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and set screw fastener.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and set screw fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons :
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring cups..
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 23 0519 - THERMOMETERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
 2. Thermowells.
 3. Dial-type pressure gages.
 4. Gage attachments.
 5. Test plugs.
 6. Test-plug kits.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of thermometer and gage, from manufacturer.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For thermometers and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Marsh Bellofram.
 2. Terice, H. O. Co.
 3. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 5. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); Type 304 stainless steel, nominal face diameter as follows:
1. Installation in piping: 3 inch diameter.
 2. Installations in tanks and similar equipment: 5 inch diameter.
 3. Installation in air-side systems: 5 inch diameter.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C).
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle rigid, back and rigid, bottom, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Laminated safety glass.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
 - 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
 - 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
 - 5. Type: Stepped shank.
 - 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 - 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 - 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 - 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 - 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Marsh Bellofram.
 - c. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - f. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled type; stainless steel or cast aluminum 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa).
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Laminated safety glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.6 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 2. Terice, H. O. Co.
 3. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 5. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) or NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C).
- F. Core Inserts: Neoprene self-sealing rubber.

2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 - 2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 3. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 5. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Furnish two test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C).
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C).
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa).
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending [a minimum of one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

- D. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- E. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- H. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- I. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. As indicated on plans, details and schematic diagrams.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
 - 4. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
 - 5. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
 - 6. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 7. Outside-, return-, and supply-air ducts.
- J. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. As indicated on plans, details and schematic diagrams.
 - 2. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
 - 4. Suction and discharge of each pump.
 - 5. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 6. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
 - 7. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install thermometers and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of thermometers, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be the following:
 - 1. Test plug with neoprene self-sealing rubber inserts.

- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
- C. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
- E. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in unit ventilators and fan coil units shall be the following:
 - 1. Test plug with neoprene self-sealing rubber inserts.
- F. Thermometers at outside-, return-, and supply-air ducts shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
- G. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C).
- B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C).
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C).
- D. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 100 deg C).

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa).
- B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa).
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa).

****END OF SECTION****

SECTION 23 0523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron ball valves.
4. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
5. Bronze lift check valves.
6. Bronze swing check valves.
7. Iron swing check valves.
8. Bronze gate valves.
9. Iron gate valves.
10. Bronze globe valves.
11. Iron globe valves.
12. Lubricated plug valves.
13. Chainwheels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 HVAC piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- A. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- B. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Valve Actuator Types:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves.
 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- D. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- E. Valve-End Connections:
1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- F. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.
- 2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES
- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Hammond
 - d. Jenkins
 - e. Stockham
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.

- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Hammond Valve.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded or solder.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.4 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Nibco Inc.
 - d. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Split body.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.

- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel.
- i. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- b. DeZurik Water Controls.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- e. NIBCO INC.
- f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated ductile iron.

2.6 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. NIBCO Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

2.7 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded or solder.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.08 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.09 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. NIBCO INC.
- f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.10 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.11 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. NIBCO INC.
- d. Red-White Valve Corporation.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.12 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to,

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.13 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

A. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
- b. Milliken Valve Company.
- c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
- d. Rockwell.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with sealing system.
- d. Pattern: Regular or short.
- e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

2.14 CHAINWHEELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
2. Roto Hammer Industries.
3. Trumbull Industries.

B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.

1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
2. Attachment: For connection to gate, butterfly and plug valve stems.
3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating.
4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for gate globe and plug valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, gate, or plug valves.
 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 3. Throttling Service: Globe or angle valves.
 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 nonmetallic disc.
 3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 nonmetallic disc.
 5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 RS, bronze.
 6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 nonmetallic disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3 (DN 65 to DN 75): Class 150.
 3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM seat, ductile-iron disc.
 4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
 5. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 OS&Y.
 6. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.
 7. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 cylindrical, flanged.

3.6 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, RS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3 (DN 65 to DN 75): Class 150.
3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM seat, ductile-iron disc.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
5. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
6. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125.
7. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125, cylindrical, flanged.

3.7 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, RS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3 (DN 65 to DN 75): Class 150.
3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM seat, ductile-iron disc.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
5. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
6. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125.

END OF SECTION 230523

SECTION 23 0529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Fiberglass strut systems.
5. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
6. Fastener systems.
7. Pipe stands.
8. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Division 23 Section(s) "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Pipe stands.
 - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code – Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel .

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - d. GS Metals Corp.
 - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - g. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 2. Clement Support Services.
 3. ERICO International Corporation.
 4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
 5. PHS Industries, Inc.
 6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm)

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
 - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use Mechanical – Expansion Anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Isolation pads.
 - 2. Isolation mounts.
 - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 4. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
 - 5. Housed spring mounts.
 - 6. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 7. Spring hangers.
 - 8. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
 - 9. Pipe riser resilient supports.
 - 10. Resilient pipe guides.
 - 11. Freestanding and restrained air-mounting system.
 - 12. Restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails.
 - 13. Seismic snubbers.
 - 14. Restraining braces and cables.
 - 15. Steel and inertia, vibration isolation equipment bases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Basic Wind Speed: <Insert value>.
 - 2. Building Classification Category: [I] [II] [III] [IV].

3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by the maximum area of the HVAC component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F].
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: [I] [II] [III].
 - a. Component Importance Factor: [1.0] [1.5] <Insert value>.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: [1.5] [2.5] [3.5] [5.0] <Insert value>.
 - c. Component Amplification Factor: [1.0] [2.5] <Insert value>.
3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): <Insert percent>.
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period: <Insert percent>.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic and wind forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic and wind restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.

3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
 4. Seismic and Wind-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic and wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
 - C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
 - D. Welding certificates.
 - E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
 - F. Air-Mounting System Performance Certification: Include natural frequency, load, and damping test data performed by an independent agency.
 - G. Field quality-control test reports.
 - H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-mounting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
 - C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
 2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 3. California Dynamics Corporation.
 4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 5. Kinetics Noise Control.
 6. Mason Industries.
 7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
 8. Vibration Isolation.
 9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
- C. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- D. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
- E. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
 6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- F. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
 2. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- G. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
 2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
 3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
- H. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
- I. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- J. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
 7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- K. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig (3.45 MPa) and for equal resistance in all directions.
- L. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.2 RESTRAINED VIBRATION ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 2. California Dynamics Corporation.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 5. Mason Industries.
 6. Thybar Corporation.
 7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
 8. Vibration Isolation.
 9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Restrained Vibration Isolation Roof-Curb Rails: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- C. Lower Support Assembly: Formed sheet-metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. Upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind forces. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.
- D. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
1. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or wind restraint.
 - a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
 - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 2. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
 - a. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant standard neoprene.
- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

2.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
 3. Isolation Technology, Inc.
 4. Kinetics Noise Control.
 5. Mason Industries.
 6. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
 7. Vibration Isolation.
 8. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- C. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
 3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 4. Hilti, Inc.
 5. Kinetics Noise Control.
 6. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
 7. Mason Industries.
 8. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
 9. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
 3. Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick resilient cushion.
- D. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- E. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- F. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- G. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- H. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- I. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- J. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with

strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.

- K. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.5 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
 - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
 - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
 - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
 - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic[- **and wind**]-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- B. Equipment Restraints:
 - 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
 - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
 - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- C. Piping Restraints:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
 - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
 - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
- D. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- I. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole

and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.

5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
 6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
 7. Measure isolator deflection.
 8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
 9. Air-Mounting System Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 10. Air-Mounting System Operational Test: Test the compressed-air leveling system.
 11. Test and adjust air-mounting system controls and safeties.
 12. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust air-spring leveling mechanism.
- D. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- E. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-mounting systems. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration And Training."

END OF SECTION 230548

SECTION 23 0553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) Aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- C. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- D. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- E. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

- F. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- G. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) Aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm).
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated, self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 - 1. Blue: For return air ducts.
 - 2. Yellow: For supply air ducts.
 - 3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
 - 4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections on end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape: 1-1/2 inches (38mm), round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Color: Natural

3. Letter Color: Black

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Coordinate with specification section 230800.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.
- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Conference: Meet with Architect and the Owner and on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
 - 1. Agenda Items:
 - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
 - b. The TAB plan.
 - c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
- C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
 - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Architect and Owner
- E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.
- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 7.2.2, "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
 - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 6. Obtain approval from Engineer via Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
 - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
 2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:
1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Engineer via Architect and comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps."
 2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
 - a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.
 3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
 4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
- B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- C. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- D. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.
- E. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
- F. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
- G. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
 2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
 3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.

- H. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
- I. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.
- J. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first and then balance the secondary circuits.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR STEAM SYSTEMS

- A. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
- B. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
- C. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.
- D. Verify the operation of each steam trap.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Measure water flow through all circuits.
- B. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.
- D. Measure inlet steam pressure.
- E. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.

2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.
- B. Steam Boilers: Measure and record entering-water temperature and flow and leaving-steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 2. Water flow rate.
 3. Water pressure drop.
 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 6. Airflow.
 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 1. Nameplate data.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Air pressure drop.
 4. Inlet steam pressure.
- D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 3. Airflow.
 4. Air pressure drop.
 5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
 4. Check the condition of filters.
 5. Check the condition of coils.
 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
1. New filters are installed.
 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
 3. Drain pans are clean.
 4. Fans are clean.
 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Balance each air outlet.

3.17 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

3.18 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.19 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 1. Pump curves.
 2. Fan curves.
 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 5. Terminal units.
 6. Balancing stations.
 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - j. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - l. Return-air damper position.
 - m. Vortex damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
1. Coil Data:
- a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
 - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - h. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
 - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
 - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
 - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).

G. Gas-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Fuel type in input data.
 - g. Output capacity in Btu/h (kW).
 - h. Ignition type.
 - i. Burner-control types.
 - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
 - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
 - m. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Air temperature differential in deg F (deg C).
 - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
 - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
 - j. Manifold pressure in psig (kPa).

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F (deg C).
 - l. Operating set point in Btu/h (kW).
 - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
 - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
 - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h (kW).
- H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil identification.
 - d. Capacity in Btu/h (kW).
 - e. Number of stages.
 - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
 - g. Rated amperage.
 - h. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - i. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Heat output in Btu/h (kW).
 - b. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - c. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - f. Voltage at each connection.
 - g. Amperage for each phase.
- I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
- 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Room or riser served.
 - d. Coil make and size.
 - e. Flowmeter type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).

L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - i. Pump rpm.
 - j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
 - k. Motor make and frame size.
 - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - m. Voltage at each connection.
 - n. Amperage for each phase.
 - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
 - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
 - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
 - j. Voltage at each connection.
 - k. Amperage for each phase.

M. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.
 - e. Dates of calibration.

3.20 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
2. Check the following for each system:
 - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
 - b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
 - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
 - d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
 - e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect and Owner.
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect and Owner.
3. Owner shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.21 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 4. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 5. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 6. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
 2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit EQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that product complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.

2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.
- E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- F. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- G. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
1. Ductwork Mockups:
 - a. One 10-foot (3-m) section each of rectangular and round straight duct.
 - b. One each of a 90-degree mitered round and rectangular elbow, and one each of a 90-degree radius round and rectangular elbow.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- c. One rectangular branch takeoff and one round branch takeoff from a rectangular duct. One round tee fitting.
 - d. One rectangular and round transition fitting.
 - e. Four support hangers for round and rectangular ductwork.
 - f. Each type of damper and specialty.
2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
 5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
 - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
 - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
 - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
 - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F (927 deg C). Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
 - b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
 - c. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
 - d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
 - e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
 - f. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; AeroSeal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Use sealants that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering ducts.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. Metal Jacket:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

2.11 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; CD.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.

 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

 - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).

 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
 - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
 - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) GEMCO.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. C & F Wire.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation,

- install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.

2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.7 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 2. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 5. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Not insulated.

E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

H. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be one of the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- I. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- J. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- K. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- L. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be[**one of**] the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.11 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- C. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) thick.
 2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) thick, color as per architect.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
 - 2. Chilled-water and brine piping, indoors.
 - 3. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.
 - 4. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit EQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that product complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.
1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
 2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
 4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.
- E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- F. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- G. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
1. Piping Mockups:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. One 10-foot (3-m) section of NPS 2 (DN 50) straight pipe.
 - b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
 - c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
 - d. One NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or larger valve.
 - e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
 - f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
 - g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
 - h. One pressure temperature tap.
 - i. One mechanical coupling.
2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
 5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
 - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
 - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 2. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory-applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Knauf Insulation; Permawick Pipe Insulation.
 - b. Owens Corning; VaporWick Pipe Insulation.
- K. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
- b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
- c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
- e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- D. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
 4. Color: White or gray.
 5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 5. Color: Aluminum.

6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

C. Metal Jacket:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
- 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.

3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.

- a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
- 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation,

- install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.
- E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
 - 2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
 - 3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
 - 4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
 - 5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- B. Chilled Water and Brine, 40 Deg F (5 Deg C) and below:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1/2 inch (14 mm) thick.
 - 2. NPS 1 (DN 25) to NPS 6 (DN 50): Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- C. Chilled Water and Brine, above 40 Deg F (5 Deg C):
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1/2 inch (14 mm) thick.

2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inches (25 mm) thick.

D. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F (93 Deg C) and Below:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

E. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.

3.16 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- C. HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.
- D. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 ALLOWANCES

- A. Labor, instrumentation, tools, and equipment costs for technicians for the performance of commissioning testing are covered by the "Schedule of Allowances" Article in Division 01 Section "Allowances."

1.5 UNIT PRICES

- A. Commissioning testing allowance may be adjusted up or down by the "List of Unit Prices" Article in Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" when actual man-hours are computed at the end of commissioning testing.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.
- C. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- D. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- E. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- F. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.7 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.
- B. Direct commissioning testing.
- C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.
- D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.8 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:
 - 1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
 - 2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
 - 3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
 - 4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
 - 5. Certificate of readiness certifying that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
 - 6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
 - 7. Corrective action documents.
 - 8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of readiness.
- B. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 Testing AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

- A. Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.
- B. Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.
- C. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of HVAC&R systems at the direction of the CxA.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. The CxA will notify testing and balancing Subcontractor 10 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
2. The testing and balancing Subcontractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
3. Failure of an item includes, other than sound, a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report. For sound pressure readings, a deviation of 3 dB shall result in rejection of final testing. Variations in background noise must be considered.
4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each conditioned space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA along with the HVAC&R Contractor, testing and balancing Subcontractor, and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control Subcontractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.4 HVAC&R SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

- A. Boiler Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in Division 23 boiler Sections. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and boiler certification to the CxA.
- B. HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls." Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- C. Pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic tests, and chemical treatment requirements are specified in Division 23 piping Sections. HVAC&R Contractor shall prepare a pipe system cleaning, flushing, and hydrostatic testing plan. Provide cleaning, flushing, testing, and treating plan and final reports to the CxA. Plan shall include the following:
 - 1. Sequence of testing and testing procedures for each section of pipe to be tested, identified by pipe zone or sector identification marker. Markers shall be keyed to Drawings for each pipe sector, showing the physical location of each designated pipe test section. Drawings keyed to pipe zones or sectors shall be formatted to allow each section of piping to be physically located and identified when referred to in pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic testing, and chemical treatment plan.
 - 2. Description of equipment for flushing operations.
 - 3. Minimum flushing water velocity.
 - 4. Tracking checklist for managing and ensuring that all pipe sections have been cleaned, flushed, hydrostatically tested, and chemically treated.
- D. Energy Supply System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of gas, hot-water and chilled water systems and equipment at the direction of the CxA. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.
- E. Refrigeration System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of chillers, cooling towers, refrigerant compressors and condensers, heat pumps, and other refrigeration systems. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.
- F. HVAC&R Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air, steam, and hydronic distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC&R terminal equipment and unitary equipment.
- G. Vibration and Sound Tests: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of vibration isolation and seismic controls.

END OF SECTION 230800

SECTION 230900 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping" for measuring equipment that relates to this Section.
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BACnet: A data communication protocol for building automation and control networks.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. I/O: Input/output.
- D. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.
- E. PC: Personal computer.
- F. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- G. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

- A. Comply with the following performance requirements:
 - 1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
 - 2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
4. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.
5. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
6. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
7. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.
8. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:
 - a. Water Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - b. Water Flow: Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
 - c. Water Pressure: Plus or minus 2 percent of full scale.
 - d. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - e. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - f. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1.0 deg C).
 - g. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F (1.5 deg C).
 - h. Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F (0.15 deg C).
 - i. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
 - j. Airflow (Pressurized Spaces): Plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.
 - k. Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
 - l. Airflow (Terminal): Plus or minus 10 percent of full scale.
 - m. Air Pressure (Space): Plus or minus 0.01-inch wg (2.5 Pa).
 - n. Air Pressure (Ducts): Plus or minus 0.1-inch wg (25 Pa).
 - o. Carbon Monoxide: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.
 - p. Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
 - q. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

1.5 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.
 1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
 2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
 3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
 2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
 3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
 4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
 5. Written description of sequence of operation.
 6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
 7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
 8. DDC System Hardware:
 - a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
 - b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
 - c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.
 9. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
 10. Controlled Systems:
 - a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
 - b. Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
 - c. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
 - d. Points list.
- C. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
- D. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with BACNet.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each color required, of each type of thermostat or sensor cover with factory-applied color finishes.
- F. Samples for Verification: For each color required, of each type of thermostat or sensor cover.
- G. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
 3. Device address list.
 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
 5. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- H. Software Upgrade Kit: For Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.
- I. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- J. Field quality-control test reports.
- K. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed-air station.
 - 2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
 - 3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
 - 4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
 - 5. Calibration records and list of set points.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.
- B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.
- B. Coordinate equipment with Division 28 Section "Intrusion Detection" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system and with building master clock.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Coordinate equipment with Division 28 Section "Access Control" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.
- D. Coordinate equipment with Division 27 Section "Clock Systems" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.
- E. Coordinate equipment with Division 28 Section "PLC Electronic Detention Monitoring and Control Systems" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.
- F. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.
- G. Coordinate equipment with Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.
- H. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units and operator workstation.
- I. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" to achieve compatibility of communication interfaces.
- J. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Section "Panelboards" to achieve compatibility with starter coils and annunciation devices.
- K. Coordinate equipment with Division 26 Section "Motor-Control Centers" to achieve compatibility with motor starters and annunciation devices.
- L. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Replacement Materials: One replacement diaphragm or relay mechanism for each unique controller, thermostat and positioning relay.
 - 2. Maintenance Materials: One thermostat adjusting key(s).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Honeywell International Inc.; Home & Building Control.
2. Johnson Controls, Inc.; Controls Group.
3. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.
4. TCS/Basys Controls.
5. Trane; Worldwide Applied Systems Group

B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, and accessories to control mechanical systems.

C. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

D. Control system shall include the following:

1. Building intrusion detection system specified in Division 28 Section "Intrusion Detection."
2. Building clock control system specified in Division 27 Section "Clock Systems."
3. Building lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls."
4. Fire alarm system specified in Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm."

2.3 DDC EQUIPMENT

A. Operator Workstation: PC-based computer(s) with minimum configuration as follows:

1. Motherboard: With 8 integrated USB 2.0 ports, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
2. Processor: Intel Core i7, minimum 2.8 MHz.
3. Random-Access Memory: 4096> MB.
4. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 1920 x 1080 pixels, 1024-MB video memory, with TV out.
5. Monitor: 19 inches (480 mm), LCD color.
6. Keyboard: QWERTY, 105 keys in ergonomic shape.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

7. Hard-Disk Drive: 500 GB.
8. CD-ROM Read/Write Drive: 48x24x48.
9. Mouse: Three button, optical.
10. Uninterruptible Power Supply: 600 watts.
11. Operating System: Microsoft Windows 10 Professional with high-speed Internet access.
 - a. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Workstation shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
 - a. BACnet Compliance: Control units shall use BACnet communications through IP protocol.
12. Application Software:
 - a. I/O capability from operator station.
 - b. System security for each operator via software password and access levels.
 - c. Automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
 - d. Database creation and support.
 - e. Automatic and manual database save and restore.
 - f. Dynamic color graphic displays with up to 10 screen displays at once.
 - g. Custom graphics generation and graphics library of HVAC equipment and symbols.
 - h. Alarm processing, messages, and reactions.
 - i. Trend logs retrievable in spreadsheets and database programs.
 - j. Alarm and event processing.
 - k. Object and property status and control.
 - l. Automatic restart of field equipment on restoration of power.
 - m. Data collection, reports, and logs. Include standard reports for the following:
 - 1) Current values of all objects.
 - 2) Current alarm summary.
 - 3) Disabled objects.
 - 4) Alarm lockout objects.
 - 5) Logs.
 - n. Custom report development.
 - o. Utility and weather reports.
 - p. Workstation application editors for controllers and schedules.
 - q. Maintenance management.
13. Custom Application Software:
 - a. English language oriented.
 - b. Full-screen character editor/programming environment.
 - c. Allow development of independently executing program modules with debugging/simulation capability.
 - d. Support conditional statements.
 - e. Support floating-point arithmetic with mathematic functions.
 - f. Contains predefined time variables.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.
 - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
 - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
 - d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
 - e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.
 3. Standard Application Programs:
 - a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
 - b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
 - c. Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.
 - d. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
 - e. Remote communications.
 - f. Maintenance management.
 - g. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).
 4. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 5. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
 6. BACnet Compliance: Control units shall use BACnet communications through IP protocol.
- C. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.
1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
 - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
- 3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 - 4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
 - 5. BACnet Compliance: Control units shall use BACnet communications through IP protocol.
- D. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
- 1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
 - 2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
 - 3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
 - 4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
 - 5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA).
 - 6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
 - 7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.
- E. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
- 1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
 - 2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
 - 3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.
- F. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
- 1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
 - 2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
 - 3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
 - 4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.4 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

- A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform scheduling with real-time clock. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
4. BACnet Compliance: Control units shall use BACnet communications through IP protocol.
5. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 50 deg C).
6. Enclosure: Waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F (5 to 65 deg C).

2.5 ALARM PANELS

- A. Unitized cabinet with suitable brackets for wall or floor mounting. Fabricate of 0.06-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, furniture-quality steel or extruded-aluminum alloy, totally enclosed, with hinged doors and keyed lock and with manufacturer's standard shop-painted finish. Provide common keying for all panels.
- B. Indicating light for each alarm point, single horn, acknowledge switch, and test switch, mounted on hinged cover.
 1. Alarm Condition: Indicating light flashes and horn sounds.
 2. Acknowledge Switch: Horn is silent and indicating light is steady.
 3. Second Alarm: Horn sounds and indicating light is steady.
 4. Alarm Condition Cleared: System is reset and indicating light is extinguished.
 5. Contacts in alarm panel allow remote monitoring by independent alarm company.

2.6 ANALOG CONTROLLERS

- A. Step Controllers: 6- or 10-stage type, with heavy-duty switching rated to handle loads and operated by electric motor.
- B. Electric, Outdoor-Reset Controllers: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range, adjustable set point, scale range minus 10 to plus 70 deg F (minus 23 to plus 21 deg C), and single- or double-pole contacts.
- C. Electronic Controllers: Wheatstone-bridge-amplifier type, in steel enclosure with provision for remote-resistance readjustment. Identify adjustments on controllers, including proportional band and authority.
 1. Single controllers can be integral with control motor if provided with accessible control readjustment potentiometer.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- D. Fan-Speed Controllers: Solid-state model providing field-adjustable proportional control of motor speed from maximum to minimum of 55 percent and on-off action below minimum fan speed. Controller shall briefly apply full voltage, when motor is started, to rapidly bring motor up to minimum speed. Equip with filtered circuit to eliminate radio interference.
- E. Receiver Controllers: Single- or multiple-input models with control-point adjustment, direct or reverse acting with mechanical set-point adjustment with locking device, proportional band adjustment, authority adjustment, and proportional control mode.
 - 1. Remote-control-point adjustment shall be plus or minus 20 percent of sensor span, input signal of 3 to 13 psig (21 to 90 kPa).
 - 2. Proportional band shall extend from 2 to 20 percent for 5 psig (35 kPa).
 - 3. Authority shall be 20 to 200 percent.
 - 4. Air-supply pressure of 18 psig (124 kPa), input signal of 3 to 15 psig (21 to 103 kPa), and output signal of zero to supply pressure.
 - 5. Gages: 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) in diameter, 2.5 percent wide-scale accuracy, and range to match transmitter input or output pressure.

2.7 TIME CLOCKS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. ATC-Diversified Electronics.
 - 2. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
 - 3. Paragon Electric Co., Inc.
 - 4. Precision Multiple Controls, Inc.
 - 5. SSAC Inc.; ABB USA.
 - 6. TCS/Basys Controls.
 - 7. Theben AG - Lumilite Control Technology, Inc.
 - 8. Time Mark Corporation.
- B. Seven-day, programming-switch timer with synchronous-timing motor and seven-day dial; continuously charged, nickel-cadmium-battery-driven, eight-hour, power-failure carryover; multiple-switch trippers; minimum of two and maximum of eight signals per day with two normally open and two normally closed output contacts.
- C. Solid-state, programmable time control with 8 separate programs each with up to 100 on-off operations; 1-second resolution; lithium battery backup; keyboard interface and manual override; individual on-off-auto switches for each program; 365-day calendar with 20 programmable holidays; choice of fail-safe operation for each program; system fault alarm; and communications package allowing networking of time controls and programming from PC.

2.8 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

- A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.
- B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. Ebtron, Inc.
 - c. Heat-Timer Corporation.
 - d. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.
 - e. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - f. RDF Corporation.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C) at calibration point.
3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches (200 mm) long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 36 inches (915 mm) long, flexible; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft. (1 sq. m).
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
7. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
 - a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
 - b. Set-Point Indication: Exposed.
 - c. Thermometer: Concealed.
 - d. Color: White
 - e. Orientation: Vertical.
8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
9. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

C. RTDs and Transmitters:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - c. RDF Corporation.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point.
3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches (200 mm) long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 18 inches (460 mm) long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m); length as required.
6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
7. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
 - b. Set-Point Indication: Exposed.
 - c. Thermometer: Concealed.
 - d. Color: White
 - e. Orientation: Vertical.
8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
 9. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.
- D. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. General Eastern Instruments.
 - c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
 - e. TCS/Basys Controls.
 - f. Vaisala.
 2. Accuracy: 2 percent full range with linear output.
 3. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
 4. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
 - a. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed.
 - b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
 - c. Thermometer: Concealed.
 5. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
 6. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of minus 22 to plus 185 deg F (minus 30 to plus 85 deg C).
 7. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.
- E. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. General Eastern Instruments.
 - c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
 - e. TCS/Basys Controls.
 - f. Vaisala.
 2. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
 - b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
 - c. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg (0 to 62 Pa).
 - d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa).
3. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig (1034-kPa) operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
 4. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig (1034-kPa) operating pressure and tested to 300-psig (2070-kPa); linear output 4 to 20 mA.
 5. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
 6. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
- F. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
- a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
 - b. Set-Point Indication: Exposed.
 - c. Thermometer: Concealed.
 - d. Color: White
 - e. Orientation: Vertical
- G. Room sensor accessories include the following:
1. Insulating Bases: For sensors located on exterior walls.
 2. Guards: Locking; heavy-duty, transparent plastic; mounted on separate base
 3. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.

2.9 STATUS SENSORS

- A. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa).
- B. Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig (55 to 414 kPa), piped across pump.
- C. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.
- D. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.
- E. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- F. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.
- G. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
- H. Water-Flow Switches: Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless-steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.

2.10 GAS DETECTION EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. B. W. Technologies.
 - 2. CEA Instruments, Inc.
 - 3. Ebtron, Inc.
 - 4. Gems Sensors Inc.
 - 5. Greystone Energy Systems Inc.
 - 6. Honeywell International Inc.; Home & Building Control.
 - 7. INTEC Controls, Inc.
 - 8. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.
 - 9. MSA Canada Inc.
 - 10. QEL/Quatrosense Environmental Limited.
 - 11. Sauter Controls Corporation.
 - 12. Sensidyne, Inc.
 - 13. TSI Incorporated.
 - 14. Vaisala.
 - 15. Vulcain Inc.
- B. Carbon Monoxide Detectors: Single or multichannel, dual-level detectors using solid-state plug-in sensors with a 3-year minimum life; suitable over a temperature range of 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C); with 2 factory-calibrated alarm levels at 50 and 100 ppm.
- C. Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F (minus 5 to plus 55 deg C) and calibrated for 0 to 2 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting.
- D. Oxygen Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state zircon cell sensing; suitable over a temperature range of minus 32 to plus 1100 deg F (0 to 593 deg C) and calibrated for 0 to 5 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting.
- E. Occupancy Sensor: Passive infrared, with time delay, daylight sensor lockout, sensitivity control, and 180-degree field of view with vertical sensing adjustment; for flush mounting.

2.11 THERMOSTATS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Erie Controls.
 2. Danfoss Inc.; Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Div.
 3. Heat-Timer Corporation.
 4. Sauter Controls Corporation.
 5. tekmar Control Systems, Inc.
 6. Theben AG - Lumilite Control Technology, Inc.
- B. Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with push-button or lever-operated fan switch.
1. Label switches "FAN ON-OFF".
 2. Mount on single electric switch box.
- C. Electric, solid-state, microcomputer-based room thermostat with remote sensor.
1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
 2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
 3. Set up for four separate temperatures per day.
 4. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from 1 hour to 31 days.
 5. Short-cycle protection.
 6. Programming based on every day of week.
 7. Selection features include degree F or degree C display, 12- or 24-hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, and fan on-auto.
 8. Battery replacement without program loss.
 9. Thermostat display features include the following:
 - a. Time of day.
 - b. Actual room temperature.
 - c. Programmed temperature.
 - d. Programmed time.
 - e. Duration of timed override.
 - f. Day of week.
 - g. System mode indications include "heating," "off," "fan auto," and "fan on."
- D. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.
- E. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.
1. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
 2. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.

- F. Remote-Bulb Thermostats: On-off or modulating type, liquid filled to compensate for changes in ambient temperature; with copper capillary and bulb, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Bulbs in water lines with separate wells of same material as bulb.
 2. Bulbs in air ducts with flanges and shields.
 3. Averaging Elements: Copper tubing with either single- or multiple-unit elements, extended to cover full width of duct or unit; adequately supported.
 4. Scale settings and differential settings are clearly visible and adjustable from front of instrument.
 5. On-Off Thermostat: With precision snap switches and with electrical ratings required by application.
 6. Modulating Thermostats: Construct so complete potentiometer coil and wiper assembly is removable for inspection or replacement without disturbing calibration of instrument.
- G. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual or automatic-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or below set point.
1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet (6 m).
 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. (2 sq. m) of coil surface.
- H. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- or automatic-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or above set point.
1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet (6 m).
 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. (2 sq. m) of coil surface.
- I. Heating/Cooling Valve-Top Thermostats: Proportional acting for proportional flow, with molded-rubber diaphragm, remote-bulb liquid-filled element, direct and reverse acting at minimum shutoff pressure of 25 psig (172 kPa), and cast housing with position indicator and adjusting knob.

2.12 HUMIDISTATS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 2. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
- B. Duct-Mounting Humidistats: Electric insertion, 2-position type with adjustable, 2 percent throttling range, 20 to 80 percent operating range, and single- or double-pole contacts.

2.13 ACTUATORS

- A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
 3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
 4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
 5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
 6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
- B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
 2. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
 3. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
 - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. (86.8 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. (62 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft (49.6 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. (37.2 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm (5 to 13 m/s): Increase running torque by 1.5.
 - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm (13 to 15 m/s): Increase running torque by 2.0.
 4. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
 5. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
 6. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
 7. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24-V ac.
 8. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
 9. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
 10. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 50 deg C).

11. Temperature Rating (Smoke Dampers): Minus 22 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 121 deg C).

2.14 CONTROL VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Danfoss Inc.; Air Conditioning & Refrigeration Div.
2. Erie Controls.
3. Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
4. Magnatrol Valve Corporation.
5. Neles-Jamesbury.
6. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Skinner Valve Division.
7. Pneuline Controls.
8. Sauter Controls Corporation.

B. Control Valves: Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Hydronic system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:

1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Class 125 bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Class 125 iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
3. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and stainless-steel or brass seats.
 - a. Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom.
 - b. Double-Seated Valves: Balanced plug; cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plugs on top and bottom.
4. Sizing: 3-psig (21-kPa) maximum pressure drop at design flow rate or the following:
 - a. Two Position: Line size.
 - b. Two-Way Modulating: Either the value specified above or twice the load pressure drop, whichever is more.
 - c. Three-Way Modulating: Twice the load pressure drop, but not more than value specified above.
5. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.
6. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator and trim shall provide minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of total system (pump) head for two-way valves and 100 percent of pressure differential across valve or 100 percent of total system (pump) head.

D. Self-Contained Control Valves: Bronze body, bronze trim, two or three ports as indicated, replaceable plugs and seats, and union and threaded ends.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Rating: Class 125 for service at 125 psig (860 kPa) and 250 deg F (121 deg C) operating conditions.
2. Thermostatic Operator: Liquid-filled remote sensor with remote adjustable dial.

2.15 DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Air Balance Inc.
2. Don Park Inc.; Autodamp Div.
3. TAMCO (T. A. Morrison & Co. Inc.).
4. United Enertech Corp.
5. Vent Products Company, Inc.

B. Dampers: AMCA-rated, opposed-blade design; 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches (200 mm) and length of 48 inches (1220 mm).

1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
3. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.
4. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. (50 L/s per sq. m) of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf (5.6 N x m); when tested according to AMCA 500D.

2.16 CONTROL CABLE

- A. Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that conditioned power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.
- B. Verify that pneumatic piping and duct-, pipe-, and equipment-mounted devices are installed before proceeding with installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.
- B. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.
- C. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 60 inches (1530 mm) above the floor.
 - 1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.
- D. Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:
 - 1. Entrances.
 - 2. Public areas.
 - 3. Where indicated.
- E. Install automatic dampers according to Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- F. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
- G. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- H. Install hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."
- I. Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping."
- J. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 23 Sections specifying air ducts.
- K. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.3 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install building wire and cable according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Install signal and communication cable according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
 2. Install exposed cable in raceway.
 3. Install concealed cable in raceway.
 4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
 5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
 6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
 7. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.
- E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 3. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 4. Pressure test control air piping at 30 psig (207 kPa) or 1.5 times the operating pressure for 24 hours, with maximum 5-psig (35-kPa) loss.
 5. Pressure test high-pressure control air piping at 150 psig (1034 kPa) and low-pressure control air piping at 30 psig (207 kPa) for 2 hours, with maximum 1-psig (7-kPa) loss.
 6. Test calibration of electronic controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
 7. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
 8. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
 9. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
 10. Test software and hardware interlocks.
- C. DDC Verification:
1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
 4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
 5. Check installation of air supply for each instrument.
 6. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
 7. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
 8. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
 9. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
 10. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
 11. Check DDC system as follows:
 - a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
 - b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
 - c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
 - d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.
- D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.
2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
 - a. Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
 - b. Check analog outputs using milliamper meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
 - c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
 - d. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
 - e. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
5. Flow:
 - a. Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.
 - b. Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.
6. Pressure:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
 - b. Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.
7. Temperature:
- a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
 - b. Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.
8. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
9. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.
10. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.
11. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- 3.6 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 230900

SECTION 230993 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes control sequences for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" for control equipment and devices and for submittal requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct digital control.
- B. VAV: Variable air volume.

1.4 HEATING CONTROL SEQUENCES

- A. Control Primary Circulating Pump(s):
 - 1. Input Device: DDC system.
 - 2. Output Device: DDC system command to starter relay.
 - 3. Action: Energize pump(s) when called for by the DDC system/
 - 4. Display:
 - a. Outdoor-air temperature.
 - b. Operating status of primary circulating pump(s).

1.5 AIR-HANDLING-UNIT CONTROL SEQUENCES

- A. Start and Stop Supply Fan(s):
 - 1. Enable: Freeze Protection:
 - a. Input Device: Duct-mounted averaging element thermostat, located before supply fan.

- b. Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; DDC system alarm.
 - c. Action: Allow start if duct temperature is above 37 deg F (3 deg C); signal alarm if fan fails to start as commanded.
2. Enable: High-Temperature Protection:
- a. Input Device: Duct-mounted thermostat, located in return air.
 - b. Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; DDC system alarm.
 - c. Action: Allow start if duct temperature is below 300 deg F (150 deg C).
3. Enable: Smoke Control:
- a. Input Device: Duct-mounted smoke detector, located in return and supply air.
 - b. Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; DDC system alarm.
 - c. Action: Allow start if duct is free of products of combustion.
4. Initiate: Occupied Time Schedule:
- a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output to motor starter.
 - c. Action: Energize fan(s).
5. Initiate: Unoccupied Time Schedule:
- a. Input Device: DDC system demand.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output to motor starter.
 - c. Action: Energize fan(s).
6. Unoccupied Ventilation:
- a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule and output.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system binary output to motor starter.
 - c. Action: Cycle fan(s) during unoccupied periods.
7. Display: Supply-fan on-off indication.
- B. Start and Stop Return Fan(s):
1. Initiate: Occupied Time Schedule:
- a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output to motor starter.
 - c. Action: Energize fans when supply fans are energized.
2. Initiate: Unoccupied Time Schedule:
- a. Input Device: DDC system demand.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output to motor starter.
 - c. Action: Energize fans when supply fans are energized.

3. Unoccupied Ventilation:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule and output.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system binary output to motor starter.
 - c. Action: Cycle fan(s) during unoccupied periods.
 4. Display: Return-fan on-off indication.
- C. Mixed-Air Control:
1. Occupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system output.
 - c. Action: Enable control.
 2. Minimum Position:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system analog output to modulating damper actuator(s).
 - c. Action: Outdoor-air dampers to minimum position.
 3. Heating Reset:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system software.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system analog output to modulating damper actuator(s).
 - c. Action: Set outdoor-air dampers to minimum position.
 4. Cooling Reset:
 - a. Input Device: Outdoor- and return-air, duct-mounted thermostats.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system analog output to damper actuator(s).
 - c. Action: Set outdoor-air dampers to minimum position when outdoor-air enthalpy exceeds return-air enthalpy
 5. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system analog output to modulating damper actuator(s).
 - c. Action: Position outdoor- and relief-air dampers closed and return-air dampers open.
 6. Display:
 - a. Mixed-air-temperature indication.
 - b. Mixed-air-temperature set point.
 - c. Mixed-air damper position.
- D. Filters: During occupied periods, when fan is running, differential air-pressure transmitters exist.

1. Occupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system output.
 - c. Action: Enable control.
 2. Differential Pressure:
 - a. Input Device: Differential-pressure switches.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system alarm.
 - c. Action: Signal alarm on low- and high-pressure conditions.
 3. Display:
 - a. Filter air-pressure-drop indication.
 - b. Filter low-air-pressure set point.
 - c. Filter high-air-pressure set point.
- E. Hydronic Heating Coil:
1. Occupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output.
 - c. Action: Enable control.
 2. Discharge-Air Temperature:
 - a. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.
 - b. Output Device: Normally open modulating control valve.
 - c. Action: Maintain supply-air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).
 3. Temperature Reset:
 - a. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor in return air.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system in straight-line relationship for the following conditions:
 - 1) 65 deg F (18 deg C) when return-air temperature is 70 deg F (21 deg C).
 - c. Action: Reset supply-air temperature set point of 110 deg F.
 4. Temperature Reset:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system with input from room temperature sensors.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system.
 - c. Action: Reset supply-air temperature in response to greatest heating demand.
 5. Unoccupied Time Schedule:

- a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule and output.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system binary output.
 - c. Action: Enable normal control when fan is cycled on.
6. Display:
- a. Fan-discharge air-temperature indication.
 - b. Fan-discharge air-temperature set point.
 - c. Heating-coil air-temperature indication.
 - d. Heating-coil air-temperature set point.
 - e. Heating-coil control-valve position.
- F. Re-Heat Coil:
1. Occupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output.
 - c. Action: Enable control.
 2. Discharge-Air Temperature:
 - a. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.
 3. Temperature Reset:
 - a. Input Device: Electronic temperature and humidity sensor in return air.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system in straight-line relationship for the following conditions:
 - 1) 65 deg F (18 deg C) when return-air temperature is 70 deg F (21 deg C).
 - c. Action: Reset supply-air temperature set point of 65 deg F.
 4. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule and output.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system binary output.
 - c. Action: Enable normal control when fan is cycled on.
 5. Display:
 - a. Fan-discharge air-temperature indication.
 - b. Fan-discharge air-temperature set point.
 - c. Re-Heat coil air-temperature indication.
 - d. Re-Heat coil air-temperature set point.
 - e. Re-Heat coil control-valve position.
- G. Hydronic Cooling Coil:

1. Occupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output.
 - c. Action: Enable control.
2. Discharge-Air Temperature:
 - a. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.
 - b. Output Device: Normally open modulating control valve.
3. Temperature Reset:
 - a. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor in return air.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system in straight-line relationship for the following conditions:
 - 1) 65 deg F (18 deg C) when return-air temperature is 70 deg F (21 deg C).
 - c. Action: Reset supply-air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).
4. Temperature Reset:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system with input from room temperature sensors.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system.
 - c. Action: Reset supply-air temperature in response to greatest heating demand.
5. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
 - a. Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
 - b. Output Device: Binary output.
 - c. Action: Disable control.
6. Display:
 - a. Fan-discharge air-temperature indication.
 - b. Fan-discharge air-temperature set point.
 - c. Cooling-coil air-temperature indication.
 - d. Cooling-coil air-temperature set point.
 - e. Cooling-coil control-valve position.
 - f. Cold-deck air-temperature indication.
 - g. Cold-deck air-temperature set point.
- H. Coordination of Air-Handling Unit Sequences: Ensure that mixed-air, heating-coil, re-heat coil and cooling-coil controls have common inputs and do not overlap in function.
- I. Operator Station Display: Indicate the following on operator workstation display terminal:
 1. DDC system graphic.
 2. DDC system on-off indication.

3. DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
4. Outdoor-air-temperature indication.
5. Supply-fan on-off indication.
6. Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure indication.
7. Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure set point.
8. Supply-fan airflow rate.
9. Supply-fan speed.
10. Return-fan on-off indication.
11. Return-air static-pressure indication.
12. Return-air static-pressure set point.
13. Return-fan airflow rate.
14. Return-fan speed.
15. Building static-pressure indication.
16. Building static-pressure set point.
17. Mixed-air-temperature indication.
18. Mixed-air-temperature set point.
19. Mixed-air damper position.
20. Filter air-pressure-drop indication.
21. Filter low-air-pressure set point.
22. Filter high-air-pressure set point.
23. Fan-discharge air-temperature indication.
24. Fan-discharge air-temperature set point.
25. Heating-coil air-temperature indication.
26. Heating-coil air-temperature set point.
27. Heating-coil control-valve position.
28. Re-Heat coil air-temperature indication.
29. Re-Heat coil air-temperature set point.
30. Re-Heat coil control-valve position.
31. Cooling-coil air-temperature indication.
32. Cooling-coil air-temperature set point.
33. Cooling-coil control-valve position.
34. Room temperature indication.
35. Room temperature set point.

1.6 TERMINAL UNIT OPERATING SEQUENCE

A. Unit Heater, Hydronic:

1. Room Temperature:
 - a. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.
 - b. Output Device: DDC system binary output.
 - c. Action: Cycle fan to maintain temperature.
2. Low-Temperature Safety:
 - a. Input Device: Line-voltage, on-off thermostat, pipe mounted.
 - b. Output Device: Hard wired.

- c. Action: Stop fan when return heating-water temperature falls below 35 deg F (2 deg C).
- 3. Display:
 - a. Room temperature indication.
 - b. Room temperature set point.
- B. Unit Heater, Electric: Room thermostat cycles fan and sequences stages of heating.

1.7 VENTILATION SEQUENCES

- A. Exhaust Fan: DDC system schedules fan operation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GRAPHIC DISPLAY

- A. Provide graphic displays for each system, (boilers, pumps, etc.) as applicable to the system type. All setpoints shall be capable of being adjusted by the user. The controls contractor shall provide all necessary controllers, sensors, etc.
 - 1. System graphic.
 - 2. System on/off indication.
 - 3. System day/night mode.
 - 4. Primary pump on/off indication.
 - 5. Secondary or standby pump on/off indication.
 - 6. Outside air temperature indication.

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping.
4. Condenser-water piping.
5. Glycol cooling-water piping.
6. Makeup-water piping.
7. Condensate-drain piping.
8. Blowdown-drain piping.
9. Air-vent piping.
10. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 125 psig at 200 deg F (93 deg C)
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 125 psig at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F (66 deg C).
5. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C)
6. Air-Vent Piping: Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
7. Safety-Valve Inlet and Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
 - 2. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
 - 3. Pressure-seal fittings.
 - 4. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
 - 5. Air control devices.
 - 6. Chemical treatment.
 - 7. Hydronic specialties.
- B. LEED Submittal:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 (1:50) scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by the pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
 - 2. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by the manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.
- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

- D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Water-Treatment Chemicals: Furnish enough chemicals for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

- B. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Stadler-Viega.
 - 2. Housing: Copper.
 - 3. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
 - 4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
 - 5. Minimum 200-psig (1379-kPa) working-pressure rating at 250 deg F (121 deg C).

- F. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Central Sprinkler Company; a division of Tyco Fire & Building Products.
 - c. National Fittings, Inc.
 - d. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
 - e. Victaulic Company of America.
 - 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
- I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Victaulic Company of America.
 - 4. Housing: Steel.
 - 5. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
 - 6. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
 - 7. Minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) working-pressure rating at 230 deg F (110 deg C).
- J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
- 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; AquaSpec Commercial Products Division.
2. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).

D. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

E. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
3. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

F. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - 2. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- G. Dielectric Nipples:
- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Company of America.
 - 2. Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

2.5 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
- C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
 - c. Flow Design Inc.
 - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - e. Griswold Controls.
 - f. Taco.
 - 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 - 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 - 4. Plug: Resin.
 - 5. Seat: PTFE.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 - 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 - 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 - 9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
 - c. Flow Design Inc.
 - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - e. Griswold Controls.
 - f. Taco.
 - g. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company of America.
2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
 - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: Stainless Steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

F. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
 - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: Stainless Steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

G. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flow Design Inc.
 - b. Griswold Controls.
2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C).

2.6 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Amtrol, Inc.
 2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
 4. Taco.
- B. Manual Air Vents:
1. Body: Bronze.
 2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
 3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
 4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
 5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
 6. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- C. Automatic Air Vents:
1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
 2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
 3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
 4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
 5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
 6. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
- D. Expansion Tanks:
1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested with taps fabricated and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 2. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. (379-L) unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
 3. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 240 deg F (116 deg C) maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
 4. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- (20-mm) diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.
- E. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:
1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports

installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

2. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

F. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).

G. Air Purgers:

1. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

2.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 5-gal. (19-L) capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.

1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

B. Ethylene and Propylene Glycol: Industrial grade with corrosion inhibitors and environmental-stabilizer additives for mixing with water in systems indicated to contain antifreeze or glycol solutions.

2.8 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

B. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.

3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
 4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- C. Expansion fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.
- D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- E. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- F. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- G. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
- H. Air-Vent Piping:
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- I. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-

plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).
- T. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."
- U. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 - 2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 6. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 7. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - 8. NPS 6 (DN 150): Maximum span, 17 feet (5.2 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - 9. NPS 8 (DN 200): Maximum span, 19 feet (5.8 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
 - 10. NPS 10 (DN 250): Maximum span, 20 feet (6.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (19 mm).
 - 11. NPS 12 (DN 300): Maximum span, 23 feet (7 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (22 mm).
 - 12. NPS 14 (DN 350): Maximum span, 25 feet (7.6 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
 - 13. NPS 16 (DN 400): Maximum span, 27 feet (8.2 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
 - 14. NPS 18 (DN 450): Maximum span, 28 feet (8.5 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
 - 15. NPS 20 (DN 500): Maximum span, 30 feet (9.1 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
- E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 6. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- F. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- G. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- H. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
- K. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
- L. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- F. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- G. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
 - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.

2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- H. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
 1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
 2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
 3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum 100 ppm. Modify this value if closed system contains glycol.
 5. Corrosion Inhibitor:
 - a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
 - b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
 - e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
 6. Soluble Copper: Maximum 0.20 ppm.
 7. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum 10 ppm.
 8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum 10 ppm.
 9. Ammonia: Maximum 20 ppm.
 10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum 20 ppm.
 11. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum 1000 organisms/ml.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum 100 organisms/ml.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/ml.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
- B. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- C. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.
- D. Fill systems indicated to have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:
- 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: Minimum 30 percent propylene glycol.
 - 2. Chilled-Water Piping: Minimum 30 percent propylene glycol.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
- 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
- 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 - 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 - 6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of hydronic pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.
- B. Store pumps in dry location.
- C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.
- D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.
- E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
3. Bell & Gossett; Div. of ITT Industries.
4. Burks Pumps; Div. of Crane Pumps & Systems.
5. Demming Div.; Crane Co.
6. Flowserve Corporation; Div. of Ingersoll-Dresser Pumps.
7. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
8. Little Giant Pump Co.; Subsidiary of Tecumseh Products Co.
9. MEPCO (Marshall Engineered Products Co.).
10. PACO Pumps.
11. Patterson Pump Co.; a Subsidiary of The Gorman-Rupp Co.
12. Peerless Pump; a Member of the Sterling Fluid Systems Group.
13. Taco, Inc.
14. Thrush Company Inc.
15. Weinman; Div. of Crane Pumps & Systems.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C).

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
6. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

D. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and rigidly mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.3 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Manufacturers:

1. American-Marsh Pumps.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
3. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
4. Bell & Gossett; Div. of ITT Industries.
5. Buffalo Pumps, Inc.; an Ampco Pittsburgh Co.
6. Burks Pumps; Div. of Crane Pumps & Systems.
7. Deming Pumps; Div. of Crane Pumps & Systems.
8. Flowserve Corporation; Div. of Ingersoll-Dresser Pumps.
9. Goulds Pumps; Water Technologies Group.
10. Lancaster Pump.
11. MEPCO (Marshall Engineered Products Co.).
12. PACO Pumps.
13. Patterson Pump Co.; a Subsidiary of The Gorman-Rupp Co.
14. Peerless Pump; a Member of the Sterling Fluid Systems Group.
15. Scot Pump; Div. of Ardox Corp.
16. Taco, Inc.
17. Thrush Company Inc.
18. Weinman; Div. of Crane Pumps & Systems.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C).

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
6. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; rigidly mounted to pump casing with integral pump support. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.4 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser: Angle pattern, 175-psig (1204-kPa) pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory-fabricated support.
- B. Triple-Duty Valve: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig (1204-kPa) pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting; with drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features. Brass gage ports with integral check valve, and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for pumps and controllers. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."
 - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
 - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- B. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.3 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- E. Suspend vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps independent of piping. Install pumps with motor and pump shafts vertical. Use continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

with vertical-limit stop of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 21 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment." Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment/Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- F. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment procedure is complete.
 - 1. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm) between pump base and foundation for grouting.
 - 2. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.
- G. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

3.4 ALIGNMENT

- A. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.
- B. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- C. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.
- F. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge, at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- J. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.
- K. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- L. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.
 - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 23 2123

SECTION 232500 - HVAC WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:
 - 1. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls.
 - 2. Chemical treatment test equipment.
 - 3. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EEPROM: Electrically erasable, programmable read-only memory.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- D. TDS: Total dissolved solids.
- E. UV: Ultraviolet.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating and chilled water, shall have the following water qualities:
 - 1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
6. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
9. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.

D. Steam Boiler and Steam Condensate:

1. Steam Condensate:
 - a. pH: Maintain a value within 7.8 to 8.4.
 - b. Total Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 5 to 50 ppm.
 - c. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 15 ppm.
 - d. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
 - e. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
 - f. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 - g. Total Hardness: Maintain a maximum value of 2 ppm.
2. Steam boiler operating at 15 psig (104 kPa) and less shall have the following water qualities:
 - a. "OH" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 200 to 400 ppm.
 - b. TDS: Maintain a value within 600 to 3000 ppm.
3. Steam boiler operating at more than 15 psig (104 kPa) shall have the following water qualities:
 - a. "OH" Alkalinity: 200 to 400 ppm.
 - b. TDS: Maintain a value within 600 to 1200 ppm to maximum 30 times RO water TDS.

E. Passivation for Galvanized Steel: For the first 60 days of operation.

1. pH: Maintain a value within 7 to 8.
2. Calcium Carbonate Hardness: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.
3. Calcium Carbonate Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for the following products:
1. Bypass feeders.
 2. Water meters.
 3. Inhibitor injection timers.
 4. pH controllers.
 5. TDS controllers.
 6. Biocide feeder timers.
 7. Chemical solution tanks.
 8. Injection pumps.
 9. Ozone generators.
 10. UV-irradiation units.
 11. Chemical test equipment.
 12. Chemical material safety data sheets.
 13. Water softeners.
 14. RO units.
 15. Multimedia filters.
 16. Self-cleaning strainers.
 17. Bag- or cartridge-type filters.
 18. Centrifugal separators.
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- E. Other Informational Submittals:
1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.
 2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
 3. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion, scale formation, and biological growth for cooling, chilled-water piping, heating, hot-water piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion, and shall include the following:
 - 1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
 - 2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
 - 3. Periodic field service and consultation.
 - 4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
 - 5. Laboratory technical analysis.
 - 6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Ampion Corp.
 - 2. Anderson Chemical Co, Inc.
 - 3. Aqua-Chem, Inc.; Cleaver-Brooks Div.
 - 4. Barclay Chemical Co.; Water Management, Inc.
 - 5. Boland Trane Services
 - 6. GE Betz.
 - 7. GE Osmonics.
 - 8. H-O-H Chemicals, Inc.
 - 9. Metro Group. Inc. (The); Metropolitan Refining Div.
 - 10. ONDEO Nalco Company.
 - 11. Watcon, Inc.

2.2 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.

1. Capacity: 5 gal. (19 L).
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig (860 kPa).

2.3 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ASTM A 269, Type 316.
- B. Stainless-Steel Fittings: Complying with ASTM A 815/A 815M, Type 316, Grade WP-S.
- C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Stainless-Steel Ball Valves: ASTM A 351, Type 316 stainless-steel body; ASTM A 276, Type 316 stainless-steel stem and vented ball, carbon-filled TFE seats, threaded body design with adjustable stem packing, threaded ends, and 250-psig (1725-kPa) SWP and 600-psig (4140-kPa) CWP ratings.
- D. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Stainless-Steel Ball Valves: ASTM A 351, Type 316 stainless-steel body; ASTM A 276, Type 316 stainless-steel stem and vented ball, threaded body design with adjustable stem packing, threaded ends, and 150-psig (1035-kPa) SWP and 600-psig (4140-kPa) CWP rating.

2.4 CHEMICAL TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TDS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers, and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.
- B. Sample Cooler:
 1. Tube: Sample.
 - a. Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) tubing.
 - b. Material: ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
 - c. Pressure Rating: Minimum 2000 psig (13 790 kPa).
 - d. Temperature Rating: Minimum 850 deg F (454 deg C).
 2. Shell: Cooling water.
 - a. Material: ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel.
 - b. Pressure Rating: Minimum 250 psig (1725 kPa).
 - c. Temperature Rating: Minimum 450 deg F (232 deg C).
 3. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. Tube: Sample.
 - 1) Flow Rate: 0.25 gpm (0.016 L/s).
 - 2) Entering Temperature: 400 deg F (204 deg C).
 - 3) Leaving Temperature: 88 deg F (31 deg C).
 - 4) Pressure Loss: 6.5 psig (44.8 kPa).

- b. Shell: Cooling water.
 - 1) Flow Rate: 3 gpm (0.19 L/s).
 - 2) Entering Temperature: 70 deg F (21 deg C).
 - 3) Pressure Loss: 1.0 psig (6.89 kPa).

C. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.

- 1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.

2.5 CHEMICALS

A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

B. Water Softener Chemicals:

- 1. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. (69 kg/cu. m) of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb (6.8 kg) of salt.
- 2. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.

B. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for seismic restraints.

C. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.

D. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.

- E. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- F. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating and chilled water equipped with the following:
 - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
 - 3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
 - 5. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup water connections to potable-water systems.
- F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in Division 26 Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- G. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Sample boiler water at one-week intervals after boiler startup for a period of five weeks, and prepare test report advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article for each required characteristic. Sample boiler water at four-week intervals following the testing noted above to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section.
- F. At four-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
- G. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
 2. Steam System: ASTM D 1066.
 3. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
 4. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
 5. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."
- B. Training: Provide a "how-to-use" self-contained breathing apparatus video that details exact operating procedures of equipment.

END OF SECTION 23 2500

SECTION 233113 – METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
4. Sheet metal materials.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, structural steel, mechanical equipment, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.

E. Field quality-control reports

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Lindab Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. SEMCO Incorporated.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

B. GENERAL

1. All round supply, return and exhaust ductwork shall be by the manufacturer. The duct system shall consist of fittings that are factory fitted with a sealing gasket and spiral duct which, when installed according to the manufacturer's instructions, will seal the duct joints without the use of duct sealer.
2. The contractor may, with the approval of the engineer, convert select rectangular ductwork to round provided that the project space limitations are properly addressed and that the overall system design static pressure not be exceeded.

C. MATERIALS

1. Unless otherwise noted, all duct and fittings shall be G-90 galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A-653 and A-924.
2. When specified on contract documents, stainless steel type 304 or type 316 in accordance with ASTM A-240 shall be provided.

D. CONSTRUCTION

1. Unless otherwise noted, all duct and fittings shall be constructed per SMACNA's Duct Construction Standards (+10 in W.G.) shown in the following table:

Diameter (inches)	Galvanized Fittings
3-14	24
16-26	22
28-36	20
38-50	20

2. FITTINGS:
 - a. All fitting ends shall come factory equipped with a double lipped, U-profile, EPDM rubber gasket. Gasket shall be manufactured to gauge and flexibility so as to insure that system will meet all of the performance criteria set forth in the manufacturer's literature. Gasket shall be classified by an internationally recognized laboratory authority to conform to ASTM E84-91a and NFPA 90A flame spread and smoke developed ratings of 25/50.
 - b. All fitting ends shall be calibrated to manufacturer's published dimensional tolerance standard and associated spiral duct.
 - c. All fitting ends from 3" to 24" Dia. shall have rolled over edges for added strength and rigidity.
 - d. All elbows from 3" to 12" Dia. Shall be 2 piece die stamped and continuously stitch welded. All elbows 14" Dia. And larger shall be standing seam gorelock construction and internally sealed.

- e. The radius of all 90° and 45° elbows shall be 1.5 times the elbow diameter, unless otherwise noted on the contract documents to be 1.0 times the elbow diameter. The radius of all 15°, 30° and 60° elbows shall be 1.0 times the elbow diameter.
- f. All fittings that are of either spot-welded or button punched construction shall be internally sealed. When contract documents require divided flow fittings, only full body fittings will be accepted. The use of duct taps is unacceptable except for retrofit installations.
- g. All volume dampers shall be by the spiral duct manufacturer. Damper shall be fitting sized to slip into spiral duct. Damper shall have the following features:
 - (1) Locking quadrant with blade position indicator
 - (2) 2" sheet metal insulation stand-off
 - (3) Integral shaft/blade assembly
 - (4) Shaft mounted, load bearing bushings
 - (5) Gasketed shaft penetrations to minimize leakage

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Factory Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
 - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
 - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
 - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: White.
 - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 2. Tape Width: 3 inches (76 mm).
 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.

5. Use: O.
 6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 (Table 4-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- D. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure and seal classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class A.
 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.
 6. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 7. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 8. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower:
 - a. Exposed: Seal Class A.
 - b. Concealed: Seal Class C.
 9. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 10. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts:
 - a. Exposed: Seal Class B.
 - b. Concealed: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 (Table 4-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).

- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Coordinate cleaning with Section 230130.

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct systems before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 4. Coils and related components.
 5. Energy recovery wheels.
 6. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 7. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 8. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
 5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
 6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
 7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
- B. Supply Ducts:
 - 1. All Systems:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
- C. Return Ducts:
 - 1. All Systems:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
 - 1. General Exhaust Ductwork:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
- E. Outdoor-Air Ducts:
 - 1. All Systems :
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
- G. Liner:
 - 1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 2 inches (51 mm) thick.
- H. Elbow Configuration:
 - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vaness and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
- a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
- I. Branch Configuration:
- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
 - 2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23311

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Fire dampers.
4. Smoke dampers.
5. Flange connectors.
6. Turning vanes.
7. Remote damper operators.
8. Duct-mounted access doors.
9. Flexible connectors.
10. Flexible ducts.
11. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
2. Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control damper installations.
 - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
 - e. Duct security bars.
 - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 4. Ruskin Company.
 5. SEMCO Incorporated.
 6. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm (10 m/s).
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg (0.25 kPa).
- E. Frame: 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick extruded aluminum with welded corners..
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
1. Material: Stainless steel.

2. Diameter: 0.20 inch (5 mm).
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 3. Electric actuators.
 4. Chain pulls.
 5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
 - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20-gage (1.0-mm) minimum.
 - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches (152 mm) minimum.
 6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
 7. Screen Material: Aluminum.
 8. Screen Type: Insect.
 9. 90-degree stops.

2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. Trox USA Inc.
 - g. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 2. Standard leakage rating.
 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 4. Frames:
 - a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 0.064-inch (1.62-mm) minimum thickness.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 7. Bearings:
 - a. Molded synthetic.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. Trox USA Inc.
 - g. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 2. Standard leakage rating.
 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
 - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
 6. Blade Axles: Nonferrous metal.
 7. Bearings:
 - a. Molded synthetic.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- C. Jackshaft:
 - 1. Size: 1-inch (25-mm) diameter.
 - 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
 - 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- D. Damper Hardware:
 - 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch (19-mm) hexagon locking nut.
 - 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
 - 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.4 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - 2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 8. Ruskin Company.
 - 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 - 10. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum 4000-fpm (20-m/s) velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Frame: Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch (1.3 or 3.5 mm) thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

2.5 SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
 5. PHL, Inc.
 6. Ruskin Company.
 7. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.
- B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- D. Frame: **[Curtain type with blades inside airstream] [Curtain type with blades outside airstream] [Multiple-blade type] [Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream]**; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- F. Leakage: **[Class I] [Class II] <Insert class>**.
- G. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- H. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application[**with factory-furnished silicone calking**].
- I. Damper Motors: [**Modulating**] [**or**] [**two-position**] action.
- J. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in [**Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."**] [**Division 26 Sections.**]
 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m).
 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).
 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m), size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf (34 N x m).
 7. Electrical Connection: [**115 V, single phase, 60 Hz**] <Insert values>.
- K. Accessories:
1. Auxiliary switches for [**signaling**] [**fan control**] [**or**] [**position indication**].
 2. [**Momentary test switch**] [**Test and reset switches**], [**damper**] [**remote**] mounted.

2.6 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 4. <Insert manufacturer's name>.
- B. Description: [**Add-on**] [**or**] [**roll-formed**], factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.

- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
 4. SEMCO Incorporated.
 5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 6. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: [**Single**] [**Double**] wall.
- F. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to [**48 inches (1200 mm)**] **<Insert dimension>** wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.8 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:
1. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
 2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 3. Young Regulator Company.
 4. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.
- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Brass.

- D. Cable: Stainless steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: [**Recessed, 3/4 inches (19 mm) deep**] [**Recessed, 2 inches (50 mm) deep**] [**Surface**].
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: [**Steel**] [**Stainless steel**].

2.9 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:

- 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
- 2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
- 3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
- 4. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
- 5. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- 6. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- 7. Nailor Industries Inc.
- 8. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
- 9. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- 10. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- 11. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.

- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."

- 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches (460 mm) Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Three hinges and two compression latches[**with outside and inside handles**].
 - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

C. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: [**Single wall**] [**Double wall with insulation fill**] with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at [**10-inch wg (2500 Pa)**] <Insert value>.
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.10 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Flame Gard, Inc.
3. 3M.
4. <Insert manufacturer's name>.

B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness [**0.0528-inch (1.3-mm) carbon**] [**0.0428-inch (1.1-mm) stainless**] steel.

D. Fasteners: [**Carbon**] [**Stainless**] steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F (1093 deg C).

F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.

2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
5. <Insert manufacturer's name>.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip [**3-1/2 inches (89 mm)**] [**5-3/4 inches (146 mm)**] wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd. (810 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Minimum Tensile Strength: 500 lbf/inch (88 N/mm) in the warp and 440 lbf/inch (77 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 45 to plus 121 deg C).
- G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd. (542 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch (50 N/mm) in the warp and 185 lbf/inch (32 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).
- H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd. (474 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch (79 N/mm) in the warp and 340 lbf/inch (60 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).
- I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.

5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement at start and stop.

2.12 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 4. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.
- B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
- C. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
- D. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- E. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- F. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil.
1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 435 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 224 deg C).
- G. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; **[polyethylene] [aluminized]** vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-value: **[Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004] <Insert value>**.
- H. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; **[polyethylene] [aluminized]** vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-Value: **[Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004] <Insert value>**.
- I. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; **[polyethylene] [aluminized]** vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-value: **[Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004] <Insert value>**.
- J. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; **[polyethylene] [aluminized]** vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-value: **[Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004] <Insert value>**.
- K. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; **[polyethylene] [aluminized]** vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 121 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-value: **[Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004] <Insert value>**.
- L. Flexible Duct Connectors:
1. Clamps: **[Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action] [Nylon strap]** in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.

2. Non-Clamp Connectors: [**Adhesive**] [**Liquid adhesive plus tape**] [**Adhesive plus sheet metal screws**].

2.13 DUCT SECURITY BARS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [**provide products by one of the following**] [**available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following**]:
 1. Carnes.
 2. KEES, Inc.
 3. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
 4. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
 5. Price Industries.
 6. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**.
- B. Description: [**Field-fabricated**] [**Factory-fabricated and field-installed**] [**Field- or factory-fabricated and field-installed**] duct security bars.
- C. Configuration:
 1. Frame: [**10 gage by 2 inches (3.57 mm by 50 mm)**] **<Insert values>**.
 2. Sleeve: [**3/16-inch (4.8-mm)**] **<Insert size>**, [**continuously welded**] [**bent**] steel frames with [**1-by-1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-25-by-4.8-mm)**] **<Insert size>** angle frame [**factory welded to 1 end**] [**furnished loose for field welding on other end**]. To be poured in place or set with concrete block or welded or bolted to wall, one side only. Duct connections on both sides.
 3. Horizontal Bars: [**1/2 inch (13 mm)**] [**2 by 1/4 inch (50 by 6 mm)**] **<Insert values>**.
 4. Vertical Bars: [**1/2 inch (13 mm)**] [**3/4 inch (19 mm)**] [**1 inch (25 mm)**] **<Insert value>**.
 5. Bar Spacing: [**6 inches (150 mm)**] **<Insert value>**.
 6. Mounting: [**Metal deck or roofing**] [**Bolted or welded**] [**Bolted or welded with masonry anchors**] [**Ductwork or other framing**] [**Poured in place or set with concrete block**] [**Welded or bolted to one wall (one side only)**] [**Bar extends 6 inches (150 mm) into wall**].

2.14 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install [**backdraft**] [**control**] dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire[**and smoke**] dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct security bars. Construct duct security bars from 0.164-inch (4.18-mm) steel sleeve, continuously welded at all joints and 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter steel bars, 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. in each direction in center of sleeve. Weld each bar to steel sleeve and each crossing bar. Weld 2-1/2-by-2-1/2-by-1/4-inch (63-by-63-by-6-mm) steel angle to 4 sides and both ends of sleeve. Connect duct security bars to ducts with flexible connections. Provide 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) hinged access panel with cam lock in duct in each side of sleeve.
- I. Connect ducts to duct silencers [**with flexible duct connectors**] [**rigidly**].
- J. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream[**and downstream**] from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot (15-m) spacing.
 8. Upstream[**and downstream**] from turning vanes.
 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
 11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- K. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- L. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).
- M. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- N. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- O. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg (1250 Pa) and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- P. Connect terminal units to supply ducts[**directly or**] with maximum [**12-inch (300-mm)**]~~<Insert value>~~ lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- Q. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts[**directly or**] with maximum [**60-inch (1500-mm)**]~~<Insert value>~~ lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- R. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with [**adhesive**] [**liquid adhesive plus tape**] [**draw bands**] [**adhesive plus sheet metal screws**].
- S. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- T. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
 - 2. Centrifugal wall ventilators.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
 - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
 - 6. Roof curbs with sound attenuation.
 - 7. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
 - 2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
 2. Carnes Company.
 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
 2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch (13-mm) mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: 18 inches (450 mm).
 3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.

4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

G. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Refer to Drawings and Schedule Sheet

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL WALL VENTILATORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
2. Carnes Company.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.

B. Housing: Heavy-gage, removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; venturi inlet cone.

C. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Belt Drives:

1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch (13-mm) mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Wall Grille: Ring type for flush mounting.
5. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in wall sleeve; factory set to close when fan stops.
6. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

F. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Refer to Drawings and Schedule Sheet.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment." All motors shall be inverter capable premium efficiency rated.
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Support units using Vibration- and seismic-control devices specified in Division 23.
- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct

connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Adjust belt tension.
 - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Coordinate testing with CxA and specification sheet 230593.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Perforated diffusers.
3. Linear slot diffusers.
4. Adjustable bar registers and grilles.
5. Fixed face registers and grilles.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 Section "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes.

C. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected.

D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.

3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 5. Duct access panels.
- E. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - c. Carnes.
 - d. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - e. Krueger.
 - f. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - g. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - h. Price Industries.
 - i. Titus.
 - j. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm).
5. Face Style: Three cone.
6. Mounting: Surface or T-bar as required.
7. Pattern: Fixed.
8. Accessories:
 - a. Equalizing grid.
 - b. Plaster ring.
 - c. Safety chain.
 - d. Wire guard.
 - e. Sectorizing baffles.
 - f. Operating rod extension.

B. Perforated Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Air Research Diffuser Products, Inc.
 - b. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - d. Carnes.
 - e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - f. Krueger.
 - g. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - h. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - i. Price Industries.
 - j. Titus.
 - k. Tuttle & Bailey.
 - l. Warren Technology.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
 3. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with aluminum face.
 4. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 5. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm) and 48 by 24 inches (1200 by 600 mm).
 6. Duct Inlet: Round and Square.
 7. Face Style: Flush.
 8. Mounting: Surface or T-bar as required.
 9. Accessories:
 - a. Equalizing grid.
 - b. Plaster ring.
 - c. Safety chain.
 - d. Wire guard.
 - e. Sectorizing baffles.
 - f. Operating rod extension.

2.2 CEILING LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS

A. Linear Slot Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Air Research Diffuser Products, Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - c. Carnes.
 - d. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - e. Krueger.
 - f. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - g. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - h. Price Industries.
 - i. Titus.
 - j. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

3. Material - Shell: Aluminum.
4. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
5. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, white.
6. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, white.
7. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, white.
8. Slot Width: As scheduled.
9. Number of Slots: As scheduled.
10. Length: As scheduled
11. Accessories: T-bar clip on both sides.

2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - c. Carnes.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - f. Krueger.
 - g. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - h. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - i. Price Industries.
 - j. Titus.
 - k. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal.
5. Core Construction: Removable.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
8. Mounting: As shown on plans.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
10. Accessories:
 - a. Front-blade gang operator.

B. Adjustable Bar Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - c. Carnes.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - f. Krueger.
 - g. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - h. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - i. Price Industries.
 - j. Titus.
 - k. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal.
 5. Core Construction: Removable.
 6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical.
 7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
 8. Mounting: As shown on plans.
 9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
- C. Fixed Face Register:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - c. Carnes.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - f. Krueger.
 - g. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - h. Price Industries.
 - i. Titus.
 - j. Tuttle & Bailey.
 2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch (13-by-13-by-13-mm) grid.
 5. Core Construction: Removable.
 6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
 7. Mounting: As shown on plans.
 8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
- D. Fixed Face Grille:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - c. Carnes.
 - d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
 - e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
 - f. Krueger.
 - g. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - h. Price Industries.
 - i. Titus.
 - j. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch (13-by-13-by-13-mm) grid.
 5. Core Construction: Removable.
 6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
 7. Mounting: As shown on plans.
 8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Louvered-penthouse ventilators.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design ventilators, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Ventilators shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of ventilator components, noise or metal fatigue caused by ventilator blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Seismic Performance: Ventilators, including attachments to other construction, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes, without buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- E. Water Entrainment: Limit water penetration through unit to comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. For louvered-penthouse ventilators specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. LEED Submittal:
 - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
- C. Shop Drawings: For gravity ventilators. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, ventilator attachments to curbs, and curb attachments to roof structure.
 - 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- F. Samples for Verification: For each type of louvered-penthouse ventilator indicated, in manufacturer's standard size.
- G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For shop-fabricated ventilators indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of shop-fabricated ventilators.
- H. Coordination Drawings: Roof framing plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Structural members to which roof curbs and ventilators will be attached.
 - 2. Sizes and locations of roof openings.
- I. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For ventilators, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- J. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, with No. 4 finish.
- E. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.
1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 2. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Factory or shop fabricate gravity ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

2.3 LOUVERED-PENTHOUSE VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Acme Engineering & Mfg. Corporation.
 - 2. Aerovent.
 - 3. Carnes.
 - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 5. JencoFan.
 - 6. Loren Cook Company.
 - 7. PennBarry.
- B. Construction: All-welded assembly with 4-inch (100-mm)-deep louvers, mitered corners, and aluminum sheet roof with mineral-fiber insulation and vapor barrier.
- C. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Extruded aluminum, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.080 inch (2.0 mm) for frames and 0.080 inch (2.0 mm) for blades with condensate deflectors.
- D. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
 - 1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height: 18 inches (450 mm).
- E. Insect Screening: Stainless-steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm) wire.
- F. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
 - 2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).

a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

G. Accessories:

1. Dampers:

a. Location: Penthouse neck.

b. Control: Motorized.

H. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. As scheduled.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.

C. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

D. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.

E. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

F. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.

G. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION 233723

SECTION 237313 - MODULAR INDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Constant-air-volume, single-zone air-handling units.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding 133 percent of internal static pressures indicated, without panel joints exceeding a deflection of L/100 where "L" is the unsupported span length within completed casings.
- C. Seismic Performance: Air-handling units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit indicated.
 - 1. Unit dimensions and weight.
 - 2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
 - 3. Fans:
 - a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Filters with performance characteristics.

B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic restraints indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

D. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Mechanical-room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
2. Support location, type, and weight.
3. Field measurements.

E. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For air-handling units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ARI Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to ARI 430, "Central-Station Air-Handling Units," and shall be listed and labeled by ARI.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- E. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members, if any, with actual equipment provided.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
 - 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
 - 3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Air Enterprises, Inc.
 - 2. Airtherm; a Mestek company.
 - 3. Buffalo Air Handling.
 - 4. Carrier Corporation; a member of the United Technologies Corporation Family.
 - 5. Coil Company, LLC.
 - 6. Dunham-Bush, Inc.
 - 7. Engineered Air.
 - 8. Mammoth Inc.
 - 9. McQuay International

10. Scott Springfield Mfg. Inc.
11. Trane; American Standard Inc.
12. USA Coil & Air.
13. YORK International Corporation.
14. Johnson Controls International

2.2 UNIT CASINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings:

1. Forming: Form walls, roofs, and floors with at least two breaks at each joint.
2. Casing Joints: Sheet metal screws or pop rivets.
3. Sealing: Seal all joints with water-resistant sealant.
4. Factory Finish for Steel and Galvanized-Steel Casings: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
5. Casing Coating: Powder-baked enamel.
6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.

B. Casing Insulation and Adhesive:

1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
2. Location and Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of section panels downstream from, and including, the cooling-coil section.
 - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
 - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
 - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service-air velocity.
3. Location and Application: Encased between outside and inside casing.

C. Inspection and Access Panels and Access Doors:

1. Panel and Door Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, single- or double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
2. Inspection and Access Panels:
 - a. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against air-pressure differential.
 - b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
 - c. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Access Doors:
 - a. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
 - b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
 - c. Fabricate windows in fan section doors of double-glazed, wire-reinforced safety glass with an air space between panes and sealed with interior and exterior rubber seals.
 - d. Size: At least 18 inches (450 mm) wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches (1500 mm).
 4. Locations and Applications:
 - a. Fan Section: Doors.
 - b. Access Section: Doors.
 - c. Coil Section: Inspection and access panel.
 - d. Damper Section: Doors.
 - e. Filter Section: Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
 - f. Mixing Section: Doors.
 5. Service Light: 100-W vaporproof fixture with switched junction box located inside adjacent to door.
 - a. Locations: Each section accessed with door.
- D. Condensate Drain Pans:
1. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
 - b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep.
 2. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
 3. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - a. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1 (DN 25).
 4. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
 5. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Mounting Frame: Formed galvanized-steel channel or structural channel supports, designed for low deflection, welded with integral lifting lugs.

1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to air-handling unit sections, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" when air-handling unit frame is anchored to building structure.

2.3 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
 1. Shafts: Designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, and with field-adjustable alignment.
 - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
 - b. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.
- B. Centrifugal Fan Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
 1. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
 2. Horizontal-Flanged, Split Housing: Bolted construction.
 3. Housing for Supply Fan: Attach housing to fan-section casing with metal-edged flexible duct connector.
 4. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets; select metal compatible with casing.
 - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
 - 1) Fabric Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
 - 2) Fabric Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3) Fabric Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- C. Plenum Fan Housings: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing.
- D. Backward-Inclined, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Single-width-single-inlet and double-width-double-inlet construction with curved inlet flange, backplate, backward-inclined blades welded or riveted to flange and backplate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- E. Forward-Curved, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; cast-steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- F. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- G. Axial Fans: Fan wheel and housing, straightening-vane section, factory-mounted motor with belt drive or direct drive, an inlet cone section, and accessories.
 - 1. Variable-Pitch Fans: Internally mounted electric actuator, externally mounted positive positioner, and mechanical-blade-pitch indicator.
 - 2. Housings: Galvanized Steel.
 - a. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Flanges.
 - b. Guide Vane Section: Integral guide vanes downstream from fan wheel designed to straighten airflow.
- H. Fan Shaft Bearings:
 - 1. Prelubricated and Sealed, Ball Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with a rated life of 120,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
- I. Belt Drives: Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor.
 - 1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 - 2. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with 5-hp motors and smaller; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5-hp. Select pulley size so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
 - 3. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.
 - 4. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.1046-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick, 3/4-inch (20-mm) diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.
- J. Variable-Inlet Vanes: Steel, with blades supported at both ends with permanently lubricated bearings. Variable mechanism terminating in single lever for connection to control actuator with connecting shaft for second set of variable inlet vanes on double-width fans.
- K. Discharge Dampers: Heavy-duty steel assembly with channel frame and sealed ball bearings, and opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around and welded to shaft, with blades linked out of air stream to single control lever.
- L. Internal Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control: Fans shall be factory mounted with manufacturer's standard restrained vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch (25 mm).

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate fan section, internal mounting frame and attachment to fans, fan housings, motors, casings, accessories, and other fan section components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" when fan-mounting frame and air-handling-unit mounting frame are anchored to building structure.
- M. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 2. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
 5. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on [**exterior**] [**interior**] of unit.
- N. Variable Frequency Controllers:
1. Description: NEMA ICS 2, IGBT, PWM, VFC; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed of an NEMA MG 1, Design B, 3-phase induction motor by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
 2. Output Rating: 3-phase; 6 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range.
 3. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - a. Input ac voltage tolerance of 380 to 500 V, plus or minus 10 percent.
 - b. Input frequency tolerance of 50/60 Hz, plus or minus 6 percent.
 - c. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
 - d. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent.
 - e. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; 2.0 times the base load current for 3 seconds.
 - f. Starting Torque: 100 percent of rated torque or as indicated.
 - g. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 4. Isolated control interface to allow controller to follow control signal over an 11:1 speed range.
 5. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
 - a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 - b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
 - c. Acceleration: 2 to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - d. Deceleration: 2 to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - e. Current Limit: 50 to a minimum of 110 percent of maximum rating.
 6. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
 - a. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- b. Undervoltage and overvoltage trips; inverter overtemperature, overload, and overcurrent trips.
 - c. Adjustable motor overload relays capable of NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 performance.
 - d. Notch filter to prevent operation of the controller-motor-load combination at a natural frequency of the combination.
 - e. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
 - f. Loss-of-phase protection.
 - g. Reverse-phase protection.
 - h. Short-circuit protection.
 - i. Motor overtemperature fault.
7. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempts three restarts after controller fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction. Bidirectional autospeed search shall be capable of starting into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without damage to controller, motor, or load.
 8. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped.
 9. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
 10. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
 11. Door-mounted LED status lights shall indicate the following conditions:
 - a. Power on.
 - b. Run.
 - c. Overvoltage.
 - d. Line fault.
 - e. Overcurrent.
 - f. External fault.
 12. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Start-stop and auto-manual selector switches with manual-speed-control potentiometer and elapsed time meter.
 13. Meters or digital readout devices and selector switch, mounted flush in controller door and connected to indicate the following controller parameters:
 - a. Output frequency (Hertz).
 - b. Motor speed (rpm).
 - c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
 - d. Motor current (amperes).
 - e. Motor torque (percent).
 - f. Fault or alarming status (code).
 - g. Proportional-integral-derivative (PID) feedback signal (percent).
 - h. DC-link voltage (volts direct current).
 - i. Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - j. Motor output voltage (volts).
 14. Control Signal Interface:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- a. Electric Input Signal Interface: A minimum of 2 analog inputs (0 to 10 V or 0/4-20 mA) and 6 programmable digital inputs.
 - b. Remote signal inputs capable of accepting any of the following speed-setting input signals from the control system:
 - 1) 0 to 10-V dc.
 - 2) 0-20 or 4-20 mA.
 - 3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
 - 4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
 - 5) RS485.
 - 6) Keypad display for local hand operation.
 - c. Output signal interface with a minimum of 1 analog output signal (0/4-20 mA), which can be programmed to any of the following:
 - 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
 - 2) Output current (load).
 - 3) DC-link voltage (volts direct current).
 - 4) Motor torque (percent).
 - 5) Motor speed (rpm).
 - 6) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - d. Remote indication interface with a minimum of 2 dry circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
 - 1) Motor running.
 - 2) Set-point speed reached.
 - 3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
 - 4) High- or low-speed limits reached.
15. Communications: RS485 interface allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration. Interface shall allow all parameter settings of VFC to be programmed via BMS control. Provide capability for VFC to retain these settings within the nonvolatile memory.
16. Integral Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, nonfusible switch with lockable handle.
17. Accessories:
- a. Devices shall be factory installed in controller enclosure unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Push-Button Stations, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy-duty type.
 - c. Standard Displays:
 - 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
 - 2) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - 3) Motor current (amperes).
 - 4) DC-link voltage (volts direct current).
 - 5) Motor torque (percent).
 - 6) Motor speed (rpm).
 - 7) Motor output voltage (volts).

2.4 COIL SECTION

A. General Requirements for Coil Section:

1. Comply with ARI 410.
2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
3. For multizone units, provide air deflectors and air baffles to balance airflow across coils.
4. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
5. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate coil section, internal mounting frame and attachment to coils, and other coil section components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" when coil-mounting frame and air-handling-unit mounting frame are anchored to building structure.

B. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:

1. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
2. Thickness: 2 inches (50 mm) and 4 inches (100 mm).
3. Merv (ASHRAE 52.2): 8 and 14.
4. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats with antimicrobial agent and held by self-supporting wire grid.
5. Media-Grid Frame: Nonflammable cardboard.
6. Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

C. Filter Gage:

1. 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter, diaphragm-actuated dial in metal case.
2. Vent valves.
3. Black figures on white background.
4. Front recalibration adjustment.
5. 2 percent of full-scale accuracy.
6. Range: 0- to 1.0-inch wg (0 to 250 Pa).
7. Accessories: Static-pressure tips with integral compression fittings, 1/4-inch (6-mm) aluminum tubing, and 2- or 3-way vent valves.

2.5 DAMPERS

A. General Requirements for Dampers: Leakage rate, according to AMCA 500, "Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating," shall not exceed 2 percent of air quantity at 2000-fpm (10-m/s) face velocity through damper and 4-inch wg (1000-Pa) pressure differential.

B. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

C. Electronic Damper Operators:

1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
 3. Operator Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC."
 - b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
 - c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
 4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
 5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
 6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
 - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. (86.8 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. (62 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft (49.6 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. (37.2 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
 - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm (5 to 13 m/s): Increase running torque by 1.5.
 - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm (13 to 15 m/s): Increase running torque by 2.0.
 7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
 8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
 9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
 10. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
 11. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
 12. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 50 deg C).
 13. Run Time: 30 seconds.
- D. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel-blade, galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium-plated steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- E. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with cadmium-plated steel operating rods rotating in stainless-steel sleeve bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 5 cfm/sq. ft. (0.22 L/s per sq. m) at 1-inch wg (250 Pa) and 9 cfm/sq. ft. (0.4 L/s per sq. m) at 4-inch wg (1.0 MPa).
- F. Mixing Section: Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly located immediately downstream of mixing section.

2.6 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. As scheduled.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.
- B. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."
- C. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig (2070 kPa) according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting: Install air-handling unit using restrained spring isolators. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Minimum Deflection: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
- D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.
- E. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gages on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to air-handling unit to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.
- F. Steam and Condensate Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping." Install shutoff valve at steam supply connections, float and thermostatic trap, and union or flange at each coil return connection. Install gate valve and inlet strainer at supply connection of dry steam humidifiers, and inverted bucket steam trap to condensate return connection.
- G. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

- H. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
 - 2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
 - 3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
 - 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
 - 6. Verify that zone dampers fully open and close for each zone.
 - 7. Verify that face-and-bypass dampers provide full face flow.
 - 8. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
 - 9. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
 - 10. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

11. Install new, clean filters.
12. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313

SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Filters: One set for each air-handling unit.
 2. Gaskets: One set for each access door.
 3. Fan Belts: One set for each air-handling unit fan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Carrier Corporation; Home Comfort and HVAC Building & Industrial Systems.

2. Lennox International Inc.
3. Trane; a business of American Standard companies.
4. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.
5. Daikin.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS 5 TONS (18 kW) OR LESS

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
7. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
9. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004].
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
- e. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Floor-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

- 1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect.
 - a. Discharge Grille: Steel with surface-mounted frame.
 - b. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 - c. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated.
- 2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
- 3. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm); leak tested to 300 psig (2070 kPa) underwater; with a two-position control valve.
- 4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
- 5. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal, with power-induced outside air.
- 6. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
- 7. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
 - b. Disposable Panel Filters:
 - 1) Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3) Arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1: 80.
 - 4) Merv according to ASHRAE 52.2: 8.
 - 5) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive⁷ and antimicrobial agent.

- 6) Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, and hinged; with pull and retaining handles.

2.3 INDOOR UNITS (6 TONS (21 kW) OR MORE)

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
7. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Three-phase, permanently lubricated, ball-bearing motors with built-in thermal-overload protection.
 - d. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
9. Filters: 1 inch thick, in fiberboard frames.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
- e. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Floor-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

- 1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect.
 - a. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
- 2. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
 - e. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.
- 3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
- 4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
- 5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
- 6. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal, with power-induced outside air.
- 7. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
 - f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
 - g. Provide with Factory VFD.
8. Air Filtration Section:
- a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and a MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
 - b. Disposable Panel Filters:
 - 1) Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3) Arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1: 80.
 - 4) Merv according to ASHRAE 52.2: 8.
 - 5) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive.
 - 6) Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, and hinged; with pull and retaining handles.
- C. Variable-Frequency Controllers:
- 1. Description: NEMA ICS 2, IGBT, PWM, VFC; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed of an NEMA MG 1, Design B, three-phase induction motor by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
 - 2. Output Rating: Three-phase; 6 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range.
 - 3. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - a. Input ac voltage tolerance of 208 V, plus or minus 5 percent.
 - b. Input-frequency tolerance of 50/60 Hz, plus or minus 6 percent.
 - c. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
 - d. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent.
 - e. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; 2.0 times the base load current for 3 seconds.
 - f. Starting Torque: 100 percent of rated torque or as indicated.
 - g. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - 4. Isolated control interface to allow controller to follow control signal over an 11:1 speed range.
 - 5. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
 - a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 - b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- c. Acceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - d. Deceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - e. Current Limit: 50 percent to a minimum of 110 percent of maximum rating.
6. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
- a. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors.
 - b. Undervoltage and overvoltage trips; inverter overtemperature, overload, and overcurrent trips.
 - c. Adjustable motor overload relays capable of NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 performance.
 - d. Notch filter to prevent operation of the controller-motor-load combination at a natural frequency of the combination.
 - e. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
 - f. Loss-of-phase protection.
 - g. Reverse-phase protection.
 - h. Short-circuit protection.
 - i. Motor overtemperature fault.
7. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempts three restarts after controller fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction. Bidirectional autospeed search shall be capable of starting into rotating loads, spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without damage to controller, motor, or load.
8. Power-Interruption Protection: Prevents motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped.
9. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
10. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back, based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
11. Door-mounted, digital status lights shall indicate the following conditions:
- a. Power on.
 - b. Run.
 - c. Overvoltage.
 - d. Line fault.
 - e. Overcurrent.
 - f. External fault.
12. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Start-stop and auto-manual selector switches with manual-speed-control potentiometer and elapsed-time meter.
13. Meters or digital readout devices and selector switch, mounted flush in controller door and connected, to indicate the following controller parameters:
- a. Output frequency (Hertz).
 - b. Motor speed (rpm).
 - c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
 - d. Motor current (amperes).
 - e. Motor torque (percent).
 - f. Fault or alarming status (code).

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- g. Proportional-integral-derivative feedback signal (percent).
 - h. DC-link voltage (volts dc).
 - i. Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - j. Motor output voltage (volts).
14. Control Signal Interface:
- a. Electric Input Signal Interface: A minimum of two analog inputs (0 to 10 V or 0/4-20 mA) and six programmable digital inputs.
 - b. Remote signal inputs capable of accepting any of the following speed-setting input signals from the control system:
 - 1) 0 to 10-V dc.
 - 2) 0-20 or 4-20 mA.
 - 3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
 - 4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
 - 5) RS485.
 - 6) Keypad display for local hand operation.
 - c. Output signal interface with a minimum of one analog output signal (0/4-20 mA), which can be programmed to any of the following:
 - 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
 - 2) Output current (load).
 - 3) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
 - 4) Motor torque (percent).
 - 5) Motor speed (rpm).
 - 6) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - d. Remote indication interface with a minimum of two dry circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
 - 1) Motor running.
 - 2) Set-point speed reached.
 - 3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
 - 4) High- or low-speed limits reached.
15. Communications: RS485 interface allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration. Interface shall allow all parameter settings of VFC to be programmed via BMS control. Provide capability for VFC to retain these settings within the nonvolatile memory.
16. Integral Disconnecting Means: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker with lockable handle.
17. Accessories:
- a. Devices shall be factory installed in controller enclosure unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Push-Button Stations, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy-duty type.
 - c. Standard Displays:

- 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
- 2) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
- 3) Motor current (amperes).
- 4) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
- 5) Motor torque (percent).
- 6) Motor speed (rpm).
- 7) Motor output voltage (volts).

2.4 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS) OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 210/240.
3. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
4. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
5. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F (7 deg C).
6. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.5 OUTDOOR UNITS (6 TONS) OR MORE)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 210/240.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F (7 deg C).
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."
- B. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- E. Drain Hose: For condensate.
- F. Additional Monitoring:
 1. Monitor constant and variable motor loads.
 2. Monitor variable-frequency-drive operation.
 3. Monitor economizer cycle.
 4. Monitor cooling load.
 5. Monitor air distribution static pressure and ventilation air volumes.

2.7 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Cooling Capacity: PER DESIGN DOCUMENT PLANS
- B. Heating Capacity: PER DESIGN DOCUMENT PLANS
- C. Indoor Unit: PER DESIGN DOCUMENT PLANS
- D. Outdoor Unit: PER DESIGN DOCUMENT PLANS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- C. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- (100-mm-) thick, reinforced concrete base that is 4 inches (100 mm) larger, on each side, than unit. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.
- D. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components as shown on drawings..
- E. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports as shown on drawings. Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- F. Install seismic restraints.
- G. Install compressor-condenser components on restrained, spring isolators with a minimum static deflection of 1 inch. See Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- H. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
 - 1. Water Coil Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return coil connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
 - 2. Remote, Water-Cooled Condenser Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping" Connect hydronic piping to supply and return connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply[**and return**] ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Provide certified start-up documentation in O&M Manual.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

SECTION 238146 – WATER SOURCE HEAT PUMPS – SMALL WSHP

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 Work Included for Units WSHP – 1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 8, 9 and 10

- A. The contractor shall furnish and install where shown on the plans, packaged water source heat pump units. Sizes, types and performance shall be as indicated in the unit schedule. Each unit shall be complete with factory furnished components and accessories as shown in the plans and as herein specified.
- B. Provide labor, materials, and equipment and services to perform operations required for the complete installation and related work as required in contract documents.
- C. Electrical work required as an integral part of the temperature control work is indicated on the mechanical drawings, and is the responsibility of this contractor to provide the complete system to perform the full sequence of operation shown, or as described in this specification.

1.02 Substitutions:

A. This is a performance specification, which uses the first named manufacturer's equipment as basis of design. Other manufacturers are named as acceptable, providing the other named manufacturers comply fully with all construction details, scheduled performance requirements and the full scope of these specifications. This does not necessarily mean that the other named manufacturers equipment will fit the available space or design requirements. It shall be the responsibility of this contractor to be sure that the system provided fully meets or exceeds the specified requirements and should any changes or additional apparatus be required for other named manufacturers, this contractor shall be fully responsible for the material and installation cost (including claims by all other trades, which may be effected by the substitution), to complete the installation and comply fully with the systems as outlined in these plans and specifications. A request for a substitution shall constitute a representation that the contractor will:

1. Investigate the proposed product and determine that it is equal to or superior in all respects to that specified.
2. Provide the same warranties or bonds for the substitution as for the product specified.
3. Coordinate the installation of an accepted substitution in the work, and make such other changes in the work as may be required for installation to make the work complete and equal to the basis of design in all respects.

B. Any manufacturer not named in these specifications shall be submitted to the engineer for technical review not less than fourteen days prior to the published bid date. The solicitation for consideration of alternate manufacturers shall include, but not limited to, full submittal data on unit construction, performance, and shall include:

1. Drawings and samples to demonstrate the products compliance.
2. Outline any changes required in other elements of the work because of the substitution.
3. Availability of local service and source of replacement material and parts.
4. A comparison of the proposed manufacturer's equipment with that specified. A complete copy of these specifications, with a notation written in the right margin of the specification; "C" for full compliance, or "D" for deviation, for each specification line item. For every instance of deviation, a full explanation shall be attached, identified by specification number.
5. A list of local installations where equipment of like and kind have been installed, with names and telephone numbers of personnel for each installation, that may be contacted as references.

C. The engineer shall determine compliance with the specification and whether or not the proposed manufacturer's equipment is acceptable for bid submission. Any deviation from this procedure is not acceptable and shall disqualify the proposed manufacturer. Acceptance and approval of any proposed equipment by the

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

engineer for bid submission shall not be interpreted to imply that the proposed equipment will fit the available space or the dimensional or design requirements. The engineer will review requests for substitutions with reasonable promptness, and the decision to accept or reject the requested substitution will be responded to only by addendum. The engineer may request additional information, which must be provided and reviewed before determining compliance. If the engineer finds the product to be of general acceptance, an addendum will be issued adding that manufacturer's name. If not added by addendum, that manufacturer's equipment will not be allowed or considered for the project if submitted.

D. The judgement of the engineer shall be final.

1.03 Submittals

- A. Shop drawings including weights, dimensions, and required clearances for service.
- B. Electrical data, including minimum circuit ampacity and maximum overcurrent protection required, time delay fuse type or HACR circuit breaker required.
- C. Computer generated Certified Performance data at project application conditions.
- D. Installation details.

1.04 Quality Assurance:

- A. Heat pump performance shall be certified in accordance with AHRI/ISO Standard 13256-1 and shall have the correct AHRI/ISO and CUL labels affixed to the cabinet. Heat pump performance at scheduled project operating conditions shall be substantiated by computer generated output data.
- B. Heat pumps shall be listed by a nationally recognized safety-testing laboratory or agency, such as Underwriters Laboratory (UL), or Electrical Testing Laboratory (ETL), or Canadian Standards Association (CSA).

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 General:

A. Electrical – All heat pump nameplate electrical utilization voltages shall be in conformance with ANSI Standard C84.1 as follows:

Nameplate Voltage	Phase	Distribution Voltage	Service, No of Conductors
115	1	120	2
208	1	208	2
230	1	240	2
265	1	277	2
208	3	208	3
230	3	240	3
460	3	480	4

B. All Water Source Heat Pump units shall be suitable for continuous operation with a supply voltage variation, measured at the factory power connection point, of ± 10% of the nameplate voltage. A control box shall be located within the unit and shall contain controls for compressor, reversing valve, electric heat coil, and fan motor operation and shall have a 75VA 24V control circuit transformer and a terminal block for low voltage field wiring connections. Unit shall be nameplated to accept time delay fuses or HACR circuit breaker for branch overcurrent protection of the power source. All units shall have a Short-Circuit current rating of 5kA rms symmetrical, 600V maximum.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

C. Floor Mounted Units – Each heat pump shall incorporate four independent access panels to facilitate service to internal components from front or backside. Unit shall have an insulated divider panel between compressor compartment and fan blower section. Access panels shall be designed to cover an individual unit section, such as the fan blower, while servicing compressor compartment and related refrigerant components.

D. Configuration – Units shall be provided configured as shown on the plans, in one of the following air-flow arrangements (Note: “Right” or “Left” side shall be determined when viewing the compressor compartment end panel):

1. Right Hand Return Air and Right Hand Piping Connections

E. Fan and Motor Assembly – An ECM blower motor shall be provided on all units. Units shall have a direct drive centrifugal fan. Factory motor wiring shall be set for optimum fan performance. CFM settings shall be field adjustable by means of a fan speed selector switch located in the unit control box. The unit shall be shipped at one fixed setting. The ECM motor shall utilize a permanent magnet rotor, which is connected to the shaft through resilient rings to absorb high frequency torque ripple. The ECM motor shall deliver precise speed and economical performance regardless of system static pressure. Independent CFM adjustment for mode specific operation.

F. Blower - The blower housing shall have a removable orifice ring to facilitate blower wheel and motor removal for ease of service and without the need to disconnect ductwork. Units without a removable orifice ring are not acceptable.

G. Refrigerant Circuit – A sealed refrigerant circuit, consisting of a high efficiency scroll, rotary or reciprocating hermetic motor-compressor mounted on rubber vibration isolation grommets (spring isolators shall not be accepted), air-to-air refrigerant finned tube coil, refrigerant flow metering device, water-to-refrigerant coaxial tube type heat exchanger, high pressure safety cutout, and fusible pressure relief factory-installed on the refrigerant circuit. Heat pump conditioners shall additionally contain a pilot-operated refrigerant reversing valve. The reversing valve shall be energized for heating operation. High and low side refrigerant service valves shall be provided. The refrigerant flow-metering device shall be a thermostatic expansion valve. Refrigerant will be HFC R410A in all sizes.

H. Safety Controls – High and low pressure switches and low temperature safety sensors shall be wired through a latching lockout circuit to disable the unit until it is reset electrically by interrupting the power supply to the unit. Automatic reset by wall sensor switching shall not be allowed. All safety switches shall be normally closed, opening upon fault detection. Control logic dependent upon the closing of a normally open switch shall not be allowed to preclude the possibility of simple, easily corrected faults being escalated into compressor or heat exchanger failure due to loss of integrity in control wiring. (Heating or cooling methods that do not require the refrigeration circuit, including hydronic heat, waterside economizer, and electric heat, shall be allowed to operate during lockout. This includes fan and pump operation.)

I. Geothermal (extended range) Operation – Manufacturer shall guarantee “extended range” heat pump units to start and operate continuously in an ambient of 40° F, with entering air and water at 40° F, with both air and water at the flow rates used in the ARI/ISO rating test. A geothermal extended range option shall be made up of a TXV metering device and wrapped condenser coil. Closed cell insulation shall be added to the internal water lines and on suction side refrigerant tubing including refrigerant to water heat exchanger.

J. Air Section - The air section of the unit shall be isolated from the compressor and control section with an insulated divider panel to minimize the transmission of compressor noise and to permit operational service testing with the compressor compartment cover removed.

K. Filter and Filter Racks – All units shall be provided with a 4” thick MERV 13 filter installed in a factory mounted four-sided 4" filter frame arranged for side removal. Filter rack shall be gasketed between the filter rack and the unit cabinet to prevent air bypass leakage.

L. Supply and return, condenser water connections – shall be FPT fittings, brazed copper water tubes and securely flush mounted to the cabinet corner post allowing for connection to a flexible hose without the use of a

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

back-up wrench. Condensate drain connection shall not be less than 3/4" FPT fitting securely flush mounted to the corner post. Supply, return, and condensate drain shall be connected to loop and drain piping as detail on mechanical drawings. Piping connections at the unit which require brazing or soldering by the installer (which may damage the unit) shall not be allowed.

M. Stainless Steel Drain Pan – Unit shall utilize corrosion resistant closed-cell insulated stainless steel drain pans. A stub out connection shall be provided. The drain pan shall be designed to ensure no pooling of condensate water per ASHRAE 62.2. The unit will be supplied with solid-state electronic condensate overflow protection as standard. Mechanical float switches will not be accepted.

N. Electric Heat - A factory-installed control relay shall provide a 24V signal as means to control the externally duct mounted electric heater. External power supply required.

O. Sound Package – Available as a factory installed option, units shall utilize sound attenuating compressor blankets with high technology sound attenuating material that is strategically applied within the air handling compartment casings to further reduce sound transmitted by the unit while in operation.

P. Control System (Microtech III Unit Controller) -

1. The unit control board shall be the main component of the system and shall contain the required inputs/outputs to operate a water source heat pump with a single speed fan.
2. Unit controller inputs/outputs: The Microtech III controller will be microprocessor-based and have capabilities, performance, and memory sufficient to execute the various functions detailed in this specification. This document will not specify a type, a manufacturer, or a family of microcontrollers to be considered for use. However, at a minimum, the following features are deemed essential:
 - a. Analog Inputs: (Condensate Overflow, Brownout Detection, Suction-Line Temp Sensor, Timed Override Switch, Set point Adjust, Fan Mode – (Heat/Cool/Auto)
 - b. Condensate Overflow. The presence of excessive condensate in the condensate drain pan is detected by a condensate sensor, which consists of a metal terminal ring mounted just below the top of the condensate pan. The analog input dedicated to condensate sensing must be capable of detecting the conductivity of water between the ring terminal and chassis ground. The conductivity trip point is 2.5 micro-ohms.
 - c. Brownout Detection. This analog input will measure the 24VAC input voltage applied to the controller as a means of indirectly monitoring line voltage applied to the unit. The 24VAC input, once rectified, filtered, and fed to an appropriate voltage divider, will be applied to the analog input as a DC voltage level proportional to the input voltage. At a minimum, the measurable range will be between 70 and 120% of the corresponding unit nameplate voltage. Due to the tolerances involved with the various components associated with this approach, calibration will occur during factory test when exactly 100% nameplate voltage is applied to the unit while in cooling mode. The digitized value of the resultant DC voltage applied to the analog input during the calibration period will be saved within the controller (in non-volatile memory) and used as a reference value for subsequent operation in the field. The brownout trip and recovery levels are a function of the application software and are listed elsewhere in this specification.
 - d. Suction-Line Temp Sensor. Sensing element shall be equivalent to NTC Thermistor – 10K ohms @ 25°C, 0.2°C interchangeability. Advanced Thermal Products – Curve Z. NOTE: The Timed (Tenant) Override switch will short out the Room sensor thermistor. Sensing range shall be 0 to 158°F with a resolution of 1°F and an accuracy of +/- 1.5°F Maximum Total Error.
 - e. Set point Adjust. The Set point Adjust circuit of a remote room sensor shall consist of a 1.5K-ohm 2-wire potentiometer. The wiper of the potentiometer will be connected to the analog input. The other lead of the potentiometer is tied to analog common. The 0 – 1.5K-ohm range will be interpreted by the base

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- controller as an offset to the current temperature Set point -5 to +5 degrees F or a range of 55 to 95 degrees F (jumper selectable and scaled accordingly in software).
- f. Fan On/Auto, Heat/Cool/Auto The Room Sensor shall incorporate switches and fixed resistors that present different resistance values to a single analog input which correspond to the fan and operating mode functions detailed below. The room sensor is designed with specific resistance values to coincide with the software in unit control module.
 - g. Temperature Input. Sensing element in the MicrotechIII room temperature sensor is equivalent to NTC Thermistor – 10K ohms @ 25°C, 0.2°C interchangeability. Advanced Thermal Products – Curve Z. NOTE: The Timed (Tenant) Override switch will short out the Room sensor thermistor. Sensing range shall be 0 to 158°F with a resolution of 1°F and an accuracy of +/- 1.5°F Maximum Total Error.
 - h. Binary Inputs. 18 total (Low Pressure, High Pressure, Emergency Shutdown, 8-Board level jumpers, 6 thermostat, Occupied/Unoccupied) that employ the Occupied/Unoccupied control.
 - i. The Low Pressure switch shall be sourced with 24VAC or DC, +/-20%. The binary input detection circuit shall be designed such that a minimum of 7mA current flows through the external contacts.
 - j. The High Pressure switch shall be part of an interlock circuit that interrupts power to the on-board compressor relay coil. Since this is a low voltage safety circuit as defined by UL, the designer must apply appropriate spacing as dictated by the relevant UL standards. As part of HP switch state detection, this circuit must sense the current flowing through the on-board compressor relay coil and communicate this information to the HP binary input. The current sensing circuit (Example device: NEC/CEL PS2501-1-A opto-isolator) must be upstream of the High Pressure switch, i.e., between the control output and the HP switch. In the unlikely event that the compressor binary output or HP current sensing circuit fails closed, the HP switch can still perform its intended safety function by opening the compressor relay coil circuit.
 - k. Emergency Shutdown. This binary input will detect the presence of an earth grounded signal, which is supplied by an external, remote set of contacts – such as those provided by a Condenser Loop Water Controller.
 - l. Unoccupied Mode. This binary input will detect the presence of an earth grounded signal, which is supplied by an external, remote set of contacts – such as those provided by a Condenser Loop Water Controller.
 - m. Thermostat inputs G, Y1, Y2, W1, W2, shall detect the presence of 24VAC sourced from the “R” terminal. The binary input conditioning circuitry for these inputs is designed to be compatible with conventional wall thermostats.
 - n. Board Level Jumpers:
 - JP1 Service/Test Mode
 - JP2 Continuous/cycling fan
 - JP3 Water/Glycol (Loop fluid)
 - JP4 Freeze fault protection
 - JP5 Room Temperature Set point adjustment range
 - JP6 Local control type (thermostat or room sensor)
 - JP7 Primary heating source (compressor or other)
 - JP8 I/O expansion module (present or not required)
3. Binary Outputs: 9 total (Main Fan, Compressor, Reversing Valve, Isolation valve/Pump Request, 3 Board Status LEDs, Room Sensor Status LED, Thermostat “A” output)
- a. Main Fan Switched output (line or low voltage) to control single speed fan operation
 - b. Compressor Controls compressor operation (line or low voltage)
 - c. Reversing Valve Controls reversing valve operation via low voltage. When the reversing valve output is de-energized, the reversing valve is in the “cool” position.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- d. Isolation Valve/Pump Request Switched output to send a signal that the water source heat pump requires liquid flow.
- e. 3 Board Status LED's Provides mode/alarm indication (5VDC).
- f. Room Sensor Status LED Provides unit status information (5VDC).
- g. Thermostat "A" Output 24VAC signal that turns on when the unit is in fault mode.

Q. The I/O expansion board shall provide a means of adding I/O capability to the base controller in the form of extra analog inputs, analog output, binary inputs, and binary outputs. The primary use of the I/O expansion board is variable speed fan control, two stage compressor operation, dehumidification, waterside economizer, and one or two stage electric heat. Some configurations may also require options such as fan speed control, hot gas reheat coil control, and electric heater coil control.

- 1. Analog Inputs: 2 total (entering water temperature, speed adjust signal):
 - a. Entering Water Temperature (EWT) monitors entering water temperature by means of a 10k Ohm thermistor.
 - b. Speed Adjust Signal a four position switch that selects user preferred fan speed.
- 2. Analog Output: 1 total (PWM signal)
 - a. PWM Signal provides constant CFM or torque fan operation within maximum and minimum settings as defined in the fan motor control.
- 3. Binary Inputs: 2 total (Heat stage four, Humidistat)
 - a. Heat stage four tells the MicrotechIII unit controller that 2nd stage electric heat is required.
 - b. Humidistat tells the MicrotechIII unit controller that dehumidification is required.
- 4. Binary Output: 7 total (Compressor High Capacity, Auxillary heat stage 1, hot gas reheat, dehumidification/waterside economizer, auxillary heat stage 2, (3) status LED's)
 - a. Compressor High Capacity 24VAC signal that enables the compressor at full load capacity.
 - b. Auxiliary heat stage 1 24VAC signal that enables stage 1 electric heat.
 - c. Hot Gas Re-Heat Dehumidification / Waterside Economizer enables the reheat solenoid on a request for dehumidification or controls the 3-way diverting valve upon a call for waterside economizer depending on configuration.
 - d. Auxiliary heat stage 2 24VAC signal that enables stage 2 electric heat.
 - e. (3) status LED's 5VDC signals that indicate operating conditions of the I/O expansion module.

R. BACNet Communication Module: The BACNet Communication Module is the interface to a BACNet BAS network through the industry standard RS-485 transceiver capable of existing on an RS-485 network of up to 64 nodes.

S. LonWorks/BACNet Commissioning Aid: To facilitate the network commissioning process, the timed override button (if present) can be used to initiate a LON "Service Pin" message or a BACNet "I am" Service Request by pressing and holding the timed override button for 10 more seconds. Once detected, the base controller shall inform an attached comm-card to initiate the appropriate message over the network. NOTE: Operating the timed override switch in this manner will also reset any automatic lockouts.

T. Emergency Shutdown: The controller will be in remote shutdown when the emergency shutdown contact closes to ground. Remote shutdown is provided so that when properly connected to a water loop controller or remote switch, the emergency shutdown input can be used to shut down the water source heat pump. When in remote shutdown no other thermostat or control inputs will have effect on unit operation. No faults or modes have higher priority than remote shutdown. Remote shutdown or brownout modes have the same level of priority. When the unit is in remote shutdown mode the following occurs:

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

The compressor is immediately de-energized (minimum on timer is ignored)
The reversing valve is immediately de-energized
The fan is immediately de-energized
The alarm output is de-energized.
When the emergency shutdown input is opened the unit will automatically return to normal operation.

U. Intelligent Reset: (Low pressure and Low temperature in heating only). The “Fault Retry” feature helps to minimize nuisance trips of automatic lockouts caused by low-pressure or low temperature faults. This feature automatically clears these faults the first two times they occur within a 24-hour period and triggers an automatic lockout on the 3rd fault. The retry count is reset to zero every 24 hours. The fault retry feature does not apply to a high pressure fault – which causes an immediate lockout and requires a manual reset, or condensate overflow or brownout faults – which are self-clearing.

V. Microtech III Unit Controller and I/O Expansion Board Fault and Status LEDs: Separate remote LED boards will provide visual feedback for both control modules.

1. Room Sensor Status LED: A 5VDC signal and shall operate as follows:

Status LED	Mode
On continually	Occupied, Occupied Load Shed
On 0.5 sec, Off 5.5 sec	Unoccupied
On 5.5 sec, Off 0.5 sec	Tenant Override, Override Load Shed
On 0.1 sec, Off 0.1 sec	Alarm Condition (Condensate Overflow, Brownout, Compressor Fault)

W. Auxiliary Relay Output: A 24VAC signal which is turned on when the unit is in alarm mode.

X. Warranty - Manufacturer shall warranty equipment for a period of 12 months from start-up or 18 months from shipping (whichever occurs first).

1. Manufacturer’s warranty time periods may or may not coincide with the contractor’s time period of obligation, but where the manufacturer’s warranty contains an expiration date based upon the equipment shipping date, the contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for covering the full time periods listed above.
2. The contractor shall be responsible for all shipping expenses not included by the manufacturer, both to procure the replacement part, and to return any defective parts to the manufacturer, as they may require.
3. The contractor’s replacement warranty obligation after the first year shall be limited to furnishing of replacement parts only, and shall not include repair labor costs or materials such as refrigerant, oils, dehydration, refrigerant- moisture dryers, air filters, or drive belts.
4. The owner shall be responsible for providing replacement filters beyond the spares provided in the original contract, and for filter installation labor.

Y. Spare Units – Provide the owner one spare unit of each model size scheduled for the project. Spare units shall be provided without installation accessories.

2.02 Acceptable Alternates

- A. With prior approval only, submit a detailed summary listing of all variations in form, fit, or function, in addition to specified submittal data.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 Installation:

A. Install equipment in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and to as to be compatible with intent of the respective system performance requirements.

B. No field provided apparatus, electrical or mechanical, shall be fastened to the heat pump cabinet with screws, without the prior written approval by the manufacturer's representative.

C. A discrete grounding conductor shall be provided, sized in accordance with the National Electrical Code (NEC), for each heat pump unit. The use of conduit or water piping for grounding purposes shall not be allowed.

D. Piping and electrical connections shall be located to eliminate any interference with removal and replacement of the air filter.

E. Piping and electrical connections shall be located to eliminate any interference with removal and replacement of the filter.

F. Contractor shall clean each unit of construction dust and debris.

1. And install new filters at time of commissioning,

2. And shall supply to the owner one complete set of spare filters for each unit on the project.

G. Heat pump units shall not be used as "construction heaters" at any time during any phase of construction.

Very low temperatures, harmful vapors, gypsum dust from dry wall finishing, may all damage the unit and affect its efficiency and useful service life. Failure to properly protect the unit from construction dirt and debris and from condensation forming within the unit may cause electronic component failure, and void the manufacturer's warranty.

H. Coordinate installation with work as part of "Control Systems" Section.

I. Manufacturer's Field Service – Engage the services of factory authorized service technicians to provide equipment start-up to verify installation for proper operation and compliance with manufacturer's

recommendations, and to assist the contractor in making adjustments, and to assist in field testing as follows:

1. Inspect for visible damage to casing, coils and internal parts.

2. Inspect for visible traces of refrigerant leaks (oil, etc.) and then leak check.

3. Inspect all electrical connections and torque to manufacturer's recommendations, both power and control.

Verify correctness.

4. Verify that filters are provided as specified and are installed properly.

5. Verify that proper clearances for both operation and servicing have been provided.

6. Verify that the unit has been cleaned of all construction dust and debris.

7. Verify proper fan rotation, where applicable.

8. Start unit according to the manufacturer's written instructions.

9. Observe initial unit operation to verify suitability for continuous operation for a period of time of sufficient duration to permit system air balancing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238147 – WATER SOURCE HEAT PUMPS – LARGE WSHP

PART 1: GENERAL

1.01 Work Included for Units WSHP – 5 & 6

A. The contractor shall furnish and install where shown on the plans, packaged water source heat pumps. Sizes, types and performance shall be as indicated in the unit schedule. Each unit shall be complete with factory furnished components and accessories as shown in the plans and as herein specified.

B. Provide labor, materials, equipment and services to perform operations required for the complete installation and related work as required in contract documents.

C. Electrical work required as an integral part of the temperature control work is indicated on the mechanical drawings, and is the responsibility of this contractor to provide the complete system to perform the full sequence of operation shown, or as described in this specification.

1.02 Substitutions:

A. This is a performance specification, which uses the first named manufacturer's equipment as basis of design. Other manufacturers are named as acceptable, providing the other named manufacturers comply fully with all construction details, scheduled performance requirements and the full scope of these specifications. This does not necessarily mean that the other named manufacturers equipment will fit the available space or design requirements. It shall be the responsibility of this contractor to be sure that the system provided fully meets or exceeds the specified requirements and should any changes or additional apparatus be required for other named manufacturers, this contractor shall be fully responsible for the material and installation cost (including claims by all other trades, which may be effected by the substitution), to complete the installation and comply fully with the systems as outlined in these plans and specifications. A request for a substitution shall constitute a representation that the contractor will:

1. Investigate the proposed product and determine that it is equal to or superior in all respects to that specified.
2. Provide the same warranties or bonds for the substitution as for the product specified.
3. Coordinate the installation of an accepted substitution in the work, and make such other changes in the work as may be required for installation to make the work complete and equal to the basis of design in all respects.

B. Any manufacturer not named in these specifications shall be submitted to the engineer for technical review not less than fourteen days prior to the published bid date. The solicitation for consideration of alternate manufacturers shall include, but not limited to, full submittal data on unit construction, performance, and shall include:

1. Drawings and samples to demonstrate the products compliance.
2. Outline any changes required in other elements of the work because of the substitution.
3. Availability of local service and source replacement material and parts.
4. A comparison of the proposed manufacturer's equipment with that specified. A complete copy of these specifications, with a notation written in the right margin of the specification; "C" for full compliance, or "D" for deviation, for each specification line item. For every instance of deviation, a full explanation shall be attached and identified by specification number.
5. A list of local installations where equipment of like and kind have been installed, with names and telephone numbers of personnel for each installation, who may be contacted as references.

C. The engineer shall determine compliance with the specification and whether or not the proposed manufacturer's equipment is acceptable for bid submission. Any deviation from this procedure is not acceptable and shall disqualify the proposed manufacturer. Acceptance and approval of any proposed equipment by the engineer for bid submission shall not be interpreted to imply that the proposed equipment will fit the available

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

space or the dimensional or design requirements. The engineer will review requests for substitutions with reasonable promptness, and the decision to accept or reject the requested substitution will be responded to only by addendum. The engineer may request additional information, which must be provided and reviewed before determining compliance. If the engineer finds the product to be of general acceptance, an addendum will be issued adding that manufacturer's name. If not added by addendum, that manufacturer's equipment will not be allowed or considered for the project if submitted.

D. The judgment of the engineer shall be final.

1.03 Submittals:

- A. Shop drawings including weights, dimensions, and required clearances for service.
- B. Electrical data, including minimum circuit ampacity and maximum over-current protection required, time delay fuse type or HACR circuit breaker required.
- C. Computer generated Certified Performance data at project application conditions.
- D. Installation details.

1.04 Quality Assurance:

- A. Heat pump performance shall be certified in accordance with ARI/ISO Standard 13256-1 and shall have the correct ARI/ISO and CUL labels affixed to the chassis. Heat pump performance at scheduled project operating conditions shall be substantiated by computer generated output data.
- B. Heat pumps shall be listed by a nationally recognized safety-testing laboratory or agency, such as Underwriters Laboratory (UL), or Electrical Testing Laboratory (ETL), or Canadian Standards Association (CSA).

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.01 General:

A. Electrical – All Water Source Heat Pump units shall be suitable for continuous operation with a supply voltage variation, measured at the factory power connection point, of +/- 10% of the nameplate voltage. A control box shall be located within the unit and shall contain controls for standard components such as compressor, reversing valve, electric heat coil, and fan motor operation and shall have a standard 75VA, 24V control circuit transformer. All units shall have a Short-Circuit current rating of 5kA rms symmetrical, 600V maximum. Unit shall be name-plated to accept time delay fuses or HACR circuit breaker for branch over-current protection of the power source. All heat pump nameplate electrical utilization voltages shall be in conformance with ANSI Standard C84.1 as follows:

Nameplate Voltage	Phase	Distribution Voltage	Service, No. of Conductors
208	3	208	3
230	3	240	3
460	3	460	3
575	3	575	3

B. Casing and Cabinet – The casing shall be G60 galvanized steel corner posts and steel panel construction with heavy gauge steel base pan. The base pan shall have pre-drilled holes to accept field installation of external rubber or spring isolators. The interior shall be lined with 1/2" thick, 1-1/2 lb. density fiberglass insulation. Multiple panels on front, back and sides shall provide access to compressor, control box, fan motor and fan assembly. Units shall have a standard factory installed 1" thick filter bracket for side filter removal. Unit shall

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

have multiple 1" thick throwaway filters factory installed as standard. Cabinets shall have knockouts for entrance of line voltage and low voltage control wiring. Supply return water and condensate connections shall be copper FPT fittings and protrude through the casing. Access panels with direct contact with conditioned air shall be lined internally with acoustic type dual-density fibrous glass insulation or fiber-free, cellular type, closed cell foam insulation. Fiberglass insulation shall have edges sealed or tucked under flanges to prevent glass fibers from entering the supply air stream. All construction shall meet the National Fire Protection Association Standard NFPA 90A.

C. Condensate Drain Pan – The condensate pan must be made of either G60 galvanized steel, stainless steel or non-corrosive ABS plastic.

D. Configuration – Units shall be provided configured as shown on the plans, in one of the following air-flow arrangements (note: “Right” or “Left” side shall be determined when viewing the air coil side of the unit; water piping connection side will follow the handing configuration); air coil is always mounted on the side of the cabinet:

1. Side or straight discharge

E. Fan Blower Assembly – Units shall have a belt-driven centrifugal fan. A high efficiency TEFC blower motor shall be provided on 72,000 BTUH through 120,000 BTUH units. Factory adjustable sheaves shall be set for optimum fan performance. Field adjustment of sheaves and belt tension shall be required for airflow balancing. The fan housing shall protrude through the cabinet to facilitate field duct connection. Unit shall have a Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) capable of softstart and programable for air balance, controlled by a 0-10 vdc input.

F. R410A Refrigeration Circuits – Sealed refrigerant circuits, consisting of high efficiency scroll compressors mounted on rubber vibration isolation grommets (spring isolators shall not be accepted between the compressor and the unit base pan), air-to-air refrigerant finned tube coil, refrigerant flow metering device-thermostatic expansion valve (TXV), water-to-refrigerant coaxial tube type heat exchanger, high pressure safety cutout and fusible pressure relief factory-installed on the refrigerant circuit. Water Source Heat Pump units shall utilize a solenoid-operated, 4-way refrigerant reversing valve. The reversing valve shall be energized for heating operation. High and low side refrigerant service valves shall be provided. Refrigerant will be HFC R410A in all units, no exception.

G. Safety Controls – High and low pressure switches and low temperature safety sensor shall be wired through a latching lockout circuit to disable the unit until it is reset electrically by interrupting the power supply to the unit. Automatic reset by wall sensor switching shall not be allowed. All safety switches shall be normally closed, opening upon fault detection. Control logic dependent upon the closing of a normally open switch shall not be allowed to preclude the possibility of simple, easily corrected faults being escalated into compressor or heat exchanger failure due to loss of integrity in control wiring.

H. Geothermal Operation – Manufacturer shall guarantee “extended range” heat pump units to start and operate continuously in an ambient of 40 degrees F, with entering air and water at 40 degrees F, with both air and water at the flow rates used in the ARI/ISO rating test.

I. Air Section – The air section of the unit shall be isolated from the compressor and control section with insulated walls to minimize the transmission of compressor noise and to permit operational service testing with the compressor compartment cover removed.

J. Filters - All units shall be provided with MERV 13 filter installed in a factory mounted four-inch filter rack.

K. Supply and return, condenser water connections – Supply return water and condensate connections shall be copper FPT fittings and protrude through the casing. Supply, return, and condensate drain shall be connected to loop and drain piping as detail on mechanical drawings.

L. Hot Gas Bypass Option – Hot Gas Bypass option shall limit the minimum suction pressure during cooling operation to prevent the air coil from icing.

M. Solid-State Control System MicroTech III Control System - Unit shall have a microprocessor- based control system. The unit control logic shall provide heating and cooling operation as required by the wall thermostat set point. The control system shall provide the following for stand-alone operation: a. The use of standard non-

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

programmable or programmable wall thermostats. b. Fan operation simultaneous with the compressor (fan interlock) regardless of thermostat logic. c. Anti-short cycle time delay for compressor operation. d. Random start up on power up mode. e. Single grounded connection to the "E" terminal will place the unit in the remote shutdown mode. f. Ground signal to the "U" terminal will put the unit in night setback mode. g. Night setback override function is available with the MicroTech III control system. The thermostat must have an override feature/capability. h. Brownout protection to suspend unit operation if the supply voltage drops below 80% of normal. This is low voltage protection. i. Condensate overflow protection to suspend cooling operation or dehumidification, in an event of a full drain pan. j. Unit protection during high or low refrigerant pressure conditions. k. Water coil low temperature protection. l. Method of defeating compressor, time delays for fast service diagnostics. m. Option to reset unit at thermostat (remote reset) – Provides means to remotely reset automatic lock-outs generated by high/low pressure faults and/or low temperature faults. n. Intelligent alarm reset - clears re-settable faults the 1st two times they occur within a 24-hour period and triggers automatic lock-out on 3rd fault. o. Low entering water temperature protection p. Air coil frost protection q. 24V output to cycle a motorized water valve when water flow is required r. The low-pressure switch condition may exist for 30 seconds at compressor start up to avoid nuisance low pressure trips. s. Light emitting diode (LED) for the MicroTech III and I/O expansion control boards indicate high pressure, low pressure, low voltage, low water/air temperature cut out, condensate overflow, and freeze fault.

1. MicroTech® III Control with I/O Expansion Module– I/O Expansion Module connects directly to the main MicroTech III controller to provide control of the second refrigeration circuit. The I/O module provides a 24v output for control of a field installed electric heater.

2. Microtech III Control w/ BACnet® Communication Module: Unit shall have a microprocessor-based control system. The unit control logic shall communicate over a BACnet communications network. The BACnet communication module shall incorporate an Atmel ARM7 Thumb series MCU and be capable of supporting a full MSTP BACnet implementation. The microprocessor shall also support SPI compatible communications with the MCU of the Microtech III controller. The physical interface to a BACnet BAS network shall be through an industry standard RS-485 transceiver capable of existing on an RS-485 network of up to 64 nodes. The unit controller is factory programmed and tested with all the logic required to monitor and control heating and cooling operation. The controller sets the unit mode of operation, monitors water and air temperatures, and can communicate fault conditions via a BACnet communications network. Units outfitted with Microtech III and BACnet Communication modules include return air, discharge air and leaving water temperature sensors. Space temperature sensor options include a set-point adjustment, tenant override button, and the capability of substituting the return air sensor with a wall-mounted room temperature sensor.

b. Each communicating unit controller performs the following unit operations:

c. Enable heating and cooling to maintain space temperature set point at the room sensor

d. Enable fan and compressor operation

e. Monitor all safety controls

f. Monitor discharge and return air temperature

g. Monitor leaving water temperature

h. Relay status of all vital unit functions

i. Support optional control outputs

3. Analog Inputs: 8 total (Condensate Overflow, Brownout Detection, Discharge Air Temperature (DAT) Sensor, Suction-Low Temp Sensor, Leaving water temperature sensor, Room or Return temp sensor/ Timed Override Switch, Setpoint Adjust, Fan Mode - Heat/Cool/Auto).

a. Condensate Overflow. The presence of excessive condensate in the condensate drain pan is detected by a condensate sensor, which consists of a metal ring terminal mounted just below the top of the condensate pan. The analog input dedicated to condensate sensing must be capable of detecting the

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

- conductivity of water between the ring terminal and chassis ground. The conductivity trip point is 2.5 micro-ohms.
- b. Brownout Detection. This analog input will measure the 24VAC input voltage applied to the controller as a means of indirectly monitoring line voltage applied to the unit. The 24VAC input, once rectified, filtered, and fed to an appropriate voltage divider, will be applied to the analog input as a DC voltage level proportional to the input voltage. At a minimum, the measurable range will be between 70 and 120% of the corresponding unit nameplate voltage. Due to the tolerances involved with the various components associated with this approach, calibration will occur during factory test when exactly 100% nameplate voltage is applied to the unit while in cooling mode. The digitized value of the resultant DC voltage applied to the analog input during the calibration period will be saved within the controller (in non-volatile memory) and used as a reference value for subsequent operation in the field. The brownout trip and recovery levels are a function of the application software and are listed elsewhere in this specification.
 - c. DAT Sensor, Suction-Low Temp Sensor, Room Sensor/Timed (Tenant) Override. Sensing element shall be equivalent to NTC Thermistor – 10K ohms @ 25°C, 0.2°C interchangeability. Advanced Thermal Products – Curve Z. NOTE: The Timed (Tenant) Override switch will short out the Room sensor thermistor. Sensing range shall be 0 to 158°F with a resolution of 1°F and an accuracy of +/- 1.5°F Maximum Total Error.
 - d. 2-Wire Potentiometer Input (Setpoint Adjust). The Setpoint Adjust circuit of a remote room sensor shall consist of a 1.5K-ohm 2-wire potentiometer. The wiper of the potentiometer will be connected to the analog input. The other lead of the potentiometer is tied to analog common. The 0 – 1.5K-ohm range will be interpreted by the base controller as an offset to the current temperature setpoint -3 to +3 degrees F or a range of 55 to 95 degrees F (jumper selectable and scaled accordingly in software).
 - e. Switched Fixed Resistor Inputs (Fan On/Auto, Heat/Cool/Auto). The Room Sensor shall incorporate switches and fixed resistors that present different resistance values to a single analog input which correspond to the fan and operating mode functions detailed below. This specification will not dictate what the specific resistance values should be, but the designer should exercise due diligence with regards to selecting values that will be unmistakably discerned given such variables as resistance tolerances, wire/cable resistance, switch resistance, electrical noise imposed on cable runs, etc.

Two-position Fan Switch Functions shall be "Fan ON/Fan AUTO".

Three-position Operating Mode Switch Functions shall be "Heat/Cool/Auto".

4. Binary Inputs. 18 total (High Pressure, Emergency Shutdown, 8-Board level jumpers, 6 thermostat, Occupied/Unoccupied) compatible with existing Mark IV installations that employ the Occupied/Unoccupied control.

- a. The High Pressure switch shall be part of an interlock circuit that interrupts power to the on-board compressor relay coil. Since this is a low voltage safety circuit as defined by UL, the designer must apply appropriate spacing as dictated by the relevant UL standards. As part of HP switch state detection, this circuit must sense the current flowing through the on-board compressor relay coil and communicate this information to the HP binary input. The current sensing circuit (Example device: NEC/CEL PS2501-1-A opto-isolator) must be upstream of the High Pressure switch, i.e., between the control output and the HP switch. In the unlikely event that the compressor binary output or HP current sensing

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

circuit fails closed, the HP switch can still perform its intended safety function by opening the compressor relay coil circuit.

b. Emergency Shutdown (see note below). This binary input will detect the presence of an earth grounded signal which is supplied by an external, remote set of contacts – such as those provided by a Condenser Loop Water Controller. This requirement is needed in order to maintain compatibility with existing Mark IV installations that also use a daisy-chained grounded signal wired to multiple units for Emergency Shutdown signaling. NOTE: Since the Mark IV Emergency Shutdown input is also capable of accepting 24VAC & 24VDC and existing Mark IV installations may use these voltages in lieu of ground, an external signal converter or relay may be required to convert 24VAC or 24VDC signals to a grounded signal.

5. Binary Outputs: 9 total (Fan, Compressor 1 / Compressor 1 Low Speed, Reversing Valve, Isolation valve/Pump Request, 3 Board Status LEDs, Room Sensor Status LED, Thermostat “A” output)

6. LonWorks/BACNet Commissioning Aid: To facilitate the network commissioning process, the timed override switch (if present) can be used to initiate a LON “Service Pin” message or a BACNet “I am” Service Request by pressing and holding the timed override button for 10 or more seconds. Once detected, the base controller shall inform an attached comm-card to initiate the appropriate message over the network. Note: Operating the timed override switch in this manner will also reset any automatic lockouts.

7. Emergency Shutdown: The controller will be in remote shutdown when the emergency shutdown contact closes. Remote shutdown is provided so that when properly connected to a water loop controller or remote switch, the emergency shutdown input can be used to shut down the water source heat pump. When in remote shutdown no other thermostat or control inputs will have effect on unit operation. No faults or modes have higher priority than remote shutdown. Remote shutdown or brownout modes have the same level of priority. When the unit is in remote shutdown mode the following occurs:

The compressor is immediately de-energized (minimum on timer is ignored)
The reversing valve is immediately de-energized
The fan is immediately de-energized
The alarm output is de-energized.
When the emergency shutdown input is opened the unit will automatically return to normal operation.

8. Intelligent Reset: (Low pressure and Low temperature in heating only). The “Fault Retry” feature helps to minimize nuisance trips of automatic lockouts caused by low-pressure or low temperature faults. This feature automatically clears these faults the first two times they occur within a 24-hour period and triggers an automatic lockout on the 3rd fault. The retry count is reset to zero every 24 hours. The fault retry feature does not apply to a high pressure fault – which causes an immediate lockout and requires a manual reset, or condensate overflow or brownout faults – which are self-clearing.

9. Short Cycle Protection & Random Start: After power cycle, or deactivation of certain alarms, or when leaving the unoccupied mode, a new random compressor start-delay time between 300 and 360 seconds shall be generated. Compressor minimum OFF (360 sec) and compressor minimum ON (180 sec) timers prevent compressor short cycling and prevents units from starting simultaneously after coming back from an unoccupied cycle.

10. Microtech III Unit Controller and I/O Expansion Board Fault and Status LEDs: There will be no Fault/Status LEDs on the base controller or optional I/O expansion board, however separate optional remote LED boards shall plug into either in order to provide visual access to the face of the control enclosure.

11. The Baseboard status LED’s shall operate as follows (mode/faults are listed in order of priority):

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

Description	Type	Yellow	Green	Red
Emergency Shutdown	Mode	OFF	Flash	OFF
Low Voltage Brownout	Fault	OFF	Flash	OFF
Compress or #1 High Pressure (HP1)	Fault	OFF	OFF	Flash
Compress or #1 Low Pressure (LP1)	Fault	OFF	OFF	ON
Compress or #1 Low Suction Temp (LT1) Sens or Fail	Fault	Flash	Flash	ON
Compress or #1 Low Suction Temp (LT1)	Fault	Flash	OFF	OFF
Room Temp Sens or Fail (with Room Sens or Control Only)	Fault	Flash	Flash	ON
Condensate Overflow (Cooling & Dehumidification Modes Only)	Fault	ON	OFF	OFF
Low Entering Water Temp (Heating Compress or Inhibit; No Display with Boilerless EH)	Fault	Flash	OFF	Flash
Serial EEPROM Corrupted	Fault	ON	ON	ON
Service Test Mode Enabled	Mode	Flash	Flash	Flash
Unoccupied Mode	Mode	ON	ON	OFF
Occupied, Bypass, Standby, or Tenant Override Modes	Mode	OFF	ON	OFF

12. The I/O expansion status LED's shall operate as follows (mode/faults are listed in order of priority):

Description	Type	Yellow	Green	Red
Invalid Jumper Configuration	Fault	Flash	Flash	OFF
Bas eboard Communication Fail	Fault	OFF	Flash	Flash
Compress or #2 High Pressure (HP2)	Fault	OFF	OFF	Flash
Compress or #2 Low Pressure (LP2)	Fault	OFF	OFF	ON
Compress or #2 Low Suction Temp (LT2) Sens or Fail	Fault	Flash	Flash	ON
Compress or #2 Low Suction Temp (LT2)	Fault	Flash	OFF	OFF
Entering Water Temp Sens or Fail (with Boilerless Electric Heating)	Fault	Flash	Flash	ON
Service Test Mode Enabled	Mode	Flash	Flash	Flash
Unoccupied Mode	Mode	ON	ON	OFF
Occupied, Bypass, Standby, or Tenant Override Modes	Mode	OFF	ON	OFF

13. The room sensor status LED shall operate as follows (status displays are listed in order of priority):

LED ON Time (Sec)	LED OFF Time (Sec)	Operating Mode
0.5	0.5	Alarm Condition or Network "Wink" Operation Active
0.0	Continually	Bypass Mode Is Active
0.5	5.5	Unoccupied Mode
5.5	0.5	Standby Mode
Continually	0.0	Occupied Mode

N. Warranty- The contractor shall provide one full year warranty for furnishing parts on site, and labor to replace any part of the unit, which becomes defective in normal operation, from the date of start-up by the manufacturer's representative, or first beneficial use of the unit. The hermetic motor compressor shall be warranted for an additional four years.

1. Manufacturer's warranty time periods may or may not coincide with the contractor's time period of obligation, but where the manufacturer's warranty contains an expiration date based upon the equipment shipping date, the contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for covering the full time periods listed above.

2. The contractor shall be responsible for all shipping expenses not included by the manufacturer, both to procure the replacement part, and to return any defective parts to the manufacturer, as they may require.

3. The contractor's replacement warranty obligation after the first year shall be limited to furnishing of replacement parts only, and shall not include repair labor costs or materials such as refrigerant, oils, dehydration, refrigerant- moisture dryers, air filters, or drive belts.

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

4. The owner shall be responsible for providing replacement filters beyond the spares provided in the original contract, and for filter installation labor.

O. Spare Units – Provide the owner one spare unit of each model size scheduled for the project. Spare units shall be provided without installation accessories.

2.02 Basis of Design:

A. Model types HFC R-410A LVC or LVW by Daikin Applied

2.03 Acceptable Alternates:

A. With prior approval only, submit a detailed summary listing of all variations in form, fit, or function, in addition to specified submittal data.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.01 Installation:

A. Install equipment in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as to be compatible with intent of the respective system performance requirements.

B. No field provided apparatus, electrical or mechanical, shall be fastened to the heat pump cabinet with screws, without the prior written approval by the manufacturer's representative.

C. A discrete grounding conductor shall be provided, sized in accordance with the National Electrical Code (NEC), for each heat pump unit. The use of conduit or water piping for grounding purposes is unacceptable.

D. Piping and electrical connections shall be located to eliminate any interference with removal and replacement of the air filter.

E. Contractor shall clean each unit of construction dust and debris.

1. And install new filters at time of commissioning,

2. And shall supply to the owner one complete set of spare filter for each unit on the project.

F. Heat pump units shall not be used as "construction heaters or coolers" at any time during any phase of construction. Very low temperatures, harmful vapors, gypsum dust from dry wall finishing, may all damage the unit and affect its efficiency and useful service life. Failure to properly protect the unit from construction dirt and debris and from condensation forming within the unit may cause electronic component failure, and void the manufacturer's warranty.

G. Coordinate installation with work as part of "Control Systems" section.

H. Manufacturer's Field Service – Engage the services of factory authorized service technicians to provide equipment start-up to verify installation for proper operation and compliance with manufacturer's recommendations, and to assist the contractor in making adjustments, and to assist in field testing as follows:

1. Inspect for visible damage to casing, coils and internal parts.

2. Inspect for visible traces of refrigerant leaks (oil, etc.) and then leak check.

3. Inspect all electrical connections and torque to manufacturer's recommendations, both power and control. Verify correctness.

4. Verify that filters are provided as specified and are installed properly.

5. Verify that proper clearances for both operation and servicing have been provided.

6. Verify that the unit has been cleaned of all construction dust and debris.

7. Verify proper fan rotation, where applicable.

8. Start unit in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

9. Observe initial unit operation to verify suitability for continuous operation for a period of time of sufficient duration to permit system air balancing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 81 49
GROUND-SOURCE HEAT PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. The requirements of this Section apply to all sections of Division 23 related to ground-source heat pump systems.

1.2 RELATED WORK - NOT USED

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unless otherwise specified or indicated, ground source heat pump terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, shall be defined in AHRI 330.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The wellbore driller and installer of downhole piping shall be accredited by the International Ground Source Heat Pump Association (IGSHPA), or an equivalent accreditation or certification from a nationally-recognized association.
- B. Local and state laws and ordinances as they pertain to buried pipe systems shall be strictly followed or a variance obtained.
- C. Installer(s) shall demonstrate that they have successfully installed at least four projects that, in aggregate, equal or exceed the size of the proposed project. References shall be provided for each of these installed projects.
- D. Soil thermal values shall be used in calculating loop length. For horizontal ground heat exchanger applications, determination of the soil's thermal properties with a conductivity test is unnecessary. For larger projects in which the heat exchanger will be installed vertically, the thermal properties of the soil/rock formation shall be determined by performing a thermal conductivity (in-situ) test per ASTM D5334.
- E. Warranties: Ground-source heat pump systems shall be subject to the warranty period shall be as noted for the items below:
1. Polyethylene piping: 25 year manufacturer's warranty against defects in materials and workmanship.

1.5 PERMITS AND FEES

- A. The wellbore driller/installer of downhole piping shall, without additional expense to the Government, be responsible for obtaining and paying for any and all necessary licenses and permits in connection with the performance of its services; installer shall maintain said licenses and permits current until the work has been accepted by the Government, and alone shall bear financial responsibility for any and all violations of said licenses and permits

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit six copies in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES, and with requirements in the individual specification sections, to the Resident Engineer.
- B. Contractor shall make all necessary field measurements and investigations to assure that the equipment and assemblies will meet contract requirements.
- C. If equipment submitted differs in arrangement from that shown on the submittals, provide drawings that show the rearrangement of all associated systems. Approval will be given only if all features of the equipment and associated systems, including accessibility, are equivalent to that required by the contract and acceptable to the Resident Engineer.
- D. Prior to submitting shop drawings for approval, contractor shall certify in writing that manufacturers of all major items of equipment have each reviewed drawings and specifications from the applicable other manufacturers, and have jointly coordinated and properly integrated their equipment and controls to provide a complete and efficient installation.
- E. Submittals and shop drawings for independent items, containing applicable descriptive information, shall be furnished together and complete in a group. Coordinate and properly integrate materials and equipment in each group to provide a completely compatible and efficient installation. Final review and approvals will be made only on complete groups.
- F. Shop Drawings: Include heat pump equipment structural supports, control sequences, monitoring instruments and controls, interconnections and all other components, parts and pieces required to complete the

functioning assembly. Where applicable, include shop drawings for foundations or other support structures.

- G. Product Data: Include detailed information for components of the ground-source heat pump system.
 - 1. Geothermal Source Well and Grouts
 - 2. Ground Heat Exchanger
 - 3. Ground-Source Heat Pump Unit
 - 4. Circulation System
 - 5. Wiring
 - 6. Wiring Specialties
 - 7. Valves
 - 8. Piping and Piping Specialties
 - 9. Header Assemblies
 - 10. Heat Transfer Fluid
 - 11. Heat Exchanger
 - 12. Insulation
 - 13. Instrumentation consisting of monitoring systems and control systems compatible with the facility's existing data and control systems.
- H. Certificates: Submit technical representative's certification that the installation has been implemented as intended by the system designer and where applicable, recommended by the manufacturer.
- I. Manufacturer's Instructions.
- J. Operation and Maintenance Ground-Source Heat Pump System Data Package:
 - 1. Safety precautions
 - 2. Operator restart
 - 3. Startup, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures
 - 4. Normal operations
 - 5. Emergency operations
 - 6. Operator service requirements
 - 7. Environmental conditions
 - 8. Lubrication data
 - 9. Preventive maintenance plan and schedule
 - 10. Cleaning recommendations
 - 11. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques
 - 12. Wiring and control diagrams
 - 13. Maintenance and repair procedures
 - 14. Removal and replacement instructions

15. Spare parts and supply list
 16. Corrective maintenance man-hours
 17. Product submittal data
 18. O&M submittal data
 19. Parts identification
 20. Warranty information
 21. Personnel training requirements
 22. Testing equipment and special tool information
 23. Testing and performance data
 24. Contractor information
- K. Closeout Submittals:
1. Posted operating instructions for ground-source heat pump system that provide for wiring identification codes and diagrams, operating instructions, control matrix, and troubleshooting instructions.
 2. As-built drawings of geo-heat exchange field wells, piping locations, and distribution system provided on no less than 3/16" scale drawings in AutoCAD .DWG digital file format.

1.7 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below (including amendments, addenda, revisions, supplements and errata) form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
60-2018.....Drinking Water Treatment Chemicals - Health Effects
- C. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE):
90.1-2016.....Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings
- D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
B31.1-2018.....Power Piping
B40.100-2013.....Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments
- E. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
D92-2012.....Standard Test Method for Flash and Fire Points by Cleveland Open Cup Tester

- D1177-2015.....Standard Test Method for Freezing Point of
Aqueous Engine Coolants
- D2513-2019.....Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE)
Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings
- D2683-2014.....Standard Specification for Socket-Type
Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-
Controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
- D2765-2016.....Standard Test Methods for Determination of Gel
Content and Swell Ratio of Crosslinked Ethylene
Plastics
- D2837-2014.....Standard Test Method for Obtaining Hydrostatic
Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe Materials
or Pressure Design Basis for Thermoplastic Pipe
Products
- D3035-2015.....Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE)
Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled
Outside Diameter
- D3261-2016.....Standard Specification for Butt Heat Fusion
Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for
Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing
- D3350-2017.....Standard Specification for Polyethylene
Plastics Pipe and Fittings Materials
- D5084-2016.....Standard Test Methods for Measurement of
Hydraulic Conductivity of Saturated Porous
Materials Using a Flexible Wall Permeator
- D5334-2014.....Standard Test Method for Determination of
Thermal Conductivity of Soil and Soft Rock by
Thermal Needle Probe Procedure
- E1-2014.....Standard Specification for ASTM Liquid-in-Glass
Thermometers
- F714-2019.....Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE)
Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter
- F876-2019.....Standard Specification for Crosslinked
Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
- F877-2018**.....Standard Specification for Crosslinked
Polyethylene (PEX) Hot- and Cold-Water
Distribution Systems

- F1055-2016.....Standard Specification for Electrofusion Type
Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter
Controlled Polyethylene and Crosslinked
Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe and Tubing
- F1105-2014.....Standard Practice for Preparing Aircraft
Cleaning Compounds, Liquid-Type, Temperature-
Sensitive, or Solvent-Based, for Storage
Stability Testing
- F2080-2018.....Standard Specification for Cold-Expansion
Fittings With Metal Compression-Sleeves for
Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe
- F. International Code Council (ICC)
- IBC-2018.....International Building Code
- IECC-2018.....International Energy Conservation Code
- IMC-2018.....International Mechanical Code
- G. International Ground Source Heat Pump Association (IGSHPA)
- #21035-2017.....Closed Loop/Geothermal Heat Pump Systems:
Design and Installation Standards
- H. International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
- 9001-2015.....Quality Management Systems - Requirements
- 13256-1998.....Water-source heat pumps -- Testing and rating
for performance -- Part 2: Water-to-water and
brine-to-water heat pumps
- 14531-2010.....Plastics pipes and fittings -- Crosslinked
polyethylene (PE-X) pipe systems for the
conveyance of gaseous fuels -- Metric series -
Specifications - Part 2: Fittings for heat-
fusion jointing
- I. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- 704-2016.....Standard System for the Identification of the
Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response
- J. National Sanitation Foundation/American National Standards Institute
NSF/ANSI:
- 14-2019.....Plastics Piping System Components and Related
Materials
- 60-2018.....Drinking Water Treatment Chemicals - Health
Effects

- 61-2016.....Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects
- 358-1-2017.....Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-Based Ground-Source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
- 372-2014.....Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Provide materials to fabricate ground-source heat pump systems in accordance with this section. At the Contractor's option, provide factory-prefabricated ground-source heat pump equipment packages which meet the requirements of this section.

2.2 DOWNHOLE HEAT EXCHANGER PIPING AND SPECIALTIES

- A. The acceptable pipe and fitting materials for the underground portion of the ground heat exchanger shall be polyethylene and cross-linked polyethylene.
- B. Polyethylene heat exchanger shall meet the following requirements:
 - 1. Pipe and heat fused materials shall be manufactured from virgin polyethylene extrusion compound material per ASTM D-2513, Section 4.1 and 4.2. Pipe shall be manufactured to outside diameters, wall thickness, and respective tolerances as specified in ASTM, D-3035 or F-714. Fittings shall be manufactured to diameters, wall thickness, and respective tolerances as specified in ASTM D-3261 for butt-fusion fittings, ASTM D-2683 for socket fusion fittings and ASTM F-1055 for electro-fusion fittings.
 - 2. The material shall have a Hydrostatic Design Basis of 11 MPa [1600 psi] at 23°C [73°F] per ASTM D-2837. The material shall be listed in PPI TR4 as either a PE 3408/3608 or PE 4710 piping formulation. The material shall be a high-density polyethylene compound having a minimum cell classification of PE345464C per ASTM D-3350.
 - 3. The total system pressure shall remain below the working pressure of the pipe.
 - 4. Sufficient information shall be permanently marked on the length of the pipe as defined by the appropriate ASTM pipe standard.
 - 5. Manufacturer shall supply a notarized document confirming compliance with the above standards.
- C. Cross-linked polyethylene heat exchanger shall be:

1. Of tubing manufactured by the high-pressure peroxide method (known as PEXa), and shall conform to ASTM F-876, and F-877 or D-2513. Polymer electro-fusion fittings for PEXa pipes of each dimensional specification shall conform to ASTM F-1055 or ISO 14531-2; metal cold compression-sleeve fittings shall conform to ASTM F-2080.
2. Of PEXa tubing material of high-density cross-linked polyethylene manufactured using the high-pressure peroxide method of cross-linking with a minimum degree of cross-linking of 75% when tested in accordance with ASTM D-2765, Method B. The tubing material designation code as defined in ASTM F-876 shall be PEX 1006 or PEX 1008.
3. Of polymer electron-fusion fittings manufactured using a material in accordance to IGSHPA 2014, Section 1C.2.2.
4. Of PEXa tubing manufactured in accordance to the dimensional specifications of ASTM F-876, and F-877 with a minimum working pressure rating of 1.1 MPa [160 psi] at 23°C [73.4°F].
5. Of fittings used with PEXa tubing intended for geothermal applications shall be polymer electro-fusion fittings or cold expansion compression-sleeve metal fittings. Polymer electro-fusion fittings shall conform to ASTM F-1055 or ISO 14531-2 whereas cold-expansion compression-sleeve fittings shall conform to ASTM F-2080, and shall have a minimum inside diameter of 82% of inside pipe diameter.
6. Required product standard information shall be marked on PEXa tubing and fittings as defined by the appropriate product standard specifications.

2.3 GROUND-SOURCE WATER-TO-AIR HEAT PUMP UNIT - NOT USED

2.4 GROUND-SOURCE WATER-TO-WATER HEAT PUMP UNIT

- A. Water source heat pumps used in conjunction with ground heat exchangers shall be appropriately ISO 13256-2 GLHP or GWHP certified.
- B. Hydronic systems with a total pump power exceeding 5 hp shall be variable flow and each water source heat pump shall have a two position isolating valve that closes when the compressor is not operating as per ASHRAE 90.1.
- C. The maximum and minimum ground heat exchanger system entering temperature shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommendations.

- D. The heat pump load flow (air or fluid) shall be within the manufacturer's allowed tolerances.
- E. Shall meet or exceed ENERGY STAR guidelines as necessary to achieve a 30% better energy efficiency than required by ASHRAE 90.1, and display label.
- F. Shall have integral power disconnects.
- G. Shall have digital control units which communicate directly with the facility's existing building automation system.
- H. Shall have galvanized steel cabinets with a minimum 0.5" thick, 1.75 lb/ft³ fiberglass insulation adhering to NFPA flame and smoke indices requirements.
- I. Water-to-Water Heat Exchanger:
 - 1. Heat exchanger shall be coaxial tube-in-tube type with steel outer tube and copper inner tube.
 - 2. Compressor shall be internally isolated scroll type with high and low pressure safety switches.

2.5 CIRCULATOR SIZING AND SYSTEM AND COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with Section 23 21 23, HYDRONIC PUMPS as well as the additional requirements below.
- B. The circulator wattage for closed loop systems shall not exceed 150 watts/ton.
- C. Proper sizing of the circulating pump shall be within the heat pump manufacturer's required flow rate range for the specified unit. Pumps shall be selected to operate within 5% of maximum efficiency. Circulating system shall also include lead and lag pumps.
- D. Particulate contaminants shall be removed from piping system prior to initial start-up.
- E. Start-up pressurization of the circuit to a minimum of 1.38 - 2.07 bar [20 to 30 psi] when installed in the summer with circulating water temperature of 20 - 30°C [70 - 90°F] and 2.76 - 3.45 bar [40 to 50 psi] when installed in the winter with circulating water temperature of 5 - 10°C [40 - 50°F] is required. Standing column designs of circulating systems that ensure a flooded volute and meet the manufacturer's requirements are excluded from these pressure requirements.
- F. The circulation system shall incorporate provisions for flow and temperature-sensing capability for testing the performance of the water

side of the heat pump system. Pressure and temperature-sensing ports shall be within 600 mm [24 inches] of the heat pump.

2.6 HEAT TRANSFER FLUID

- A. Shall meet local and state requirements and be acceptable by component manufacturers.
- B. Shall meet requirements of ICC IMC Section 1207.
- C. The ground-source heat pump system shall have a permanent label at the loop charging valve identifying the antifreeze type and concentration, service date, and the name and phone number of the service company.
- D. Heat transfer fluids used shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Food-grade propylene glycol-water solution at a concentration specified by the product manufacturer.
 - 2. Nontoxic compounds meeting IGSHA #21035, Sections 3B and 3C, and which are compatible with heat pump manufacturers' specifications.
- E. The fluid shall conform to the following requirements, and tests shall be performed in accordance with specified test methods on the fluid:
 - 1. Flash point shall not be lower than 90°C [194°F], determined in accordance with ASTM D-92.
 - 2. Five days biological oxygen demand (BOD) at 10°C [50°F] shall not exceed 0.2 gram oxygen per gram not be less than 0.1 gram oxygen per gram.
 - 3. Freezing point shall not exceed -8°C [+18°F], determined in accordance with ASTM D-1177.
 - 4. Toxicity shall not be less than LD 50 (oral-rats) of 5 grams per kilogram. The NFPA 704 hazardous material rating for health shall not be more than 1 (slight).
 - 5. The fluid, tested in accordance with ASTM F-1105, shall show neither separation from exposure to heat or cold, nor show an increase in turbidity.
- F. The fluid, as received by the purchaser, shall be homogeneous, uniform in color, and free from skins, lumps, and foreign materials detrimental to usage of the fluid.
- G. Water used to dilute the antifreeze heat transfer fluids shall be of potable quality. Final heat transfer fluid solutions shall not be flammable.
- H. Vertical Closed Loops for direct exchange geothermal system shall use only a non-ozone depleting refrigerant such as R-410A, R-407C, R-134,

or an equally safe refrigerant as specified by the heat pump manufacturer, as a heat transfer fluid.

I. Isolation Valves:

1. Each incoming loop leg shall be isolatable by manual shut off valves. The main loop supply and return lines shall contain manual or powered isolation valves. There shall be access ports in the main loop supply and return lines to allow for loop flushing.

J. Packaging and Identification:

1. Fluid shall be packaged in containers of a type and size agreed upon by purchaser and vendor, or shall be delivered in bulk, as ordered.
2. Containers of fluid shall be prepared for shipment in accordance with commercial practice and in compliance with applicable rules and regulations pertaining to the handling, packaging, and transportation of the fluid to ensure carrier acceptance and safe delivery.
3. An up-to-date Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) shall be supplied to each purchaser on request and concurrent with each delivery.

2.7 INSULATION

- A. Comply with Section 23 07 11, HVAC AND BOILER PLANT INSULATION.

2.8 INSTRUMENTATION

- A. Comply with Section 23 21 13, HYDRONIC PIPING, for pressure gauge and thermometer requirements. Use corrosion resistant materials for wetted parts of instruments.
- B. Pressure Gages: ASME B40.100, brass body, and minimum 90 mm [3.5 inches] diameter dial face.
- C. Thermometers: ASTM E1, dial type, liquid-filled tube and bulb.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install the ground-source heat pump system in accordance with this section and the printed instructions of the manufacturer.
- B. Prior to any excavation, trenching, or drilling, all existing buried utilities, drainage, and irrigation systems shall be located and flagged by the appropriate utility and Contractor representative.
- C. Vertical Closed Loop Source Well
1. Borehole Construction

- a. Loop installation shall be in accordance with IGSHPA Configuration C, and modeling to determine loop lengths shall be in accordance with IGSHPA Configuration B.
 - b. Surface water shall not be used as a source of water during the drilling of a Vertical Closed Loop borehole unless it is obtained from a municipal water supply system. Water used for drilling purposes shall be potable water that contains a free chlorine residual of no less than 10 milligrams per liter. Chlorine residual level shall be checked with chlorine test strips.
 - c. Boreholes shall have a minimum diameter such that it is large enough to accommodate the specified u-bend assembly and tremie pipe (grout pipe). The tremie pipe shall have a minimum nominal diameter of 25.4 mm [1.00 inch].
 - d. When penetrating more than one aquifer, all vertical boreholes shall be grouted bottom to top within 24 hours with a material that is certified by the National Sanitation Foundation International to ANSI/NSF 60 and has a known heat transfer capacity and an adequate sealing characteristic. The grouting material shall be classified as either a pliable (such as bentonite-based) or rigid (such as cement based) material.
2. Grouting - The following provisions are recommended for grouting (sealing) of the void space between the piping and borehole of a Vertical Closed Loop:
- a. Grouting is to be completed in a manner that prevents the introduction of surface or near surface contaminants into an aquifer, the interchange of water from different aquifers, or the loss of natural artesian pressure from an aquifer.
 - b. The void space between the piping and the borehole shall be grouted in a continuous operation from bottom to top using grout placement procedures set forth in the IGSHPA Grouting for Vertical Heat Pump Systems, Engineering Design and Field Manual, 2000.
 - c. A tremie pipe (grout pipe) not less than 25.4 mm [1.00 inch] nominal diameter shall be placed to the bottom of the borehole before grouting. The tremie pipe may be used to push the closed-loop piping into the borehole and shall be retracted as grouting

proceeds. The tremie pipe shall be removed from the borehole upon completion of grouting.

- d. Grout shall be pumped through the tremie pipe until the density of the grout flowing from the borehole at the ground surface equals the density of the grout being pumped in. Each borehole shall be grouted upon completion. The contractor shall monitor each borehole for settling for a period of not less than 12 hours. Additional grout shall be added and the monitoring period shall be extended until the settling of grout stops.
- e. Grout manufacturer's product specifications shall be followed when mixing and pumping grout.
- f. To minimize potential leaching of chemical constituents into an aquifer, grouts, drilling fluids, and additives to grouts and drilling fluids, including sand added to grout as thermal-enhancer for Vertical Closed Loop applications, shall meet ANSI 60.
- g. The maximum allowable permeability value of the set grout shall be 1×10^{-7} cm per second, as determined in accordance with ASTM D-5084./

D. Horizontal Closed Loop Source Well

1. Prevent any sharp-edged rocks from coming into contact with the pipe by removal of the rocks before backfilling. Use the IGSHPA Slinky backfilling procedures found in IGSHPA's Slinky Installation Guide to assure elimination of air pocket around the pipes. Return bends in narrow trenches shall be partially backfilled by hand to properly support the pipes and prevent kinking.

G. Piping installation shall be compliant with ICC IMC Section 1206.

H. Pipe Joining Methods:

1. The only acceptable methods for joining buried polyethylene pipe systems are: 1) a heat fusion process or 2) stab-type fittings quality controlled to provide a leak-free union between pipe ends that is stronger than the pipe itself.
2. Polyethylene pipe shall be heat fused by butt, socket, sidewall or electro-fusion in accordance with the piping manufacturer's procedures.
 - a. Heat-Fusion Joints: Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures

and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D-2683.

- b. Electro-fusion Joints: Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture, and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F-1055.
 - c. Stab-type Insert Fittings: Joint surfaces shall be clean and free of moisture. Pipe ends shall be chamfered and inserted into the fitting to full depth. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D-2513. Clamps shall be 304 stainless steel as a minimum.
3. Polyethylene fusion transition fittings with threads shall be used to adapt to copper. Polyethylene fusion transition fittings with threads or barbs shall be used to adapt to high strength hose. Barbed fittings utilizing mechanical clamps are not permitted to be connected directly to polyethylene pipe, with the exception of stab-type fittings as described above. All mechanical connections shall be accessible.
 4. PEXa tubing may not be butt-fused or socket-fused to fittings. Polymer electro-fusion fittings may be used with PEXa tubing when installed in accordance with manufacturer's published procedures. Cold-expansion compression-sleeve fittings may be used for all PEXa connections when installed according to the manufacturer's published procedures and are permitted to be direct buried with manufacturer approved corrosion covering.

I. Circulator System:

1. Loop charging valve handles shall be removed and/or the ports sufficiently plugged to prevent accidental discharge of system fluid and pressure.
2. Boiler-type service valves shall not be used.
3. Transition fittings between dissimilar materials shall be inside or accessible.
4. All indoor piping shall be insulated where condensate may cause damage.

5. All above ground piping subject to condensation or freezing shall be insulated.
 6. All pipes passing through walls shall be sleeved and sealed with non-hardening caulking material.
 7. Threaded fittings shall be visually inspected for quality and a thread sealant specified for use with the antifreeze selected shall be used.
- J. Any penetrations of walls or horizontal assemblies shall be compliant with ICC IBC Section 714.
- K. Instrumentation: Install instruments as recommended by the control manufacturers.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection: Prior to initial operation, inspect the piping system for conformance to drawings, specifications and ASME B31.1. Inspect the following information on each unit:
1. Manufacturer's name or trademark.
 2. Model name or number.
 3. Certifying agency label and rating.
- B. Tests: Provide equipment and apparatus required for performing tests. Correct defects disclosed by the tests and repeat tests. Conduct testing in the presence of the COR.
1. Polyethylene piping, tubing, fusion joints and loops shall be pretested before installation per IGSHPA 2014 Section 1E.
 2. Piping Test: Test new water piping for leakage using water at a pressure of at least 690 kPa (gage) [100 psig] per ICC IMC Section 1208 but no less than 150% of design operating pressure. Install a calibrated test pressure gage in the system to indicate loss in pressure occurring during the test. Apply and maintain the test pressure for one hour, during which time there shall be no evidence of leakage, as detected by a reduction in test pressure. Should a reduction occur, locate leaks, repair, and repeat the test.
 3. Operation Tests: Perform tests on mechanical systems, including pumps, controls, controlled valves, and other components in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.
 4. Test entire system in accordance with Section 23 05 93, TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FOR HVAC.

3.3 FOLLOW-UP VERIFICATION

- A. Upon completion of acceptance checks, settings, and tests, the Contractor shall show by demonstration in service that the ground-source heat exchange system and associated heat pump system are in good operating condition and properly performing the intended function.
- B. Shall pressure test the well field piping to verify no leaks in the system and shall occur prior to backfill or burring and element of the well field. No element of the well field horizontal distribution shall be buried until after successful acceptance testing via pressure test.

3.4 INSTRUCTION

- A. A complete set of operating instructions for the ground-source heat pump system shall be laminated or mounted under acrylic glass and installed in a frame near the equipment.
- B. Furnish the services of a factory-trained technician for one, 8-hour training period for instructing personnel in the maintenance and operation of the ground-source heat pump system, on the dates requested by the Owner.

3.5 COMMISSIONING - NOT USED

---END---

MEP DESIGN
NEW MEDICAL EXAMINER'S OFFICE
FOR THE COUNTY OF ORANGE

DIVISION 23 - SECTION 238150, THERMAL-ENHANCED BENTONITE GROUT

Provide thermally enhanced bentonite grout mixture. Thermally enhanced bentonite grout mixture shall be a high solids bentonite grout. The grout shall be mixed per the manufacturer instructions. Potable water shall be used for mixing the grout. Grout shall have a minimum solids content of 65 to 70 percent. The thermal conductivity of the grout mixture compound shall be a minimum of 1.73 W/mK 1.0 Btu/hr-ft-F or greater. The target grout weight shall be 1596 kg/m³ 13.3 lb/gallons to 1728 kg/m³ 14.4 lb/gallon. The thermally-enhanced bentonite grout shall have a thermal enhancement compound consisting of a high-grade silica compound that constitutes a minimum of 50 percent by weight of the aqueous slurry.

SECTION 260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
3. Sleeve seals.
4. Grout.
5. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:

1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

- C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
 - 4. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.

5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level.

- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
 - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260500

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
- 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
- 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 26 Section "Medium-Voltage Cables" for single-conductor and multiconductor cables, cable splices, and terminations for electrical distribution systems with 2001 to 35,000 V.
- 2. Division 26 Section "Undercarpet Electrical Power Cables" for flat cables for undercarpet installations.
- 3. Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
 - 2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
 - 3. General Cable Corporation.
 - 4. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
 - 5. Southwire Company.
- C. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- D. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THW or THHN-THWN
- E. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for armored cable, Type AC with ground wire.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
 - 3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
 - 4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
 - 5. Tyco Electronics Corp.
- C. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch (1.3- or 3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Calpico, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Co.
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

- D. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- F. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- G. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- I. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- J. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway

- K. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- L. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- M. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
- N. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **6 inches (150 mm)** of slack.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - 2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- M. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- N. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
 - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.

3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
 - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of fivetimes the applied force.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Steel slotted support systems.
 - 2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
 - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.

- c. ERICO International Corporation.
 - d. GS Metals Corp.
 - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - g. Wesanco, Inc.
3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least 1 surface.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
 - d. Seasafe, Inc.
 3. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 4. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
 5. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
- C. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Hilti Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, **stainless** steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 3) Hilti Inc.
 - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.

5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts
 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use **3000-psi (20.7-MPa)**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
- C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- D. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- F. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- G. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- H. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- I. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following raceway components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Custom enclosures and cabinets.
 2. For handholes and boxes for underground wiring, including the following:
 - a. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 - b. Frame and cover design.
 - c. Grounding details.
 - d. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
 - e. Joint details.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
1. Structural members in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures and cabinets and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the cabinet or enclosure will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will retain its enclosure characteristics, including its interior accessibility, after the seismic event."
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- F. Source quality-control test reports.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
 - B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Alflex Inc.
 - 3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
 - 4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
 - 5. Electri-Flex Co.
 - 6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
 - 7. Maverick Tube Corporation.
 - 8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
 - 9. Wheatland Tube Company.
- C. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- D. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.
- E. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- F. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- G. EMT: ANSI C80.3.
- H. FMC: Zinc-coated steel
- I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- J. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
 - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
 - 2. Fittings for EMT: Steeltypes.
 - 3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- K. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
 - 3. Arcco Corporation.
 - 4. CANTEX Inc.
 - 5. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
 - 6. Condux International, Inc.
 - 7. ElecSYS, Inc.
 - 8. Electri-Flex Co.
 - 9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 - 10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
 - 11. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
 - 12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- C. ENT: NEMA TC 13.
- D. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. LFNC: UL 1660.
- F. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- G. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

2.3 OPTICAL FIBER/COMMUNICATIONS CABLE RACEWAY AND FITTINGS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Arcco Corporation.
 - 2. Endot Industries Inc.
 - 3. IPEX Inc.
 - 4. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
- C. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for plenum installation.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - 2. Hoffman.
 - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric.
- C. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Wireway Covers: Hinged type
- F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Hoffman.
 - 2. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
- C. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with no holes or knockouts. Cover is gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections are flanged, with stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- D. Description: PVC plastic, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with snap-on cover and mechanically coupled connections with plastic fasteners.
- E. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

2.6 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect].
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - b. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
 - c. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.
- B. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two-piece construction, manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Butler Manufacturing Company; Walker Division.
 - b. Enduro Systems, Inc.; Composite Products Division.
 - c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems Division.
 - d. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 - e. Panduit Corp.
 - f. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
 - g. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
 4. Hoffman.
 5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
 6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
 7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
 8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
 9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.

10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
 11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
 13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast or sheet metal rectangular.
- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- J. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic, finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.
- K. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
- 2.8 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS
- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch (1.3- or 3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

2.9 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Calpico, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Co.
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- D. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
 - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit
 - 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: Rigid steel conduit
 - 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried.

4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit. Includes raceways in the following locations:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit.
7. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: EMT
8. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: EMT.
9. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
10. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: **1/2-inch (16-mm)** trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

F. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.

- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.
- I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- K. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
- L. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
 - 1. 3/4-Inch (19-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
 - 2. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
 - 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

- M. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- N. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
1. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **155 deg F (86 deg C)** > temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.
 - d. Attics: **135 deg F (75 deg C)** temperature change.
 2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change.
 3. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.
- O. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- P. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
- Q. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- R. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits, placing them 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of conduit.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.
- E. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - 2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:
 - 1. Time switches.
 - 2. Outdoor and indoor photoelectric switches.
 - 3. Indoor occupancy sensors.
 - 4. Outdoor motion sensors.
 - 5. Lighting contactors.
 - 6. Emergency shunt relays.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- B. PIR: Passive infrared.
- C. DLM: Digital Lighting Management

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.
 - 1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations and settings for lighting control devices.
2. Operation and Maintenance Manual:
 - a. Include approved Shop Drawings and Product Data.
 - b. Include Sequence of Operation, identifying operation for each room or space.
 - c. Include manufacturer's maintenance information.
 - d. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on device programming and setup.

1.5 DESIGN / PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Digital Lighting Management Systems shall accommodate the square-footage coverage requirements for each area controlled, utilizing room controllers, digital occupancy sensors, switches, daylighting sensors and accessories that suit the required lighting and electrical system parameters.
- B. System shall conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- C. System shall comply with FCC emission standards specified in part 15, sub-part J for commercial and residential application.
- D. System shall be listed under UL sections 916 and/or 508.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated or a comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Hubbell Lighting.
 2. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
 3. Sensor Switch, Inc.

4. Watt Stopper (The).
- B. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, solid-state units with a separate relay unit.
1. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when covered area is occupied and off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 2. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
 3. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
 4. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2- inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 5. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
 6. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
 7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.
 8. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on-off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
 4. Dimming control signal: 0-10VDC, sinks up to 50mA for control of compatible ballasts and drivers (12 if each sources 2mA)
 5. Basis of design: Wattstopper DW-311

2.2 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. Hubbell Lighting.
3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
4. Watt Stopper (The).

B. Description: DLM Digital room controllers mounted to junction box with physically separate 120/277 volt wiring compartment from low voltage control wiring. Provide low voltage digital communication to control devices as shown on drawings and schedules. Supplemental power packs shall be provided as required for multiple control devices. This equipment shall be identified in shop drawing submission. Dimmable relay modules shall be provided where indicated. Relay modules shall contain up to 4 relays. Relay modules shall be labeled with room number that relays control lighting within

1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.

2.3 SEGMENT MANAGER

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Wattstopper LMSM-3E or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. Hubbell Lighting.
3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
4. Watt Stopper (The).

B. Digital Lighting Management system shall include at least one segment manager to manage network communication. It shall be capable of serving up a graphical user interface via a standard web browser utilizing either unencrypted TCP/IP traffic via a configurable port (default is 80) or 256 bit AES encrypted SSL TCP/IP traffic via a configurable port (default is 443).

C. Each segment manager shall have integral support for at least three segment networks. Segment networks may alternately be connected to the segment manger via external BACnet-to-IP interface routers and switches, using standard Ethernet structured wiring. Each router shall accommodate one segment network. Provide the quantity of routers and switches as shown on the Drawings.

2.4 PROGRAMMING, CONFIGURATION AND DOCUMENTATION SOFTWARE

A. PC-native application for optional programming of detailed technician-level parameter information for all DLM products, including all parameters not accessible via BACnet and the handled IR configuration tool. Software must be capable of accessing room-level parameter information locally within the room when connected via a USB programming adapter, or

globally for many segment networks simultaneously utilizing standard BACnet/IP communication.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads, to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
2. Identify circuits or luminaries controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
2. Operational Test: Verify operation of each lighting control device, and adjust time delays.

B. Lighting control devices that fail tests and inspections are defective work.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls."

B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 262200 - LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1000 kVA:
 - 1. Distribution transformers.
 - 2. Buck-boost transformers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transformers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- E. Source quality-control test reports.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91, "Test Code for Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

- B. Coordinate installation of wall-mounting and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. ACME Electric Corporation; Power Distribution Products Division.
 2. Challenger Electrical Equipment Corp.; a division of Eaton Corp.
 3. Controlled Power Company.
 4. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
 5. Federal Pacific Transformer Company; Division of Electro-Mechanical Corp.
 6. General Electric Company.
 7. Hammond Co.; Matra Electric, Inc.
 8. Magnetek Power Electronics Group.
 9. Micron Industries Corp.
 10. Myers Power Products, Inc.
 11. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 12. Sola/Hevi-Duty.
 13. Square D; Schneider Electric.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
- B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.
- C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
 1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
 2. Coil Material: Copper.

2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

- A. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- B. Provide transformers that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Cores: One leg per phase.

- D. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
 - 1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
- E. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
- F. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
 - 1. Finish Color: Gray.
- G. Taps for Transformers Smaller Than 3 kVA: None.
- H. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: One 5 percent tap above and one 5 percent tap below normal full capacity
- I. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity
- J. Insulation Class: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of [150] [115] [80] deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.
- K. Energy Efficiency for Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
 - 1. Complying with NEMA TP 1, Class 1 efficiency levels.
 - 2. Tested according to NEMA TP 2.
- L. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.
 - 1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor.
 - 2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.
- M. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
 - 1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
 - 2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.
 - 3. Shield Effectiveness:
 - a. Capacitance between Primary and Secondary Windings: Not to exceed 33 picofarads over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.
 - b. Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 120 dBA at 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minimum of minus 65 dBA at 1.5 to 100 kHz.
 - c. Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 52 dBA at 1.5 to 10 kHz.

- N. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.
- O. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for coil and core.
- P. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Minimum of 3 dBA less than NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

2.4 BUCK-BOOST TRANSFORMERS

- A. Description: Self-cooled, two-winding dry type, rated for continuous duty and with wiring terminals suitable for connection as autotransformer. Transformers shall comply with NEMA ST 1 and shall be listed and labeled as complying with UL 506 or UL 1561.
- B. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
 - 1. Finish Color: Gray.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.91.
- B. Factory Sound-Level Tests: Conduct sound-level tests on equipment for this Project.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.
- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.

- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-mounting transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
 - 1. Brace wall-mounting transformers as specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems.
- B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- C. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- E. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.
- F. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.

1. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
 2. Perform 2 follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at 4 months and the other at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
 3. Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.
- G. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.
- B. Connect buck-boost transformers to provide nameplate voltage of equipment being served, plus or minus 5 percent, at secondary terminals.
- C. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 16461

SECTION 262413 - SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
 - 2. Transient voltage suppression devices.
 - 3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 4. Instrumentation.
 - 5. Control power.
 - 6. Accessory components and features.
 - 7. Identification.
 - 8. Mimic bus.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Switchboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of switchboard, overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.

4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
 6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
 7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
 10. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
 11. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified material and finish, for color selection.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- E. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- F. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
 2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 3. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Comply with NEMA PB 2.
- G. Comply with NFPA 70.
- H. Comply with UL 891.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
- B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.
- C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NECA 400.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.
- B. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

- a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- C. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, usual service conditions, as follows:
1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- D. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
 2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.

3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than one of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
 - 5.
- B. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
 1. Main Devices: Panel mounted.
 2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
 3. Sections front and rear aligned.
- C. Front- and Side-Accessible Switchboards:
 1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
 2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
 3. Sections front and rear aligned.
- D. Front- and Rear-Accessible Switchboards:
 1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
 2. Branch Devices: Panel and fixed, individually mounted.
 3. Sections front and rear aligned.
- E. Nominal System Voltage: 480Y/277 V.
- F. Main-Bus Continuous: 2000 A.
- G. Seismic Requirements: Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

- H. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- I. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.
- J. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.
- K. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.
- L. Cubical Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.
 - 1. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point
 - 2. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in switchboard.
- M. Utility Metering Compartment: Fabricated, barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealed door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.
- N. Customer Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks.
- O. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.
- P. Removable, Hinged Rear Doors and Compartment Covers: Secured by captive thumb screws, for access to rear interior of switchboard.
- Q. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
- R. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:
 - 1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
 - 2. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
 - 3. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
 - 4. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
 - 5. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.
- S. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.

1. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver-plated, with tin-plated aluminum or copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
 2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy with tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.
 3. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver-plated, or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy.
 4. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with mechanical connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
 5. Ground Bus: Minimum-size required by UL 891, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with mechanical connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors. For busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.
 6. Main Phase Buses and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
 7. Neutral Buses: 50 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
 8. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
 9. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
- T. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.
- U. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.
- V. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

2.2 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.

- c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
 6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 8. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
 - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 - f. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 - i. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 80 percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.
1. Fixed circuit-breaker mounting.
 2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
 3. Standard-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 5. Remote trip indication and control.
 6. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 7. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 8. Control Voltage: 120-V ac.
- C. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high clamping pressure on the switch blade after it engages the stationary contacts.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Boltswitch, Inc.
 - b. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - c. Pringle Electrical Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
 2. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
 3. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.
 - a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
 - b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.
 4. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, single pole, double throw, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
 6. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.
 - a. Configuration: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
 - c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
 - d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).
 7. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.

- D. High-Pressure, Butt-Type Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses butt-type contacts and a spring-charged mechanism to produce and maintain high-pressure contact when switch is closed.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 2. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
 3. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.
 - a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
 - b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.
 4. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, single pole, double throw, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
 6. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.
 - a. Configuration: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
 - c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
 - d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).
 7. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.
- E. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
- F. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."

2.3 INSTRUMENTATION

- A. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:

- a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - e. Megavars: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
 - i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
 - j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
- B. Ammeters, Voltmeters, and Power-Factor Meters: ANSI C39.1.
1. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter or 6 inches (150 mm) square, flush or semiflush, with antiparallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.
 2. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.
- C. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.
1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
 2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.
- D. Feeder Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for indicated feeder circuits only.
- E. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:
1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
 2. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
 3. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
 4. Potential indicating lamps.
 5. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
 6. Four-dial clock register.
 7. Integral demand indicator.
 8. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
 9. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
 10. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
 11. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
 12. Appropriate multiplier tag.
- F. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Suitable for use with switchboard watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
3. Cyclometer.
4. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
5. Positive chart drive mechanism.
6. Capillary pen holding a minimum of one month's ink supply.
7. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
8. Capable of indicating and recording five-minute integrated demand of totalized system.

2.4 CONTROL POWER

- A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.
- B. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit.
- C. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each control-power transformer at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.
- D. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
- E. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.
- C. Portable Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Floor-supported, roller-based, elevating carriage arranged for movement of circuit breakers in and out of compartments for present and future circuit breakers.
- D. Overhead Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Mounted at top front of switchboard, with hoist and lifting yokes matching each drawout circuit breaker.
- E. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on a photoengraved nameplate.
 - 1. Nameplate: At least 0.032-inch- (0.813-mm-) thick anodized aluminum, located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.
- B. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on an engraved laminated-plastic (Gravoply) nameplate.
 - 1. Nameplate: At least 0.0625-inch- (1.588 mm-) thick laminated plastic (Gravoply), located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.
- C. Mimic Bus: Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram.
- D. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.
- E. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.
- F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NECA 400.
- B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NECA 400.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.
- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices, transient voltage suppression devices, and instrumentation.
1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- H. Install spare-fuse cabinet.
- I. Comply with NECA 1.
- 3.3 CONNECTIONS
- A. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Division 26 Section "Enclosed Bus Assemblies." Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Division 26 Section "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.
- 3.4 IDENTIFICATION
- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front and rear panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- F. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units.

END OF SECTION 262413

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.

2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- F. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding **minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C** to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.

3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and Ground Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets.
 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

- a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.
2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
 4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 6. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
 - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
 7. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
- C. Incoming Mains Location: Top and bottom.
- D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 3. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
 4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
 5. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 6. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.

7. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
- F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices, listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.
- I. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than **36 inches (914 mm)** high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
- G. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
- H. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.

2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
 2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.
- F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- G. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
6. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
8. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
 - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - e. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - f. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 - h. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - i. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
 - j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - k. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
 - l. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
 - m. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - n. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

- C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
 - 1. Fuses, and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."
 - 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories: Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
 - 3. Auxiliary Contacts: One normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation.

2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
 - 2. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.

5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Mount top of trim **90 inches (2286 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- H. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- I. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- J. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- K. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- F. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated. Circuit changes made during load balancing may negate color-coding of phases and circuits. If load balancing proves undesirable or is to be performed by others, delete paragraph below.

- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
 4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
 - 2. Twist-locking receptacles.
 - 3. Receptacles with integral surge suppression units.
 - 4. Wall-box motion sensors.
 - 5. Isolated-ground receptacles.
 - 6. Hospital-grade receptacles.
 - 7. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
 - 8. Solid-state fan speed controls.
 - 9. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
 - 10. Communications outlets.
 - 11. Pendant cord-connector devices.
 - 12. Cord and plug sets.
 - 13. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for workstation outlets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
 - 1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described in subparagraphs below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Service/Power Poles: One for every 10, but no fewer than one.
 - 2. Floor Service Outlet Assemblies: One for every 10, but no fewer than one.
 - 3. Poke-Through, Fire-Rated Closure Plugs: One for every five floor service outlets installed, but no fewer than two.
 - 4. TVSS Receptacles: One for every 10 of each type installed, but no fewer than two of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
 2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
 3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
 4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
 - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
 - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).
- B. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; CR 5253IG.
 - b. Leviton; 5362-IG.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; IG6300.
 3. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- C. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Cooper; TR8300.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL8300SG.
 - c. Leviton; 8300-SGG.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 63H.
3. Description: Labeled to comply with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Straight blade, **feed**-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; GF20.
 - b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; IG5362BLS.
 - b. Hubbell; IG5362SA.
 - c. Leviton; 5380-IG.
 3. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
 4. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
 5. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- D. Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; IG2310.
 - b. Leviton; 2310-IG.
3. Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.4 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.
 1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
 2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

2.5 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
 1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
 2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.6 SNAP SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).

- b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
- c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
- d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).

C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:

- 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 2221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
 - b. Hubbell; HPL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
 - c. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-PLR for 120 V.
- 3. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

D. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.

- 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 1995.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
 - c. Leviton; 1257.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.

2.7 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

- A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
- B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
- C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
 - 1. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "OFF."
- D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.8 FAN SPEED CONTROLS

- A. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.
1. Continuously adjustable slider.
 2. Three-speed adjustable slider, 1.5 A.

2.9 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 6111 for 120 V, 6117 for 277 V.
 - b. Hubbell; WS1277.
 - c. Leviton; ODS 10-ID.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; WS3000.
 - e. Watt Stopper (The); WS-200.
3. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).

B. Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; AT120 for 120 V, AT277 for 277 V.
 - b. Leviton; ODS 15-ID.
3. Description: Adaptive-technology type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 20 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).

C. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; ATP1600WRP.
 - b. Leviton; ODWWV-IRW.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; WA1001.
 - d. Watt Stopper (The); CX-100.

3. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).

D. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; ATD1600WRP.
 - b. Leviton; ODW12-MRW.
 - c. Watt Stopper (The); DT-200.
3. Description: Dual technology, with both passive-infrared- and ultrasonic-type sensing, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, and a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).

E. Wide-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; ATP120HBRP.
 - b. Leviton; ODWHB-IRW.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; HS1001.
 - d. Watt Stopper (The); CX-100-3.
3. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 150-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).

2.10 COMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

A. Telephone Outlet:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 3560-6.
 - b. Leviton; 40649.
3. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for terminating 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.

B. Combination TV and Telephone Outlet:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 3562.
 - b. Leviton; 40595.
3. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e; and one Type F coaxial cable connector.

2.11 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting.
 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel
 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.12 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
- B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
- C. Service Plate: Round, die-cast aluminum with satin finish.
- D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening

2.13 MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 2. Wiremold Company (The).
- C. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
- D. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

- E. Wire: No. 12 AWG.

2.14 SERVICE POLES

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -wired units to extend power and voice and data communication from distribution wiring concealed in ceiling to devices or outlets in pole near floor.
 1. Poles: Nominal 2.5-inch- (65-mm-) square cross section, with height adequate to extend from floor to at least 6 inches (150 mm) above ceiling, and with separate channels for power wiring and voice and data communication cabling.
 2. Mounting: Ceiling trim flange with concealed bracing arranged for positive connection to ceiling supports; with pole foot and carpet pad attachment.
 3. Finishes: Manufacturer's standard painted finish and trim combination] [Satin-anodized aluminum.
 4. Wiring: Sized for minimum of five No. 12 AWG power and ground conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 3 or 5 voice and data communication cables.
 5. Power Receptacles: Two duplex, 20-A, heavy-duty, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R units.
 6. Voice and Data Communication Outlets: Two RJ-45 Category 5e jacks.

2.15 FINISHES

- A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 2. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.

4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
 - 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.
- B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
 - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
 - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 - 6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:
 - 1. Automatic transfer switches.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 21 Section "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" for automatic transfer switches for fire pumps.
 - 2. Division 21 Section "Electric-Drive, Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps" for automatic transfer switches for fire pumps.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
 - 1. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, bypass/isolation switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

- b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
- 1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
 - 2. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs within a response period of less than eight hours from time of notification.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic transfer switches through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.
- G. Comply with NFPA 99.

- H. Comply with NFPA 110.
- I. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Contactor Transfer Switches:
 - a. AC Data Systems, Inc.
 - b. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
 - c. Emerson; ASCO Power Technologies, LP.
 - d. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
 - e. GE Zenith Controls.
 - f. Kohler Power Systems; Generator Division.
 - g. Onan/Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
 - h. Russelectric, Inc.
 - i. Spectrum Detroit Diesel.
 - 2. Transfer Switches Using Molded-Case Switches or Circuit Breakers:
 - a. AC Data Systems, Inc.
 - b. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer.

- c. GE Zenith Controls.
- d. Hubbell Industrial Controls, Inc.
- e. Lake Shore Electric Corporation.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
 - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
- C. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- D. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- E. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.
- F. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are not acceptable.
 - 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 - 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
- G. Neutral Switching. Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.
- H. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.
- J. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.
- K. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.

1. Float type rated 2 A.
 2. Ammeter to display charging current.
 3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.
- L. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- M. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable tape markers are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
- N. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 3R, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- B. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- D. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval is adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- F. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- G. Transfer Switches Based on Molded-Case-Switch Components: Comply with NEMA AB 1, UL 489, and UL 869A.
- H. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Include the following functions and characteristics:
1. Fully automatic make-before-break operation.

2. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
 3. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.
 - a. Initiation occurs without active control of generator.
 - b. Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the 2 sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.
 4. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.
- I. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so it occurs only when the two sources are synchronized in phase. Relay compares phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiates transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer is initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
- J. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay: Controls designate starters so they disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters is through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Time delay for reconnecting individual motor loads is adjustable between 1 and 60 seconds, and settings are as indicated. Relay contacts handling motor-control circuit inrush and seal currents are rated for actual currents to be encountered.
- K. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator has a programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Pause is adjustable from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum and factory set for 0.5 second, unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Pause is disabled unless both sources are live.
- L. Automatic Transfer-Switch Features:
1. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 2. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes to automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.

7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is not available.

2.4 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR SYSTEM

- A. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches. Annunciation shall include the following:
 1. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
 2. Switch position.
 3. Switch in test mode.
 4. Failure of communication link.
- B. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
 1. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
 2. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.

3. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

2.5 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR AND CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Functional Description: Include the following functions for indicated transfer switches:
1. Indication of sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
 2. Indication of switch position.
 3. Indication of switch in test mode.
 4. Indication of failure of digital communication link.
 5. Key-switch or user-code access to control functions of panel.
 6. Control of switch-test initiation.
 7. Control of switch operation in either direction.
 8. Control of time-delay bypass for transfer to normal source.
- B. Malfunction of annunciator, annunciation and control panel, or communication link shall not affect functions of automatic transfer switch. In the event of failure of communication link, automatic transfer switch automatically reverts to stand-alone, self-contained operation. Automatic transfer-switch sensing, controlling, or operating function shall not depend on remote panel for proper operation.
- C. Remote Annunciation and Control Panel: Solid-state components. Include the following features:
1. Controls and indicating lights grouped together for each transfer switch.
 2. Label each indicating light control group. Indicate transfer switch it controls, location of switch, and load it serves.
 3. Digital Communication Capability: Matched to that of transfer switches supervised.
 4. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

- B. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 - 1. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 4 inches (100 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- C. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Identify components according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- C. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages

and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

- a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
5. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
- a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
 - f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
 - g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
- a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- D. Testing Agency's Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
- a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.

4. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
 - f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
 - g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
 5. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
 - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- E. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- F. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- G. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- H. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

- B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

SECTION 265100 - INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
2. Emergency lighting units.
3. Exit signs.
4. Lighting fixture supports.
5. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 26 Section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for manual wall-box dimmers for incandescent lamps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BF: Ballast factor.
- B. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- C. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
 2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
 3. Ballast, including BF.
 4. Energy-efficiency data.
 5. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 6. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 7. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
 8. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
 - a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by manufacturer.
 - b. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each lighting fixture indicated in the Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule. Each Sample shall include the following:
1. Lamps and ballasts, installed.
 2. Cords and plugs.
 3. Pendant support system.
- D. Installation instructions.
- E. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Lighting fixtures.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extends to within 12 inches (305 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
5. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
6. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Air outlets and inlets.
 - b. Speakers.
 - c. Sprinklers.
 - d. Smoke and fire detectors.
 - e. Occupancy sensors.
 - f. Access panels.
7. Perimeter moldings.

- F. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
- G. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, from manufacturer.
- H. Field quality-control reports.
- I. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
- J. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910, complying with the IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. FM Global Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

- F. Mockups: Provide interior lighting fixtures for room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of fixtures for mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approved fixtures in mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS

- A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
- B. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
- C. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.

- D. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- E. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- F. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- G. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- H. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - a. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. UV stabilized.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12, etc.), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple, etc.), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
 - c. Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
 - d. Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start, etc.) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
 - e. ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
 - f. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
- J. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:

1. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
 - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
 - c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 - f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
 - g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
4. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
 - a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in [**LED power supply**] [**ballast**] [**battery**] for power connection to remote unit.
 - b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

C. Self-Luminous Signs: Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for [**10**] [**15**] [**20**] years.

D. Self-Luminous Signs: Using strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Provide with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

2.4 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.

1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
3. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
4. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
5. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
6. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
7. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of [15] <Insert period> minutes when power is restored after an outage.
8. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Lighting fixtures:

1. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install lamps in each luminaire.

B. Temporary Lighting: If it is necessary, and approved by Architect, to use permanent luminaires for temporary lighting, install and energize the minimum number of luminaires necessary. When construction is sufficiently complete, remove the temporary luminaires, disassemble, clean thoroughly, install new lamps, and reinstall.

C. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and fixture shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.

D. Lay-in Ceiling Lighting Fixtures Supports: Use grid as a support element.

1. Install ceiling support system rods or wires[, **independent of the ceiling suspension devices,**] for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from lighting fixture corners.
2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.

3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch (20-mm) metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.

E. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

F. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.

G. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
- B. Verify that self-luminous exit signs are installed according to their listing and the requirements in NFPA 101.
- C. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Burn-in all lamps that require specific aging period to operate properly, prior to occupancy by Owner. Burn-in fluorescent and compact fluorescent lamps intended to be dimmed, for at least 100 hours at full voltage.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting aimable luminaires to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required after dark.
 - 1. Adjust aimable luminaires in the presence of Architect.

END OF SECTION 265100

SECTION 265600 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
- 2. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
- 3. Poles and accessories.
- 4. Luminaire lowering devices.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting" for exterior luminaires normally mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- C. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- D. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- E. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
- F. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.
- G. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

1.4 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

- A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
- B. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2224 N), distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.

- C. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.
- D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
 - 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 49.2 feet (15 m) in height is **100 mph (45 m/s)**.
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Minimum Design Life: 50 years.
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.
 - 2. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is **100 mph (45 m/s)** .
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
 - 1. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
 - 2. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
 - 3. Details of installation and construction.
 - 4. Luminaire materials.
 - 5. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.
 - a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
 - b. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - 6. Photoelectric relays.
 - 7. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
 - 8. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
 - 9. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
 - 10. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
 - 11. Anchor bolts for poles.
 - 12. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
 3. Design calculations, certified by a qualified professional engineer, indicating strength of screw foundations and soil conditions on which they are based.
 4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For products designated for sample submission in the Exterior Lighting Device Schedule. Each Sample shall include lamps and ballasts.
- D. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.
- E. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
- B. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.

- C. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below ground line.
- D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.
- E. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
 - 2. LER Tests Fluorescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
 - 3. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- B. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.

- C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- D. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
- G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- I. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
- J. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- K. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- L. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- M. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
 - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
 - b. Color: Match Architect's sample of manufacturer's standard color.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- N. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: Black.
- O. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
1. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
 - a. "USES ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
 - c. Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
 - d. Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
 - e. ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
 - f. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.
1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
 2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
 - 1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 - 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
- D. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws. Provide on all, except wood poles.
- E. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- F. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
- G. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4-M.

2.4 STEEL POLES

- A. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig (317 MPa); one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.
 - 1. Shape: Round, straight.
 - 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- B. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as pole.
- C. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
 - 1. Adapter fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole mounted adapter, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
 - 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
 - 3. Match pole material and finish.
- D. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- E. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads, positioned for 15-inch (381-mm) vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole; first step at elevation 10 feet (3 m) above finished grade.

- F. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weathertight, 3-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm) handhole located at midpoint of pole with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.
- G. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- H. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported cable times a 5.0 safety factor.
- I. Platform for Lamp and Ballast Servicing: Factory fabricated of steel with finish matching that of pole.
- J. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- K. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- L. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
 - 2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
 - 3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

2.5 ALUMINUM POLES

- A. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6 with access handhole in pole wall.
- B. Poles: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 5052-H34 marine sheet alloy with access handhole in pole wall.
 - 1. Shape: Round, straight.
 - 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- C. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

09/07

- D. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- E. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, with pole and adapter fittings of cast aluminum. Adapter fitting welded to pole and bracket, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
 - 1. Tapered oval cross section, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
 - 2. Finish: Same as pole.
- F. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- G. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 - 3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - 4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 DECORATIVE POLES

- A. Pole Material:
 - 1. Cast ductile iron.
 - 2. Cast gray iron, according to ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30.
 - 3. Cast aluminum.
 - 4. Cast concrete.
 - 5. Spun concrete.
 - 6. Steel tube, covered with closed-cell polyurethane foam, with a polyethylene exterior.
- B. Mounting Provisions:
 - 1. Bolted to concrete foundation.
 - 2. Embedded.
- C. Fixture Brackets:
 - 1. Cast ductile iron.

2. Cast gray iron.
3. Cast aluminum.

2.7 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex Receptacle: 120 V, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly complying with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for ground-fault circuit-interrupter type.
 1. Surface mounted or Recessed, **12 inches (300 mm)** above finished grade.
 2. Nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, weatherproof in use, cover, that when mounted results in NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure.
 3. With cord opening.
 4. With lockable hasp and latch that complies with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
- B. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
- C. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
 1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.

3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
 1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: **60 inches (1520 mm)**.
 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: **10 feet (3 m)**.
 3. Trees: **15 feet (5 m)** from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
 3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- E. Embedded Poles with Tamped Earth Backfill: Set poles to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
1. Dig holes large enough to permit use of tampers in the full depth of hole.
 2. Backfill in 6-inch (150-mm) layers and thoroughly tamp each layer so compaction of backfill is equal to or greater than that of undisturbed earth.
- F. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
1. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
 2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
 3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
 4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
- G. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
- H. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
- B. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTING LUMINAIRES

- A. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
 - 3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
 - 1. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
 - a. IESNA LM-5, "Photometric Measurements of Area and Sports Lighting Installations."

- b. IESNA LM-50, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Lighting Installations."
 - c. IESNA LM-52, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Sign Installations."
 - d. IESNA LM-64, "Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas."
 - e. IESNA LM-72, "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data."
- D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaire lowering devices.

END OF SECTION 265600

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding/Earthing and bonding for Low Voltage systems such as telecommunications and audiovisual systems.
2. Primary Bonding Busbar (PBB)
3. Secondary Bonding Busbar (SBB)
4. Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB)
5. Backbone Bonding Conductor (BBC)
6. Rack Bonding Busbar (RBB)
7. Telecommunications Equipment Bonding Conductor (TEBC)
8. Telecommunications bonding conductor (TBC)
9. Pathways.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 26 Section *Grounding and Bonding* for building systems with which to interface with Work of this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFC: Above Finished Ceiling
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. Bonding: Permanent joining of metallic parts to form an electrically conductive path to ensure electrical continuity and capacity to safely conduct current.
- D. Common Bonding Network (CBN) – The principal means for affecting bonding and earthing inside a building.
- E. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- F. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- G. Ground/Earth – A conducting connection, whether intentional or incidental, by which an electric circuit or equipment is connected to ground, or to some conducting body of relatively large extent that serves in place of the ground.
- H. HC: Horizontal Cross Connect
- I. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- J. LAN: Local Area Network.

- K. MC: Main Cross-connect
- L. NEBS: Network Equipment Building System.
 - 1. NEBS Level 3: Equipment complies with strict specifications for fire suppression, thermal margin testing, vibration resistance including seismic, airflow patterns, acoustic limits, failover and partial operational requirements such as chassis fan failures, failure severity levels, RF emissions and tolerances, and testing/certification requirements.
- M. NEC: National Electric Code
- N. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- O. TR: Telecommunications Room
- P. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide a complete and functioning Telecommunications grounding/earthing system inclusive of all hardware, software and training to meet or exceed the performance features outlined in this document.
- B. Purpose: Telecommunications grounding/earthing system creates a low impedance path to earth ground to prevent damage to equipment and disruption in service due to electrical surges and transient voltages.
- C. Grounding/earthing system comply with following:
 - 1. NEC and local electrical codes
 - 2. ANSI/TIA-607-D or latest version.
 - 3. ISO/IEC 30129
 - 4. IEEE 1100
- D. Secondary Bonding Busbar (SBB): Ground/earth each telecommunications space to the Primary Bonding Busbar (PBB) located at the telecommunications entrance room.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with Division 01330 Section *Submittal Procedures*.
- B. Submittal data is to be submitted electronically. Each submittal shall contain the below in the following order:
 - 1. Cover Sheet.
 - a. Include name of supplying contractor and project name.
 - 2. Detailed Bill of Materials.
 - a. Include a listing of: component quantities, equipment manufacturer, model number, and description of each component being supplied, and the specification paragraph or drawing sheet that corresponds to the product. Failure to provide this information will result in the rejection of submittals.
 - 3. Product Data.

- a. Include a catalog sheet per product of equipment listed in the Detailed Bill of Materials, in the exact order as the Detailed Bill of Materials. Each catalog sheet shall describe mechanical, electrical and functional equipment specifications. The catalog sheet must also include an image of the product. Photocopy duplications of the manufacturer's original equipment catalog sheets will be allowed as long as they provide adequate clarity of both the printed word and graphics/pictures. If more than one product is shown on the catalog sheet the intended product must be denoted by either an arrow or highlight.

C. Shop Drawings

1. Wiring diagram to show grounding schematics, including the following: Busbars and bonding backbone. Detail mounting assemblies and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
2. Show the relationship of TR's, the pathway between them, and cable connectivity to be installed.
3. Drawings should be at project standard scale clearly legible.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements, grounding/earthing and bonding systems:

1. TIA/EIA
 - a. TIA-942 Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard for Data Centers
 - b. J-STD-607-D Commercial Building Grounding/Bonding Requirements
 - c. TIA/EIA-606 Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
2. IEEE
 - a. Std 1100 IEEE Recommend Practice for Powering and Grounding Electronic Equipment (IEEE Emerald Book)
3. Telcordia:
 - a. NEBS 3 as defined for RBOC-CO compliance.
4. NFPA
 - a. NFPA-70 National Electric Code (NEC)

B. Testing Procedures:

1. NEBS GR-63-CORE: Network Equipment-Building System Requirements: Physical Protection.
2. NEBS GR-1089-CORE: Electromagnetic Compatibility and Electrical Safety -- Generic Criteria for Network Telecommunications Equipment

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers, Grounding/Earthing Systems:

1. Panduit
2. Chatsworth
3. Harger
4. Burndy

5. Ortronics/Legrand
6. Erico

B. Acceptable Manufacturers, Telecommunications Bonding Busbars:

1. Panduit
2. Chatsworth
3. Harger
4. Burndy
5. Ortronics/Legrand
6. Erico

C. Acceptable Manufacturers, Rack Bonding Kits:

1. Panduit
2. Chatsworth
3. Harger
4. Burndy
5. Ortronics/Legrand
6. Erico

2.2 GROUNDING/EARTHING AND BONDING

A. General:

1. Conductors: Provide copper grounding/earthing conductors.
2. Lugs, grounding strips, and busbars: UL Listed.
3. Fabricate with premium quality tin-plated electrolytic copper, providing low electrical resistance while inhibiting corrosion.
4. Provide antioxidant for field- bonding connections.
5. Lugs: NEBS Level 3. Provide two-hole lugs with irreversible compression and inspection windows, certified for use in non-corrosive environments so that connections may be inspected for full conductor insertion.
6. Die index numbers: Embossed on compression connections to allow crimp inspection.
7. Cable assemblies: UL Listed and CSA Certified.
 - a. Cables: Green or green/yellow.
 - b. Jackets: UL Listed, VW-1 flame rated.

B. Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB): A cable used to ground/earth PBB. Connect PBB to SBB; comply with J-STD-607-D guidelines and provide gauge not lighter than the following:

Table 1 – TBB/BBC/TBC conductor size vs length	
TBB Length in Linear meters (feet)	TBB Size (AWG)
Less than 4 (13)	6
4 - 6 (14 - 200)	4
6 - 8 (21 - 26)	3
8 - 10 (27 - 33)	2
10 - 13 (34 - 41)	1
13 - 16 (42 - 52)	1/0
16 - 20 (53 - 66)	2/0
20 - 26 (67-84)	3/0

26 - 32 (85 - 105)	4/0
32 - 38 (106 - 125)	250 kcmil
38 -46 (126 - 150)	300 kcmil
46 - 53 (151 - 175)	350 kcmil
53 - 76 (176 - 250)	500 kcmil
76 - 91 (251 - 300)	600 kcmil
Greater than 91 (301)	750 kcmil

- C. Sizing the Telecommunications Bonding Conductor (TBC)
 - 1. The TBC shall be, as a minimum, the same size as the largest TBB.
- D. Sizing the Backbone Bonding Conductor (BBC)
 - 1. The BBC shall be, as a minimum, the same size as the largest TBB to which it is connected.
- E. Structural metal
 - 1. The bonding conductor from the structural metal to the PBB or SBB shall be sized according to Table 1. Additionally, this conductor should be no smaller than any conductor that comprises the telecommunications bonding backbone system. Bonds to structural metal shall be made using listed exothermic welding, listed compression connections, or listed mechanical connectors and shall be accessible.
- F. Telecommunications Equipment Bonding Conductor (TEBC): A cable used from the PBB or SBB to Rack and Rack Bonding Busbar (RBB) – minimum Size 6AWG.
- G. Bonding Cable, Typical: For applications other than TBB, TEBC and BBC, provide gauge not lighter than the following:

Purpose	Copper Code Cable Size
Aisle grounds (overhead or under floor) of the common bonding network	#2 AWG or larger (1/0 preferred)
Bonding conductor to each PDU or panel board serving the room.	Size per NEC 250.122 & manufacturer recommendations
Bonding conductor to HVAC equipment	6 AWG
Building columns	4 AWG
Cable ladders and trays	6 AWG
Conduit, water pipe, duct	6 AWG

2.3 COMPONENTS, KITS AND HARDWARE

- A. Provide BICSI/J-STD-607-D telecommunications Primary Bonding Busbar PBB. Locate PBB at the telecommunications entrance room.
- B. Provide BICSI/J-STD-607-D Telecommunications Bonding Conductor (TBC) from the telecommunications entrance room to the AC service entrance. Bonds to AC service entrance shall be made using listed exothermic welding, listed compression connections, or listed mechanical connectors and shall be accessible.

- C. Provide BICSI/J-STD-607-D telecommunications Secondary Bonding Busbar (SBB) at typical telecommunications/equipment spaces throughout the building.
 - 1. Provide additional SBB's as needed for number of termination points within each telecommunications/equipment space or upsize the SBB to a PBB.
 - 2. Multiple SBB's within a room shall be bonded together with a conductor the same size as the TBB or with splice bars.
- D. Provide BICSI/J-STD-607-D telecommunications Rack Bonding Busbar (RBB) at rack and cabinet locations.
- E. Provide compression type two-hole lugs for connecting conductors to PBB, SBB and RBB.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ROUTING TBB, TBC AND SBB

- A. Route the TBB to each SBB in as straight a path as possible. The TBB should be installed as a continuous conductor, avoiding splices where possible. When more than one TBB is used, bond them together on the top floor and every third floor in-between with a conductor known as a Backbone Bonding Conductor (BBC). When sizing the BBC, it must be at least the same size as the largest TBB.
- B. Bend The inside bend radius of telecommunications bonding conductors terminated at the primary bonding busbar (PBB) or secondary bonding busbar (SBB) shall have an inside bend radius of 200 mm (8 in). At other locations, bends in the bonding conductors should be limited to the greatest practical inside bend radius with a minimum bend radius of 10 times the bonding conductor diameter recommended. In all cases, the minimum bend radius angle shall be 90° or greater.
- C. Avoid routing grounding/earthing conductors in metal conduits. If the grounding/earthing conductor must be routed through a metal conduit, bond each end of the conduit to the grounding/earthing conductor. Use grounding clamps to bond to the conduit and #6 AWG copper conductor to connect the grounding clamp to the TBB.

3.2 RACK GROUNDING/EARTHING

- A. Bonding Equipment and Racks: Comply with BICSI/J-STD-607-D.
- B. To provide electrical continuity between rack elements, use paint piercing grounding washers where rack sections bolt together, on both sides, under the head of the bolt, and between the nut and rack.
- C. Utilize full-length rack ground strips attached to the rear of the side rail with thread-forming screws provided to ensure metal-to-metal contact.
- D. Mount an electrostatic discharge (ESD) port kit, directly to the Rack Bonding Busbar. Mount a second electrostatic discharge (ESD) port kit directly to the vertical mounting rail of the rack in

the front at approximately the same height. Use the thread-forming screws provided to form a bond to the rack.

- E. When the equipment manufacturer provides a location for mounting a grounding connection, that connection shall be utilized. Use the appropriate jumper for the equipment being installed and the thread-forming screws provided in the kit.
- F. Do not bond racks or cabinets serially.
- G. Bond patch panels to racks using bonding screws.
- H. Patch panels for shielded cabling shall be bonded to the telecommunications bonding system in accordance with manufacturer instructions

3.3 TESTING

- A. Perform continuity testing measurements of the grounding system with resistance to not exceed 0.1 ohm between:
 - 1. The PBB and the nearest grounding electrode.
 - 2. Each SBB and the nearest grounding electrode.
 - 3. Each SBB and pathway(s), rack(s), cabinet(s), and applicable equipment.

3.4 GROUNDING SYSTEM

- A. Communications grounding system: Comply with ANSI/TIA-942 and ANSI/TIA-607-D.
- B. Connection to Building ground/earth: Ensure connection is made by a licensed, electrical Installer, including installation and termination of the main bonding conductor to the building service entrance ground.
- C. Bond PBB to building steel; ground/earth to electrical service ground. Comply with BICSI TDM Manual and ANSI/TIA-607-D guidelines.
- D. Utilize UL listed exothermic two-hole lugs to make connections to the primary bonding busbar (PBB).

END OF SECTION 270526

SECTION 27 05 28.36 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Continuous, rigid, welded steel wire mesh cable tray system used in industrial, commercial, and telecommunications applications
- B. Cable tray systems are defined to include, but are not limited to, straight sections, supports and accessories.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Related Sections:
 - 1. Comply with Section 27 10 00, "Telecommunications Structured Cabling," for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
- B. Bidding Requirements:
 - 1. Submit complete detailed proposals with line item cost representation for components and associated installation labor. Lump sum bids will not be accepted.
 - 2. Include as part of the bid response the following items:
 - a. Installation schedule with proposed manpower assignments.
 - b. Resumes for project manager and lead technician for this project.
 - 3. Review associated electrical, audiovisual, and telecommunications infrastructure drawings to verify that necessary conduit and boxes will be provided. Understand and coordinate shared infrastructure locations for AV and voice/data outlets. No additional infrastructure to support the telecommunications cabling systems (inside plant/outside plant) will be provided. Any discrepancies with the identified infrastructure to support these systems should be questioned in the form of a request for information (RFI) during the bidding process. Be responsible for any additional infrastructure requirements after receipt of contract for this project.
 - 4. No wiremold or surface mounted raceways shall be approved on this project except where explicitly identified.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. IEC 61537 (2006) – Cable Tray Systems and Cable Ladder Systems for Cable Management
- B. NEMA VE 1-2017/CSA C22.2 No. 126.1-17 – Metal Cable Tray Systems

- C. ANSI/NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC)
- D. TIA 569-D (2015) – Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways & Spaces
- E. ASTM A 510 - Specification for General Requirements for Wire Rods and Coarse Round Wire, Carbon Steel
- F. ASTM A 380 – Specification for Standard Practice for Cleaning, Descaling, and Passivation of Stainless Steel Parts, Equipment, and Systems
- G. ASTM B 633 – Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel
- H. ASTM A 123 – Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
- I. ASTM A 653 - Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Structural (Physical) Quality
- J. Norm NF/A 91-131 for Galvanized Steel
- K. Norm NF/EN 12-329 for Electro zinc Coating
- L. Norm NF/EN/ISO 14-61 for Hot-Dipped Galvanized Steel
- M. Norm NF 10-088-2 for Stainless Steel

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. This section outlines the performance for the noted cable tray support systems, as indicated on the low voltage drawings. The tray system shall provide a common raceway for telecommunications cable into and out of the Telecommunications Rooms (TR). Cable tray systems shall also be installed above finished ceiling in the common area hallways that are located on all floors of the building. The common area cable tray is intended to support telecommunications cabling from any of the station cable wall/floor outlet locations on any floor. Each station cable wall/floor outlet shall have a configuration of conduit pipe run to the tray system to support the aforementioned station cabling. It is intended to have this tray system transition (via a Cable Dropout or Runway Radius Drop) into the ladder tray installed above the noted equipment racks within the TR's.

1.6 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maximum Deflection between Supports: $L/240$

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Related Sections
 - 1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 33 00, "Submittal Procedures."
- B. Submittal Data

1. Submittal data is to be submitted as a complete, single digital file. All documents shall be clearly legible. Each submittal shall contain the below in the following order:
 - a. Cover Sheet
 - 1) Include name of supplying contractor and project name.
 - 2) Include submittal and revision number.
 - b. Detailed Bill of Materials
 - 1) Include a listing of: component quantities, equipment manufacturers, model numbers, descriptions of each component being supplied, and the specification paragraphs or drawing sheets that correspond to each product.
 - 2) The bill of materials shall be index referenced within the PDF file so that each product name is clickable, linked to the first page of the corresponding product data.
 - 3) Failure to provide this information will result in the rejection of submittals.
 - c. Product Data
 - 1) Include a catalog sheet per product of equipment listed in the Detailed Bill of Materials, in the exact order as the Detailed Bill of Materials. Each catalog sheet shall describe mechanical, electrical and functional equipment specifications. The catalog sheet must also include an image of the product.
 - 2) Photocopy duplications of the manufacturer's original equipment catalog sheets will be allowed if they provide adequate clarity of both the printed word and graphics/pictures.
 - 3) If more than one product is shown on the catalog sheet the intended product must be denoted by either an arrow or highlight. All optional components and selections shall be clearly indicated.
 - d. Prequalification Certificate.
 - 1) Copy of the installing technician(s) certificate of completion from the manufacturer's training school for the equipment being provided.
 - e. Manufacturer Qualifications
 - 1) Submit manufacturer's certification indicating ISO 9002 quality certified.
 - f. Design Calculations
 - 1) Verify loading capacities for supports.
 - g. Submit Factory-certified test reports of specified products, complying with IEC 61537, NEC, and NEMA VE 1/CSA C22.2 No. 126.1.

C. Shop Drawings

1. Prior to fabrication submit contractor-generated drawings for approval for all supplied systems. These drawings shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Title Sheet with sheet index and symbols legend
 - b. Coordination Drawings: Include floor plans and sections drawn to scale. Include scaled cable tray layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Data presented on these drawings are as accurate as preliminary surveys and planning can determine. Field verification of all dimensions, routing, etc., is directed.
 - c. Cable Tray Drawings: Submit drawing indicating materials, finish, dimensions, and accessories. Show layout, support, and installation details.
2. Drawings should be at project standard scale and clearly legible.
3. Resubmission of contract drawings does not constitute a complete shop drawings submittal and is unacceptable. Such submittals will be rejected.

D. Form

1. Submit all materials for review as described above, specifically referenced to the specification paragraph number (where applicable).
 - a. Submit all drawings on sheets of one size, preferably the project standard size.
 - b. On submittal drawings, maintain 3/32" minimum lettering height. Submittals with text less than 1/16" in height may be rejected.
2. Partial Submittals may be rejected. If submitted individually and each in its entirety, the following submittals shall not be considered partial:
 - a. Personnel
 - b. Milestones
 - c. Conduit Verification Statement and Notifications
 - d. Rigging and Mounting Drawings
 - e. As-Built Documentation
3. Product Data and shop drawings must be submitted together in order to be reviewed.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain cable tray components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9002 quality certified
- C. Comply with NFPA 70. National Electrical Code, Article 392: Cable Trays; provide UL Classification and labels.
- D. Provide ETL test documentation showing cable compression/deformation testing.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of cable tray with other installations.
 1. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and as approved by the Architect.
- B. Storage and Handling: Avoid breakage, denting and scoring finishes. Damaged products will not be installed. Store cable trays and accessories in original cartons and in clean dry space; protect from weather and construction traffic. Wet materials will be unpacked and dried before storage. Protect materials and finishes during handling and installation to prevent damage
- C. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly indicating manufacturer and material.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Cablofil, Inc., 8319 State Route 4, Mascoutah, IL, 62258. Phone: (618) 566-3230. Toll-Free: (800) 658-4641. Fax: (618) 566-3250. Website: www.cablofil.com. Email: info@cablofil.com or approved equal.

2.2 CABLE TRAY SYSTEM

- A. Description: Cablofil EZ Tray continuous, rigid, welded steel wire mesh cable tray system
 - 1. Mesh System: Permits continuous ventilation of cables and maximum dissipation of heat
 - 2. Safety Edge: Continuous safety edge T-welded wire lip
 - 3. Wire Mesh: Welded at all intersections
- B. UL Classification: Straight sections 4 x 8, 12, 18 and 24 inches (108 x 200, 300, 450, and 600 mm), UL classified. Width of tray shall be determined based on not exceeding industry standards for fill ratios.
- C. Material: Carbon steel wire, ASTM A 510, Grade 1008. Wire welded, bent, and surface treated after manufacture
- D. Finish for Carbon Steel Wire: Finish applied after welding and bending of mesh
 - 1. Electro-Plated Zinc Galvanizing: ASTM B 633, Type III, SC-1
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanizing: ASTM A 123
- E. Nominal Dimensions:
 - 1. Mesh: 2 x 4 inches (50 x 100 mm)
 - 2. Straight Section Lengths: 80 inches (2,000 mm) and 118 inches (3,000 mm)
 - 3. Width: Cable tray widths shall be selected based on cable density. No tray shall exceed 50% manufacturer's stated capacity at time of initial installation.
 - a. 2 inches (50 mm)
 - b. 4 inches (100 mm)
 - c. 6 inches (150 mm)
 - d. 8 inches (200 mm)
 - e. 12 inches (300 mm)
 - f. 18 inches (450 mm)
 - g. 24 inches (600 mm)
 - 4. Depth: 4 inches (108 mm)
 - 5. Wire Diameter: 0.177 inch (4.5 mm), minimum
- F. Fittings: Field fabricated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions from straight sections
- G. Support System: Standard
 - 1. Wall Installation: CS Bracket. Maximum tray width of 12 inches (300 mm)
 - 2. Trapeze Mounting to Ceilings: CS Profile. Maximum tray width of 18 inches (450 mm)
 - 3. Ceiling Installation: CSC Bracket. Maximum tray width of 12 inches (300 mm)
 - 4. Fasteners: As required by tray widths. Furnished by manufacturer.
- H. Support System: Caloric FAS System
 - 1. Floor and Wall Installation: FAS Profile
 - 2. Wall Installation:
 - a. FAS Universal Bracket. Maximum tray width of 24 inches (600 mm)
 - b. FAS L Bracket. Maximum tray width of 12 inches (300 mm)
 - 3. Ceiling Installation: FAS C Bracket. Maximum tray width of 12 inches (300 mm)
 - 4. Fasteners: Not required
- I. Hardware: Hardware, including splice connectors and support components, shall be furnished by the manufacturer.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Shielding Divider Strips: Divider strips to follow contour of cable tray run for shielding to run power and control cables in same tray. Pre-galvanized steel, [4 x 1-1/2 inches (108 x 30 mm)]
- B. Fittings: Provide tees, crosses, risers, elbows, radius tees, and other fittings as indicated, of the same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- C. Grounding: Provide GNDSB grounding lugs for attachment on tray of continuous ground conductor fixing system.

2.4 FIRE STOP CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES

- A. Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:
 - 1. Basis of design: Specified Technologies Inc.
 - 2. Approved equal by:
 - a. 3M Corporation
 - b. Hilti Corporation
 - c. Wiremold- Legrand Corporation
- B. Fire Rated Cable Pathways: Provide STI EZ-PATH™ Brand device modules comprised of steel raceway with intumescent foam pads allowing 0 to 100 percent cable fill. The following products are acceptable:
 - 1. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ-PATH Series 44 Fire Rated Pathway
 - 2. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ-PATH Series 33 Fire Rated Pathway

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Exam areas to receive cable management system. Notify the Architect of conditions that would adversely affect the installation or subsequent utilization of the system. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cable tray level and plumb according to manufacturer's written instructions, Coordination Drawings, original design, and referenced standards.
- B. Install cable management system at locations indicated on the drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Install the cable tray system directly above the racks positioned within the space to allow for ease in cable management to and from the racks. Provide firestopping at penetration into/out of all telecommunications rooms.
- C. Load Span Criteria: Install and support cable management system in accordance with span load criteria of L/240.

- D. Cutting:
 - a. Cut cable tray wires in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - b. Cable tray wires must be cut with side-action bolt cutters with offset head to ensure integrity of protective galvanic layer.
 - c. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
- E. Install cable management system using hardware, splice connectors, support components, and accessories furnished by manufacturer.
- F. Install expansion connectors where cable tray crosses building expansion joint and in cable tray runs that exceed 90 feet.
- G. Ground cable tray according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. The cable tray and ceiling installation shall allow for re-entry to accommodate additional cable to be pulled from all occupied spaces to their respective IDF locations on each floor. Provide the following clearance for all installation locations.
 - 1. A minimum of 3" clear vertical space between ceiling tile and cable tray.
 - 2. A minimum of 8" access headroom above the cable tray system
 - 3. Enough clearance on both sides of the tray to maintain accessibility with a human hand.
- I. Provide bend limiters to maintain cable type bend radius whenever cable exists cable tray into TR rooms.
- J. Provide radius kits at all 90-degree turns.
- K. Certified Installers: Cable tray installers must have successfully completed Cablofil's Certified Installer program.

3.3 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Firestopping In Telecommunications Room at Cable Tray Entrance
 - 1. Install EZ Path Series 44 as shown on contract drawings.
- B. Firestopping where cable tray passes through a rated wall assembly.
 - 1. Install quantity of EZ Path series 33 or series 44 to 100% fill ratio of the size of cable tray at entrance to opening.
- C. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems in accordance with Performance Criteria and in accordance with the conditions of testing and classification as specified in the published design.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Comply with manufacturer's instructions for installation of firestopping products.

END OF SECTION 27 05 28.36

SECTION 270528.48 - MULTIMEDIA CONNECTION WALL BOX

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Multimedia Connection Wall Box
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 27 Telecommunications Systems, Audiovisual Systems, wiring, connections, and installation of associated conduit infrastructure

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Wall boxes provide an interface between power and telecommunication cabling in a wall mount flat panel display locations requiring power and/or communication device outlets.
- B. Wall Mounted Connector Assembly: Rubber cable pass thru door and cover assembly along with connector mounting panel inserts
- C. Labeling: Wall boxes shall bear the "cULus mark" issued by UL for units complying with both US and Canadian Standards.
- D. Standards: Comply with the following:
 - 1. National Electrical Code

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Related Sections
 - 1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 33 00, "Submittal Procedures."
- B. Submittal Data
 - 1. Submittal data is to be submitted as a complete, single digital file. All documents shall be clearly legible. Each submittal shall contain the below in the following order:
 - a. Cover Sheet
 - 1) Include name of supplying contractor and project name.
 - 2) Include submittal and revision number.
 - b. Detailed Bill of Materials
 - 1) Include a listing of: component quantities, equipment manufacturers, model numbers, descriptions of each component being supplied, and the specification paragraphs or drawing sheets that correspond to each product.
 - 2) The bill of materials shall be index referenced within the PDF file so that each product name is clickable, linked to the first page of the corresponding product data.
 - 3) Failure to provide this information will result in the rejection of submittals.
 - c. Product Data

- 1) Include a catalog sheet per product of equipment listed in the Detailed Bill of Materials, in the exact order as the Detailed Bill of Materials. Each catalog sheet shall describe mechanical, electrical and functional equipment specifications. The catalog sheet must also include an image of the product.
 - 2) Photocopy duplications of the manufacturer's original equipment catalog sheets will be allowed as long as they provide adequate clarity of both the printed word and graphics/pictures.
 - 3) If more than one product is shown on the catalog sheet the intended product must be denoted by either an arrow or highlight. All optional components and selections shall be clearly indicated.
 - d. Authorized Distributor Certificate
 - 1) Recently dated (within one year from submittal date) support letter from manufacturer stating that the supplying contractor is an Authorized Distributor of the product being supplied.
 - e. Partial submittals, or submittals comprised of multiple PDF files, will not be accepted.
2. Informational Submittals:
- a. Manufacturer's installation instructions

C. Shop Drawings

1. Prior to fabrication submit contractor-generated drawings for approval for all supplied systems. These drawings shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Title Sheet with sheet index and symbols legend
 - b. All panels, plates, and designation strips, including connectivity, layout, labeling, and details relating to terminology, engraving, finish and color
 - c. All unusual equipment modifications
 - d. Equipment location drawings
 - e. Detailed riser drawing indicating conduit runs and associated (box knockout) cables within
 - f. Floor plans showing Wall box locations based on column grid lines
2. Drawings should be at project standard scale and clearly legible.
3. Resubmission of contract drawings does not constitute a complete shop drawings submittal and is unacceptable. Such submittals will be rejected.

D. Form

1. Submit all materials for review as described above, specifically referenced to the specification paragraph number (where applicable).
 - a. Submit all drawings on sheets of one size, preferably the project standard size.
 - b. On submittal drawings, maintain 3/32" minimum lettering height. Submittals with text less than 1/16" in height may be rejected.
2. Product Data and shop drawings must be submitted together in order to be reviewed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:

1. FSR
 2. Approved equal
- B. Model PWB-100 Wall Box:
1. Box shall be:
 - a. Manufactured from 14-gauge steel approved for use in new and renovation construction locations.
 - b. Polyester based backed enamel finished interior (white).
 - c. Provided with two (2) independent wiring compartments.
 - d. Able to work with ½" or 5/8" dry wall.
 - e. Box to be able to be installed between 16" on center metal or wood studs.
 - f. Able to accept 2-3/4" x 4-1/2" standard size wall plates.
- C. Overall box dimensions shall be as follows:
1. 11" W x 5.25" H x 3.57" D.

2.2 COVER

- A. PWB-100-WHT - White Cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. With Installer present, verify that manufacturer's requirements for wall opening and infrastructure conditions have been satisfactorily met. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Verify exact locations of Wall box installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment in compliance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Install in position and relationship to adjoining work indicated, securely anchored to supporting structure, sealed and finished, and in a manner, which produces a level box with square, plumb, and straight edges.
- C. Telecommunications Cabling Wall box shall have a total of three separate EC with pull string at each box as follows:
1. One 3/4-inch EC from box to circuit panel. (Duplex AC Power)
 2. Two 1-1/4 inch EC from box to telecomm cable tray A.F.C. One conduit run to lower Low voltage backbox and one conduit run to the upper Low voltage backbox.

- D. Provide pull strings in each conduit at wall box location.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust door and cover for proper operation.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed equipment in original undamaged condition until Substantial Completion. Remove and provide new components or units that cannot be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 270528.48

SECTION 271000 - TELECOMMUNICATIONS STRUCTURED CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Building Industry Consulting Services International (BiCSi), "Telecommunications Distributions Methods Manual," Fourteenth Edition
- B. American National Standards Institute/Telecommunications Industry Association (ANSI/TIA) - 568.2-D, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard"
- C. ANSI/TIA-569-E, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces"
- D. ANSI/TIA-606C, "Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings"
- E. ANSI/TIA-607-D, "Commercial Building Grounding/Bonding Requirements"
- F. National Electrical Code (NEC), 2020 - National Fire Protection Agency (NFPA) 70
- G. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) 802.3 Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (Ethernet 10/100/1000/10000 BASE-T)
- H. Federal Communications Commission (FCC), Title 47, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 68
- I. National Institution for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET)
- J. Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association (AVIXA).

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. UTP cabling
 - 2. Optical fiber cabling
 - 3. Multi-pair copper cable
 - 4. Coaxial cable (radio frequency video)
 - 5. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects
 - 6. Telecommunications outlet/connectors
 - 7. Cable management system
 - 8. Cabling identification products

9. Backboards
10. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets
11. Telecommunications service entrance pathways
12. Grounding and bonding
13. Telecommunications Pathways
14. Telecommunications mounting elements

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 27 05 26, "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems," for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices
2. Division 27 05 28.36, "Cable Trays for Communications Systems," for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices

C. Bidding Requirements:

1. Bidder shall submit complete detailed proposals with line item cost representation for components and associated installation labor. Lump sum bids will not be accepted.
2. Bidders shall include as part of the bid response the following items:
 - a. Installation schedule with proposed manpower assignments
 - b. Resumes for project manager and lead technician for this project
 - c. BICSI RCDD certificate and registration number
3. Bidders shall review associated architectural, electrical, and telecommunications infrastructure drawings to verify that necessary conduit and floor boxes will be provided by others. Bidders shall understand and coordinate shared infrastructure locations for telecommunications outlets. The Owner will provide no additional infrastructure to support the telecommunications cabling systems Inside Plant (ISP) and Outside Plant (OSP). Any discrepancies with the identified infrastructure to support these systems should be questioned in the form of a request for information (RFI) during the bidding process. Be responsible for any additional infrastructure requirements after receipt of contract for this project. No wiremold or surface mounted raceways shall be approved on this project except where specifically identified in the contract drawings.
4. Unspecified Equipment and Material: Any item of equipment or material not specifically addressed on the drawings or in this document and required to provide a complete and functional Structured Cabling System shall be provided in a level of quality consistent with other specified items.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFC: Above Finished Ceiling
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International
- C. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways
- D. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection
- E. EF: Entrance Facility
- F. EMI: Electromagnetic interference

- G. HC: Horizontal Cross Connect
- H. IDC: Insulation displacement connector
- I. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs)
- J. LAN: Local Area Network
- K. MC: Main Cross-connect
- L. MPTL: Modular Plug Terminated Link
- M. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors
- N. NRTL: Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory
- O. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates
- P. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer
- Q. TR: Telecommunications Room

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide a complete and functioning Structured Cabling System inclusive of all hardware, software, and training to meet or exceed the performance features outlined in this document.
- B. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.
 - 1. ANSI/ANSI/TIA-568.2-D requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.
 - 2. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft., and includes the components that extend from the telecommunications outlet/connectors to the station equipment.
 - 3. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
 - 4. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
 - 5. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.
- C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to the workstation equipment. The maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet in the horizontal cross-connect.
- D. Backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects,

mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

- E. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.
- F. Communications equipment room shall provide the space to house the equipment for the backbone and horizontal cabling.

1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

- A. General Performance: The cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in ANSI/TIA-568.2-D and ANSI/TIA-568.3-D when tested according to the test procedures of this standard.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 01 33 00, "Submittal Procedures."

B. Submittal Data

1. Submittal data is to be submitted as a complete, single digital file. All documents shall be clearly legible. Each submittal shall contain the below in the following order:
 - a. Cover Sheet
 - 1) Include name of supplying contractor and project name.
 - 2) Include submittal and revision number.
 - b. Detailed Bill of Materials
 - 1) Include a listing of component quantities, equipment manufacturers, model numbers, and descriptions of each component being supplied and the specification paragraphs or drawing sheets that correspond to each product.
 - 2) The bill of materials shall include page numbers for each product data sheet and be index referenced within the PDF file so that each product name is clickable, linked to the first page of the corresponding product data.
 - 3) Failure to provide this information will result in the rejection of submittals.
 - c. Product Data
 - 1) Include a catalog sheet per product of equipment listed in the Detailed Bill of Materials, in the exact order as the Detailed Bill of Materials. Each catalog sheet shall describe mechanical, electrical and functional equipment specifications. The catalog sheet must also include an image of the product.
 - 2) Photocopy duplications of the manufacturer's original equipment catalog sheets will be allowed as long as they provide adequate clarity of both the printed word and graphics/pictures.
 - 3) If more than one product is shown on the catalog sheet the intended product must be denoted by either an arrow or highlight.
 - d. Authorized Distributor Certificate
 - 1) Recently dated (within one year from submittal date) support letter from manufacturer stating that the supplying contractor is an Authorized Distributor of the product being supplied.
 - e. Prequalification Warrantee

- 1) Recently dated (within one year from submittal date) support letter from manufacturer stating that the supplying contractor is Authorized to obtain for the owner the Special Warranty for Cabling System and the Special Warranty for System Assurance.
 - f. Prequalification Certificate
 - 1) Copy of the installing technician(s) certificate of completion from the manufacturer's training school for the equipment being provided.
 - g. Submittal shall be a single PDF file.
 - 1) Partial submittals, or submittals comprised of multiple PDF files, will be rejected.
- C. Shop Drawings
1. Prior to fabrication submit contractor-generated drawings for approval for all supplied systems. Each shop drawing set is to include the below in the following order:
 - a. Title Sheet
 - 1) Include a list of all drawings in the set and a symbols legend defining each symbol used in the package.
 - b. Riser Diagram
 - 1) Show the relationship of TR's, the pathway between them, and cable connectivity to be installed.
 - c. Video/CATV System Engineering
 - 1) Depict device location by room number and device type. Delineate cable types and cable pathway for both riser and horizontal distribution. Calculate db loss and outline levels for each splitter, tap, amplifier, and outlet.
 - d. Telecommunications Room Details
 - 1) Plan Details of infrastructure and room fittings with clearances
 - 2) Elevation Details of wall fields and rack details showing the relationship of rack mounted elements inclusive of owner-provided equipment (labeled as such).
 - e. Typical Outlet Details
 - 1) Detail each typical outlet type to be installed. Include manufacturer specific plates, jacks, and an example of labeling. Note on the drawing the typical application of each outlet type, for example; standard office, computer lab, ceiling mounted wireless access location, etc.
 - f. Floor Plans
 - 1) Show planned location for all elements and cable routing.
 - 2) Include outlet port numbers for each outlet.
 2. Drawings should be at project standard scale and clearly legible.
 3. Resubmission of contract drawings does not constitute a complete shop drawings submittal and is unacceptable. Such submittals will be rejected.
- D. Product data and shop drawings must be submitted together in order to be reviewed.
- E. Samples shall be submitted for each typical outlet type to be installed, complete with colored jacks, finished faceplates, and sample labeling.
- F. Field quality-control reports
1. Submit copy of project status reporting form.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and Cabling Administration Drawings by an RCDD.
 - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 installer and manufactures certified installer, who shall be present at all times when work of this section is performed at project site. At a minimum, one half of remainder of the crew shall be registered technicians by the specified manufacturer as part of their Certified Installer Program.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Installing company shall be certified by manufactures in aspects of design, installation and testing of optical and Category rated metallic premise distribution systems, be a manufactures Value Added Reseller (VAR) in good standing, have a minimum of five (5) years' experience on similar Structured Cabling Systems (SCS), and have a Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) on staff.
- E. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.
- F. Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings, 2017 ANSI/ANSI/TIA-606-C.
- G. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-C.
- H. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code, latest edition
- I. BICSI – Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, Fourteenth Edition
- J. NEMA – VE-1 – Metal Cable Tray Systems, 2017
- K. NEMA – VE-2 – Metal Cable Tray Installation Guidelines, 2013

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use an optical loss test set.
 - 2. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
 - 3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

- B. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly indicating manufacturer and material.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install equipment frames and ladder racking until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and work above ceilings is complete.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
 - 1. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
 - 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 - 3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
 - 4. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the equipment room.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.
- C. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.
- D. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Patch-Panel Units: The greater of one (1) or 10% of total quantity of each type
 - 2. Connecting Blocks: The greater of one (1) or 10% of total quantity of each type
 - 3. Device Plates: The greater of ten (10) or 2% of total quantity of each type

1.13 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Cabling System: Manufactures warranty shall ensure against product defects; that approved cabling components exceed the specifications of ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, ANSI/TIA-568.3-D, and ISO/IEC IS 11801; exceed the attenuation and NEXT requirements of ANSI/TIA-TSB-67 and ISO/IEC IS 11801 for cabling links/channels; and that the installation will exceed the loss and bandwidth requirements of ANSI/TIA-TSB-67 and ISO/IEC IS 11801 for fiber links/channels. The warranty shall apply to passive SCS components.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 25 - year Cabling System from date of Substantial Completion

- B. Special Warranty for System Assurance: Manufactures warranty shall cover the failure of the wiring system to support the application which it was designed to support, as well as additional application(s) introduced in the future by recognized standards or user forums that recognize ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, ANSI/TIA-568.3-D, or ISO/IEC IS 11801 component and link/channel specifications for cabling.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 25 - year Applications Assurance from date of Substantial Completion

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PATHWAYS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, and are limited to, the following:
 - 1. Basis of design: ERICO
 - 2. Approved equals by:
 - a. Cooper/BN-line
 - b. Hilti Inc.

- B. General Requirements: Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.

- C. Cable Support: NRTL labeled. Cable support brackets in Telecommunications Rooms shall be designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.

- D. Provide bend limiters, if not built into the cable support, to maintain cable type bend radius whenever cable exists pathways or makes transition between two pathways.

- E. Non-continuous cable supports shall be used in any area above the finished ceiling where cable tray is not available.

- F. Bridle rings shall not be used for telecom cable support.
- G. Non-continuous cable supports
 1. Cable Support shall be NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
 2. Non-continuous cable supports shall provide a bearing surface of sufficient width to comply with required bend radii of high-performance cables; cULus Listed.
 3. Non-continuous cable supports shall have flared edges to prevent damage while installing cables.
 4. Non-continuous cable supports sized 1 5/16" and larger shall have a cable retainer strap to provide containment of cables within the hanger. The cable retainer strap shall be removable and reusable and be suitable for use in air handling spaces.
 5. Non-continuous cable supports shall have an electro-galvanized or G60 finish and shall be rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments.
 6. Non-continuous cable supports shall be ERICO CableCat™ J-hook series CAT12, CAT21, CAT32, CAT64, CAT21SS, CAT32SS, CAT64SS; CAT-CMTM Double J-Hook CAT100CM; CAT-CMTM U-hook series CAT200CMLN, CAT300CMLN; and CAT-CMTM retainer CATRT200CM, CATRT300CM, or approved equal.
- H. Non-continuous cable support assemblies from drop wire/ceiling
 1. Fastener to wire/rod with one non-continuous cable support, factory or jobsite assembled; rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments; cULus Listed.
 2. Acceptable products: ERICO CADDY CAT124Z34, CAT126Z34, CAT214Z34, CAT216Z34, CAT324Z34 or CAT326Z34, or approved equal.
- I. Non-continuous cable support assemblies from beam, flange
 1. Fastener to beam or flange with one non-continuous cable support, factory or jobsite assembled; rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments; cULus Listed.
 2. Acceptable products: ERICO CableCat™ J-hook series CAT12, CAT21, CAT32, CAT64 with CADDY beam clamps and CADDY flange clips, or approved equal.
- J. Non-continuous cable support assemblies from C & Z Purlin
 1. Fastener to C or Z purlin with one non-continuous cable support, factory or jobsite assembled; rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments, cULus listed.
 2. Acceptable products: ERICO CableCat™ J-hook series CAT12, CAT21, CAT32, CAT64 with CADDY Purlin hangers, or approved equal.
- K. Non-continuous cable support assemblies from wall, concrete, or joist
 1. Fastener to wall, concrete, or joist with one non-continuous cable support, factory or jobsite assembled; rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments, cULus listed.
 2. Acceptable products: ERICO CableCat™ J-hook series CAT12, CAT21, CAT32, CAT64, with CADDY angle bracket, or approved equal.
- L. Non-continuous cable support assemblies from threaded rod
 1. Fastener to threaded rod with one non-continuous cable support, factory or jobsite assembled, rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments, cULus Listed.
 2. The multi-tiered support bracket shall have a static load limit of 300 lbs.
 3. U-hooks and Double J-hook shall attach directly to threaded rod using standard nuts.
 4. Acceptable products: ERICO CableCat™ J-hook, CAT12, CAT21, CAT32, CAT64 with CADDY CATHBA series; CAT-CMTM Double J-hook CAT100CM, CAT-CMTM Direct mount U-hook CAT200CMLN, CAT300CMLN; or AFAB series, or approved equal.

2.3 CONDUIT AND BOXES

- A. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 5 inches wide, 5 inches high, and 2.875 inches deep.

2.4 UTP CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company
 - 2. CommScope, Inc.
 - 3. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT
 - 4. Superior Essex Inc.
 - 5. Uniprise; a CommScope, Inc. brand
 - 6. Hubbell Premise wire
 - 7. General Cable Technologies Corporation
 - 8. Belden, Inc.
 - 9. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
- B. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket
 - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D for performance specifications.
 - 2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6.
 - 3. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262

2.5 UTP CABLES - WIRELESS ACCESS POINT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cable product by the specified UTP cable manufacturer article "UTP CABLE".
- B. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket
 - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D for performance specifications.
 - 2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6A.
 - 3. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262

2.6 UTP CABLES WET LOCATIONS OR SLAB ON GRADE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cable product by the specified UTP cable manufacturer article "UTP CABLE".
- B. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, covered with a thermoplastic jacket.
 - 1. Match color in article "UTP CABLE".
 - 2. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.

3. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D for performance specifications.
4. Specifically designed for below-grade conduit or other environments where water is likely to infiltrate.
5. UL Verified for long term water submersion.
6. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6.
7. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262

2.7 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Hubbell Premise Wiring
 2. Leviton Voice & Data Division
 3. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies
 4. Uniprise, a CommScope, Inc. brand
 5. Panduit Corp.
 6. Siemon Co. (The)
 7. Ortronics Corp.
 8. Belden, Inc.
 9. Hellermann Tyton
- B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with ANSI/TIA-568-D, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables
- D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables. All patch panels shall be 48-port.
 1. Number of Jacks per Field: Provide one for each four-pair UTP cable indicated conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- E. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position, eight conductor, modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6.

2.8 UTP CABLE HARDWARE - WIRELESS ACCESS POINT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cable product by the specified UTP cable manufacturer article "UTP CABLE HARDWARE".

- B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with ANSI/TIA-568-D, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables. All patch panels shall be 48-port.
 - 1. Number of Jacks per Field: Provide one for each four-pair UTP cable indicated conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- D. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position, eight conductor, modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
 - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6A.

2.9 PATCH CORDS

- A. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 3'-20' in length; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure specified category performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 - 1. TR location: Provide one (1) patch cord to match cable and Jack Assembly category rating per port on the patch panel.
 - 2. Floor outlet locations: Provide one (1) ten foot modular patch cord to match cable and Jack Assembly category rating per eight-position eight conductor modular receptacle.

2.10 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

- A. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position, eight conductor, modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
 - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6A.
- B. Workstation Outlets: Provide connector assemblies mounted in single or multigang faceplates as shown on contract drawings.
- C. Provide faceplate types to match Division 26 section, "Wiring Devices."
 - 1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic, complying with color requirements in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices"
 - 2. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices"
 - 3. Wall phone Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, w/ Studs for Wall Mount Phone outlet.
 - 4. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords
 - 5. Legend: Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts

2.11 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS- WIRELESS ACCESS POINT

- A. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position, eight conductor, modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
 - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6A.
- B. Workstation Outlets: Provide connector assemblies in two port surface mount box.
 - 1. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords
 - 2. Legend: Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts

2.12 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Superior Essex Inc.
 - 2. CommScope, Inc.
 - 3. Corning Cable Systems
 - 4. General Cable Technologies Corporation
 - 5. Belden, Inc.
 - 6. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT
 - 7. Optical Cable Corporation
 - 8. Uniprise; a CommScope, Inc. brand
 - 9. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand
 - 10. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
 - 11. R&M USA Inc.
- B. Medical Examiners Indoor/Outdoor OS2 Singlemode
 - 1. Description: 24-strand fiber, nonconductive, optical fiber cable
 - 2. Comply with the following standards for mechanical properties:
 - a. Indoor/Outdoor cable: ICEA S-104-696
 - b. Aerial, duct, and buried outdoor cable: ICEA S-110-717
 - 3. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.3-D for performance specifications.
 - 4. Comply with ANSI/TIA-492-CAAA for detailed specifications.
 - 5. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262
 - 6. Maximum Attenuation: 0.3 dB/km at 1550 nm
 - 7. Jacket:
 - a. Jacket Color: Black
 - b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall comply with ANSI/TIA-598-B.
 - c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).
- C. Sherriff Office - Indoor/Outdoor OS2 Singlemode
 - 1. Description: 48-strand fiber, nonconductive, optical fiber cable
 - 2. Comply with the following standards for mechanical properties:
 - a. Indoor/Outdoor cable: ICEA S-104-696

- b. Aerial, duct, and buried outdoor cable: ICEA S-110-717
3. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.3-D for performance specifications.
4. Comply with ANSI/TIA-492-CAAA for detailed specifications.
5. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262
6. Maximum Attenuation: 0.3 dB/km at 1550 nm
7. Jacket:
 - a. Jacket Color: Black
 - b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall comply with ANSI/TIA-598-B.
 - c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

2.13 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 2. Leviton Voice & Data Division.
 3. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
 4. Panduit Corp.
 5. Siemon Co. (The)
 6. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
 7. Belden, Inc.
 8. Ortronics Corp.
 9. Corning Cable Systems
 10. Optical Cable Corporation (OCC)
 11. Hellermann Tyton
 12. R&M USA Inc.
- B. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, simplex and duplex cable connectors
 1. Number of Connectors per Field: Provide one for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit the specified expansion criteria.
 2. Fiber optic enclosures shall be rack-mountable with accommodations for splice trays.
 3. Fiber optic enclosures shall be wall-mountable with accommodations for splice trays.
 4. Install fusion splice trays as needed for transition points and factory terminated pigtails.
 5. LC duplex 12-fiber coupler panels shall be used for singlemode fiber.
 6. Size fiber enclosure for 25% percent spare capacity.
- C. Patch Cords: Provide factory-made, dual-fiber cables in one (1) meter lengths. Supply LC duplex for one-half of the total termination points.
- D. Patch Cords: Provide factory-made, dual-fiber cables in three (3) meter lengths. Supply LC duplex for one-half of the total termination points.
- E. Cable Connecting Hardware:

1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of ANSI/TIA-604-2, ANSI/TIA-604-3-A, and ANSI/TIA-604-12. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
2. Singlemode connector type: LC
3. Connectors for multimode and singlemode shall be field installed via fusion splicing.

2.14 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE SPLICE

- A. Fiber splice shall be placed in a cabinet with tray quantities for total fusion splices for transition splice in TR. Manufactured by Corning or approved equal.

2.15 INNERDUCT

- A. OSP applications:
 1. Description: Standard Outdoor Textile Innerduct, 3-inch, 3-cell, polyester and nylon resin polymer textile innerduct with factory-installed flat woven pull tape. Manufactured by MaxCell or approved equal.
 2. Fittings:
 - a. Conduit Plugs: Use compression-type conduit plugs with locking nuts to seal and secure one or more textile innerducts within 4" conduits.
 - b. Termination Bags: Use inflation-type bags to seal and secure one or more textile innerducts within 2" or larger conduit.

2.16 CABLE LUBRICANT

- A. Cable pulling lubricant shall be utilized when pulling cable.
- B. Product:
 1. Ideal
 2. Polywater
 3. or approved equal

2.17 FIRE STOP CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:
 1. Basis of design: Specified Technologies Inc.
 2. Approved equal by:
 - a. 3M Corporation
 - b. Hilti Corporation
 - c. Wiremold- Legrand Corporation
- B. Fire Rated Cable Pathways: STI EZ-PATH Brand device modules comprised of steel raceway with intumescent foam pads allowing 0 to 100 percent cable fill. The following products are acceptable:
 1. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ-PATH Series 44 Fire Rated Pathway

2. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ-PATH Series 33 Fire Rated Pathway
- C. EZ-path series 44 wall sleeves shall be provided for all telecom room penetrations to cable distribution system.
- D. Horizontal cable pathway locations greater than 20 cables fire stop sleeves shall be STI EZ-Path series 33.
- E. Horizontal cable pathway locations fewer than 20 cables EMT sleeve with UL listed system for firestopping is acceptable. Caulks and sealants shall be as manufactured by STI, 3M, Nelson, or approved equivalent.
- F. Fill ratio for fire stop EMT sleeves shall not exceed 20% fill capacity.

2.18 NON-RATED CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:
 1. Basis of design: Specified Technologies Inc.
 2. Approved equal by:
 - a. 3M Corporation
 - b. Hilti Corporation
 - c. Wiremold- Legrand Corporation
- B. Non-Rated Cable Pathways: STI EZ-PATH Brand device modules The smoke and acoustical pathway shall contain a built-in sealing system and shall automatically adjust to the installed cable loading and shall permit cables to be installed, removed, or retrofitted without the need to remove or reinstall acoustical materials. The following products are acceptable:
 1. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ Path® Series 44 NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway
 2. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ Path® Series 33 NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway
 3. SpecSeal® Smoke 'N' Sound Smoke and Acoustical Sealant
 - a. SNS120W 20 Oz Sausage - 36 cu in (592 ml)
 - b. SNS129W 730573111529 29 Oz Tube - 52 cu in (858 ml)
 - c. SNS105W 730573111543 5 Gallon Pail - 1,155 cu in (19.0 L) (White)
- C. Horizontal cable pathway locations greater than 20 cables fire stop sleeves shall be STI EZ-Path series 33 or 44 as needed for pathway cable capacity
- D. Horizontal cable pathway locations fewer than 20 cables EMT sleeve with mineral or ceramic fiber stuffing insulation and smoke/acoustical Sealant.
- E. Fill ratio for fire stop EMT sleeves shall not exceed 20% fill capacity.

2.19 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Grounding and Bonding" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-C.

2.20 LADDER RACK, SUPPORTS, AND ACCESSORIES

A. Ladder Rack (Universal Cable Runway)

- 1. Ladder rack shall be manufactured from 3/8" wide by 1-1/2" high tubular steel with .065" wall thickness.
- 2. Ladder rack (side stringers) will be 9'-11½" long. Cross members will be welded in between stringers on 12" centers beginning 5-3/4" from one end so that there are 10 cross members per ladder rack. There will be 10-1/2" of open space in between each cross member.
- 3. Ladder rack will be delivered individually boxed, and available in the multiple widths.
- 4. Finish shall be epoxy-polyester hybrid powder coat (paint) black in color.
- 5. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Universal Cable Runway: Part Number 10250-712, Universal Cable Runway, 12" Wide, Black or approved equal
- 6. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Universal Cable Runway: Part Number 10250-718, Universal Cable Runway, 18" Wide, Black or approved equal
- 7. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Universal Cable Runway: Part Number 10250-724, Universal Cable Runway, 24" Wide, Black placed in vertical positions or approved equal

B. Ladder Rack Splices

- 1. Splice kits will provide a method of mechanically connecting ladder rack sections and turns together end-to-end or side-to-end to form a continuous pathway for cables.
- 2. Grounding kits will provide a method of bonding ladder rack sections and turns together that is independent of the pathway splices. The grounding kit should be constructed of UL Listed components. The preferred solution is a #6 AWG green insulated stranded copper conductor connected on both ends to ladder rack using two-hole compression lugs and stainless steel hardware.
- 3. Splices (splice plates) will be manufactured from steel. Splice, grounding and insulator bar kits will include installation hardware.
- 4. Finish (of splice plates and hardware) shall be zinc plate in the color(s) specified below. Colors are applied as a chem. film over the zinc plate.
- 5. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Cable Runway Splices or approved equal

C. Ladder Rack Supports

- 1. Supports will be sized to match the width of the ladder rack that is supported. Some supports will work with all widths of ladder rack.
- 2. Each support will include a means of securing ladder rack to the support.
- 3. Supports will be manufactured from steel or aluminum.
- 4. Finish shall be epoxy-polyester hybrid powder coat (paint) in the color(s) specified below or zinc plate with a gold chem. finish specified gold. Included hardware shall be zinc plated with a gold chem. finish.
- 5. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Cable Runway Supports or approved equal

D. Ladder Rack Accessories

1. Cable straps used for attaching cable bundles to the ladder rack cross members must be reusable with a hook and loop-style closure, at least 3/4" wide, and sized for cable bundles that are 2", 3" or 4" in diameter.
2. Cable retaining posts used to keep cable from falling off of the side of the ladder rack shall be manufactured from 1" by 1/2" tubular steel with .065" wall thickness. Cable retaining posts will be 8" high and will attach to the side stringer of the ladder rack with included hardware. The top of the cable retaining posts will be fitted with a rubberized end cap to protect cables.
3. End caps used to cover the ends of ladder rack will be manufactured from a black fire-retardant rubberized material. End caps will be sized for 3/8" wide by 1-1/2" high side stringers and will be sold in pairs.
4. End closing kits used to cover the end of ladder rack will be manufactured from 3/8" wide by 1-1/2" high tubular steel with .065" wall thickness. Kits will consist of a bar cut to match the width of the ladder rack and the hardware required to attach the bar to the end of a length of ladder rack.
5. Radius drops used to create a radius to form cables over as the cables exit or enter the ladder rack will be manufactured from aluminum extrusion. The extrusion will be formed in a 90° arc with a minimum bend radius of 3". Radius drops will attach to either the side stringer or the cross member of the ladder rack using a clevis pin. Radius drops will include 1-1/2" high cable spools that attach to the top of the radius drop to guide cables.
6. Movable cross members used to support cross member radius drops in between welded cross members on ladder rack will be manufactured from 3/8" by 1-1/2" aluminum bar. Movable cross members will attach to ladder rack at the side stringers with included hardware so that the location of the movable cross member can be adjusted. Moveable cross member will support a cross member radius drop.
7. Cable spools used to separate ladder rack into multiple cable pathways will be made from a black flame retardant ABS. Cable spools will attach to the cross members with a clip that allows the width of the ladder rack to be divided into any proportion. The spools will be 3.94" tall, with a 1.94" diameter top, and a body that tapers from .88" (diameter) at the top to .62" (diameter) at the bottom.
8. Auxiliary support brackets used to support cables that should be physically separated from the cables in the ladder rack will be made from 1/8" x 1" steel bar. The bracket will be L-shaped and will attach to the side stringer of the ladder rack. The bracket will hang below the ladder rack a minimum of 4". The bracket support surface will be 4" long. The bracket will be zinc plated with a gold chem. finish.
9. Touch-up paint used on ladder rack and ladder rack system components will be color-matched to the finish on the ladder rack or component. A spray on and brush on option will be available.
10. Unless otherwise noted, finish on all metal components shall be epoxy-polyester hybrid powder coat (paint) black in color. Hardware will be zinc plated with a gold chem. finish.
11. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Cable Runway Accessories or approved equal

2.21 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches A-C Grade

1. Provide materials that comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Use treatment for which chemical manufacturer publishes physical properties of treated wood after exposure to elevated temperatures, when tested by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516, for plywood.
- B. All 4 walls shall be covered with rigidly fixed 3/4 inch A-C plywood with the A grade side facing outward. The plywood shall be void free and extend from 6 inches above the finished floor (AFF) to 102 inches AFF and capable of supporting the attached equipment.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Paints and Coatings" for fire-retardant plywood.

2.22 EQUIPMENT FRAMES

- A. Free Standing Relay Racks
1. Racks shall be manufactured from aluminum and/or steel extrusions.
 2. Each rack will have two L-shaped top angles, two L-shaped base angles and two C-shaped equipment-mounting channels. The rack will assemble with bolt hardware. Equipment-mounting channels will be threaded for easy assembly. The base angles will be pre-punched for attachment to the floor.
 3. Equipment mounting channels will be 3" deep and punched on the front and rear flange with the EIA-310-D Universal hole pattern to provide 45 rack-mount spaces for equipment. Each mounting space will be marked and numbered on the mounting channel.
 4. When assembled with top and bottom angles, equipment-mounting channels will be spaced to allow attachment of 19" EIA rack-mount equipment. Attachment points will be threaded with 12-24 roll-formed threads. The rack will include assembly and equipment-mounting hardware. Each rack will include 50 each combination pan head, pilot point mounting screws.
 5. The assembled rack will measure 7' (84") high, 20.3" wide and 15" deep. The sides (webs) of the equipment-mounting channels will be punched to allow attachment of vertical cable managers along the sides of the rack or for rack-to-rack baying.
 6. The rack will be rated for 1,500 lb. of equipment.
 7. The rack will be UL Listed.
 8. Finish shall be epoxy-polyester hybrid powder coat black in color.
 9. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Universal Self-Support Rack or approved equal

2.23 CABLE MANAGEMENT

- A. Vertical Cable Management for Racks
1. Every rack will have a minimum of one vertical cable manager. The vertical cable manager will create a space for storing and organizing cables along the side of the rack/frame. The cable manager will maintain separation between patch/equipment/jumper cords and premise cables. The last rack in a row shall have two vertical cable managers.
 2. The cable manager will be sized to match cabling requirements and to fit the rack/frame or as specified. The initial quantity of cables within the cable manager will not exceed a whole number value equal to 40% of the interior area of the cable manager.
 3. A single vertical cable manager can be used in between bayed racks/frames if it is sized to match cable requirements for both racks/frames. The manufacturer will state estimated cable fills for the cable manager in the product data sheet.
 4. The vertical cable manager will match the height of the rack(s)/frame(s).

5. The vertical cable manager will bolt to the side of racks/frames with included hardware. The manufacturer of the vertical cable manager will sell compatible racks/frames.
6. The vertical cable manager will be a double-sided H-shaped trough with front and rear covers. The double-sided trough will provide independent front and rear cable pathways and will have multiple evenly-spaced edge-protected front-to-rear cable pass-through holes for cables in the center divider.
7. The front and rear covers will be removable, hinged to open from the right or left side and will include a latch that will secure the cover in the closed position.
8. The vertical cable manager will have cable openings along both sides of the trough. The openings will be formed by evenly-spaced T-shaped cable guides. The T-shaped cable guides will be made from a composite plastic material (not metal) and will have rounded edges to protect cables. When the cable manager is attached to a rack/frame, each cable opening will align with a rack-mount space (RMU) on the rack/frame. Each opening will pass a minimum of 24 each .25" OD patch cords.
9. The cable manager will be delivered individually boxed, and available in several widths as specified below and in the contract documents.
10. The vertical cable manager shall be manufactured from sheet aluminum and composite materials.
11. Finish shall be epoxy-polyester hybrid powder coat paint in the color as specified below and in the contract documents. Edge-protectors, T-shaped cable guides and latch hardware is black.
12. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI): CCS MCS Master Cabling Section: Part Number Part Number 30095-703, MCS Master Cabling Section, Double-Sided, 6" Wide x 84" High x 16.15"D, Black or approved equal

B. Horizontal Cable Management for Racks, Frames or Cabinets

1. Place horizontal cable managers above and below each patch panel in each rack/cabinet. The horizontal cable manager will guide patch/equipment cords between the vertical cable manager and individual network port connections.
2. Provide 2 RMU of horizontal cable management above and below every patch panel. Cables must be able to access the cable manager so that no ports are blocked by the cables.
3. The manufacturer will state estimated cable fills for the cable manager in the product data sheet.
4. The horizontal cable manager will match the rack-mount width of the racks/cabinets.
5. The horizontal cable manager will attach to the front or rear of the rack/frame/cabinet with screws and will be sized to fit within standard EIA-310-D (1-3/4" high RMU) rack-mount spacing. The manufacturer of the horizontal cable manager will sell compatible racks/cabinets.
6. The horizontal cable manager will be a single-sided C-shaped trough with a cover. The single-sided trough will have a slot or holes at the rear to facilitate front-to-rear cabling through the horizontal manager. The front of the cable manager will have T-shaped cable guides along the top and bottom surfaces of the cable manager. Evenly spaced cable openings in between the T-shaped cable guides will allow cables to enter/exit the cable manager into the rack-mount space. The openings will have rounded edges to protect cables. The cover will be removable, hinged to open up or down and will snap on to secure the cover in the closed position.
7. The horizontal cable manager will be delivered individually boxed, and available in several widths and heights as specified below and in the contract documents.
8. The horizontal cable manager shall be manufactured from sheet aluminum and composite materials.

9. Finish shall be epoxy-polyester hybrid powder coat paint in the color as specified below and in the contract documents. Edge-protectors, T-shaped cable guides and latch hardware is black.
10. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Universal Horizontal Cable Manager: Part Number 30130-719, Universal Horizontal Cable Manager, Single-Sided, 19" Wide x 2 RMU x 5" Deep, Black or approved equal
11. Product: Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI), Universal Horizontal Cable Manager: Part Number 30139-719, Universal Horizontal Cable Manager, Single-Sided, 19" Wide x 1 RMU x 5" Deep, Black or approved equal

2.24 POWER DISTRIBUTION UNIT (PDU)

A. Vertical

1. Product Feature:
 - a. Monitoring Power - Local (Amps, Volts, Watts, Power Factor)
 - b. Digital RMS Scrolling Power Meter +/- 2% Accuracy with Full Scale 60Hz sine wave input.
 - c. Voltage 100-120V, Current 20A
 - d. On/off switch
 - e. Power Cable Length 10ft
 - f. Plug Type NEMA 5-20P
 - g. Receptacle Type NEMA 5-20R - twenty (20) each
 - h. Heavy Steel - Powder Coat Finish Black
 - i. Configuration - 66in Vertical Rack/Cabinet mount

2.25 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:
 1. MinuteMan
 2. TrippLite
 3. American Power Company (APC)
 4. Approved equal
- B. Each equipment rack shall contain a rack mounted local uninterruptible power supply (UPS).
- C. The UPS shall be able to support its' associated rack enclosure in an active state of operation for not less than thirty-minutes.

2.26 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with ANSI/TIA-606-C and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Electrical Identification."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.
- B. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.
- C. Install pathways complying with recommendations in ANSI/TIA-569-E, "Entrance Facilities" Article.
 - 1. Install entrance pathway complying with Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
 - 1. Pull boxes:
 - a. Provide pull boxes as required to ensure that no section of conduit exceeds 100' between accessible pull points.
 - b. No section of conduit shall have greater than two 90-degree bends or a cumulative 180 degrees of total bends.
 - c. Pull boxes shall be placed in straight sections of conduit and shall not be used in place of a bend.
 - d. Pull boxes should be readily accessible and shall be sized per the BICSI TDMM.
 - 2. Conduit bends:
 - a. The inside bend radius for conduit sized 2" or less shall be minimum six times the internal conduit diameter.
 - b. The inside bend radius for conduit larger than 2" shall be minimum ten times the internal conduit diameter.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes" for installation of conduits and wireways.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- D. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
 - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 - 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
 - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.
 - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.3 NON-CONTINUOUS CABLE SUPPORTS

- A. Installation and configuration shall conform to the requirements of the current revision levels of ANSI/ TIA Standards 568 & 569, NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code), applicable local codes, and to the manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Do not exceed load ratings specified by manufacturer.
- C. Adjustable non-continuous support sling shall have a static load limit of 100 lbs.
- D. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for allowable fill capacity for each size non-continuous cable support.
- E. Bridle rings shall not be used for telecom cable support.

3.4 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways, J hooks, and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables accessible ceilings, walls, and floors except in unfinished spaces.
- B. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.
- E. Provide equipment frames and ladder racking as outlined in telecommunications series drawings.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D and ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
 - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
 - 5. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 6. Cables shall not be painted or exposed to any other building adhesives, paint, coatings, or other foreign agents.
 - 7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.

8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
 11. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot long service loop on each end of cable.
 12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. UTP Cable Installation:
1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
 2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/4 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
 3. Terminate patch panels and outlets to a pin/pair assignment as directed by owner.
- D. UTP Riser Cable Installation:
1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
 2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
 3. Terminate patch panels to a pin/pair assignment as directed by owner.
- E. UTP Patch Cords
1. Provide modular cords required to connect LAN switches to modular jacks on cross connect panel shall be furnished as part of this solicitation. Quantities should be equal to the total number of network outlets. At the Patch panel location provide patch cable lengths as needed for a neat installation utilizing vertical wire managers. At the user outlets provide 10 foot patch cables for each 8 pin modular connector
- F. Open-Cable Installation:
1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
 2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
 3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. The telecom structured cable shall be supported by its own independent support system.
 4. Plastic "zip-ties" shall not be used. Cables shall be bundled utilizing plenum rated hook and loop type cable ties.
- G. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
 2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
 3. Coil cable 10 feet long not less than 12 inches in diameter below each feed point.
- H. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- I. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
2. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
3. Fiber shall be installed in innerduct within conduits.
4. Multiple fibers shall be pulled in the same innerduct whenever possible.
5. Fiber shall be installed in one continuous piece.
6. Any excess fiber shall be coiled neatly and secured to a wall above the plywood backboard so it is out of the way of normal traffic and is not subject to unusual flexing.

J. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and ANSI/TIA-569-E for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: minimum 5 inches
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: minimum 12 inches
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: minimum 24 inches
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: minimum 2-1/2 inches
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: minimum 6 inches
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: minimum 12 inches
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: minimum 3 inches
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: minimum 6 inches
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: minimum 48 inches
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: minimum 5 inches

3.6 INSTALLATION OF INNERDUCT

1. Textile innerduct shall be installed as follows:
 - a. In a clear 4-inch conduit, two (2) each 3" 3-cell with additional pull tape outside innerducts for future pulls.
 - b. Install per manufacturer's instructions.
 - c. Provide suitable slack in maintenance holes, hand holes, pull boxes, and at turns to ensure there is no kinking or binding of the product.
 - d. When exposed indoors or in maintenance holes, hold firmly in place using independent supports.

3.7 INSTALLATION TELECOMMUNICATIONS ROOMS

- A. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- B. Bond the shield of any shielded cable to the grounding busbar in communications rooms and spaces.

- C. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

- D. Free Standing Relay Racks
 1. Assemble relay racks according to manufacturer's instructions. Verify that equipment mounting rails are sized properly for rack-mount equipment before attaching the rack to the floor.
 2. All racks must be attached to the floor in four places using appropriate floor mounting anchors. When placed over a raised floor, threaded rods should pass through the raised floor tile and be secured in the structural floor below. (Use CPI Part Number 40604-003 for concrete slab floors.)
 3. Racks shall be grounded to the TGB using appropriate hardware. The ground will meet local code requirements and will be approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
 4. Ladder rack shall be attached to the top of the racks/cabinets to deliver cables to the rack. The rack should not be drilled to attach ladder rack. Use appropriate hardware from the ladder rack manufacturer.
 5. The equipment load should be evenly distributed and uniform on the rack/cabinets. Place large and heavy equipment towards the bottom of the racks/cabinets. Secure all equipment to the racks/cabinets with equipment mounting screws.

- E. Ladder Rack
 1. Provide all components of the ladder rack system (ladder rack, turns, splices, supports, and accessories) from a single manufacturer.
 2. Ladder rack shall be installed with side stringers facing down so that the ladder forms an inverted U-shape and so that welds between the stringers (sides) and cross members (middle) face away from cables.
 3. Ladder rack shall be secured to the structural ceiling, building truss system, wall, floor or the tops of equipment racks and/or cabinets using the manufacturer's recommended supports and appropriate installation hardware and methods as defined by local code or the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).
 4. Ladder rack splices will be made in mid-span, not over a support, with the manufacturer's recommended splice hardware.
 5. Ladder rack shall be supported every 5' or less in accordance with TIA-569-E. Ladder rack shall be supported within 2' of every splice and within 2' on both/all sides of every intersection. Support ladder rack within 2' on both sides of every change in elevation. Support ladder rack every 2' when attached vertically to a wall.
 6. Heavy-duty splices are recommended for ladder rack in excess of 18" width (18" wide ladder rack). Heavy-duty splices are required for any splice formed in the vertical orientation including changes in elevation formed using vertical-to-horizontal 90° turns or horizontal-to-vertical 90° turns. Use heavy-duty splices to secure all overhead turns to the overhead horizontal pathway(s).
 7. When the pathway is overhead, ladder rack shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 12" above the ladder rack. Leave a minimum of 12" in between ladder rack and ceiling/building truss structure. Leave a minimum of 3" in between ladder rack and the tops of equipment racks and/or cabinets. Multiple tiers of ladder rack shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 12" in between each tier of ladder rack. When located above an acoustical drop ceiling, leave a minimum of 3" clearance between the top of the drop ceiling tiles and the bottom of the ladder rack.
 8. When installed under a raised floor, ladder rack shall be installed with a minimum 3" clearance between the top of the ladder rack and the bottom of the floor tiles or floor system

- stringers, whichever is lower in elevation. Maintain a 3" clearance between ladder racks wherever ladder racks cross.
9. Within each telecommunications room, ladder rack should be bonded together, electrically continuous, and bonded to the TGB, unless otherwise noted in the specifications and contract documents. Ladder rack and turns shall be bonded across each splice with a bonding kit. Ladder rack shall be bonded to the Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB) using an approved ground lug on the ladder rack and a minimum #6 grounding wire or as recommended by the AHJ. Remove paint from the ladder rack where bonding/ground lugs contact the ladder rack so that the lug will contact bare metal. Use antioxidant joint compound in between the bare metal on the ladder rack and ground lug. Use antioxidant joint compound in between the bus bar and the ground lug. Verify continuity through the bonds at splices and intersections between individual ladder rack sections and turns and through the bond to the TGB.
 10. The quantity of cables within the ladder rack will not exceed a whole number value equal to 50% of the interior area of the ladder rack divided by the cross-sectional area of the cable. The interior area of ladder rack will be considered to be the width of the ladder rack multiplied by a height of 2", unless cable retaining posts are added to the ladder rack. The interior area of ladder rack equipped with cable retaining posts will be considered to be the width of the ladder rack multiplied by a height of 6". Actual cable fill for ladder rack that is not equipped with cable retaining posts will not exceed 2" in height. Actual cable fill for ladder rack equipped with cable retaining posts will not exceed 6" in height.
 11. The combined weight of cables within the ladder rack will not exceed the stated load capacity of the ladder rack as stated in the manufacturer's product specifications or load/design tables.
 12. Cables (cable bundles) will be secured to the cross members of ladder rack with ¾" wide reusable straps. Straps are not required when ladder rack is equipped with cable retaining posts.
 13. Add 8" high cable retaining posts to the open sides of ladder rack when cable fill exceeds 2" in height or when cable bundles cannot be secured directly to the ladder rack cross members with a strap. Cable fill within any ladder rack should not exceed 6" in height.
 14. When a single ladder rack supports different types of cable media, the cable media will be separated within the pathway by cable spools that attach to the cross members on the ladder rack. Treat each type of cable media and divided area of the ladder rack separately when determining cable fill limits.
 15. Use a radius drop to guide cables wherever cable exits overhead ladder rack to access a rack, frame, cabinet or wall-mounted rack, cabinet or termination field. If necessary, provide a moveable cross member also to attach and align the radius drop in between the welded cross members of a ladder rack.
 16. Cover the exposed ends of cable runway that do not terminate against a wall, the floor or the ceiling with end caps or an end closing kit.
 17. Use auxiliary support brackets that attach to the side stringer of the ladder rack to support interconnect cabling (patch cords, equipment cords, jumper cords) that is routed between racks using the ladder rack. Auxiliary support brackets can be used to support other conductors that should be physically separated from cables within the ladder rack as defined by local code or the authority having jurisdiction (AHJ).
 18. Whenever possible, maintain a 2' separation between ladder rack used for communications cables and pathways for other utilities or building services.
 19. Provide touch-up paint color-matched to the finish on the ladder rack and correct any minor cosmetic damage (chips, small scratches, etc.) resulting from normal handling during the installation process prior to delivery. If a component is cosmetically damaged to the extent that correction in the field is obvious against the factory finish, the component will be

replaced with a new component finished from the factory. If a component is physically damaged due to mishandling or modification during the installation process, it shall not be used as part of the ladder rack system.

F. Vertical Cable Managers

1. Attach vertical cable managers to the side of the rack/frame using the manufacturer's installation instructions and included hardware.
2. When a single vertical cable manager is used in between two racks, attach the vertical cable manager to both racks.
3. When more than one cable manager is used on a rack or group of racks, use the same make, style and size of vertical cable manager on the rack or in between racks.
4. The color of the racks and cable managers must match.
5. Doors should be attached to the cable manager and in the closed position after cabling is complete.

G. Horizontal Cable Managers

1. When more than one horizontal cable manager is used on a rack/cabinet or group of racks/cabinets, use the same make, and style of cable manager on the rack/cabinet or racks/cabinets.
2. The color of the racks and cable managers must match.
3. Attach horizontal cable managers to the rack/cabinet with four screws according to the manufacturer's installation instructions. Each cable manager should be centered within the allocated rack-mount space (RMU).
4. Horizontal managers will be located so that the number of ports (cables) they support will not exceed the cable fill capacity of the cable manager.
5. Covers should be attached to the cable manager and in the closed position after cabling is complete.

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems in accordance with Performance Criteria and in accordance with the conditions of testing and classification as specified in the published design.
- C. Install EZ Path floor grid system for all Telecommunications Room floor penetrations with additional quantity as shown on contract drawings.
- D. Install EZ Path Series 44 modules for all Telecommunications Room wall penetrations with additional quantity as shown on contract drawings.
- E. Install EZ Path or EMT sleeve where horizontal cables penetrate a fire rated wall.
- F. Manufacturer's Instructions: Comply with manufacturer's instructions for installation of firestopping products.
- G. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E, "Firestopping."
- H. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

- I. Any penetrations created for the passage of telecommunications which remains vacant at the completion of the installation shall be fire-stopped.

3.9 NON-RATED CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. General: Install through-penetration systems in accordance with Performance Criteria and in accordance with the conditions of testing and classification as specified in the published design.
- C. EZ Path® Series 44 NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway per manufactures instructions
- D. EZ Path® Series 33NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway per manufactures instructions
- E. Any EMT non-rated wall penetrations created for the passage of telecommunications shall have the annular space filled with mineral wool and Smoke and sound acoustical sealant.
- F. Any non-rated EMT wall penetrations created for the passage of telecommunications which remains vacant at the completion of the installation shall be filled with mineral or ceramic fiber stuffing insulation and smoke/sound acoustical sealant.

3.10 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with requirements in division 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- C. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-C.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.11 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with ANSI/TIA-606-C.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Identification."
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 9 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
- D. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an AutoCad or Revit electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

- E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of ANSI/TIA-606-C. Furnish Autodesk Revit – project version -electronic record of all drawings.
- F. Cable and Wire Identification:
 - 1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 - 3. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
 - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 - 4. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- G. Exposed Riser Cables and Riser Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
- H. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in ANSI/TIA-606-C.
 - 1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

3.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D and ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
- B. Factory test UTP cables according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
- C. Factory test multimode and singlemode optical fiber cables according to ANSI/TIA-526-14-A and ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Visually inspect UTP, multi-pair copper and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D and ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
 2. Visually confirm cable category marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
 3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 4. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in ANSI/TIA-568.2D. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 5. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in ANSI/TIA-568.3-D. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 - b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
 - 1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to ANSI/TIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
 - 2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
 - c. Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR) Tests:
 - 1) Provide OTDR testing for all installed optical fiber links, including all backbone and horizontal links.
 - 2) Submit OTDR test results to owner upon completion of system installation.
 6. UTP Performance Tests:
 - a. Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D:
 - 1) Wire map.
 - 2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
 - 3) Insertion loss.
 - 4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
 - 5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
 - 6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
 - 7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
 - 8) Return loss.
 - 9) Propagation delay.
 - 10) Delay skew.
 7. Optical Fiber Cable Performance Tests: Perform optical fiber end-to-end link tests according to ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
 8. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP and optical fiber systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.

- a. Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
 - b. Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.
- C. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
 - D. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
 - E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

3.14 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel in cable-plant management operations, including changing signal pathways for different workstations, rerouting signals in failed cables, and keeping records of cabling assignments and revisions when extending wiring to establish new workstation outlets.

3.15 REPAIR/RESTORATION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces. Repair damage to any surfaces occurring as a result of the work of this section. Repair of surfaces shall include re-painting in accordance with Division 09 section "Painting."

3.16 CLEANING

- A. At the completion of the system, restore aspects of the project site to its former condition. Remove daily waste and excess materials, rubbish debris, tools and equipment resulting from or used in the services provided under this contract. Remove trash from all work areas. Do not use dumpsters or trash disposal without prior approval.

END OF SECTION 271000

SECTION 27 41 00 - AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. 11 52 13 – Projection Screens
- C. 27 05 28.48 – Multimedia Connection Wall Box
- D. 27 05 28.50 – Multimedia Flush Poke-Thru Device
- E. 27 41 13 – Multimedia Floorbox
- F. 27 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems
- G. Audiovisual (AV) System Drawings
- H. Other Drawings
 - 1. Related Architectural Drawings; for reference only.
 - 2. Related Electrical Drawings; for reference only.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Building Industry Consulting Services International (BiCSi), "Telecommunications Distributions Methods Manual," Fourteenth Edition.
- B. American National Standards Institute/Telecommunications Industry Association (ANSI/TIA) -568.2-D, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard"
- C. ANSI/TIA-569-E, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces"
- D. EIA/TIA-606C, "Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings"
- E. EIA/TIA-607-D, "Commercial Building Grounding/Bonding Requirements"
- F. National Electrical Code (NEC), 2020 - National Fire Protection Agency (NFPA) 70
- G. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) 802.3 Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (Ethernet 10/100/1000/10000 BASE-T)
- H. Federal Communications Commission (FCC), Title 47, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 68.
- I. National Institution for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET)
- J. Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association (AVIXA).

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA: Americans with Disabilities Act
- B. ALS: Assistive Listening System
- C. AV: Audiovisual
- D. AVIXA: Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association
- E. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International
- F. Bid: Herein, used interchangeably with "proposal"
- G. CATV: Central or Master Antenna Television (broadband)
- H. DSP: Digital Signal Processor
- I. IR: Infrared
- J. NIC: material and work which is Not In Contract and for which the Installer is not responsible except as otherwise detailed herein.
- K. OFE: "Owner Furnished Equipment" which will be provided by The Owner. Be responsible for installing and integrating this equipment as detailed herein.
- L. OFCI: "Owner Furnished Contractor Installed" Equipment which will be provided by The Owner. Be responsible for installing and integrating this equipment as detailed herein.
- M. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer
- N. RF: Radio Frequency
- O. The term "shall" is mandatory.
- P. The term "will" is informative.
- Q. The term "should" is advisory.
- R. Term "provide" means furnish and install.
- S. AV Consultant: Convergent Technologies Design Group, Inc.
- T. Bidder: Qualified firm intending to tender a bid on the systems described herein.
- U. Construction Manager (CM) or General Contractor (GC): The representative responsible for general building construction and onsite coordination between sub-contractors

1.4 BID PROPOSALS

- A. Itemized Bid Response
 - 1. Each piece of equipment shall be individually priced and submitted with Bid Proposals. Provide itemized bid response to include equipment description, manufacturer, model number, unit price,

- and quantity on a per room basis. All equipment prices shall reflect required modifications and accessories as needed for a complete and functioning system.
2. Non-equipment charges shall be outlined separately as a single line item on a per room basis. A sum of the audiovisual system total cost shall be provided with the bid proposal.
 3. Be responsible for all equipment and installation as indicated in the construction documents. Any equipment omissions or modifications in the itemized bid response shall not serve as direction to omit or modify project scope without explicit written agreement from the owner, architect, and AV consultant.
- B. Contractor Qualification
1. Demonstrate at least three (3) years' experience in fabrication, programming, assembly, and installation of audiovisual presentation and remote-control systems of similar magnitude and quality as specified for the subject job. Submit documentation to this effect with the bid response. Be an authorized sales and service center for all listed components and offerings in this specification.
 - a. The AV contractors own forces, at a minimum, are to perform the AV system Programming.
 2. References: Furnish no less than three (3) references for installations of similar size (dollar amount & quantity of spaces receiving integrated technology) and scope, performed within the past three (3) years. At a minimum, reference information will include the reference company or institute name, contact person's name and title, telephone number, address, and detailed project description, project manager's name, and contact information of the organization that is responsible for day-to-day operation of the audiovisual installation.
 3. Programming shall be completed by contractors' own staff.
- C. Alternate Proposals
1. Any proposed alternate equipment choices should be requested in writing prior to the proposal submission for approval. Each item on the alternate equipment list must be accompanied by catalog cut sheets and technical specifications.
- D. Non-Equipment Charges, including but not limited to:
1. Engineering: Including all required design drawings, run sheets, instruction manuals, console layout, step-by-step user guide, etc.
 2. Pre-Installation: Work performed on the Installer's premises including all fabrication, modification, assembly, rack wiring, etc.
 3. Installation: Including all on-site installation and wiring, shop drawing, coordination and supervision, testing, checkout, Owner training, etc., performed on the Owner's premises.
 4. General and Administrative: Including all shipping, insurance, and guarantees.
- E. Owner Furnished Equipment (OFE, OFCI)
1. Identify any Owner Furnished Equipment assumed in the Bid Proposal to be installed and integrated under this contract. Identify all assumed Owner Furnished equipment within each room/space type that will be required to complete the AV systems installation.
- F. State of the Art Development
1. Supply only the manufacturer's latest developed product. In cases where product development surpasses the criteria of the specification, inform the Architect and make the newer product available to the project at no additional cost. In no case shall discontinued or obsolete equipment be acceptable. The same requirement applies to software programs developed/updated during the warranty period.
 2. Should a manufacturer discontinue a specified product, provide the manufacturer's recommended replacement at no additional cost to the owner. Should the manufacturer have no direct replacement product, Propose a product of equal or greater specification from an alternate manufacturer at no additional cost to the owner.
 3. Should a product recall by a specified manufacturer require temporary or permanent replacement of a product specified under this section, notify the Architect at the earliest possible time and arrange to replace the product in question as quickly as possible.

- a. Equipment found defective or subject to recall prior to scheduled installation shall not be delivered to the jobsite.
- b. Equipment defect or intended recall shall not relieve the AV Contractor from any contractual obligations with regard to delivery schedule of product.
- c. Under no circumstances shall arrangement for alternate product require the Owner to accept superseded equipment except on a temporary basis.

G. Service Contract

1. Submit the costs for a one-year service contract, renewable for up to three years, which shall commence with the completion of the two-year warranty period. These contracts shall be fixed-cost and can be accepted at the option of the Owner.
2. The service contract shall include all services provided during the warranty period, including complete replacement or repair of defective equipment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Coordination

1. Coordinate this Section with work of other Project Manual sections and associated trades.
2. Specific references, herein, requiring coordination of certain work shall not obviate responsibility for other required coordination.

B. Standards and Codes

1. Comply with
 - a. Local, state and federal codes
 - b. Applicable National Electrical Code
 - c. American National Standards Institute
 - d. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. standards.
2. All equipment, material, accessories, and loose items provided shall be new and shall conform to applicable requirements of the above-mentioned agencies.
3. If required by local authorities, provide certificates and labels indicating compliance with above-mentioned codes and standards where applicable.

C. Point of Contact

1. Designate to the Owner in writing, the responsible person who shall ensure timely and consistent communication with the Owner on progress of the contract. The designated representative shall have full knowledge of all engineering and production procedures and shall report status of the installation and upcoming work plans to the Owner's Project Manager and Consultant on a weekly basis.
2. Project manager shall have successfully managed not less than two (2) projects of similar size and scope (as defined in previous sections). Bid submission shall detail the percentage of time that the project manager and other key personnel will be involved with the project.

1.6 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Provide the following in accordance with Specifications and Drawings:

1. Submittals delivered in a timely manner as described hereinafter.
2. Verification of dimensions and other conditions at project site. Review Conduit System as shown in building Construction Documents and, where applicable, as-built conditions. Notify Consultant, Architect, GC, and EC within four weeks after award of contract of any deficiencies or inadequacies in conduit/infrastructure system design. Review Telecommunications Structured Cabling System to ensure sufficient network connections are provided to support the Audiovisual Systems.

3. Review all AV equipment mounting and rack enclosures to verify dimensions, power provisions, and ventilation. Notify Consultant, Architect, GC, and EC within four weeks after award of contract of any deficiencies or inadequacies in equipment rack enclosures and mounting locations.
4. Detailed design of Digital Signal Processor system "maps," including remote-control accommodations.
5. Complete programming of audiovisual remote-control system inclusive of graphical layout and source code programming
 - a. Programming shall be completed by contractors' own staff.
6. Power distribution within equipment racks including power connection to electrical outlets as described in the electrical sections of the building construction documents.
7. Incidentals necessary for a complete working system.
8. Initial testing and adjustments, demonstration of system for approval, participation in acceptance tests, final adjustments as required.
9. Record Documents, "As-Built" drawings and Owner's Manual.
10. Training of operating personnel.
11. Notify appropriate parties of conflicts in a timely manner.
12. Work cooperatively with other trades to resolve conflicts.

B. Special Insurance

1. Provide insurance fully covering all equipment against loss and damage during shipment, storage, installation, testing, adjustment and demonstration.

1.7 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Design Intent

1. Provide a complete and functioning audiovisual (AV) system inclusive of all hardware, software and training to meet or exceed the performance features outlined in this document.

B. Design Standards

1. The Owner's goal is to have available a cohesive and fully functional system. Therefore, part of the development efforts for successfully implementing the AV systems should include:
 - a. Install the system in a manner that complies with BiCSi and AVIXA cable routing standards. Route all audio, video, and control cabling elements in a subtle, unobtrusive manner to maintain the architectural and visual integrity of the building.
 - b. Except where plenum cable is used above finished ceilings, it is required that all cabling be routed inside the comprehensive system of conduit. Floor and wall boxes shall serve as the primary interface points to the AV system.
 - c. Provide and install cover plates, connectors, and associated cabling to link all floor and wall boxes to all affiliated local and remote AV components. No wiremold or surface-mounted raceway will be permitted unless explicitly specified. Coordinate faceplate materials, colors, and finishes with the faceplates used by other trades on the project and the architect to match aesthetics.
 - d. Provide and install security covers on any electronics with front panel controls that should not need to be adjusted after initial set-up. All components permanently mounted to rack rail systems shall be installed with industry accepted security screws.
 - e. All ceiling mounted AV equipment shall be secured to building structure.
 - f. No more than thirty lamp hours shall be expired for projection system set-up at the time of final systems acceptance. Should more hours than this be expired, replace the lamp at no cost to the Owner.
 - g. Steel cable security systems and padlocks to secure structure shall be provided for all surface-mounted loudspeakers, document cameras, video cameras, flat panel displays, and projectors. All padlocks provided for security shall be keyed to a single master key.
 - h. Provide an intellectual property release and install an editable version of all master source code for all digital signal processing, remote control or microprocessor-based systems

- included on this project to an owner furnished personal computer. Also provide a hardcopy on portable media.
- i. Provide necessary audio, video, RGBHV, HDMI, DVI, USB, and control signal repeaters, extenders, and amplifiers for any run greater than 30 feet and as needed to maintain required signal levels for receipt at destination device. All audio lines shall be balanced at the source, prior to any cable pull longer than 20 feet. There are no exceptions.
 - j. Video camera locations shall receive AC power from associated equipment rack low voltage transformers within 60 feet.
 - k. For each input/output point of interface to the system, provide a suitable length patch cord for owner use for every signal type present. Provide umbilical style cable management for any mobile solutions.
2. Performance Standards: Unless restricted by the published specifications of a particular piece of equipment, or unless otherwise required, the following minimum performance standards shall be met by each system:
- a. Analog Audio:
 - 1) S/N (including crosstalk and hum): 75 dB minimum
 - 2) Total Harmonic Distortion: 0.5% maximum from 30 Hz to 15,000Hz.
 - 3) Frequency Response: Flat within +1.0 dB, 30 Hz to 15,000Hz.
 - b. Analog Video:
 - 1) S/N (peak to RMS) unweighted DC to 4.2 MHz: 45-dB minimum
 - 2) Crosstalk, unweighted DC to 4.2 MHz: 45 dB minimum
 - 3) Frequency Response(composite): Within +0.5 dB to 10 MHz
 - 4) Frequency Response(component): Within +0.5 dB to 100 MHz
 - 5) Line and Field Tilt: 2% maximum
 - 6) Differential Gain: 3% maximum
 - 7) Differential Phase: 2 degrees maximum
 - c. Digital Visual Interface (DVI):
 - 1) TMDS Channel Pixel Clock Support up to 165 MHz
 - 2) EDID Support DDC
 - d. High Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI):
 - 1) TMDS Channel Pixel Clock Support up to 340 MHz
 - 2) Bandwidth for 1080p signals Support Deep Color and 3D
 - 3) Bandwidth for 4k signals Support HDR, 60fps, 4:4:4
 - 4) EDID and CEC Supported
 - e. AV Over IP
 - 1) H.264 Support up to 1080p/60
 - 2) H.265 Support up to 4K/60, 4:2:2
 - 3) M.JPEG Support up to 4K/60, 4:4:4
 - 4) Other proprietary codecs Support minimum 1080p/60
 - 5) The latency for all in-room sources visible within a given space shall not exceed 30ms.
 - f. Network Audio:
 - 1) Dante minimum 48kHz, 24-bit, 64i/64o
 - 2) AVB minimum 48kHz, 24-bit, 64i/64o
 - g. Performance Test Signal Paths: The signal paths for the above Performance Standards shall be as follows:
 - 1) Audio: From any and all source inputs (for microphones, computers, wireless presentation gateways, etc.) through all audio processing, preamplifiers, audio distribution amplifiers (ADA), mixers, switchers, codecs, encoders, decoders, etc., to all electrical signal destinations.
 - 2) Video: From all source inputs (for cameras, computers, wireless presentation gateways, etc.) through all distribution amplifiers (VDA), processors, switchers, matrices, encoders, decoders, transmitters, scalers, etc., to all signal destinations.

- h. Remote-Control Standards: As a minimum, the remote-control system for each space shall be programmed to include the following:
 - 1) Owner Logo on first page.
 - 2) Automatic System Shutdown.
 - 3) AM/PM Clock Settings.
 - 4) 50% or other reasonable audio level default.
 - 5) Separate Program and Microphone Audio Level Control with mute function.
 - 6) Volume/Mute controls for program and speech audio reinforcement on every screen.
 - 7) Panel layout to include user screens with separate, password protected technician pages.
 - 8) Raise and lower the projection screen when projection is powered off/on, respectively.
 - 9) Assign the room computer as default system source upon power up.
 - 10) Activate a minimum of three (3) presets for each installed remote-controllable video camera.
 - 11) Provide remote-control room management software and full licensing for each system on the project.
 - 12) Full function control of all source components, display units, processing devices and switching electronics.
 - 13) In sub-dividable spaces, provide both IR and closed contact partition sensor control, and automation of control system scenarios. Provide an additional option for manual override within a password-protected technician page.
 - 14) Touch panel page layouts shall be submitted for approval. Prior to designing touch panel layouts, meet with the Owner to review existing control system standards on campus and determine a basis of design.
 - 15) Follow-up programming and modifications as requested by the Owner shall be provided 6 months after system acceptance. Provide and install updated editable source code to the Owner following these updates.
 - 16) In the event the remote-control system programming becomes compromised during the warranty period, provide the necessary effort to make the system fully functional once again.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

A. Related Sections

- 1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 33 00, "Submittal Procedures."

B. Submittal Data

- 1. Submittal data is to be submitted as a complete, single digital file. All documents shall be clearly legible. Each submittal shall contain the below in the following order:
 - a. Cover Sheet
 - 1) Include name of supplying contractor and project name.
 - 2) Include submittal and revision number.
 - b. Detailed Bill of Materials
 - 1) Include a listing of: component quantities, equipment manufacturers, model numbers, descriptions of each component being supplied, and the specification paragraphs or drawing sheets that correspond to each product.
 - 2) The bill of materials shall be index referenced within the PDF file so that each product name is clickable, linked to the first page of the corresponding product data.
 - 3) Failure to provide this information will result in the rejection of submittals.
 - c. Product Data
 - 1) Include a catalog sheet per product of equipment listed in the Detailed Bill of Materials, in the exact order as the Detailed Bill of Materials. Each catalog sheet shall describe mechanical, electrical and functional equipment specifications. The catalog sheet must also include an image of the product.

- 2) Photocopy duplications of the manufacturer's original equipment catalog sheets will be allowed as long as they provide adequate clarity of both the printed word and graphics/pictures.
 - 3) If more than one product is shown on the catalog sheet the intended product must be denoted by either an arrow or highlight. All optional components and selections shall be clearly indicated.
- d. Authorized Distributor Certificate
- 1) Recently dated (within one year from submittal date) support letter from manufacturer stating that the supplying contractor is an Authorized Distributor of the product being supplied.
- e. Submittal shall be a single PDF file.
- 1) Partial submittals, or submittals comprised of multiple PDF files, will be rejected.

C. Shop Drawings

1. Prior to fabrication submit contractor-generated drawings for approval for all supplied systems. These drawings shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Title Sheet with sheet index and symbols legend
 - 1) Include a list of all drawings in the set and a symbols legend defining each symbol used in the package.
 - b. All panels, plates, and designation strips, including connectivity, layout, labeling, and details relating to terminology, engraving, finish and color
 - c. All equipment racks, cabinets, consoles, tables, carts, support bases, and shelves
 - d. Schematic drawings (AV & Control Signal Flows), system functional block drawings, including those for audio and video subsystems
 - e. All unusual equipment modifications
 - f. Equipment rack elevations
 - g. Equipment location drawings
 - h. Dimensions for all AV equipment racks and enclosures, verifying adequate space, power, and ventilation are provided
 - i. Cable labeling plan
 - j. Floor Plans, RCPs and Elevations:
 - 1) Show planned location for all elements and cable routing.
 - 2) Indicate projector distance, throw ratio, and lens.
 - 3) For any inductive loop assisted listening systems, indicate the inductive loop pathway.
2. Drawings should be at project standard scale and clearly legible.
3. Resubmission of contract drawings does not constitute a complete shop drawings submittal and is unacceptable. Such submittals will be rejected.

D. Form

1. Submit all materials for review as described above, specifically referenced to the specification paragraph number (where applicable).
 - a. Submit all drawings on sheets of one size, preferably the project standard size.
 - b. On submittal drawings, maintain 3/32" minimum lettering height. Submittals with text less than 1/16" in height may be rejected.
2. Partial Submittals may be rejected. If submitted individually and each in its entirety, the following submittals shall not be considered partial:
 - a. Personnel
 - b. Milestones
 - c. Conduit Verification Statement and Notifications
 - d. Rigging and Mounting Drawings
 - e. As-Built Documentation
3. Product Data and shop drawings must be submitted together in order to be reviewed.

E. User Interface

1. In order to develop a user interface which is both functional and useable, provide working "Beta" copies of system software for review and comment by the owner, architect and the AV consultant as per the below listed schedule:
 - a. This is anticipated to be an interactive process, requiring at least three submittals prior to first beneficial use. At a minimum, the software development process will have the following milestones:
 - 1) Initial concept submittal for review
 - 2) First Beta Review
 - 3) Second Beta Review
 - 4) Final implementation and onsite training: Prior to final acceptance
 - 5) Follow-up programming review and updates: within sixty-days from final acceptance

F. Weekly Reporting

1. Commencing with project award, provide weekly status reporting of milestone task status, anticipated completion date, and related memo notes for the following tasks:
 - a. Submittals
 - b. Infrastructure verification
 - c. Pre-wire status
 - d. Equipment Procurement
 - e. Shop fabrication
 - f. Remote control system design
 - g. Installation and Terminations
 - h. Field testing and pre-acceptance testing
 - i. Final acceptance demonstrations
 - j. Owner training
 - k. First owner use
 - l. Open Coordination Items and Questions
2. See below for a partial example of an acceptable weekly reporting list.

Project: <i>Project Name</i>							
Location: <i>Project Location</i>				Date: <i>Form Delivery Date</i>			
Project Manager: <i>Project Manager</i>				Delivered by: <i>Form Delivered By</i>			
		Projected Completion:	Status:	Notes:			
Infrastructure Verification:		<i>6/1/2018</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
Submittals:							
	<i>Product Data</i>	<i>8/1/2018</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
	<i>Drawings</i>	<i>8/1/2018</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
	<i>Personnel (etc.)</i>	<i>8/1/2018</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
RFIs:							
	<i>12</i>	<i>8/25/2018</i>	<i>Received</i>	<i>Implementing</i>			
	<i>178</i>	<i>9/6/2018</i>	<i>Pending</i>	<i>Projector Screen Clearances</i>			
Installation Status by Space							
Room		Equipment					
Name	Number	Pre-Wire	Order	Receive	Install	Test	Notes:
<i>Example 1</i>	<i>105</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>60%</i>	<i>0%</i>	<i>Re-programming</i>
<i>Example 2</i>	<i>135</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>90%</i>	<i>0%</i>	<i>Other Notes Here</i>

G. Personnel

1. Provide, in writing, within two weeks after award of Contract, the names, mailing address, phone numbers with extensions, email addresses and paging service numbers (if available) of the following project personnel:
 - a. Project Manager
 - b. Lead Systems Engineer
 - c. Field Foreman
 - d. Remote Control System Programmer

H. Conduit Verification

1. Within four weeks after award of Contract, submit statement confirming that the conduit system as designed in building construction documents has reviewed and, where applicable, as built.
2. Notify Consultant, General Contractor, Architect or Electrical Contractor of deficiencies or inadequacies, if any, in conduit system design or installation. If none, so indicate.
3. Absent conduit verification and after installation of conduit as designed, assume costs of equipment, materials, labor and engineering, including services of owner's representative(s) in designing and/or verifying revised wiring approach(es) as relate to providing a fully functional system using conduit as designed or as revised at the discretion of the owner.

I. Color Selection

1. Indicate color options for all items as applicable.
2. Coordinate wallplate finishes with the Architect.

J. Samples

1. Provide color and finish samples of any furniture or lecterns.

1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. At the completion of the installation, but before Final Acceptance, provide for review and approval the following, in compliance with Division 1 Section *Closeout Procedures*.

1. Operation and Maintenance Manuals:
 - a. Equipment manufacturer's operation and service manuals for each make and model of equipment.
 - b. System Operation Manual. Produce a manual specifically for the subsystems detailed herein. The manual shall describe all procedures necessary to activate each system and provide the functional requirements, except as specifically excluded by the Owner. This section shall provide a simple "How-to" user's guide for the procedures needed to operate the system. This document shall contain a section on operating the systems equipment in the event of control system failure. Control system touch panel layouts shall be accompanied by narrative text describing "step-by-step" function engagement.
2. Warranty
 - a. Provide list and dates of activation of equipment warranties.
 - b. Provide original manufacturers' certificates.
3. As-built Drawings
 - a. Include contractor-generated digital record diagrams for all systems including, but not limited to:
 - 1) Schematic wiring diagrams with cable markings
 - 2) Internal wiring diagrams of the equipment rack cabinets
 - 3) Custom equipment modifications
 - 4) Final test results and nominal settings for all adjustable controls
 - b. Resubmittal or markup of contract documents will not be accepted.
4. AV Passwords and Security
 - a. Software Passwords Schedule (i.e., a spreadsheet listing the manufacturer, model number and location in the Facility, of each piece of audio/video equipment, the software for which is password-protected)

- b. Provide to Owner's Representative as a secure document, separate from Operations and Maintenance Manuals and As-Built Drawings.
- c. IP address schedule for all network-addressable AV devices
- 5. Editable Control System Code
 - a. Provide the final control system code in an editable format.
- 6. Laminated Instruction Cards
 - a. Provide 8 ½ x 11 Instruction cards, approved by the Owner. Laminate step-by-step instructions outlining system operations for each room that has an AV system. Provide editable file of card to Owner.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING, AND STAGING

- A. Supply, transport, deliver, unload, move to the installation location, unpack, place, assemble, secure, connect, and install all equipment needed to complete the installation. Be responsible for transportation, parking, delivery, and on-site storage of the system's equipment. Be responsible for all transportation of personnel to and from the site.
- B. Reconfirm before delivery that hallways, stairways, passages, doorways, rooms, entries, elevators and foyers are of sufficient size to accommodate the passage and installation of the equipment and systems. Offsite pre-staging of goods is encouraged.
- C. The Owner's acknowledgment of delivery of goods and any payment made on account of such delivery shall not constitute acceptance (partial or otherwise) and shall not diminish obligations as specified.
- D. The actual dates of delivery shall be under the absolute control of the Owner. The dates and times for delivery/installation are critical to the successful completion of the project. Deliveries shall normally be accepted only Monday through Friday 8:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. In the event it becomes necessary for goods to be installed outside these hours comply with the instructions of the Owner. Deliveries attempted outside these hours without prior consent of the Owner may be turned away. Comply with all instructions of the Owner and the Contractor concerning time of arrival at the site; which entrance shall be utilized for delivery; routes to be taken to reach the installation location; and other matters relating to the orderly and timely installation of the system.
- E. Installation shall commence immediately upon delivery of materials to the jobsite, except as directed by Construction Manager. Time required from delivery date to completion of project shall be in accordance with the approved schedules.

1.11 SYSTEM TRAINING

- A. Training: Provide training in the operation and maintenance of the system for personnel designated by the Owner. Record owner training sessions on DVD or other agreed upon media, and make training videos available to the owner at no charge. The training shall be organized as follows:
 - 1. Two (2) two-hour training classes for system technical operation and maintenance. This class shall cover the following topics:
 - a. Review of signal flow diagrams
 - b. Review of all equipment functions, relevant to the function in this system
 - c. Review of initial equipment settings
 - d. Demonstration of all functional connections from a user perspective
 - e. Review & demonstration of replacement procedures for consumables (e.g., lamps)
 - f. Review of manufacturers' recommended routine maintenance procedures
 - 2. Two (2) two-hour training classes for system engineering concerns. This class shall cover the following topics:
 - a. Review of signal flow diagrams

- b. Review of all equipment functions, relevant to the installation
 - c. Review of initial equipment settings
 - d. Review of manufacturer's recommended routine maintenance procedures
 - e. Review & demonstration of replacement procedures for consumables (e.g., lamps)
 - f. Review & demonstration of control system software replacement/upgrade procedures
3. Two (2) four-hour training classes addressing AV system operations. The classes will demonstrate and describe the following:
 - a. System set-up and operations
 - b. Control system operation
 - c. How to attach microphones, record AV signals, and control the sound system
 - d. Videoconferencing operation & capabilities (if applicable)
 - e. Audio monitoring and ADA system operations
 - f. Cable antenna television system (CATV)
 4. Training may take place at any time (chosen by the Owner) after the systems are operational, up to a year following system acceptance.
 5. Closeout submittals shall be provided prior to any training classes.
 6. Coordinate detailed specifics of the training session(s) time, date, and location with the Owner.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. The system warranty shall be for twenty-four (24) months from the date of final acceptance. Provide all equipment, material, and labor required to uphold a full system warranty at no charge to the Owner. All manufacturers' equipment warranties shall be activated in the Owner's name and shall commence on the date of final acceptance. In the case of modified equipment, the manufacturer's warranty is normally voided. In such cases, provide the Owner with a warranty equivalent to that of the original manufacturer.
- B. There shall be no cost to the Owner for maintenance performed during the warranty period beyond the fixed cost of the contract.
- C. Coordinate and provide updates to the control system code & touch panel layouts based on owner feedback of desired functionality during warranty period.
- D. Provide a total of eight (8) one-day visits per year, or a total of sixty-four (64) engineering/ service labor hours to conduct preventive maintenance and the Owner directed system adjustments.
- E. Each visit will include:
 1. Cleaning optical lenses
 2. Checking and replacing projection lamps filters and indicators
 3. Checking and repairing microphones and microphone cables
 4. Conducting subjective and objective tests of the audio, video, and control systems of the installed audiovisual systems
- F. Repair and adjust any malfunctioning components located by the technician during this testing. Include control system programming updates and modifications as part of this service contract, providing an updated editable copy of the source code to the Owner.
- G. Provide a service telephone number, staffed by a qualified technician familiar with the equipment installed. Staff this number during normal business hours.
- H. Respond with an on-site technician within 24-hours of a service call (including Saturdays and Sundays) for all equipment and system failures.
- I. Replace or repair, at no cost to the owner, any failed equipment hardware or software installations required to provide full system operations.

- J. During the warranty period, advise the Owner in writing each time any routine software and firmware updates become available, giving the Owner the opportunity to upgrade the software/hardware should they so desire at no additional cost. Provide any necessary system modifications after installation of these updates to maintain a fully functioning system.
- K. Provide updates to firmware during service period. Provide any necessary system modifications after installation of these updates to maintain a fully functioning system.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, and are limited to, the following:
 - 1. Basis of design: ERICO
 - 2. Approved equals by:
 - a. Cooper/BN-line
 - b. Hilti Inc.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.
- C. Cable Support: NRTL labeled. Cable support brackets shall be designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
- D. Provide bend limiters, if not built into the cable support, to maintain cable type bend radius whenever cable exists pathways or makes transition between two pathways.
- E. Bridle rings shall not be used for cable support.
- F. Non-continuous cable supports
 - 1. Cable Support shall be NRTL labeled for support of Category Rated cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
 - 2. Non-continuous cable supports shall provide a bearing surface of sufficient width to comply with required bend radii of high-performance cables; cULus Listed.
 - 3. Non-continuous cable supports shall have flared edges to prevent damage while installing cables.
 - 4. Non-continuous cable supports sized 1 5/16" and larger shall have a cable retainer strap to provide containment of cables within the hanger. The cable retainer strap shall be removable and reusable and be suitable for use in air handling spaces.
 - 5. Non-continuous cable supports shall have an electro-galvanized or G60 finish and shall be rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments.
 - 6. Fastener to beam or flange with one non-continuous cable support, factory or jobsite assembled; rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments; cULus Listed.
 - 7. Support accessories:
 - a. Fastener to C or Z purlin
 - b. Fastener to threaded rod
 - c. Fastener to wire
 - d. Beam clamps
 - 8. Non-continuous cable supports shall be ERICO CableCat™ J-hook series CAT12, CAT21, CAT32, CAT64, CAT21SS, CAT32SS, CAT64SS; CAT-CMTM Double J-Hook CAT100CM; CAT-CMTM U-hook series CAT200CMLN, CAT300CMLN; and CAT-CMTM retainer CATRT200CM, CATRT300CM, or approved equal.

2.2 POWER DISTRIBUTION UNITS (PDU)

- A. Each AV equipment cabinet is to contain a rack mounted power distribution panel (PDU).
 - 1. Horizontal: For rack/cabinet less than 42U. PDU to occupy the first rack space in each rack/cabinet.
 - a. Product Feature:
 - 1) Two (2) pull out LED lights
 - 2) Digital voltmeter/ammeter, with discrete dimmer button, displays line voltage and RMS current draw
 - 3) Isolated outlet banks minimize inter-component interference and noise contamination
 - 4) 20A rating with a high inrush magnetic circuit breaker
 - 5) Minimum of Nine (9) outlets (eight (8) rear panel outlets and one (1) front panel convenience outlet)
 - 6) Plug type NEMA 5-20P, Receptacle Type NEMA 5-20R
 - 7) Heavy Steel - Powder Coat Finish Black
 - 2. Vertical: For rack/cabinet equal to or greater than 42U.
 - a. Product Feature:
 - 1) Monitoring Power - Local (Amps, Volts, Watts, Power Factor)
 - 2) Digital RMS Scrolling Power Meter +/- 2% Accuracy with Full Scale 60Hz sine wave input
 - 3) Voltage 100-120V, Current 20A
 - 4) On/off switch
 - 5) Power Cable Length 10ft
 - 6) Plug Type NEMA 5-20P
 - 7) Receptacle Type NEMA 5-20R - twenty (20) each
 - 8) Heavy Steel - Powder Coat Finish Black
 - 9) Configuration - 66in Vertical Rack/Cabinet mount

Retain sections if project has [Category Rated Cabling](#)

SECTIONS:

[F/UTP AND UTP CABLE AND CABLE HARDWARE](#)

[OPTICAL FIBER CABLE](#)

[OPTICAL FIBER CABLEHARDWARE](#)

[FIRE STOP CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES](#)

[NON-RATED CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES](#)

[CABLE MANAGEMENT](#)

[IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS](#)

2.3 F/UTP AND UTP CABLE AND CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers
 - 1. F/UTP AND UTP Cable and Cable Hardware to be the same manufacturer as Section 27 10 00 Communication construction standards.
- B. F/UTP Cable
 - 1. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair F/UTP with overall foil shield, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket

- a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
- b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568.2-D for performance specifications.
- c. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category 6.
- d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
- e. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262

C. F/UTP Cable Hardware

1. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with ANSI/TIA-568-D, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
2. Shielded Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables. All patch panels shall be 48-port.
 - a. Number of Jacks per Field: Provide one for each four-pair UTP cable indicated conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
3. Shielded Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position, eight conductor, modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
 - a. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, Category Choose an item..
4. Shielded Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 3'-20' in length; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure specified category performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 - a. TR location: Provide one (1) patch cord to match cable and Jack Assembly category rating per port on the patch panel.
 - b. Floor outlet locations: Provide one (1) ten foot modular patch cord to match cable and Jack Assembly category rating per eight-position eight conductor modular receptacle.

2.4 CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES

A. Fire Stop Cable Pass-Thru Sleeves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:
2. Basis of design: Specified Technologies Inc.
 - a. Approved equal by:
 - 1) 3M Corporation
 - 2) Hilti Corporation
 - 3) Wiremold- Legrand Corporation
3. Fire Rated Cable Pathways: STI EZ-PATH Brand device modules comprised of steel raceway with intumescent foam pads allowing 0 to 100 percent cable fill. The following products are acceptable:
4. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ-PATH Series 44 Fire Rated Pathway
5. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ-PATH Series 33 Fire Rated Pathway
6. EZ-path series 44 wall sleeves shall be provided for all telecom room penetrations to cable distribution system.
7. Horizontal cable pathway locations greater than 20 cables fire stop sleeves shall be STI EZ-Path series 33.
8. Horizontal cable pathway locations fewer than 20 cables EMT sleeve with UL listed system for firestopping is acceptable. Caulks and sealants shall be as manufactured by STI, 3M, Nelson, or approved equivalent.
9. Fill ratio for fire stop EMT sleeves shall not exceed 20% fill capacity.

B. Non-Rated Cable Pass-Thru Sleeves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:
 - a. Basis of design: Specified Technologies Inc.
 - b. Approved equal by:
 - 1) 3M Corporation
 - 2) Hilti Corporation
 - 3) Wiremold- Legrand Corporation
2. Non-Rated Cable Pathways: STI EZ-PATH Brand device modules The smoke and acoustical pathway shall contain a built-in sealing system and shall automatically adjust to the installed cable loading and shall permit cables to be installed, removed, or retrofitted without the need to remove or reinstall acoustical materials. The following products are acceptable:
 - a. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ Path® Series 44 NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway
 - b. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) EZ Path® Series 33 NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway
 - c. SpecSeal® Smoke 'N' Sound Smoke and Acoustical Sealant
 - 1) SNS120W 20 Oz Sausage - 36 cu in (592 ml)
 - 2) SNS129W 730573111529 29 Oz Tube - 52 cu in (858 ml)
 - 3) SNS105W 730573111543 5 Gallon Pail - 1,155 cu in (19.0 L) (White)
3. Horizontal cable pathway locations greater than 20 cables fire stop sleeves shall be STI EZ-Path series 33 or 44 as needed for pathway cable capacity
4. Horizontal cable pathway locations fewer than 20 cables EMT sleeve with mineral or ceramic fiber stuffing insulation and smoke/acoustical Sealant.
5. Fill ratio for fire stop EMT sleeves shall not exceed 20% fill capacity.

2.5 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Grounding and Bonding" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-C.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with ANSI/TIA-606-C and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Electrical Identification."

2.7 AV NETWORK SWITCHES

- A. Ensure compatibility with the following standards, where applicable:
 1. AVB
 2. Dante
- B. Provide a gigabit, managed switch with the following features:
 1. Minimum gigabit ports for inter-switch connections
 2. Quality of Service (QoS) with four (4) queues
 3. Diffserv (DSCP) QoS, with strict priority
 4. If the switch includes Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE), verify this feature can be disabled. Disable EEE for all ports.
 5. IGMP Snooping (with option to enable/disable)
 6. Two (2) SFP ports.

- C. The switch shall have an internal power supply with an IEC connector. External switching power supplies are not acceptable.
- D. Provide a switch with an integrated browser-based user interface.

2.8 AV EQUIPMENT

- A. 10" Control Touch Panel
 - 1. TFT Active-Matrix color LCD display
 - 2. 15:9 aspect ratio
 - 3. Edge lit LED
 - 4. Core 3 UI Graphics
 - 5. Provide table mount kit and accessories
 - 6. Product: Crestron TSW-1070-B-S approved comparable product.
- B. Wireless Presentation Gateway
 - 1. Accommodates any number of simultaneous users
 - 2. Customizable display layouts
 - 3. Centrally controlled and managed over the IP network
 - 4. HDMI output up to 1080p
 - 5. Product: Mersive Solstice Pod Unlimited Enterprise or approved equal.
- C. Ceiling Mounted Loudspeaker
 - 1. 8.75" cutout
 - 2. 6.5" woofer, 0.75" tweeter, back can, truss & grill assembly
 - 3. 75 Hz – 20 kHz \pm 3dB
 - 4. 110-degree conical dispersion
 - 5. Supports 70V Operation
 - 6. Product: JBL Control 26CT loudspeaker assembly or approved comparable product.
- D. 85" Edge-Lit 4K UHD LED Display (D3)
 - 1. 3840*2160 (4K UHD) Resolution
 - 2. 5000:1 contrast ratio
 - 3. Inputs: D-Sub, DVI-D, Display Port 1.2 (2), Display Port 1.1 (1), Display Port 1.1 (1), HDCP1.4 (support UHD 30hz), Stereo mini jack
 - 4. RS-232C in/out and RJ45
 - 5. 24/7 Operation
 - 6. Built in Speaker (15W + 15W)
 - 7. Product: Samsung QM85F or approved comparable product.
- E. Two Channel Audio Amplifier
 - 1. Maximum power per channel @ 8 ohms: 200W
 - 2. Frequency response: 2Hz to 40kHz
 - 3. Signal to noise ratio: >112dBa
 - 4. 1RU
 - 5. Product: LabGruppen E 4:2 or approved comparable product.
- F. Digital Media Presentation System
 - 1. 7 x 4 Video Matrix Switch with HDMI, DigitalMedia and universal analog inputs
 - 2. 7 x 7 Audio Matrix Switch with mic/line inputs, DSP and integrated amplifier
 - 3. Integrated 3-Series Control Processor
 - 4. HDCP compliant and EDID management
 - 5. 3 RU Enclosure
 - 6. Product: Crestron DMPS3-4K-350-C or approved comparable product.

- G. Digital Media Receiver and Room Controller
 - 1. HDMI or DVI display output
 - 2. HDCP compliant
 - 3. Integrated scaler
 - 4. Control via CEC, RS-232, IR, or Ethernet
 - 5. Provides 10/100 Ethernet and USB HID mouse/keyboard ports
 - 6. Product: Crestron DM-RMC-4KZ-SCALER-C or approved comparable product.

- H. HD PTZ Camera
 - 1. 12x optical zoom camera
 - 2. HDBaseT Outputs
 - 3. ½.5 – type Exmor R Cmos sensor
 - 4. Simultaneous HDBaseT, HDMI and IP H.264 Streaming
 - 5. Remote IP Management
 - 6. Provide custom back box from manufacturer.
 - 7. Product: Vaddio Roboshot 12EHDBT or approved equal.

- I. Video Camera Bridge
 - 1. Power, control and video up to 328 ft
 - 2. Bridges audio and video for soft client conferencing
 - 3. Simultaneous HDMI, USB 3.0 and IP H.264 Streaming outputs
 - 4. Remote IP Management
 - 5. Product: Vaddio Onelink Bridge for Vaddio HDBaseT camera or approved equal.

- J. Wall Plate DigitalMedia Transmitter
 - 1. Inputs: HDMI
 - 2. Output: DigitalMedia 8G
 - 3. HDCP and EDID compliant
 - 4. 1-gang wall plate
 - 5. Supports 4k resolution
 - 6. Product: Crestron DM-TX-4K-100-C-1G or approved comparable product.

- K. Digital Signal Processor
 - 1. Acoustic Echo Cancellation
 - 2. 20Hz-22kHz Frequency Range
 - 3. Eight (8) Mic/Line Inputs, Four (4) Line Inputs
 - 4. Built-in Telephone Interface
 - 5. Product: Clearone Converge Pro 2 or approved comparable product

- L. Beamforming Microphone
 - 1. 24 Microphones , 1 Input Channel
 - 2. Custom Polar Pattern
 - 3. 150Hz – 16KHz , +/-3 dB
 - 4. PJLink In and Out
 - 5. Product: Clearone Beamforming Mic Array 360 or approved comparable product.

- M. 16-Port PoE Network Switch
 - 1. 16 Port Network Switch
 - 2. Power-over-Ethernet (up to 34.2W) on all channels
 - 3. Total 255W Provided via PoE ports
 - 4. 1RU
 - 5. Product: Crestron CEN-SWPOE-16 or approved comparable product.

- N. 28” H Laminated Rack
 - 1. 16 RU

2. 28" racking height; 18" depth; 20.4" overall width
3. Provide security screws and locking castered base
4. Provide quiet exhaust fan top 4"
5. Provide Middle Atlantic PD-915R rack-mount distribution
6. Provide Middle Atlantic U2MS rack shelf
7. Provide Middle Atlantic U3 rack shelf
8. Provide Middle Atlantic VTF1 vented panel
9. Provide rack mount UPS to support a minimum of 30 min. backup time.
10. Product: Middle Atlantic BRK16 or approved comparable product.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. All installation work shall be in accordance with, but not limited to, this specification and drawings. Work practices shall be performed in accordance with applicable standards, requirements, and recommendations of Federal and Local authorities having jurisdiction.
2. All discrepancies discovered and any discrepancies which are apparent at the date of submission of bids, shall be immediately corrected without additional charge to the Owner.
3. Clearly label all user controls for intended use and nominal setting. These labels shall be engraved and filled, or equal. "Dymo" labels are not acceptable.
4. All equipment shall be rack mounted supplied with the appropriate rack mount kits.
5. Install in each rack enclosure a power distribution panel. Locate power distribution panel in the first available rack unit.
6. All equipment racks to include removable, locking front doors and a 4" diameter, low-noise fan.
7. All rack and instructor stations shall include "security type" screws to secure rack-mounted components.
8. In rooms containing wireless microphones or an assisted listening system, provide an antenna distribution system inclusive of remote antennas as needed to support complete and consistent coverage throughout the space(s).
9. In rooms containing auto-tracking camera systems, provide one (1) day of manufacturer setup and programming.
10. In rooms containing steerable microphones or loudspeakers, provide one (1) day of manufacturer setup and programming.
11. Provide one (1) spare replacement lamp for each projector specified.

B. Physical Installation:

1. Provide system identification plate as shown below. Plate shall occupy the first available rack unit in all AV equipment racks. If more than two (2) racks are positioned together, one (1) plate for every two racks is acceptable. Product: Covid # 1R0001-BA-X-A-CT.



2. All equipment shall be firmly secured in place unless requirements of portability dictate otherwise. Unless granted specific permission by the Owner, install and secure all boxes, equipment, etc., plumb and square.
3. Fastenings, mounting brackets and supports shall be adequate to support their loads with a safety factor of at least five (5). A safety chain or cable will be tied to all equipment suspended from above.
4. All motorized projector lifts shall support their loads with a safety factor of at least five (5) and shall be capable of lowering the equipment to a serviceable height (to at least 48" AFF). When retractable to a position flush with the ceiling surface, provide a matching cover in coordination with the

architect and ceiling installer. Center lift covers within ceiling elements and minimize impact to room aesthetics.

5. In the installation of equipment, cable, and other elements, consideration shall be given not only to operational efficiency, but also to overall aesthetic factors.

3.2 AUDIOVISUAL CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. All cables, regardless of length, shall be marked with wraparound cable markers at both ends. There shall be no unmarked cables at any place in the system. Marking codes used on cables shall correspond to codes shown on "as-built" drawings and/or run sheets. The labeling and numbering system shall be coordinated with the Owner.
 1. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in ANSI/TIA-606-C.
 - a. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.
- B. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- C. All wired microphones shall include a 30ft. patch cable with heavy-duty jacket and XLR connectors. Provide local microphone preamp for all wired microphone runs longer than 30ft.
- D. Loudspeakers operating at 4/8/16 ohms shall be installed with 12AWG cable as a minimum size/ diameter.
- E. Wall plate and floor box input/output panels shall be installed with audio/video line drivers for runs exceeding 35ft.
- F. All cabling shall be neatly strapped, dressed, and adequately supported. Any exposed cabling shall be neatly enclosed in a protective covering.
- G. Plastic "zip-ties" shall not be used. Cables shall be bundled utilizing plenum rated hook and loop type cable ties.
- H. Terminal blocks, boards, strips, or connectors shall be furnished for all cables, which interface, with racks, cabinets, consoles, or equipment modules.
- I. AV cabling shall terminate at all floor boxes, wall plates, back boxes, and other infrastructure connection points with patch cables from terminations to source/sink devices (i.e. permanent system cabling may not pass directly through the infrastructure to connect directly to room devices).
- J. All audio signal lines shall be balanced at AV I/O plates. Provide ninety (90) degree connector adapters for all AV cabling at custom AV I/O plates.
- K. All cables shall be grouped according to the signals being carried. In order to reduce signal contamination, separate groups shall be formed for the following cables:
 1. Power cables
 2. RGBHV, Video cables and control cables
 3. Data cables
 4. Audio cables carrying microphone level signals
 5. Audio cables carrying line signals
 6. Audio cables carrying amplified loudspeaker level signals
- L. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceiling.

- M. All cables shall be cut to the length dictated by the run plus the required service loop to permit future equipment movement and relocation. For equipment mounted in drawers or on slides, the interconnecting cables shall be provided with a service loop of appropriate length.
- N. No cable shall be installed with a bend radius less than that recommended by the cable manufacturer. Notify the construction manager if field conditions will interfere with the proper installation of any cables or equipment.
- O. Grounding Procedures: In order to minimize problems from improper grounding and to maximize signal-to-noise ratios, adhere to the following grounding procedures:
 - 1. General: Deviate from these practices only when necessary to minimize crosstalk and to maximize signal-to-noise ratios in the audio, video, and control systems. Inform the Consultant in the event that there is a deviation from the standard grounding practices prior to performing the work.
 - 2. Bond the shield of any shielded cable to the grounding busbar in AV rooms and spaces.
 - 3. System Ground: A single "system ground" shall be established for the system. All grounding conductors shall connect to this system ground. The system ground shall be provided in the equipment rack and shall consist of a copper bar of sufficient size to accommodate all secondary ground conductors.
 - 4. A copper conductor, having a maximum of 0.1 Ohms total resistance, shall connect the system ground bar to the nearest grounded, metallic electrical conduit of at least 2 inches in diameter. Be responsible for determining if the metallic conduit is properly electrically bonded to the building ground system and provide a drawing as part of the grounding system documentation indicating the grounding pathway.
 - 5. Secondary system grounding conductors shall be provided from all ungrounded equipment in each area, to the primary system grounding point for the area. Each of these grounding conductors shall have a maximum of 0.1 Ohms total resistance.
 - 6. Under no conditions shall the AC neutral conductor, either in the power panel or in a receptacle outlet, be used for a system ground.
- P. Audio Cable Shields: All balanced audio cable shields shall be grounded at one point only. For ungrounded portable equipment, such as microphones, the shield shall be connected at both ends but grounded at only one end.
- Q. Video Receptacles: All video receptacles shall be insulated from the mounting panel, outlet box, or wireway.
- R. Non-continuous cable supports
 - 1. The AV structured cable shall be supported by its own independent support system.
 - 2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
 - 3. Suspend cable a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
 - 4. Audiovisual cables shall be supported AFC with adjustable non-continuous cable supports.
 - 5. Non-continuous cable supports shall provide a bearing surface of sufficient width to comply with required bend radii of audiovisual cables.
 - 6. Non-continuous cable supports shall have flared edges to prevent damage while installing cables.
 - 7. Installation and configuration shall conform to the requirements of the current revision levels of ANSI/EIA/TIA Standards 568 & 569, NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code), applicable local codes, and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 8. Do not exceed load ratings specified by manufacturer.
 - 9. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for allowable fill capacity for each size non-continuous cable support.
- S. Separation from EMI Sources:
 - 1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and ANSI/TIA-569-E for separating AV cabling from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.

2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: minimum 5 inches
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: minimum 12 inches
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: minimum 24 inches
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: minimum 2-1/2 inches
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: minimum 6 inches
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: minimum 12 inches
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: minimum 3 inches
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: minimum 6 inches
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: minimum 48 inches
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: minimum 5 inches

3.3 REPAIR/RESTORATION

- A. Any damage to any installed work or product caused by the unpacking, transporting, assembly, connecting, or configuring of the product shall be repaired at no charge to the Owner.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Once installed and the System Checkout is complete, the system shall be demonstrated as operational to the Owner.
 1. If the AV system fails to meet the requirements of this document or those stated by the technical documentation, then the Owner shall reject the installed system and the contractor shall be given notice (either oral or in writing) to correct the failure.
 2. If unable to overcome repeated performance deficiencies within thirty (30) days, and if requested to do so by the Owner, remove the equipment and replace at no expense to the Owner.
 3. No warranties shall begin until the Owner has authorized final acceptance in writing.
 4. Right to Revoke Acceptance: If any equipment and/or goods which have been previously accepted, specifically or by the making of payment, are found to have defects, damage, or deficiencies, or fail to conform to the specification, for any cause not attributable to the Owner, the Owner may revoke acceptance.
- B. Conduct pre-acceptance tests
 1. Perform all system performance checks on the installed systems prior to final acceptance testing. The Owner / AV Consultant may witness the pre-acceptance tests. The Owner / Architect may inspect and operate system components in order to evaluate installation progress and technical compliance prior to acceptance testing.
- C. Contractor System Checkout
 1. Perform system checkout before acceptance tests are scheduled. Furnish all required test equipment. Perform all work necessary to determine and/or modify performance of the system to meet the requirements of this specification.
 2. During performance testing, all equipment shall be operated under standard conditions as recommended by the manufacturer.
 3. Test all audio and video systems for compliance with the Performance Standards using test procedures that follow later in this specification.

4. Maintain documentation of all performance tests for reference by Consultant during System Acceptance.
 5. At the conclusion of the tests, return all equipment settings to previously calibrated positions.
 6. Provide written records of all test results in spreadsheet form.
 7. Check all control functions, from all controlling devices to all controlled devices, for proper operation.
 8. Adjust, balance, and align all equipment to optimize quality and meet the manufacturers' published specifications. Establish and mark normal settings for all level controls and record these settings in the "System Operation and Maintenance Manual."
 9. Provide testing results and settings for all equipment and systems to the AV Consultant at least three (3) business days prior to System Acceptance Testing.
 10. Provide the AV Consultant with all test results, manuals, software, as-built documentation, etc. prior to acceptance testing.
 11. Inform the Owner and AV Consultant that the systems are ready for the AV Consultant to perform System Acceptance Testing. The system shall be considered ready for acceptance testing when the following conditions are met:
 - a. AV Contractor has pre-tested all systems such that all sub-systems, functions, software, and equipment are debugged and operational.
 - b. AV Contractor has supplied the AV Consultant with the written test results and documentation as listed above for all rooms and systems.
 - c. AV Contractor has supplied the AV Consultant with closeout (manuals, training materials, and other as-built) documentation revised to reflect comments and/or revisions arising from the review cycles listed elsewhere within this document.
 12. Should the systems not be ready for testing by the AV Consultant at the date(s) and time(s) indicated by the AV Contractor, system acceptance testing may be rescheduled at the sole discretion of the AV Consultant. Pay for the labor and expenses of the AV Consultant and other project team members assembled at the project site for the purpose of system acceptance testing for the date(s) of the original scheduled testing plus the labor and expenses of the AV Consultant and other project team members for the rescheduled testing date(s). The labor rate for the AV Consultant shall be a flat rate of \$200.00/hour including travel time. Other project team member labor costs shall be at their respective published rates. The PM and/or Owner shall be entitled to deduct any money owed to the Owner, PM, AV Consultant, or other project team members under this contract from any sum which may become due or is payable to the AV Contractor under this Contract for the purposes of satisfying the charges listed above.
- D. Final Acceptance Test
1. Testing will be performed with the Owner (or its designees) present to determine that the AV system equipment satisfies the manufacturers' performance specifications and that the installed AV system satisfactorily performs the functions required by this specification. Conduct formal pre-acceptance tests prior to the Owner's acceptance testing to ensure that the performance and functional specifications are satisfied by the installed system and the system is ready for the Owner's acceptance. Verify in the owner's presence that the installed audiovisual system satisfies the performance and functional requirements through formal acceptance testing. Be responsible for staging each room to be tested and shall have sufficient personnel on site to run multiple systems at once (not less than three (3) personnel).
- E. Test Equipment
1. Assemble the following test equipment (or equivalent) on site:
 - a. Audio and Video cables, terminations, adapters, etc.
 - b. Blu-Ray (if applicable)
 - c. HDMI/DVI Test Signal Generator
 - d. Waveform Monitor
 - e. PC/Laptop/Tablet
- F. Audio System Testing
1. Absolute Impedances

- a. Set any loudspeaker level controls at zero attenuation. Measure absolute impedance value of each loudspeaker line at 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000 Hz without the amplifier connected but with all loudspeakers connected. Impedance must be greater than or equal to the rated load impedance of the respective amplifier. Check the resistance of lines to all loudspeakers and microphone receptacles with the receptacles open and short-circuited.
 2. Hum and Noise Level
 - a. Test overall hum and noise. System noise should be at least 60 dB below the rated power output of each amplifier with the amplifier controls when set for both full output and for optimal signal-to-noise ratio.
 3. Parasitic Oscillation and RF Pickup
 - a. Set up the system for each specified mode of operation.
 - b. Ensure the system is free of spurious oscillation and RF pickup in the absence of any input signal in each mode of operation and with the system driven momentarily to full output at 160 Hz.
 4. Buzzes, Rattles, Distortions
 - a. Apply high quality music signal to the system. Adjust the sound system to its maximum usable sound pressure level, and verify clipping is not occurring at any system element.
 - b. Apply a sinewave sweep from 50 to 5,000 Hz, 6 dB below full amplifier power.
 - c. For both the music and sine sweep sources, listen carefully for buzzes, rattles and objectionable distortion.
 - d. Correct all causes of such defects. If the artifact is not caused directly by audiovisual system components, promptly notify the architect indicating cause and suggested corrective procedures.
 5. Implement any automated emergency system mute functions required by local regulations.
 6. Equalize all audio systems for maximum gain before feedback in all room configurations. Adjust all system inputs for consistent operating levels (within 6dB RMS).
 7. Within each audio system, ensure all loudspeakers are installed with the same relative polarity and absolute polarity consistent with each input source device.
 8. Verify coverage is consistent throughout audience areas. Adhere to ANSI/INFOCOMM standard 1M-2009, *Audio Coverage Uniformity in Enclosed Listener Areas*. Perform separate tests for each audio system in the project and be responsible for modifying or augmenting systems as required to meet the referenced standards.
 9. Verify that audio/video synchronization is maintained for all content sources and destinations.
 10. Record all system settings and include in the Systems Operation manuals.
- G. Video System Testing
1. Signal Paths
 2. Utilizing a NTSC color bar generator and waveform analyzer with the video signal set at 100% saturation and 75% amplitude check that the video performance specifications are met at the display devices from all source inputs to all system outputs. Connect the combined waveform monitor/vectorscope to a final output point, e.g. an input to a picture monitor or video projector. Ensure that the test signal is routed to the selected output(s). Level Balance
 - a. Adjust all video projection equipment to fill the entire screen area and to produce the best image possible.
 - b. Adjust all video sources and displays to produce the best image possible.
 - c. Verify that colors appear uniformly on all video displays.
 - d. Verify that all pixels operate correctly, consistently meeting or exceeding the manufacturer's specifications. Replace any equipment with pixel failures (dead or excessively bright pixels).
 - e. Record all system settings for inclusion in the Systems Operation manuals.
- H. RGBHV System Testing
1. For all RGBHV inputs, connect the RGBHV output of the signal generator to a floorbox/table/rack connector and select the SMPTE bar with "pluge pulse" signal at the following computer scan rates:
 - a. 1024 x 768 XGA
 - b. 1280 x 1024 SXGA
 - c. 1366 x 768 WXGA

- d. 1400 x 1050 SXGA+
 - e. 1440 x 900 WXGA+
 - f. 1600 x 1200 UXGA
 - g. 1920 x 1080
 - h. 1080i
 - i. 1080p
 - j. 720i
 - k. 720p
2. Check that the image is correctly displayed at all system outputs including the monitor(s) and/or by the video projector.
 3. Repeat items 1 and 2 using Crosshatch, Checkerboard, and H Pattern Signals.

I. Digital Video System Testing

1. For all digital video inputs, connect the output of the digital signal generator to each connection at the following resolutions:

a. 640 x 480p60	24 MHz Pixel Clock
b. 1024 x 768p60	63.5 MHz Pixel Clock
c. 1280 x 768p60	68 MHz Pixel Clock
d. 1280 x 768p60	79.5 MHz Pixel Clock
e. 1280 x 1024p60	109 MHz Pixel Clock
f. 1920 x 1080p60 (SMPTE reduced)	148.5 MHz Pixel Clock
g. 1920 x 1200p60 (blanking reduced)	154 MHz Pixel Clock
h. 1600 x 1200p60	162 MHz Pixel Clock
i. 1920 x 1080p60 (VESA)	173 MHz Pixel Clock
j. 1920 x 1080p60 (SMPTE rd.) Deep Color	148.5 MHz Pixel Clock
k. 1280 x 768p60 3D HDTV	
l. 1920 x 1080p24 3D HDTV	
m. 1920 x 1200p75 Deep Color	
n. 2560 x 1600p75	
o. 3840 x 2160p60	
p. 4096 x 2160p30	
q. 4096 x 2160p30 Deep Color	
2. Check that the image is correctly displayed at all system outputs including the monitor(s) and/or by the video projector. Display resolution shall be limited only by the manufacturer specified capabilities of the display or source device. Verify that all display resolutions appear correctly for each system source and destination without artifacts, including but not limited to pixel shift, geometric distortion, letterboxing, pillarboxing, and windowboxing.
3. Focus all images and adjust as required to eliminate any stretching, keystone, or other distortion. In no instance shall an image be mapped or shaped to an unusual surface unless explicitly defined in the project documents. Repeat items 1 and 2 with an HDCP compliant source to all outputs simultaneously to verify compliance.
4. Disable CEC for all source HDMI connections to switchers, scalers or other video processors.
5. Configure or disable EDID as required for consistent, error-free operation.

J. Optical Projection Systems

1. All optical projection systems shall meet the following performance standards:
 - a. The total averaged light output from a projector, in lumens, shall be within $\pm 15\%$ of that specified by the projector manufacturer.
 - b. The light fall-off from the center of the projected image to all four corners, as measured at the projected image plane, shall not exceed 35%. The light intensity shall be measured at all five positions of the projected image after the projector has been adjusted to provide the light output as specified above.
 - c. The "corner" locations shall be defined as the four points determined by intersecting lines drawn 5% of the distance in from the focused edges of the image.
 - d. The light meter used for the above measurements shall be properly calibrated foot-candle (or lux) meter and shall be cosine-corrected.

- e. Projectors, lenses, and mirrors shall be solidly mounted and braced so that there will be no observable movement in the image induced by motor vibration or other mechanical operations.

K. Qualification Methods

- 1. Three methods will be used to qualify the AV system for acceptance.
 - a. Inspection - A critical observation of qualifying factors, such as quality of workmanship, equipment placement, routing of cables, adequacy of technical documentation, etc., that do not lend themselves to demonstration or measurement.
 - b. Demonstration - A process of showing by reason or evidence that a given condition clearly satisfies the requirement.
 - c. Measurement - A process of determining the actual dimension, capacity, or amount of something, by measuring using calibrated standards.
- 2. Acceptance of the work of this section shall occur after completion of corrections and adjustments required by "Punch List" (as generated during demonstration and acceptance testing of completed installation).
- 3. Owner reserves the right to use equipment, material and services provided as part of Work of this Section, prior to acceptance, without incurring any obligation to accept any equipment or completed systems until punch list work is complete and systems comply with the contract documents.

3.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL CATEGORY RATED CABLING

- A. Factory test F/UTP and UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D and ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
- B. Factory test F/UTP and UTP cables according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
- C. Factory-sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING CATEGORY RATED CABLING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems in accordance with Performance Criteria and in accordance with the conditions of testing and classification as specified in the published design.
- C. Install EZ Path or EMT sleeve where horizontal cables penetrate a fire rated wall.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Comply with manufacturer's instructions for installation of firestopping products.
- E. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E, "Firestopping."
- F. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.
- G. Any penetrations created for the passage of telecommunications which remains vacant at the completion of the installation shall be fire-stopped.

3.7 NON-RATED CABLE PASS-THRU SLEEVES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. General: Install through-penetration systems in accordance with Performance Criteria and in accordance with the conditions of testing and classification as specified in the published design.
- C. EZ Path® Series 44 NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway per manufactures instructions
- D. EZ Path® Series 33NEZ Smoke and Acoustical Pathway per manufactures instructions
- E. Any EMT non-rated wall penetrations created for the passage of telecommunications shall have the annular space filled with mineral wool and Smoke and sound acoustical sealant.
- F. Any non-rated EMT wall penetrations created for the passage of telecommunications which remains vacant at the completion of the installation shall be filled with mineral or ceramic fiber stuffing insulation and smoke/sound acoustical sealant.

3.8 GROUNDING CATEGORY RATED CABLING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with requirements in division 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- C. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-C.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL CATEGORY RATED CABLING

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect F/UTP and UTP, multi-pair copper and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D and ANSI/TIA-568.3-D.
 - 2. Visually confirm cable category marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
 - 3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 - 4. Test F/UTP and UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in ANSI/TIA-568.2D. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 - 5. F/UTP and UTP Performance Tests:
 - a. Test for each outlet. Perform the following tests according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D:

- 1) Wire map.
 - 2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
 - 3) Insertion loss.
 - 4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
 - 5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
 - 6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
 - 7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
 - 8) Return loss.
 - 9) Propagation delay.
 - 10) Delay skew.
- C. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
- D. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
1. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 274100

SECTION 281300 – ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Access control.
2. Stranded power and control cable.
3. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
4. Cable management system.
5. Cabling identification products.
6. Grounding.
7. Pathways.

B. Related Sections

1. 271000 – Telecommunications Structured Cabling
3. 282300 – Video Surveillance Systems

C. System Requirements

1. Install and integrate a completely functional Access Control, Intrusion, Video Surveillance Systems and related security hardware including power supplies, UPSs, server/client software, licenses, related security hardware and Owner Furnished Equipment as specified and as detailed in associated contract drawings.
2. Configure local access panels in various telecommunication rooms (TR) and the Server's computer system to communicate with one another.
3. Enter security system databases hardware configuration.
4. Test security system communication and operation in accordance with the specification.
5. Train operators and the system managers.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. The Codes and Regulations listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Work shall be performed in accordance with the applicable international, federal, state, and local codes or standards current at the commencement of installation. The following list summarizes applicable standards:

1. UL 294, UL 1076, ULC
2. CE
3. FCC – Part 15, Part 68
4. NFPA 70, NEC
5. IEEE, RS 170 variable standard
6. RoHS

B. Where more than one code or regulation is applicable, the more stringent shall apply.

C. Cable and equipment installation, identification and termination shall be performed in accordance to the applicable codes above.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA: Americans with Disabilities Act
- B. Bid: Herein, used interchangeably with "proposal"
- C. Demarc: "Demarcation Point" marking the location where communications facilities owned by one organization interface with that of another.
- D. DVR: Digital Video Recorder
- E. GUI: Graphical User Interface
- F. LAN: Local Area Network
- G. IP: Internet Protocol
- H. IR: Infrared
- I. NIC: material and work which is Not In Contract and for which the Installer is not responsible except as otherwise detailed herein.
- J. NVR: Network Video Recorder
- K. OFE: "Owner Furnished Equipment" which will be provided by The Owner. Be responsible for installing and integrating this equipment as detailed herein.
- L. OFCI: "Owner Furnished Contractor Installed" Equipment which will be provided by The Owner. Be responsible for installing and integrating this equipment as detailed herein.
- M. OSP: Outside Service Plant
- N. PoE: Power over Ethernet
- O. TR: Telecommunications Room
- P. UPS: Uninterruptable Power Supply
- Q. The term "shall" is mandatory.
- R. The term "will" is informative.
- S. The term "should" is advisory.
- T. Term "provide" means furnish and install.
- U. Security Consultant: Convergent Technologies Design Group, Inc.
- V. SMS: Security Management System
- W. Bidder: Qualified firm intending to tender a bid on the systems described herein.

- X. Construction Manager (CM) or General Contractor (GC): The representative responsible for general building construction and onsite coordination between sub-contractors

1.4 BID PROPOSALS

A. Itemized Bid Response

1. Each piece of equipment shall be individually priced and submitted with Bid Proposals. Provide itemized bid response to include equipment description, manufacturer, model number, unit price, and quantity. All equipment prices shall reflect required modifications and accessories as needed for a complete and functioning system.
2. Non-equipment charges shall be outlined separately as a single line item. A sum of the access control system total cost shall be provided with the bid proposal.
3. Lump sum bids will not be accepted.

B. Contractor Qualification

1. Demonstrate at least three (3) years' experience in the fabrication, programming, assembly, and installation of Access Control and intrusion systems of similar magnitude and quality as specified for the subject job. Submit documentation to this effect with the bid response. Be an authorized sales and service center for all listed components and offerings in this specification.
2. References: Furnish no less than three (3) references for installations of similar size (dollar amount & quantity of spaces receiving integrated technology) and scope, performed throughout the same region of the project address within the past three (3) years. At a minimum, reference information will include the reference company or institute name, contact person's name and title, telephone number, address, and detailed project description, project manager's name, and contact information of the organization that is responsible for day-to-day operation of the access control system installation.
3. Be an Enterprise level dealer of the specified system.
4. Bidders shall include as part of the bid response the following items:
 - a. List of all technical personnel factory-certified on specified product manufacturer.
 - b. Letter of approval from the manufacturer indicating compliance with qualification requirements.
 - c. Installation schedule with proposed manpower assignments.
 - d. Resumes for project manager, lead engineer and all ASIS certifications for this project.
 - e. Training certificates for design, engineering and installation of the proposed products shall be submitted with the proposal.
 - f. Service Dispatch outline containing the type of service program used for dispatching and tracking service calls.

C. Alternate Proposals

1. Any proposed alternate equipment choices shall be requested in writing prior to the proposal submission for approval. Each item on the alternate equipment list must be accompanied by catalog cut sheets and technical specifications.

D. Non-Equipment Charges, Including but not be limited to:

1. Engineering: Including all required design drawings, run sheets, instruction manuals, step-by-step user guide, etc.
2. Pre-Installation: Work performed on the Installer's premises including all fabrication, modification, assembly, rack/cabinet wiring, etc.

3. Installation: Including all on-site installation and wiring, shop drawing, coordination and supervision, testing, checkout, Owner training, etc., performed on the Owner's premises.
4. General and Administrative: Including all shipping, insurance, and guarantees.

E. Owner Furnished Equipment (OFE, OFCI)

1. Identify any Owner Furnished Equipment assumed in the Bid Proposal to be installed and integrated under this contract. Identify all assumed Owner Furnished equipment within each room/space type that will be required to complete the access control systems installation.

F. State of the Art Development

1. Supply only the manufacturer's latest developed product. In cases where product development surpasses the criteria of the specification, inform the Architect and make the newer product available to the project at no additional cost. In no case shall discontinued or obsolete equipment be acceptable. The same requirement applies to software programs developed/updated during the warranty period.
2. Should a manufacturer discontinue a specified product, provide the manufacturer's recommended replacement at no additional cost to the owner. Should the manufacturer have no direct replacement product, the access control contractor shall propose a product of equal or greater specification from an alternate manufacturer at no additional cost to the owner.
3. Should a product recall by a specified manufacturer require temporary or permanent replacement of a product specified under this section, notify the Architect at the earliest possible time and arrange to replace the product in question as quickly as possible.
 - a. Equipment found defective or subject to recall prior to scheduled installation shall not be delivered to the jobsite.
 - b. Equipment defect or intended recall shall not relieve the access control contractor from any contractual obligations with regard to delivery schedule of product.
 - c. Under no circumstances shall arrangement for alternate product require the Owner to accept superseded equipment except on a temporary basis.

G. Service Contract

1. Submit the costs for a one-year service contract, renewable for up to three years, which shall commence with the completion of the two-year warranty period. These contracts shall be fixed-cost, and can be accepted at the option of the Owner.
2. The service contract shall include all of the services provided during the warranty period, including complete replacement or repair of defective equipment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Coordination

1. 282300 for integration requirements of Video Surveillance system components.
2. 271000 for pathways, cabling locations, colors, termination ports, and all OSP Demarc locations related to access control systems.
3. Test and verify structured cabling installed to support the access control system.
4. Coordinate layout and installation of Access Control Systems equipment with Owner's security representative.
 - a. Meet jointly with Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.

- b. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants and the project Architect for design team distribution.
 5. Coordinate this Section with work of other Project Manual sections and associated trades.
 6. Specific references, herein, requiring coordination of certain work shall not obviate responsibility for other required coordination.
- B. Unspecified Equipment and Material
 1. All equipment and materials not specifically addressed on the drawings or in this document and required to provide complete and functional access control system shall be provided in a level of quality consistent with other specified items.
- C. Standards and Codes
 1. Comply with
 - a. Local, state and federal codes
 - b. Applicable National Electrical Code
 - c. American National Standards Institute
 - d. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. standards.
 2. All equipment, material, accessories, and loose items provided by Contractor shall be new and shall conform to applicable requirements of the above-mentioned agencies.
 3. If required by local authorities, provide certificates and labels indicating compliance with above-mentioned codes and standards where applicable.
- D. Point of Contact
 1. Designate to the Owner in writing, the responsible person who shall ensure timely and consistent communication with the Owner on progress of the contract. The designated representative shall have full knowledge of all engineering and production procedures and shall report status of the installation and upcoming work plans to the Owner's Project Manager and Consultant on a weekly basis.
 2. Project manager shall have successfully managed not less than two (2) projects of similar size and scope (as defined in previous sections). Bid submission shall detail the percentage of time that the project manager and other key personnel will be involved with the project.

1.6 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Provide the following in accordance with Specifications and Drawings
 1. Submittals delivered in a timely manner as described hereinafter.
 2. Verification of dimensions and other conditions at project site. Review conduit system as shown in electrical section of building construction documents and, where applicable, as built conditions. Notify Consultant, Architect, GC, and EC within four weeks after award of contract of any deficiencies or inadequacies in conduit system design.
 3. Detailed design of access control system GUI, system "maps," including remote-control accommodations.
 4. Power distribution and battery backup within equipment racks and wall fields including power connection to electrical outlets as described in electrical section of building construction documents.
 5. Incidentals necessary for a complete working system.
 6. Initial testing and adjustments, demonstration of system for approval, participation in acceptance tests, final adjustments as required.
 7. Record Documents, "As-Built" drawings and Owners Manual.
 8. Training of operating personnel.

9. Notify appropriate parties of conflicts in a timely manner.
10. Work cooperatively with other trades to resolve conflicts.

B. Special Insurance

1. Provide insurance fully covering all equipment against loss, damage, and theft during shipment, storage, installation, testing, adjustment and demonstration.

1.7 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. All building and room access control systems, equipment, and accessories shall be compatible with the current access control system. All auxiliary accessories or supporting devices shall be fully compatible with and able to integrate with the existing access control system.
- B. The SMS shall be able to seamlessly interface with and monitor intelligent system controllers, reader interface modules, I/O panels, burglar alarm panels, burglar alarm panel receivers, biometric devices, personal protection devices, intercom systems, fire alarm panels (secondary monitoring only), building management systems and digital/network video recorders and software.
- C. The SMS shall be able to communicate with intelligent system controllers via RS-485, RS-232, TCP-IP/Ethernet.
- D. Design Intent
 1. Provide a complete and functioning access control system inclusive of all hardware, software and training to meet or exceed the performance features outlined in this document.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

- A. Related Sections
 1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 30 00 – Administrative Requirements.
- B. Submittal Data
 1. Submittal data is to be submitted as a complete, single digital file. All documents shall be clearly legible. Each submittal shall contain the below in the following order:
 - a. Cover Sheet.
 - 1) Include name of supplying contractor and project name.
 - b. Detailed Bill of Materials.
 - 1) Include a listing of: component quantities, equipment manufacturers, model numbers, and description of each component being supplied, and the specification paragraph or drawing sheet that corresponds to the product.
 - 2) The bill of materials shall include page numbers for each product data sheet and be index referenced within the PDF file so that each product name is clickable, linked to the first page of the corresponding product data.
 - 3) Failure to provide this information will result in the rejection of submittals.
 - c. Product Data.
 - 1) Include a catalog sheet per product of equipment listed in the Detailed Bill of Materials, in the exact order as the Detailed Bill of Materials. Each catalog sheet shall describe mechanical, electrical and functional equipment specifications. The catalog sheet must also include an image of the product.

- 2) Photocopy duplications of the manufacturer's original equipment catalog sheets will be allowed as long as they provide adequate clarity of both the printed word and graphics/pictures.
- 3) If more than one product is shown on the catalog sheet the intended product must be denoted by either an arrow or highlight.
- d. Authorized Distributor Certificate.
 - 1) Recently dated (within one year from submittal date) support letter from manufacturer stating that the supplying contractor is an Authorized Distributor of the product being supplied.
- e. Partial submittals, or submittals comprised of multiple PDF files, will not be accepted.

C. Shop Drawings

1. Prior to fabrication submit contractor generated drawings for approval for all supplied systems. These drawings shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Title Sheet & Symbols Legend
 - b. Riser Diagram: Provide riser diagrams of the access control systems and any other systems specified herein.
 - c. Block Diagrams: Submit block diagrams for each system indicating connections of equipment and indicating equipment types and model numbers.
 - d. Field Devices: Submit details on items such as alarm detectors, contacts, and card readers including their appearance and performance, specifications, and exact locations. Include on shop drawings the reader locations and show the reader controller to which they are assigned. Show the devices they work with, such as electric locks, local audible alarms, door contacts, etc.
 - e. Coordination Drawings: Elevation Details of wall fields in Telecommunications Rooms showing the relationship of rack mounted elements inclusive of Owner provided equipment (labeled as such).
 - f. All unusual equipment modifications.
 - g. Front mechanical drawings of each equipment rack.
 - h. Equipment location drawings.
 - i. Cable labeling plan.
 - j. Floor Plans, RCPs and Elevations: Show planned location for all elements and cable routing. Drawings shall be at project standard scale and clearly legible.
 - k. On submittal drawings, maintain 3/32" minimum lettering height. Submittals with text less than 1/16" in height may be rejected.

D. Form

1. Partial Submittals may be rejected. If submitted individually and each in its entirety, the following Submittals shall not be considered partial:
 - a. Personnel
 - b. Milestones
 - c. Conduit Verification Statement and Notifications
 - d. As-Built Documentation
2. Product Data and Shop drawings must be submitted together in order to be reviewed.

E. Weekly Reporting

1. Commencing with project award, provide weekly status reporting of milestone task status, anticipated completion date, and related memo notes for the following tasks:
 - a. Submittals
 - b. Infrastructure verification

- c. Pre-wire status
 - d. Equipment Procurement
 - e. Shop fabrication
 - f. Remote control system design
 - g. Installation and Terminations
 - h. Field testing and pre-acceptance testing
 - i. Final acceptance demonstrations
 - j. Owner training
 - k. First owner use
 - l. Open Coordination Items and Questions
2. See below for a partial example of an acceptable weekly reporting list.

Project: <i>Project Name</i>							
Location: <i>Project Location</i>				Date: <i>Form Delivery Date</i>			
Project Manager: <i>Project Manager</i>				Delivered by: <i>Form Delivered By</i>			
		Projected Completion:		Status:		Notes:	
Infrastructure Verification:		<i>6/1/2011</i>		<i>Complete</i>			
Submittals:							
<i>Product Data</i>		<i>8/1/2011</i>		<i>Complete</i>			
<i>Drawings</i>		<i>8/1/2011</i>		<i>Complete</i>			
<i>Personnel (etc.)</i>		<i>8/1/2011</i>		<i>Complete</i>			
RFIs:							
<i>12</i>		<i>8/25/2011</i>		<i>Received</i>		<i>Implementing</i>	
<i>178</i>		<i>9/6/2011</i>		<i>Pending</i>		<i>Projector Screen Clearances</i>	
Installation Status by Space							
Room		Equipment					
Name	Number	Pre-Wire	Order	Receive	Install	Test	Notes:
<i>Example 1</i>	<i>105</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>60%</i>	<i>0%</i>	<i>Re-programming</i>
<i>Example 2</i>	<i>135</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>90%</i>	<i>0%</i>	<i>Other Notes Here</i>

F. Personnel

- 1. Provide, in writing, within two weeks after award of Contract, the names, mailing address, phone numbers with extensions, email addresses and paging service numbers (if available) of the following project personnel:
 - a. Project Manager
 - b. Lead Systems Engineer
 - c. Field Foreman
- 2. Within four weeks after award of Contract, submit statement confirming that Contractor has reviewed the conduit system as designed in building construction documents and, where applicable, as built.
- 3. Notify Consultant, General Contractor, Architect or Electrical Contractor of deficiencies or inadequacies, if any, in conduit system design or installation. If none, so indicate.
- 4. Absent conduit verification by Contractor and after installation of conduit as designed, Contractor shall assume costs of equipment, materials, labor and engineering, including

services of owner's representative(s) in designing and/or verifying revised wiring approach(es) as relate to providing a fully functional system using conduit as designed or as revised at the discretion of the owner.

1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. At the completion of the installation, but before Final Acceptance, provide for review and approval the following, in compliance with Division 1 Section *Closeout Procedures*.
 - 1. Operation and Maintenance Manuals:
 - a. Equipment manufacturer's operation and service manuals for each make and model of equipment.
 - b. System Operation Manual. Produce a manual specifically for the subsystems detailed herein. The manual shall describe all procedures necessary to activate each system to provide for the functional requirements, except as specifically excluded by the Owner. This section shall provide a simple "How-to" users guide for the procedures needed to operate the system. This document shall contain a section on operating the systems equipment in the event of control system failure. Control system touch panel layouts shall be accompanied by narrative text describing "step-by-step" function engagement.
- B. Warranty
 - 1. Provide list and dates of activation of equipment warranties
 - 2. Provide original manufacturers' certificates.
- C. As-built Drawings
 - 1. Include contractor generated (mark-up of contract documents is not acceptable) digital record diagrams for all systems including, but not limited to:
 - a. Schematic wiring diagrams with cable markings.
 - b. Internal wiring diagrams of the equipment rack and enclosures.
 - c. Custom equipment modifications.
 - d. Final test results and nominal settings for all adjustable controls.
- D. Software Passwords
 - 1. Software Passwords Schedule (i.e., a spreadsheet listing the manufacturer, model number and location in the Facility, of each piece of access control equipment, the software for which is password-protected).
 - 2. Provide to Owner's Representative as a secure document separate from Operating and Maintenance Manuals and As-Built Drawings.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING, AND STAGING

- A. Supply, transport, deliver, unload, move to the installation location, unpack, place, assemble, secure, connect, and install all equipment needed to complete the installation. Be responsible for transportation, parking, delivery, and on-site storage of the system's equipment. Be responsible for all transportation of personnel to and from the site.
- B. Reconfirm before delivery that hallways, stairways, passages, doorways, rooms, entries, elevators and foyers are of sufficient size to accommodate the passage and installation of the equipment and systems. Off-site pre-staging of goods is encouraged.

- C. The Owner's acknowledgment of delivery of goods and any payment made on account of such delivery shall not constitute acceptance (partial or otherwise) and shall not diminish obligations as specified.
- D. The actual dates of delivery shall be under the absolute control of the Owner. The dates and times for delivery/installation are critical to the successful completion of the project. Deliveries shall normally be accepted only Monday through Friday 8:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. In the event it becomes necessary for goods to be installed outside these hours comply with the instructions of the Owner. Deliveries attempted outside these hours without prior consent of the Owner may be turned away. Comply with all instructions of the Owner and the Contractor concerning time of arrival at the site; which entrance shall be utilized for delivery; routes to be taken to reach the installation location; and other matters relating to the orderly and timely installation of the system.
- E. Installation shall commence immediately upon delivery of materials to the jobsite, except as directed by Construction Manager. Time required from delivery date to completion of project shall be in accordance with the approved schedules.
- F. Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- G. Do not deliver or install equipment until spaces are enclosed and weather tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and work above ceilings is complete.

1.11 SYSTEM TRAINING

- A. Training: Provide training in the operation and maintenance of the system for personnel designated by the Owner. Record owner training sessions on DVD or other agreed upon media and make training videos available to the owner at no charge. The training shall be organized as follows:
 - 1. Two (2) two-hour training classes for system technical operation and maintenance. This class shall cover the following topics:
 - a. Review of signal flow diagrams.
 - b. Review of all equipment functions, relevant to the function in this system.
 - c. Review of initial equipment settings.
 - d. Demonstration of all functional connections from a user perspective.
 - e. Review & demonstration of control system software replacement/upgrade procedures.
 - f. Review of manufacturers' recommended routine maintenance procedures.
 - g. Review applicable badge creation procedures.
 - 2. Four (4) days of advanced user training for systems operations. This shall include day-to-day operation as well as in-depth review of system capabilities and programming.
 - 3. Training may take place at any time (chosen by the Owner) after the systems are operational, up to a year following system acceptance.
 - 4. Close out submittals shall be provided prior to any training classes.
 - 5. Coordinate detailed specifics of the training session(s) time, date & location with the Owner.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. The system warranty shall be for twenty-four (24) months from the date of final acceptance. Provide all equipment, material, and labor required to uphold a full system warranty at no charge to the Owner. All manufacturers' equipment warranties shall be activated in the Owner's name and shall commence on the date of final acceptance. In the case of modified equipment, the manufacturer's warranty is normally voided. In such cases, provide the Owner with a warranty equivalent to that of the original manufacturer.
- B. There shall be no cost to the Owner for maintenance performed during the warranty period beyond the fixed cost of the contract.
- C. Provide a total of eight (8) one-day visits per year, or a total of sixty-four (64) engineering/ service labor hours to conduct preventive maintenance and the Owner directed system adjustments.
- D. Repair and/or adjust any malfunctioning components located by the technician during this testing. Include software and programming updates / modifications as part of this service contract, providing an updated editable copy of the source code to the Owner.
- E. Provide a service telephone number, staffed by a qualified technician familiar with the equipment installed. Staff this number during normal business hours.
- F. Respond with an on-site technician within 24-hours of a service call (including Saturdays and Sundays) for all equipment and system failures.
- G. Replace or repair, at no cost to the owner, any failed equipment hardware or software installations required to provide full system operations.
- H. During the warranty period, advise the Owner in writing each time any routine software and firmware updates become available, giving the Owner the opportunity to upgrade the software/hardware should they so desire at no additional cost. Provide any necessary system modifications after installation of these updates to maintain a fully functioning system.
- I. Provide updates to firmware during service period. Provide any necessary system modifications after installation of these updates to maintain a fully functioning system.
- J. The warranty period for any part which has a warranty by the manufacturer of longer than 24 months shall be for the longer period. Provide a copy of the manufacturer's warranty period statement for all major access control system components.

1.13 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

- A. General Requirements: Provide all services required and equipment necessary to maintain the entire SMS in an operational state as specified for a period of two (2) year(s) after formal written acceptance of the system, and shall provide all necessary material required for performing scheduled service or other unscheduled work.
- B. Description of Work: The service and repair of the SMS including all equipment provided under this specification supplied by the contractor. Provide the manufacturer's required scheduled and

unscheduled maintenance and all other work necessary to keep the SMS at its maximum performance.

- C. Personnel: Service personnel shall be factory certified in the maintenance and repair of the equipment installed under this section of the specification. The owner shall be advised in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any change in personnel.
- D. Schedule of Work: This work shall be performed during regular working hours (8-5), Monday through Friday, excluding federal holidays.
 - 1. Inspections: The Contractor shall perform two minor inspections at 6 month intervals (or more often if required by the manufacturer), and two major inspections offset equally between the minor inspections to effect quarterly inspection of alternating magnitude.
 - 2. Minor Inspections: These inspections shall include:
 - a. Visual checks and operational tests of all console equipment, peripheral equipment, field hardware, sensors, and electrical and mechanical controls.
 - b. Mechanical adjustments if required on any mechanical or electromechanical devices
 - 3. Major Inspections: These inspections shall include all work described under paragraph Minor Inspections and the following work:
 - a. Clean all SMS equipment, including interior and exterior surfaces.
 - b. Perform diagnostics on all equipment.
 - c. Check, walk test, and if required by the manufacturer's maintenance procedures, calibrate each sensor.
 - d. Run all system software diagnostics and correct all diagnosed problems.
- E. Operation: Performance of scheduled adjustments and repair shall verify operation of the SMS as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.
- F. Emergency Service: The owner will initiate service calls when the SMS is not functioning properly and hinders critical operation of the facility. Qualified personnel shall be available to provide service to the complete SMS repairs. The owner shall be furnished with a telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times. Service personnel shall be at site within four (4) hours after receiving a request for service. The SMS shall be restored to proper operating condition within eight (8) hours after service personnel arrive on site.
- G. Records and Logs: Keep records and logs of each task, and shall organize cumulative records for each component, and for the complete system chronologically. A continuous log shall be maintained for all devices. The log shall contain all initial settings. Complete logs shall be kept and shall be available for inspection on site, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the SMS.
- H. Work Requests: Separately record each service call request on a service request form. The form shall include the model and serial number identifying the component involved, its location, date and time the call was received, specific nature of trouble, names of service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. Deliver a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.
- I. System Modifications: Make any recommendations for system modification in writing to the Owner. No system modifications, shall be made without prior approval of the Owner. Any modifications made to the system shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and other documentation affected.

- J. Software: Provide all software updates during the period of the warranty and verify operation in the system. These updates shall be accomplished in a timely manner, fully coordinated with SMS operators, shall include training for the new changes / features enabled, and shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and software documentation.

1.14 COMMISSIONING AND STARTUP

- A. Coordinate programming with owner to show all controllers, door interfaces, input and output panels are installed and configured to properly interface and function with existing systems per operational guidelines.
- B. Provide facility map as basis for door locations in software GUI.
- C. Contractor is not responsible for cardholder creation and badge production.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT AND BOXES

- A. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes."

2.2 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

- A. Equipment Lists: Refer to the following for materials and equipment required to complete the work of this Section.

2.3 ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL

- A. Manufacturers Subject to compliance with the specified requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers. Manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, and are limited to, the following:
 - 1. Genetec

2.4 LICENSING

- A. Provide appropriate licensing for the Genetec configuration/system.
- B. Provide Genetec Bluetooth reader license for each Bluetooth reader.

2.5 CONTROLLER

- A. Provide Genetic SY-Cloud as required for Mercury MR52, MR16IN and MR16OUT
- B. Provide one (1) Genetic SY-Cloud for each 128 POE locksets

- C. Intelligent System Controller Synergis Cloud Link
 - 1. IP-ready and PoE-enabled intelligent appliance
 - 2. Up to 32 downstream RS-485 devices
 - 3. Up to 64 readers (with V100)1
 - 4. Up to 256 locks
 - 5. Up to 250,000 cardholders and 150,000 offline events
 - 6. Multi-vendor device support
 - 7. Supported RS-485 modules: VertX V100, V200, V300
 - 8. Supported locks: ASSA ABLOY Aperio/Sargent/Corbin Russwin, SALTO SALLIS, Allegion Schlage and SimonsVoss SmartIntego
 - 9. Provide enclosure and ancillary components required for complete working system.
 - a. Product: Genetec SY-Cloud.

2.6 INTERFACE MODULES

- A. Dual Reader Interface Module
 - 1. Product: Mercury MR52
- B. Input and Output Control Module
 - 1. Product Mercury MR16IN
 - 2. Product: Mercury MR16OUT

2.7 ENCLOSURES CLOUD LINK

- A. Genetec - Power cabinet
 - 1. Power supply, distribution board and Panduit included
 - 2. Size: (20in. x 16in. x 4.5in.)
 - a. Genetec: SY-SV4RD-E2VM-P
 - 3. Power supply, distribution board and panduit included
 - 4. Size: (24in. x 20in. x 6.5in.)
 - a. Genetec: SY-SV8RD-E4VM-P

2.8 POWER MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

- A. Genetec - LifeSafety Power cabinet
 - 1. Dual-voltage Mercury power system
 - 2. 12V/12A and 24V/10A
 - 3. 16 auxiliary and 16 lock outputs
 - 4. 36 x 30 x 6.5 E8M2 enclosure
 - 5. Fits (8) Mercury & Cloud Link
 - 6. Panduit wire management
 - a. Product: Genetec: SY-DV16RD-E8M2-NET-P

2.9 DEVICES

- A. Card Readers
 - 1. Multi-technology Mini-mullion Reader

- a. Dimensions 1.9 x 6.0 x 0.9 in
 - b. Housing UL polycarbonate/ABS Finish Black, Mounting Wall surface
 - c. Operating Temperature -13° - 150°F
 - d. Humidity 5 - 95%
 - e. RHNC Ingress Protection Rating IP65
 - f. Bluetooth-enabled
 - 1) Product: HID: RP15
2. Multi-technology Standard-size Reader
 - a. Dimensions 3.3 x 4.8 x 1.0 in
 - b. Housing UL polycarbonate Finish Black, Mounting Wall surface or standard US
 - c. Operating Temperature -13° - 150°F
 - d. Humidity 5 - 95%
 - e. Bluetooth-enabled
 - 1) Product: HID: RP40
- B. Passive Infrared Exit Detectors
1. Wrap-around coverage pattern
 2. Up to 64 second adjustable latch time
 3. Door monitor with programmable sounder alert
 4. Sequential Logic Input.
 - 1) Product: Bosch DS160 or approved equal
- C. Steel Door Magnetic Contacts
1. Designed Specifically for Use in Steel Doors
 2. Special Ribbed Sides Allow for Easy Installation
 3. Housings shall be molded of flame retardant ABS plastic
 4. Contact and magnet housing shall snap-lock into a 3/4" or 1" dia. Hole
 5. Rugged Unibody Construction for Maximum Durability and Reliability
 6. Terminal Models Available for Easier Installation
 7. Regular, Wide Gap, SPDT, DPDT, and High Security Models Available
 8. Rare Earth Magnet Designed for Steel Door w/Top Channel Available
 - 1) Product: Interlogix 1078/1076 Series Steel Door contacts or approved equal.
- D. Overhead Door Magnetic Contacts
1. Miniature, Low-profile Design
 2. Stainless Steel Armored Cable
 3. Wide Working Gap for Overhead Doors
 4. Aluminum Bar Stock
 5. Mounting Hardware Included
 6. Jacketed Lead Available
 7. Fully Sealed Switch
 8. Form C Unit Available
 - 1) Product: Interlogix 2200 Series Steel Door contacts or approved equal
- E. Automatic door application logic relay
1. Voltage: 12 to 30V AC/DC
 2. Current Draw: 105 mA Typical, 320 mA Maximum
 3. Response Time: .5 Seconds
 4. Display: Blue LED: 1 Alpha/Numeric and 2 x 7-Segment
 5. Input: 4 x Dry, 1 x Wet: min. 4.5V AC/DC
 6. Output: 3 x Form C (SPDT)

7. Contact Rating: 3 A @ 24 VDC
8. Temp Range: -22°F to +185°F (-30°C to +85°C)
9. Electrical Life: 100,000 Operations @ Rated Capacity
10. Time Delay
11. Dimensions: 2"L x 6"W x 7/8"H
12. (51mm x 152mm x 22mm)
13. Mounting: 2 x #6 Screws or Velcro
 - 1) Product: Camden CX-33 or approved equal

F. Access Control Bundle

1. SHLD 18awg-4/c (printed: lock power) plenum jacket
2. Larger gauge wire may be required to compensate for voltage drop over longer distances.
3. SHLD 22awg-3/PR (card reader) plenum jacket
4. SHLD 22awg-2/c (door contact) plenum jacket
5. SHLD 22awg-4/c (rex/ spare) plenum jacket
 - a. Product: Yellow Plenum overall jacket with components listed above

2.10 AUDIO/VIDEO INTERCOM

- A. Intercoms shall be IP-based and comply with established network and video standards.
- B. Intercoms shall be powered by the switch utilizing the network cable.
- C. Intercoms shall be fully supported by an open and published API (Application Programmers Interface), which shall provide necessary information for integration of functionality into third party applications.
- D. Intercom types listed below describing various resolutions, form-factor and features shall be supplied by a single intercom manufacturer.
- E. The intercom shall be of rugged design for tough outdoor environments.
- F. The intercom shall be equipped with a HD camera utilizing an IR-sensitive progressive scan megapixel sensor and be able to provide images also under dark conditions.
- G. The camera shall provide an automatic IR-cut filter, providing day/night functionality.
- H. The intercom shall be equipped with built-in power adaptive IR-illumination/LED.
- I. The intercom shall be equipped with one push button with embedded backlight and replaceable labels for call-up functionality.
- J. Enclosure
 1. The intercom shall:
 2. Be manufactured with IP69K rated housing, and be IK10
 3. Be fitted with a tamper switch.
 4. Be of ruggedized construction.
 5. Be available in black surface finish
- K. The intercom manufacture and model numbers will be as follows:

1. IP intercom shall be 2N IP Force with one button and HD camera or approved equal.

2.11 DATA/NETWORK

- A. One (1) assigned and static IP address accessible data port/connection shall be provided for each controller panel installed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL DESIGN STANDARDS

- A. Access control systems shall be designed and installed to not interfere with egress requirements for life safety nor interfere with intrusion or fire alarm systems.
- B. All access controlled handicap entrances shall be fully integrated into the building access control system ensuring that while providing access to the disabled, that proper access control is maintained in both the unsecured and secured modes. Access control systems shall be installed to comply with Americans with Disabilities Act and owner policies.
- C. All access control installations shall use housings and mountings which maintain or minimize disruption to architectural sensibilities or themes of the buildings and campus.
- D. All access control installations shall use housings and mounting designed to provide sufficient protection against tampering and vandalism. Torx center pin security fasteners shall be used on all devices installed in public areas.
- E. All equipment and components to support access control system shall be installed to manufacturer's specifications. Installation of components and hardware shall be in place prior to connection to the access control system.
- F. All access control systems shall be configured Fail Secure with mechanical manual egress from the secure side in the event of a loss of power, loss of network communications, or system failure.
- G. All access control equipped doors locking hardware shall include keyed locking mechanisms accessible from the unsecured side to allow keyed manual operation of the door.
- H. All access control equipped doors shall be keyed to a key system designated for access controlled doorways.
- I. All access control equipped doors shall be equipped with door position monitors and request to exit devices to allow for configuration of door condition alarms.
- J. All access controlled system equipment, including controllers and power supplies, shall be located in accessible and secure rooms as shown on contact drawings
- K. Electric power supplies and power converters for the access system equipment and hardware shall be installed in the room(s) housing the Access Control panels. Power supplies located at the access equipped door shall be avoided.

- L. Electrical service to access control power supplies shall be on dedicated circuits.
- M. All access control equipment power supplies shall be equipped with battery back up to allow operation if electrical service and emergency generated power is lost.
- N. Provide conduit from all access devices, hardware, and equipment as shown on contract drawings.
- O. Wiring Connection Requirements: All low voltage control, monitor, power, and other cables shall be connected using sealed crimp type lugs, no wire nuts will be allowed.
- P. Monitor Contacts: Door monitoring contacts, and wiring and conduits there to, shall be concealed and invisible when the door is closed. Externally applied door monitoring contacts, externally applied conduit or wire mold, and wire without conduit must be approved by Access Services, Project Manager, and building owner.
- Q. Request to Exit Switches: Request to exit (RX) switches should be mechanically hardware based devices. Passive infrared (PIR) or sonic detectors should only be used when no mechanical method is available.

3.2 CONDUCTORS, WIRE, CABLES

- A. Data
 - 1. All access control system data wiring, cables, jumpers, and connectors will comply with requirements of Section 27 10 00 Telecommunication Structured cabling standards.
- B. Low Voltage Electrical
 - 1. All access control system low voltage electrical wiring, cables, and connectors will comply with the requirements of Section 27 10 00 Telecommunication Structured cabling standards.
 - 2. All access control system low voltage electrical wire shall be rated and adequate to supply the intended doors full functionality including but not limited to lock mechanisms, readers, and monitoring points without exceeding seventy-five percent (75%) of the wire's rated capacity
 - 3. Distance from power supply to door lock shall be examined to determine correct wire gauge to support expected voltage drop over distance.

3.3 CONTROLLERS

- A. Intelligent System Controllers
 - 1. All access control system controllers shall be located in a secure location.
 - 2. All access control system controllers and interface devices shall be housed in a metal case capable of being locked and monitored by the access control system for open/close position.
- B. Wireless Controllers and Transceivers.
 - 1. All access control system wireless transceivers / PIMs shall be mounted out of the public view in a secured room.

2. All access control system wireless transceivers/PIMs shall be housed in a metal case capable of being locked and monitored by the access control system for open/close position.
3. Avoid other equipment which might interfere with the proper operation of the controllers.

3.4 ELECTRICAL POWER NEEDS

1. Access control power cables shall not be installed to be within the public view. Any power cables within public view shall be placed in conduit to prevent damage or tampering.
2. All access control power supplies shall be rated and adequate to supply all controllers, door locks, card readers, and monitor devices without exceeding seventy-five percent (75%) of the power supply. In selection of power supply output, special attention shall be paid to expected distance from power supply to door installation and resulting voltage drop over distance.
3. Access control power supplies shall be equipped with battery back up to insure operation in the event of power failure.
4. Access control power supplies shall be connected to the buildings emergency power system to insure service in the event of a power failure.
5. Access control power supplies shall be equipped to allow access system to detect and report building electrical power feed failure.
6. Access control power supplies shall provide a device or method to terminate building electrical power feed at the power supply by switch or plug.
7. A four gang electrical outlet connected to dedicated 20 amp power supply shall be provided at each controller/power supply installation location.

3.5 EQUIPMENT CABINETS

- A. All access control system controllers and power supplies shall be housed in metal cabinets capable of being locked using a key. The cabinet shall be secured to the wall. The final mounting location in the termination room(s) requires prior approval by the Owner.
- B. All access control system controller and power supplies cabinets shall be equipped with monitors to allow remote determination of cabinet cover door status (open vs closed).
- C. Conduit wire pathways shall be installed to house wiring passing from the power supply cabinets and the controller enclosures.

3.6 ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL ADMINISTRATION

- A. Administration of the electronic access control infrastructure includes documentation of devices, cables, termination hardware, patching and cross-connection facilities, conduits, other cable pathways, and telecommunications closets.
- B. In order to create a consistent environment, utilize an alphanumeric labeling system to label all access control cables and system components in a manner equivalent to the existing system labeling scheme.
 1. All cables and components used on electronic access control equipped doors and controllers shall be clearly marked using permanent means. Coordinate the preferred alphanumeric labeling system with the Owner.

3.7 RECORDS

- A. A record is a collection of information about or related to a specific element of the access control system. Records must be maintained in a computer printable spreadsheet, or in a computer database. A device and cable record is prepared for each device/door installation. The record will show the device/door name, and must describe the components from origin point and destination point. The device and cable record will record what services and/or connections are assigned to each installed location based on Equipped Door Number. An equipment record is prepared for services distributed from a certain piece of equipment, such as a controller, or a system.

3.8 DRAWINGS

- A. Drawings are used to illustrate different stages of access control system installation planning, installation, and administration.
- B. Installation or Construction Drawings
 - 1. Installation or construction drawings are the plans that show the installer how the infrastructure and devices are to be installed. The quality of the installation can be directly impacted by the level of detail in the installation drawings and written specifications. Installation drawings shall show, at a minimum, device installation, show pathway locations and routing, configuration of access control systems including door hardware installation, device installation, infrastructure, backboard and equipment rack configurations, and wiring details include identifier assignments.
- C. As-built Drawings
 - 1. The as-built drawings graphically document the installed access control infrastructure through floor plan, elevation, and detail drawings. These drawings will differ from the installation drawings because of changes made during construction and specific site conditions. In the as-built drawings, the identifiers for major infrastructure components must be recorded. The pathways, spaces, and wiring portions of the infrastructure shall have separate drawings if warranted by the complexity of the installation, or the scale of the drawings. As- built drawings must be kept current as adds, moves, and changes take place.

3.9 LABELING AND COLOR CODING

- A. It is important that both labeling and color coding be applied to all access control devices, wiring, and infrastructure components. Labeling with the unique identifier will identify a particular component. Proper color coding will quickly identify how that component is used in the overall systems infrastructure of the facility.
- B. Labeling
 - 1. Labels shall be applied to the wiring terminations and corresponding devices. Wiring and cable labels shall be applied at the doorway end and controller device side of cable and wiring runs.
 - 2. Labels may be either the adhesive or insert type. All labels must be legible, resistant to defacement, and maintain adhesion to the application surface.
 - 3. Outside plant labels shall be totally waterproof, even when submerged.
 - 4. All labels shall be machine printed.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

5. Labels applied directly to a cable shall have a clear vinyl wrapping applied over the label and around the cable to permanently affix the label.
6. Other types of labels, such as tie-on labels, may be used. However, the label must be appropriate for the environment in which it is used and must be used in the manner intended by the manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 281300

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Video Surveillance System.
 - 2. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
 - 3. Cable management system.
 - 4. Cabling identification products.
 - 5. Grounding.
 - 6. Pathways.
- B. Related Sections
 - 1. 271000 – Telecommunications Structured Cabling
 - 2. 281300 – Access Control Systems
- C. System Requirements
 - 1. Provide video surveillance cameras, hardware, head-end equipment, video recorders, power supplies, lightning protection, fiber transceivers, server/client software, licenses, related security hardware as specified and as detailed in associated contract drawings.
 - 2. Integrate system hardware, software, licenses, and locations to provide a full functioning and complete video surveillance system.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The Codes and Regulations listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. Work shall be performed in accordance with the applicable international, federal, state, and local codes or standards current at the commencement of installation. The following list summarizes applicable standards:
 - 1. UL 294, UL 1076, ULC
 - 2. CE
 - 3. FCC – Part 15, Part 68
 - 4. NFPA 70, NEC
 - 5. IEEE, RS 170 variable standard
 - 6. RoHS
- B. Where more than one code or regulation is applicable, the more stringent shall apply.
- C. Cable and equipment installation, identification and termination shall be performed in accordance to the applicable codes above.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA: Americans with Disabilities Act

- B. Bid: Herein, used interchangeably with "proposal"
- C. Demarc: "Demarcation Point" marking the location where communications facilities owned by one organization interface with that of another.
- D. DVR: Digital Video Recorder
- E. GUI: Graphical User Interface
- F. LAN: Local Area Network
- G. IP: Internet Protocol
- H. IR: Infrared
- I. NIC: material and work which is Not In Contract and for which the Installer is not responsible except as otherwise detailed herein.
- J. NVR: Network Video Recorder
- K. OFE: "Owner Furnished Equipment" which will be provided by The Owner. Be responsible for installing and integrating this equipment as detailed herein.
- L. OFCI: "Owner Furnished Contractor Installed" Equipment which will be provided by The Owner. Be responsible for installing and integrating this equipment as detailed herein.
- M. OSP: Outside Service Plant
- N. PoE: Power over Ethernet
- O. TR: Telecommunications Room
- P. UPS: Uninterruptable Power Supply
- Q. The term "shall" is mandatory.
- R. The term "will" is informative.
- S. The term "should" is advisory.
- T. Term "provide" means furnish and install.
- U. Security Consultant: Convergent Technologies Design Group, Inc.
- V. SMS: Security Management System
- W. Bidder: Qualified firm intending to tender a bid on the systems described herein.
- X. Construction Manager (CM) or General Contractor (GC): The representative responsible for general building construction and onsite coordination between sub-contractors

1.4 BID PROPOSALS

A. Itemized Bid Response

1. Each piece of equipment shall be individually priced and submitted with Bid Proposals. Provide itemized bid response to include equipment description, manufacturer, model number, unit price, and quantity. All equipment prices shall reflect required modifications and accessories as needed for a complete and functioning system.
2. Non-equipment charges shall be outlined separately as a single line item. A sum of the video surveillance system total cost shall be provided with the bid proposal.
3. Lump sum bids will not be accepted.

B. Contractor Qualification

1. Demonstrate at least three (3) years experience in the fabrication, programming, assembly, and installation of video surveillance systems of similar magnitude and quality as specified for the subject job. Submit documentation to this effect with the bid response. Be an authorized sales and service center for all listed components and offerings in this specification.
2. References: Furnish no less than three (3) references for installations of similar size (dollar amount & quantity of spaces receiving integrated technology) and scope, performed throughout the same region of the project address within the past three (3) years. At a minimum, reference information will include the reference company or institute name, contact person's name and title, telephone number, address, and detailed project description, project manager's name, and contact information of the organization that is responsible for day-to-day operation of the video surveillance system installation.
3. Be an Enterprise level dealer of the specified system.
4. Bidders shall include as part of the bid response the following items:
 - a. List of all technical personnel factory-certified on specified product manufacturer.
 - b. Letter of approval from the manufacturer indicating compliance with qualification requirements.
 - c. Installation schedule with proposed manpower assignments.
 - d. Resumes for project manager, lead engineer and all ASIS certifications for this project.
 - e. Training certificates for design, engineering and installation of the proposed products shall be submitted with the proposal.
 - f. Service Dispatch outline containing the type of service program used for dispatching and tracking service calls.

C. Alternate Proposals

1. Any proposed alternate equipment choices shall be requested in writing prior to the proposal submission for approval. Each item on the alternate equipment list must be accompanied by catalog cut sheets and technical specifications.

D. Non-Equipment Charges, including but not be limited to:

1. Engineering: Including all required design drawings, run sheets, instruction manuals, console layout, step-by-step user guide, etc.
2. Pre-Installation: Work performed on the Installer's premises including all fabrication, modification, assembly, rack wiring, etc.
3. Installation: Including all on-site installation and wiring, shop drawing, coordination and supervision, testing, checkout, Owner training, etc., performed on the Owner's premises.
4. General and Administrative: Including all shipping, insurance, and guarantees.

- E. Owner Furnished Equipment (OFE, OFCI)
 - 1. Identify any Owner Furnished Equipment assumed in the Bid Proposal to be installed and integrated under this contract. Identify all assumed Owner Furnished equipment within each room/space type that will be required to complete the video surveillance systems installation.

- F. State of the Art Development
 - 1. Supply only the manufacturer's latest developed product. In cases where product development surpasses the criteria of the specification, inform the Architect and make the newer product available to the project at no additional cost. In no case shall discontinued or obsolete equipment be acceptable. The same requirement applies to software programs developed/updated during the warranty period.
 - 2. Should a manufacturer discontinue a specified product, provide the manufacturer's recommended replacement at no additional cost to the owner. Should the manufacturer have no direct replacement product, propose a product of equal or greater specification from an alternate manufacturer at no additional cost to the owner.
 - 3. Should a product recall by a specified manufacturer require temporary or permanent replacement of a product specified under this section, notify the Architect at the earliest possible time and arrange to replace the product in question as quickly as possible.
 - a. Equipment found defective or subject to recall prior to scheduled installation shall not be delivered to the jobsite.
 - b. Equipment defect or intended recall shall not relieve the video surveillance contractor from any contractual obligations with regard to delivery schedule of product.
 - c. Under no circumstances shall arrangement for alternate product require the Owner to accept superseded equipment except on a temporary basis.

- G. Service Contract
 - 1. Submit the costs for a one-year service contract, renewable for up to three years, which shall commence with the completion of the two-year warranty period. These contracts shall be fixed-cost, and can be accepted at the option of the Owner.
 - 2. The service contract shall include all of the services provided during the warranty period, including complete replacement or repair of defective equipment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Coordination
 - 1. 281300 for integration requirements of Access Control system components.
 - 2. 271000 for pathways, cabling locations, colors, termination ports, and all OSP Demarc locations related to video surveillance systems.
 - 3. Test and verify structured cabling installed to support the video surveillance system.
 - 4. Coordinate layout and installation of Video Surveillance Systems equipment with Owner's security representative.
 - a. Meet jointly with Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
 - b. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants and the project Architect for design team distribution.
 - 5. Coordinate this Section with work of other Project Manual sections and associated trades.
 - 6. Specific references, herein, requiring coordination of certain work shall not obviate responsibility for other required coordination.

- B. Unspecified Equipment and Material
 - 1. All equipment and materials not specifically addressed on the drawings or in this document and required to provide complete and functional video surveillance system shall be provided in a level of quality consistent with other specified items.
- C. Standards and Codes
 - 1. Comply with
 - a. Local, state and federal codes
 - b. Applicable National Electrical Code
 - c. American National Standards Institute
 - d. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. standards.
 - 2. All equipment, material, accessories, and loose items provided by Contractor shall be new and shall conform to applicable requirements of the above-mentioned agencies.
 - 3. If required by local authorities, provide certificates and labels indicating compliance with above-mentioned codes and standards where applicable.
- D. Point of Contact
 - 1. Designate to the Owner in writing, the responsible person who shall ensure timely and consistent communication with the Owner on progress of the contract. The designated representative shall have full knowledge of all engineering and production procedures and shall report status of the installation and upcoming work plans to the Owner's Project Manager and Consultant on a weekly basis.
 - 2. Project manager shall have successfully managed not less than two (2) projects of similar size and scope (as defined in previous sections). Bid submission shall detail the percentage of time that the project manager and other key personnel will be involved with the project.

1.6 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Provide the following in accordance with Specifications and Drawings
 - 1. Submittals delivered in a timely manner as described hereinafter.
 - 2. Verification of dimensions and other conditions at project site. Review conduit system as shown in electrical section of building construction documents and, where applicable, as built conditions. Notify Consultant, Architect, GC, and EC within four weeks after award of contract of any deficiencies or inadequacies in conduit system design.
 - 3. Detailed design of video surveillance system GUI, system "maps," including remote-control accommodations.
 - 4. Power distribution and battery backup within equipment racks including power connection to electrical outlets as described in electrical section of building construction documents.
 - 5. Incidentals necessary for a complete working system.
 - 6. Initial testing and adjustments, demonstration of system for approval, participation in acceptance tests, final adjustments as required.
 - 7. Record Documents, "As-Built" drawings and O&M Manual.
 - 8. Training of operating personnel.
 - 9. Notify appropriate parties of conflicts in a timely manner.
 - 10. Work cooperatively with other trades to resolve conflicts.
- B. Special Insurance
 - 1. Provide insurance fully covering all equipment against loss, damage, and theft during shipment, storage, installation, testing, adjustment and demonstration.

1.7 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. All building and room video surveillance systems shall be systems, equipment, and accessories compatible with the current video surveillance system. All auxiliary accessories or supporting devices shall be fully compatible with and able to integrate with existing campus system.
- B. The SMS shall be able to seamlessly interface with and monitor intelligent system controllers, reader interface modules, I/O panels, burglar alarm panels, burglar alarm panel receivers, biometric devices, personal protection devices, intercom systems, fire alarm panels (secondary monitoring only), building management systems and digital/network video recorders and software.
- C. Design Intent
 - 1. Provide a complete and functioning video surveillance system inclusive of all hardware, software and training to meet or exceed the performance features outlined in this document.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

- A. Related Sections
 - 1. Comply with requirements of Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures.
- B. Submittal Data
 - 1. Submittal data is to be submitted as a complete, single digital file. All documents shall be clearly legible. Each submittal shall contain the below in the following order:
 - a. Cover Sheet.
 - 1) Include name of supplying contractor and project name.
 - b. Detailed Bill of Materials.
 - 1) Include a listing of: component quantities, equipment manufacturers, model numbers, and description of each component being supplied, and the specification paragraph or drawing sheet that corresponds to the product.
 - 2) The bill of materials shall include page numbers for each product data sheet and be index referenced within the PDF file so that each product name is clickable, linked to the first page of the corresponding product data.
 - 3) Failure to provide this information will result in the rejection of submittals.
 - c. Product Data.
 - 1) Include a catalog sheet per product of equipment listed in the Detailed Bill of Materials, in the exact order as the Detailed Bill of Materials. Each catalog sheet shall describe mechanical, electrical and functional equipment specifications. The catalog sheet must also include an image of the product. Photocopy duplications of the manufacturer's original equipment catalog sheets will be allowed as long as they provide adequate clarity of both the printed word and graphics/pictures. If more than one product is shown on the catalog sheet the intended product must be denoted by either an arrow or highlight.
 - d. Authorized Distributor Certificate.
 - 1) Recently dated (within one year from submittal date) support letter from manufacturer stating that the supplying contractor is an Authorized Distributor of the product being supplied.
 - e. Partial submittals, or submittals comprised of multiple PDF files, will not be accepted.

C. Shop Drawings

1. Prior to fabrication submit contractor generated drawings for approval for all supplied systems. These drawings shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Title Sheet & Symbols Legend
 - b. Riser Diagram: Provide riser diagrams of the video surveillance systems and any other systems specified herein.
 - c. Block Diagrams: Submit block diagrams for each system indicating connections of equipment and indicating equipment types and model numbers.
 - d. Coordination Drawings: Elevation Details of wall fields in Telecommunications Rooms showing the relationship of rack mounted elements inclusive of Owner provided equipment (labeled as such).
 - e. All unusual equipment modifications.
 - f. Front mechanical drawings of each equipment rack.
 - g. Equipment location drawings.
 - h. Cable labeling plan.
 - i. Floor Plans, RCPs and Elevations: Show planned location for all elements and cable routing. Drawings shall be at project standard scale and clearly legible.
 - j. On submittal drawings, maintain 3/32" minimum lettering height. Submittals with text less than 1/16" in height may be rejected.

D. Form

1. Partial Submittals may be rejected. If submitted individually and each in its entirety, the following Submittals shall not be considered partial:
 - a. Personnel
 - b. Milestones
 - c. Conduit Verification Statement and Notifications
 - d. Rigging and Mounting Drawings
 - e. As-Built Documentation
2. Product Data and Shop drawings must be submitted together in order to be reviewed.

E. Weekly Reporting

1. Commencing with project award, provide weekly status reporting of milestone task status, anticipated completion date, and related memo notes for the following tasks:
 - a. Submittals
 - b. Infrastructure verification
 - c. Pre-wire status
 - d. Equipment Procurement
 - e. Shop fabrication
 - f. Remote control system design
 - g. Installation and Terminations
 - h. Field testing and pre-acceptance testing
 - i. Final acceptance demonstrations
 - j. Owner training
 - k. First owner use
 - l. Open Coordination Items and Questions
2. See below for a partial example of an acceptable weekly reporting list.

Project: <i>Project Name</i>							
Location: <i>Project Location</i>				Date: <i>Form Delivery Date</i>			
Project Manager: <i>Project Manager</i>				Delivered by: <i>Form Delivered By</i>			
		Projected Completion:	Status:		Notes:		
Infrastructure Verification:		<i>6/1/2011</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
Submittals:							
<i>Product Data</i>		<i>8/1/2011</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
<i>Drawings</i>		<i>8/1/2011</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
<i>Personnel (etc.)</i>		<i>8/1/2011</i>	<i>Complete</i>				
RFIs:							
<i>12</i>		<i>8/25/2011</i>	<i>Received</i>		<i>Implementing</i>		
<i>178</i>		<i>9/6/2011</i>	<i>Pending</i>		<i>Projector Screen Clearances</i>		
Installation Status by Space							
Room		Equipment					
Name	Number	Pre-Wire	Order	Receive	Install	Test	Notes:
<i>Example 1</i>	<i>105</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>60%</i>	<i>0%</i>	<i>Re-programming</i>
<i>Example 2</i>	<i>135</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>100%</i>	<i>90%</i>	<i>0%</i>	<i>Other Notes Here</i>

F. Personnel

1. Provide, in writing, within two weeks after award of Contract, the names, mailing address, phone numbers with extensions, email addresses and paging service numbers (if available) of the following project personnel:
 - a. Project Manager
 - b. Lead Systems Engineer
 - c. Field Foreman
2. Within four weeks after award of Contract, submit statement confirming that Contractor has reviewed the conduit system as designed in building construction documents and, where applicable, as built.
3. Notify Consultant, General Contractor, Architect or Electrical Contractor of deficiencies or inadequacies, if any, in conduit system design or installation. If none, so indicate.
4. Absent conduit verification by Contractor and after installation of conduit as designed, Contractor shall assume costs of equipment, materials, labor and engineering, including services of owner's representative(s) in designing and/or verifying revised wiring approach(es) as relate to providing a fully functional system using conduit as designed or as revised at the discretion of the owner.

1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. At the completion of the installation, but before Final Acceptance, provide for review and approval the following, in compliance with Division 1 Section *Closeout Procedures*.
 1. Operation and Maintenance Manuals:
 - a. Equipment manufacturer's operation and service manuals for each make and model of equipment.
 - b. System Operation Manual. Produce a manual specifically for the subsystems detailed herein. The manual shall describe all procedures necessary to activate each system to provide for the functional requirements, except as specifically excluded

by the Owner. This section shall provide a simple "How-to" users guide for the procedures needed to operate the system. This document shall contain a section on operating the systems equipment in the event of control system failure. Control system touch panel layouts shall be accompanied by narrative text describing "step-by-step" function engagement.

- B. Warranty
 - 1. Provide list and dates of activation of equipment warranties
 - 2. Provide original manufacturers' certificates.
- C. As-built Drawings
 - 1. Include contractor generated (mark-up of contract documents is not acceptable) digital record diagrams for all systems including, but not limited to:
 - a. Schematic wiring diagrams with cable markings.
 - b. Internal wiring diagrams of the equipment rack and enclosures.
 - c. Custom equipment modifications.
 - d. Final test results and nominal settings for all adjustable controls.
- D. Software Passwords
 - 1. Software Passwords Schedule (i.e., a spreadsheet listing the manufacturer, model number and location in the Facility, of each piece of video surveillance equipment, the software for which is password-protected).
 - 2. Provide to Owner's Representative as a secure document separate from Operating and Maintenance Manuals and As-Built Drawings.
- E. Laminated Instruction Cards

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING, AND STAGING

- A. Supply, transport, deliver, unload, move to the installation location, unpack, place, assemble, secure, connect, and install all equipment needed to complete the installation. Be responsible for transportation, parking, delivery, and on-site storage of the system's equipment. Be responsible for all transportation of personnel to and from the site.
- B. Reconfirm before delivery that hallways, stairways, passages, doorways, rooms, entries, elevators and foyers are of sufficient size to accommodate the passage and installation of the equipment and systems. Off-site pre-staging of goods is encouraged.
- C. The Owner's acknowledgment of delivery of goods and any payment made on account of such delivery shall not constitute acceptance (partial or otherwise) and shall not diminish obligations as specified.
- D. The actual dates of delivery shall be under the absolute control of the Owner. The dates and times for delivery/installation are critical to the successful completion of the project. Deliveries shall normally be accepted only Monday through Friday 8:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. In the event it becomes necessary for goods to be installed outside these hours comply with the instructions of the Owner. Deliveries attempted outside these hours without prior consent of the Owner may be turned away. Comply with all instructions of the Owner and the Contractor concerning time of arrival at the site; which entrance shall be utilized for delivery; routes to be taken to reach the installation location; and other matters relating to the orderly and timely installation of the system.

- E. Installation shall commence immediately upon delivery of materials to the jobsite, except as directed by Construction Manager. Time required from delivery date to completion of project shall be in accordance with the approved schedules.
- F. Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- G. Do not deliver or install equipment until spaces are enclosed and weather tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and work above ceilings is complete.

1.11 SYSTEM TRAINING

- A. Training: Provide training in the operation and maintenance of the system for personnel designated by the Owner. Record owner training sessions on DVD or other agreed upon media and make training videos available to the owner at no charge. The training shall be organized as follows:
 - 1. Two (2) two-hour training classes for system technical operation and maintenance. This class shall cover the following topics:
 - a. Review of signal flow diagrams.
 - b. Review of all equipment functions, relevant to the function in this system.
 - c. Review of initial equipment settings.
 - d. Demonstration of all functional connections from a user perspective.
 - e. Review & demonstration of control system software replacement/upgrade procedures.
 - f. Review of manufacturers' recommended routine maintenance procedures.
 - 2. Four (4) days of advanced user training for systems operations. This shall include day-to-day operation as well as in-depth review of system capabilities and programming.
 - 3. Training may take place at any time (chosen by the Owner) after the systems are operational, up to a year following system acceptance.
 - 4. Close out submittals shall be provided prior to any training classes.
 - 5. Coordinate detailed specifics of the training session(s) time, date & location with the Owner.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. The system warranty shall be for twenty-four (24) months from the date of final acceptance. Provide all equipment, material, and labor required to uphold a full system warranty at no charge to the Owner. All manufacturers' equipment warranties shall be activated in the Owner's name and shall commence on the date of final acceptance. In the case of modified equipment, the manufacturer's warranty is normally voided. In such cases, provide the Owner with a warranty equivalent to that of the original manufacturer.
- B. There shall be no cost to the Owner for maintenance performed during the warranty period beyond the fixed cost of the contract.
- C. Provide a total of eight (8) one-day visits per year, or a total of sixty-four (64) engineering/ service labor hours to conduct preventive maintenance and the Owner directed system adjustments.

- D. Repair and/or adjust any malfunctioning components located by the technician during this testing. Include software and programming updates / modifications as part of this service contract, providing an updated editable copy of the source code to the Owner.
- E. Provide a service telephone number, staffed by a qualified technician familiar with the equipment installed. Staff this number during normal business hours.
- F. Respond with an on-site technician within 24-hours of a service call (including Saturdays and Sundays) for all equipment and system failures.
- G. Replace or repair, at no cost to the owner, any failed equipment hardware or software installations required to provide full system operations.
- H. During the warranty period, advise the Owner in writing each time any routine software and firmware updates become available, giving the Owner the opportunity to upgrade the software/hardware should they so desire at no additional cost. Provide any necessary system modifications after installation of these updates to maintain a fully functioning system.
- I. Provide updates to firmware during service period. Provide any necessary system modifications after installation of these updates to maintain a fully functioning system.
- J. The warranty period for any part which has a warranty by the manufacturer of longer than 24 months shall be for the longer period. Provide a copy of the manufacturer's warranty period statement for all major video surveillance system components.

1.13 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

- A. General Requirements: Provide all services required and equipment necessary to maintain the entire SMS in an operational state as specified for a period of two (2) year(s) after formal written acceptance of the system, and shall provide all necessary material required for performing scheduled service or other unscheduled work.
- B. Description of Work: The service and repair of the SMS including all equipment provided under this specification supplied by the contractor. Provide the manufacturer's required scheduled and unscheduled maintenance and all other work necessary to keep the SMS at its maximum performance.
- C. Personnel: Service personnel shall be factory certified in the maintenance and repair of the equipment installed under this section of the specification. The owner shall be advised in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any change in personnel.
- D. Schedule of Work: This work shall be performed during regular working hours (8-5), Monday through Friday, excluding federal holidays.
 - 1. Inspections: The Contractor shall perform two minor inspections at 6 month intervals (or more often if required by the manufacturer), and two major inspections offset equally between the minor inspections to effect quarterly inspection of alternating magnitude.
 - 2. Minor Inspections: These inspections shall include:
 - a. Visual checks and operational tests of all console equipment, peripheral equipment, field hardware, sensors, and electrical and mechanical controls.
 - b. Mechanical adjustments if required on any mechanical or electromechanical devices

3. Major Inspections: These inspections shall include all work described under paragraph Minor Inspections and the following work:
 - a. Clean all SMS equipment, including interior and exterior surfaces.
 - b. Perform diagnostics on all equipment.
 - c. Check, walk test, and if required by the manufacturer's maintenance procedures, calibrate each sensor.
 - d. Run all system software diagnostics and correct all diagnosed problems.
 - E. Operation: Performance of scheduled adjustments and repair shall verify operation of the SMS as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.
 - F. Emergency Service: The owner will initiate service calls when the SMS is not functioning properly and hinders critical operation of the facility. Qualified personnel shall be available to provide service to the complete SMS repairs. The owner shall be furnished with a telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times. Service personnel shall be at site within four (4) hours after receiving a request for service. The SMS shall be restored to proper operating condition within eight (8) hours after service personnel arrive on site.
 - G. Work Requests: Separately record each service call request on a service request form. The form shall include the model and serial number identifying the component involved, its location, date and time the call was received, specific nature of trouble, names of service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. Deliver a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.
 - H. System Modifications: Make any recommendations for system modification in writing to the Owner. No system modifications, shall be made without prior approval of the Owner. Any modifications made to the system shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and other documentation affected.
 - I. Software: Provide all software updates during the period of the warranty and verify operation in the system. These updates shall be accomplished in a timely manner, fully coordinated with SMS operators, shall include training for the new changes / features enabled, and shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and software documentation.
- 1.14 COMMISSIONING AND STARTUP
- A. Coordinate programming with owner to show all cameras views and the camera naming convention are configured to the existing systems per operational guidelines.
 - B. Provide up to four (4) different client software configurations for owner.
 - C. Provide facility map as basis for camera locations in software GUI.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT AND BOXES

- A. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes."

2.2 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, and are limited to, the following:
 - 1. Video Management system
 - a. Genetec, no exceptions
- B. Equipment Lists: Refer to the following for materials and equipment required to complete the work of this Section.
- C. Provide appropriate camera licensing to include added equipment in this section to the existing configuration/system.
- D. Existing Genetec platform
 - 1. Provide a three (3) year Enterprise license for each camera on the project drawings plus 10%.
 - 2. Integrate the project cameras onto the existing platform.
 - 3. Provide client software for up to four (4) owner computers.

2.3 CAMERA AND CAMERA ACCESSORIES REQUIREMENTS

- A. All cameras shall provide a minimum resolution, dynamic range, and field of view to provide clear and crisp images to the Owners satisfaction.
- B. Cameras:
 - 1. Base manufacturer: Manufacturer used as the basis of design.
 - a. Axis - www.axis.com/en-us
- C. Indoor Wall or Ceiling Mounted 360° panoramic view Dome
 - 1. Complete 180° and 360° overview
 - 2. resolution
 - a. Overview: 2016x2016 to 160x160
 - b. Panorama: 2560x1440 to 192x72
 - c. Double Panorama: 2560x1920 to 384x288
 - d. Quad view: 2560x1920 to 384x288
 - e. View area 1-4: 1920x1440 to 256x144
 - f. Corner right/left: 2368x1184 to 384x288
 - g. Double corner: 2016x2016 to 384x288
 - h. Corridor: 2560x1920 to 256x144
 - 3. Sensor size in megapixel 6.0
 - 4. Lightfinder, Forensic WDR

5. Zipstream supporting H.264 and H.265
 6. One-way audio
 7. IP66-, NEMA 4X- and IK10-rated Polycarbonate hard coated dome Aluminum
 8. IR illumination OptimizedIR with with power-efficient, long-life 850 nm IR LEDs Range of reach 20 m (66 ft)
 - a. Basis of design Axis: M3077-PLVE
- D. Indoor Wall or Ceiling Mounted Dome
1. Resolution 2592x1944 to 160x90
 2. 5 MP resolution at 30 fps
 3. Lightfinder 2.0, Forensic WDR and OptimizedIR
 4. Zipstream supporting H.264 and H.265
 5. Signed firmware and secure boot
 6. Two-way audio and I/O connectivity
 7. Wide dynamic range for clarity in high contrast environments
 8. P52-rated, IK10 impact-resistant polycarbonate casing with hard-coated dome and dehumidifying membrane Encapsulated electronics and captive screws
 9. IR illumination OptimizedIR with power-efficient, long-life 850 nm IR LEDs Range of reach 40 m (130 ft)
 - a. Basis of design Axis: P3247-LV
- E. Outdoor Dome
1. Resolution 2592x1944 to 160x90
 2. 5 MP resolution at 30 fps
 3. Lightfinder 2.0, Forensic WDR and OptimizedIR
 4. Zipstream supporting H.264 and H.265
 5. Signed firmware and secure boot
 6. Two-way audio and I/O connectivity
 7. Wide dynamic range for clarity in high contrast environments
 8. IP66- and NEMA 4X-rated, IK10 impact-resistant polycarbonate casing with hard-coated dome, dehumidifying membrane Encapsulated electronics and captive screws
 9. Optimized IR with power-efficient, long-life 850 nm IR LEDs
 10. Range 40 m (130 ft)
 - a. Basis of design Axis: P3247-LVE
- F. Indoor or Outdoor Multisensor Dome
1. 15 MP, 360° multidirectional camera, one IP address
 2. 360° IR illumination and remote zoom and focus
 3. Max video resolution 2560x1440
 4. Max frames per second 25/30
 5. Axis Lightfinder and Forensic WDR
 6. Flexible positioning of four varifocal camera heads
 7. Axis Zipstream for reduced bandwidth and storage needs
 8. IP66-, IP67-, NEMA 4X-rated, IK09 impact-resistant, aluminum and plastic casing with polycarbonate hard-coated dome, sunshield (PC/ASA)
 9. Four individually controllable IR with power-efficient, long-life 850 nm IR LEDs
 10. Range 15 m (50 ft).
 - a. Basis of design Axis: P3719-PLE
- G. Accessories - Mounting
1. Axis P3248-LV

- a. Open ceiling locations as needed AXIS T91B63 Ceiling Mount
- b. Drop ceiling locations AXIS TP3201 Recessed Mount
2. Axis P3719-PLE
 - a. AXIS T94N01D Pendant Kit
 - b. AXIS T91D61 Wall mount 1.5" NPS
 - c. AXIS T91A64Corner Bracket
 - d. AXIS T91D63 Ceiling Mount
 - e. AXIS T94N01L Recessed Ceiling Mount

2.4 DATA/NETWORK

- A. Data transmission cable.
 1. All video surveillance system copper and optical fiber data wiring, cables, jumpers, and connectors per Section "27 10 00 Telecommunications Structured Cabling" construction standards.

2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER NEEDS

- A. Provide Lightning Protection Module at all exterior camera locations. Basis of design shall be Ditek model DTK-MJRPOE.
- B. Remote Exterior cameras requiring optical fiber runs shall be powered by AC. Refer to TA series drawings for requirements.

2.6 MOUNTING EQUIPMENT

- A. All video surveillance cameras housings and mounts adequate to provide protection against accidental and intentional damage or tampering. Torx center pin security fasteners shall be used on devices in public areas.
- B. All video surveillance camera housings and mounts shall have adequate housings and environmental controls to ensure proper operation of camera as determined by environmental conditions and building usage.

2.7 DATA TRANSMISSION RESOURCES NEEDS

- A. Data cable runs shall be limit to no more than 290 ft from the camera device and switch. During design and installation close attention must be paid to the distance of cabling runs for video surveillance.
- B. Camera installations at remote exterior locations shall use optical fiber with UTP/optical fiber transceivers to transmit video signals to the Telecommunications rooms.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL DESIGN STANDARDS

- A. Video surveillance systems shall be designed and installed to not interfere with egress requirements for life safety nor interfere with intrusion or fire alarm systems.
- B. All video surveillance installations shall use housings and mountings which maintain or minimize disruption to architectural sensibilities or themes of the building and exterior areas.
- C. All video surveillance installations shall use housings and mounting designed to provide sufficient protection against tampering and vandalism. Torx center pin security fasteners shall be used on all devices installed in public areas.
- D. All equipment and components to support video surveillance system shall be installed to manufacturer's specifications. Installation of components and hardware shall be in place prior to connection to the video surveillance system.

3.2 CONDUCTORS, WIRE, CABLES

- A. Data
 - 1. All video surveillance system data wiring, cables, jumpers, and connectors will comply with requirements of Section "27 10 00 Telecommunication Structured cabling standards".

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install all products in this section following the product manufacturer's published installation and application manuals and guidelines.
- B. Install system according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Systems Integration:
 - 1. Develop, install, and test software and databases for complete and proper operation of systems involved.
 - 2. Setup and program entire system such that no additional programming is required including setup all available software features.
 - 3. Perform a full system back-up at completion of initial programming and deliver configuration to Owner.
 - 4. Perform field software changes after the initial programming session to "fine tune" operating parameters and sequence of operations based on revisions to the Owner's operating requirements.
- D. Test equipment and configure system in accordance with instructions provided by manufacturer prior to installation.
- E. Provide products with latest and most up-to-date firmware by manufacturer or provide firmware of a version as specified by provider of Video Management Appliance (VMA) or Network Video Recorder (NVR).

- F. Review configurable features of device with Owner's Representative and establish a punch list for standard, device specific, location specific and SMS specific configuration of device(s).
 - 1. Program and configure devices in accordance with this punch list so no additional programming is required for operation by user.
- G. Configure equipment requiring users to log on using a password with user/site-specific credentials. Default passwords are not acceptable and must be configured prior to project closeout.
- H. Provide products with the latest and most up-to-date firmware by the manufacturer or provide firmware of a version specified by the provider of the Video Management Application (VMA) or Network Video Recorder (NVR).

3.4 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE ADMINISTRATION

- A. Administration of the video surveillance infrastructure includes documentation of devices, cables, termination hardware, patching and cross-connection facilities, conduits, other cable pathways, and telecommunications closets.
- B. All video surveillance cameras, devices, and cables shall be clearly marked using permanent means. Video cameras shall use the following system of numbering
 - 1. Exterior Cameras Mounted Viewing Building Entrance: Abbreviated building name + EXT + number of door + abbreviated compass direction of door relative to the center of the building. Example DBPS EXT 27 NW (if more than one camera at entrance for the same purpose include decimal designator to number of door).
 - 2. Exterior Camera Mounted to Building Viewing Parking Lot: Abbreviated building name + LOT + number of parking lot + abbreviated compass direction of door relative to the center of the parking lot. Example DBPS LOT R10 S.
 - 3. Exterior Camera Mounted to Building Viewing Area Around Building: Abbreviated building name + EXT + abbreviated name of area covered + abbreviated compass direction of area viewed relative to the center of the area viewed. Example DBPS EXT 27 NW (if more than one camera at entrance for the same purpose include decimal designator to name of area covered).
 - 4. Exterior Camera Mounted Light Pole Viewing Area: Abbreviated name of area viewed + EXT + abbreviated building name of nearest building + abbreviated compass direction of area viewed relative to the center of the area viewed. Examples EXT JCK E.
 - 5. Exterior Camera Mounted to Light Pole Viewing Parking Lot: LOT + number of parking lot + abbreviated compass direction of area viewed relative to the center of the parking lot. Example LOT R5 SW.
 - 6. Interior Camera Mounted Viewing Building Entrance: Abbreviated building name + INT + Floor + number of door + abbreviated compass direction of door relative to the center of the building. Example DBPS INT 1st 27 NW (if more than one camera at entrance for the same purpose include decimal designator).
 - 7. Interior Camera Mounted Viewing Interior Room: Abbreviated building name + INT + number of room. Example DBPS INT 202 (if more than one camera at entrance for the same purpose include a decimal designation at end of sequence. Example DBPS INT 202.1).
 - 8. Interior Camera Mounted Viewing Interior Area: Abbreviated building name + INT + Floor + Abbreviated name of area viewed. Example DBPS INT 1st Lobby (if more than

one camera used for the same area include a decimal designator. Example DBPS INT 10th Hallway.1).

9. Power Supply: PWR + abbreviated installed location/building + number of room installed - number. Example PWR JCK INT 202-1.

3.5 RECORDS

- A. Records must be maintained in a spreadsheet, or in a database. A device and cable record is prepared for each installed camera. The record will show the device name and must describe the components from origin point and destination point.

3.6 DRAWINGS

- A. Provide drawings to illustrate different stages of video surveillance system installation planning, installation, and administration.
- B. Installation or Construction Drawings
 1. Installation or construction drawings are the plans that show the installer how the infrastructure and devices are to be installed. The quality of the installation can be directly impacted by the level of detail in the installation drawings and written specifications. Installation drawings shall show, cabling pathway locations and routing and number of components.
- C. As-built Drawings
 1. The as-built drawings graphically document the installed video surveillance infrastructure through floor plan, elevation, and detail drawings. These drawings will differ from the installation drawings because of changes made during construction and specific site conditions. In the as-built drawings, the identifiers for major infrastructure components must be recorded. The pathways, spaces, and wiring portions of the infrastructure each may have separate drawings if warranted by the complexity of the installation, or the scale of the drawings. As- built drawings must be kept current as adds, moves, and changes take place.

3.7 LABELING

- A. Labeling applied to all video surveillance devices, wiring, and infrastructure components. Labeling with the unique identifier will identify a particular component.
- B. Labeling
 1. Labels either adhesive or insert type. All labels must be legible, resistant to defacement, and maintain adhesion to the application surface.
 2. Outside plant labels shall be totally waterproof, even when submerged.
 3. All labels shall be machine printed.
 4. Labels applied directly to a cable shall have a clear vinyl wrapping applied over the label and around the cable to permanently affix the label.
 5. Other types of labels, such as tie-on labels, may be used. However, the label must be appropriate for the environment in which it is used and must be used in the manner intended by the manufacturer.

3.8 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Demonstration:
 - 1. Demonstrate administration and operation of devices described by this section.
 - 2. Demonstrate how to authorize users and applications to operate and configure installed devices.
 - 3. Demonstrate how an authorized user can gain access to and make changes to configuration.
 - 4. Demonstrate how to operate functionality configured for this project as defined by configuration punch list.

- B. Fine Tuning:
 - 1. Perform field software changes after initial programming session to “fine tune” operating parameters and sequence of operations based on any revisions to Owner’s operating requirements.

- C. License Assignment:
 - 1. Register software, hardware, firmware, operational or administrative licenses necessary to operate or administer devices to Owner.
 - 2. Deliver to Owner’s Representative proof of license registration from product manufacturer.

- D. Device Configuration Backup:
 - 1. Using manufacturer’s backup software tool, perform a full system back-up at completion of initial programming.
 - 2. Deliver configuration backup files, restoration application and instructions detailing for restoration of back-up configuration.

END OF SECTION 282300

SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Clearing and grubbing.
4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
5. Stripping and stockpiling rock.
6. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
7. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities, abandoning site utilities in place.
8. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Subsoil: Soil beneath the level of subgrade; soil beneath the topsoil layers of a naturally occurring soil profile, typified by less than 1 percent organic matter and few soil organisms.
- B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile. In undisturbed areas, surface soil is typically called "topsoil," but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil; the zone where plant roots grow.
- D. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- E. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction and indicated according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- F. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
 - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or video recordings.
 - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plant designated to remain.
- B. Topsoil stripping and stockpiling program.
- C. Rock stockpiling program.
- D. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.
- E. Burning: Documentation of compliance with burning requirements and permitting of authorities having jurisdiction. Identify location(s) and conditions under which burning will be performed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Topsoil Stripping and Stockpiling Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement and protection of stockpiles.
- B. Rock Stockpiling Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement and protection of stockpiles.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated

on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.

1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
 - D. Utility Locator Service: Notify Call Before You Dig for area where Project is located before site clearing.
 - E. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.
 - F. Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones: Protect according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
 - G. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the soil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Verify that trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated have been flagged and that protection zones have been identified and enclosed according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.

- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

- A. Protect trees and plants remaining on-site according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- B. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.4 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
 - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed or abandoned in place.
 - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
 - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
- D. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others, unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- E. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.
- F. Removal of underground utilities is included in earthwork sections; in applicable fire suppression, plumbing, HVAC, electrical, communications, electronic safety and security, and utilities sections; and in Section 024116 "Structure Demolition" and Section 024119 "Selective Demolition."

3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new

construction.

1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
2. Grind down stumps and remove roots larger than **3 inches** in diameter, obstructions, and debris to a depth of **18 inches** below exposed subgrade.
3. Use only hand methods or air spade for grubbing within protection zones.
4. Chip removed tree branches and dispose of off-site.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of **8 inches**, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil to depth indicated on Drawings in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than **2 inches** in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil or other materials. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.

1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to **72 inches**.
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
3. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

3.7 STOCKPILING ROCK

A. Remove from construction area naturally formed rocks that measure more than **[1 foot]** <Insert dimension> across in least dimension. Do not include excavated or crushed rock.

1. Separate or wash off non-rock materials from rocks, including soil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than **2 inches** in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

B. Stockpile rock where indicated on Drawings without intermixing with other materials. Cover to prevent windblown debris from accumulating among rocks.

1. Limit height of rock stockpiles to **36 inches**.

2. Do not stockpile rock within protection zones.
3. Dispose of surplus rock. Surplus rock is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
4. Stockpile surplus rock to allow later use by the Owner.

3.8 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

3.9 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Burning tree, shrub, and other vegetation waste is permitted according to burning requirements and permitting of authorities having jurisdiction. Control such burning to produce the least smoke or air pollutants and minimum annoyance to surrounding properties. Burning of other waste and debris is prohibited.
- C. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials, and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
2. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, turf and grasses, plants.
3. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
4. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
5. Subbase course for concrete walks, pavements.
6. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
7. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
8. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation", Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for recording preexcavation and earth-moving progress.
2. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
3. Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading in turf and grass areas, including preparing and placing planting soil for turf areas.
4. Section 329300 "Plants" for finish grading in planting areas and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.

1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

- E. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
 - 2. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, will be without additional compensation.
- F. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- G. Rock:
 - 1. Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed [1 cu. yd.] <Insert volume> for bulk excavation or [3/4 cu. yd.] <Insert volume> for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock-excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
- H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other fabricated stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- I. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- J. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- K. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct preexcavation conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to earthmoving, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Coordination of Work with utility locator service.
 - c. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of tree- and plant-protection zones.
 - d. Extent of trenching by hand or with air spade.
 - e. Field quality control.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:
 - 1. Geotextiles.
 - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
 - 3. Warning tapes.
- B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:
 - 1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches.
 - 2. Warning Tape: 12 inches long; of each color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site, borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:
 - 1. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D698.
- C. Preexcavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth-moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth-moving operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify "Call Before You Dig" for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- D. Do not commence earth-moving operations until temporary site fencing and erosion- and sedimentation-control measures specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls", Section 311000 "Site Clearing" are in place.

- E. Do not commence earth-moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" are in place.
- F. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Foot traffic.
 - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 5. Impoundment of water.
 - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- H. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Provide dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
- B. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- C. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to

accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

- D. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives:
 - 1. Do not use explosives.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
 - 2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
 - a. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
- B. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Architect. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.
 - 1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; and soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
 - a. Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus **1 inch**. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

1. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus **1 inch**. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.

1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to **12 inches** higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.

1. Clearance: **12 inches** each side of pipe or conduit.

C. Trench Bottoms:

1. Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
 - a. For pipes and conduit less than **6 inches** in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 - b. For pipes and conduit **6 inches** or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
 - c. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
 - d. Excavate trenches **6 inches** deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

2. Excavate trenches **4 inches** deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
 - a. Excavate trenches **6 inches** deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
3. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade Parking lot grading with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than **15 tons** to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to **3 mph**.
 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of **2500 psi**, may be used when approved by Architect.
 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as

directed by Architect.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within **[18 inches]** <Insert dimension> of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide **[4-inch-]** <Insert dimension> thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than **[30 inches]** <Insert dimension> below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of **[4 inches]** <Insert dimension> of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- E. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.

F. Initial Backfill:

1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact initial backfill of [**subbase material**] [**satisfactory soil**], free of particles larger than [**1 inch**] <Insert dimension> in any dimension, to a height of **12 inches** over the pipe or conduit.
 - a. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of **12 inches** over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

G. Final Backfill:

1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.

- H. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, **12 inches** below finished grade, except **6 inches** below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.13 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.14 GEOFOAM FILL

- A. Place a leveling course of sand, **2 inches** thick, over subgrade. Finish leveling course to a tolerance of **1/2 inch** when tested with a **10-foot** straightedge.
 1. Place leveling course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Install geofoam blocks in layers with abutting edges and ends and with the long dimension of each block at right angles to blocks in each subsequent layer. Offset joints of blocks in successive layers.

- C. Install geofoam connectors at each layer of geofoam to resist horizontal displacement according to geofoam manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Cover geofoam with **[subdrainage] [separation]** geotextile before placing overlying soil materials.

3.15 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
 - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.16 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than **8 inches** in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than **4 inches** in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698, ASTM D1557:
 - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top **12 inches** of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
 - 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top **6 inches** below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
 - 3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top **6 inches** below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
 - 4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.

3.17 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:
 - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.18 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

- A. Subsurface Drain: Place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
- B. Drainage Backfill: Place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches.
 - 1. Compact each filter material layer with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor.
 - 2. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- thick compacted layers to final subgrade.

3.19 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

- A. Place subbase course and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
 - 1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 - 2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 3. Shape subbase course and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
 - 4. Place subbase course and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 - 5. Place subbase course and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6

- inches** thick or less than **3 inches** thick.
6. Compact subbase course and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698, ASTM D1557.
- C. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least **12 inches** wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698, ASTM D1557.
- 3.20 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE
- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
 - B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
 2. Place drainage course **6 inches** or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
 3. Place drainage course that exceeds **6 inches** in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than **6 inches** thick or less than **3 inches** thick.
 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698.
- 3.21 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
 2. Determine that fill material classification and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
 3. Determine, during placement and compaction, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
 - B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
 - C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
 - D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of

other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.

- E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, ASTM D2937, and ASTM D6938, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
 - 1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab but in no case fewer than three tests.
 - 2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length but no fewer than two tests.
 - 3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length but no fewer than two tests.
- F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.22 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
 - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.23 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

SECTION 312301 - EXCAVATION, BACKFILL, AND COMPACTION (BUILDING AREA)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of contract, including general and supplementary conditions and Division 1 specification sections, apply to this section.
 - 1. Refer to Division 1 for applicable local codes and regulations.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This section pertains to an area bounded by 20-foot-minimum outside of and parallel to the exterior walls of the building, including canopies, loading docks, and other structures attached to the building.
- B. This work includes the following:
 - 1. Preparing subgrade for building slabs, walks, and pavements.
 - 2. Preparing subbase for support of building slabs.
 - 3. Excavating and backfilling for building structure.
 - 4. Excavating and backfilling of trenches within building lines.
 - 5. Excavating and backfilling for underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical appurtenances.
 - 6. Excavating and backfilling for Mechanical/Electrical Work. Refer to mechanical and electrical sections for excavation and backfill required in conjunction with underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical appurtenances.
 - 7. Final grading and placement and preparation for topsoil for lawns and planting are specified in Division 310000 – Site Earthwork.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with: New York State Department of Transportation (NYSDOT) “Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.”
- B. Routine testing of existing soils and compacted material for compliance with these specifications will be performed as part of Special Inspections.
 - 1. Compacted material not meeting density requirements shall be removed or recompacted and retested at Contractor's expense.

1.4 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Refer to Specification Section 014533 and Schedule of Special Inspections.

1.5 MATERIAL EVALUATION/QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Preconstruction Testing: Contractor shall employ Testing Agency acceptable to Engineer and Architect to perform the following services:
 - 1. Test materials proposed for use by Contractor to verify specified requirements.
 - a. Determine optimum moisture at which maximum density can be obtained in accordance with ASTM D 1557, Modified Proctor.
 - b. Perform particle size analysis in accordance with ASTM D 422.
- B. Submit Testing Agency qualifications demonstrating experience with similar types of projects.
- C. The RDP for Geotechnical Engineering shall perform the following:
 - 1. Identify soils requiring undercutting and replacement while observing proof rolling and when subgrade is exposed.
 - 2. Verify footing bearing strata.
 - 3. Review and accept materials proposed by Contractor for use as compacted fill based on test data and information submitted by preconstruction Testing Agency. Architect shall coordinate review of submittals.
 - 4. Observe and accept filling and compaction procedures.
 - 5. Review and approve preparation of slab-on-grade subgrade and subbase.
- D. Geotechnical Engineer shall submit copies of reports to Special Inspector, Engineer, Architect, Construction Manager, Owner and Contractor. Include date of site visit, description of work observed, and summary of observations and recommendations.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit to RDP for Geotechnical Engineering:
 - 1. Gradations for proposed fill materials and mix design proposed for flowable fill at least 15 days before start of backfilling. Flowable fill submittal shall include ASTM C 1260 test results.
 - 2. Product data, specifications, and installation instructions for proprietary materials.
 - 3. Material certifications for products specified to conform with NYSDOT references and ASTM references.
- B. Prior to placement of slab on grade, submit to Special Inspector and RDP for Structural Engineering a written protection program for vapor retarder, slab subbase, and slab on grade for record only.

1.7 DEFINITIONS

- A. Excavation: Removal of material encountered to subgrade elevations indicated and subsequent disposal of materials removed.
- B. Unauthorized Excavation: Removal of materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without specific direction of Architect. Unauthorized excavation and remedial work directed by Architect shall be at Contractor's expense.
 - 1. Under footings, foundation bases, or retaining walls, fill unauthorized excavation by extending indicated bottom elevation of footing or base to excavation bottom without altering required top elevation. Lean concrete fill may be used to bring elevations to proper position when acceptable to Architect.
 - 2. In locations other than those above, backfill and compact unauthorized excavations as specified for authorized excavations of same classification unless otherwise directed by Architect.
- C. Additional Excavation: If RDP for Geotechnical Engineering determines bearing materials at required subgrade elevations are unsuitable, continue excavation until suitable bearing materials are encountered. Replace excavated material as directed by Geotechnical Engineer.
 - 1. Removal of unsuitable material and replacement as directed will be paid on basis of conditions of contract relative to changes in work.
- D. Subgrade: Undisturbed earth or compacted soil layer immediately below granular subbase, base of structure, or topsoil materials.
- E. Structure: Buildings, foundations, slabs, tanks, curbs, or other man-made stationary features occurring above or below ground surface.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: Subsurface investigation reports were used for basis of design and are available to Contractor for information only. Conditions are not intended as representations or warranties of accuracy or continuity between soil borings. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data by Contractor.
 - 1. Additional test borings and other exploratory operations may be performed by Contractor at Contractor's option; however, no change in contract sum will be authorized for additional exploration.
- B. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities in work area before starting earthwork operations. Where utilities are to remain in place, provide adequate means of protection during earthwork operations.
 - 1. If uncharted or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities are encountered during excavation, consult with utility owner and Architect immediately for directions. Cooperate with Owner and public and private utility companies to keep services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities as required by utility owner.

2. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others during occupied hours except when permitted in writing by Architect and then only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided.
 - a. Provide minimum 48-hours notice to Architect and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting utilities.
3. Demolish and remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies for shutoff of services if lines are active.

C. Use of Explosives: Do not bring explosives onto site or use in work.

D. Protection of Property: Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.

2. Perform excavation by hand within drip line of large trees to remain. Protect root systems from damage and from drying out to greatest extent possible. Maintain moist condition for root system, and cover exposed roots with moistened burlap.

1.9 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Store materials so as to preserve their quality and fitness for work.

1.10 WORKMANSHIP

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for correction of work not conforming to specified requirements. Correct deficient work as directed by Architect.
- B. Remove work found to be defective. Replace with new acceptable work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General Fill Material: Soil materials free of clay, rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Structural Fill: imported sound sand and gravel, free of deleterious materials such as pyritic shale, organics, or contaminants of a chemical, mineral, or biological nature and conforming to the following limits of gradation:

IMPORTED STRUCTURAL FILL

Sieve Size	Percent Finer
3"	100
¼"	30 to 75
No. 40	5 to 40
No. 200	0 to 10

- C. Subbase Material: Sound and durable sand and gravel, free of organic and other deleterious materials, conforming to New York State Department of Transportation Type 2 Subbase or ASMT C33 Blend 57 aggregate.
- D. Drainage Fill: Washed crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel conforming to ASTM C-33 Blend 57.
- E. Cushion Sand: Comply with requirements of NYSDOT Section 703-06.
- F. Bedding: Comply with the requirements of NYSDOT Section 703-02, material requirements, crushed stone (703-0201).
- G. Filter Fabric: "Geotex 351" by Propex Geosynthetics; "Mirafi 140N" by Mirafi, Inc.; or accepted equivalent.
- H. Soil Stabilization Geotextile: "Geotex 315ST" by Propex Geosynthetics; "Mirafi 600X" by Mirafi, Inc.; or accepted equivalent.
- I. Excavated Materials: Do not use as structural fill or subbase material. Do not use as general fill material unless accepted by Geotechnical Engineer.
- J. Vapor Retarder: Provide vapor retarder cover over prepared subbase material where indicated below slabs on grade. Use only materials that are resistant to deterioration when tested in accordance with ASTM E 154 as follows:
 - 1. Polyolefin not less than 15 mils thick, in compliance with ASTM E 1745 Class A and with a perm rating less than 0.02 perms. "Stegowrap 15 mil Class A" by Stego Industries LLC; "Moistop Ultra 15" by Fortifiber Building Products; "Griffolyn 15 Mil Green" by Reef Industries, Inc.; or "Vapor Block 15" by Raven Industries.
 - 2. Provide manufacturer's-recommended, pressure-sensitive/water-resistant seam tape and mastic for vapor retarder selected.
- K. Foundation Drainage Pipe: Perforated Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, size as noted on the Drawings. Provide bends, reducers, adapters, couplings, collars, and joint materials as required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Examine substrates and conditions under which work shall be performed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
- C. Maintain drainage and restrict traffic within building area during construction to maintain integrity of subgrade. Failure to observe these precautions will require Contractor to remove disturbed areas and correct at his expense.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

3.2 COLD-WEATHER PROTECTION

- A. Protect excavation bottoms against freezing when atmospheric temperature is less than 35 degrees F.

3.3 REMOVALS

- A. Clear, grub, and strip site of vegetation, topsoil, and other organic materials.
- B. Remove brick fragments and other construction debris. Plow-strip or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material can bond with existing surface.
 - 1. When existing ground surface has a density less than that specified for a particular area classification, break up ground surface, pulverize, moisture-condition to optimum moisture content, and compact to required depth and percentage of maximum density.
- C. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove waste materials, including unacceptable excavated material, trash, and debris. Legally dispose off Owner's property.

3.4 PROOF ROLLING

- A. Following stripping and removing miscellaneous fill, grade and compact exposed subgrade. Proof roll subgrade by making five passes across building area in each direction using smooth-drum vibrating roller having static weight of 10 tons minimum. Roller should not exceed a speed of three feet per second.
- B. Under the direction of the geotechnical engineer, undercut soft spots that develop during proof rolling and replace with compacted structural fill.
- C. Do not perform proof rolling during or immediately after periods of inclement weather.

3.5 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavation shall be considered unclassified and understood to mean all materials encountered during excavation.
- B. Excavations shall be laid back or sheeted and braced to prevent sloughing in of sides. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in stable condition until completion of backfill. Incline cut slopes no steeper than permitted by OSHA standards for excavations in soil type(s) encountered.
- C. Hand trim foundation excavations to remove loose soil or ridges of materials left by equipment.
- D. Keep loose material and debris out of excavations.
- E. Shoring and Bracing: Provide materials for shoring and bracing, including sheet piling, uprights, stringers, and cross braces, in good serviceable condition. Maintain shoring and bracing in excavations regardless of time period excavations will be open. Extend shoring and bracing as excavation progresses.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

1. Provide permanent steel sheet piling or pressure-creosoted timber sheet piling wherever subsequent removal of sheet piling might permit lateral movement of soil under adjacent structures. Cut off tops minimum 2 feet 6 inches below final grade, and leave permanently in place.

3.6 DEWATERING

- A. Dewatering activities shall conform to Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) implemented by site operator if required as a condition of construction permit.
- B. Perform excavation and filling in manner and sequence to provide proper drainage at all times.
- C. Prevent surface water and subsurface or groundwater from flowing into excavations and from flooding project site and surrounding area.
 1. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Remove water to prevent softening of foundation bottoms, undercutting of footings, and soil changes detrimental to stability of subgrades and foundations. Provide and maintain pumps, well points, sumps, suction and discharge lines, and other dewatering system components necessary to convey water away from excavations.
 2. Establish and maintain temporary drainage ditches and other diversions outside excavation limits to convey rainwater and water removed from excavations to collecting or runoff areas. Do not use trench excavations as temporary drainage ditches.

3.7 STORAGE OF EXCAVATED MATERIALS

- A. On-site storage of excavated materials shall conform to Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) implemented by site operator if required as condition of construction permit.
- B. Stockpile excavated materials acceptable for reuse. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles for proper drainage.
 1. Locate and retain soil materials away from edges of excavations. Do not store within drip lines of trees indicated to remain.
 2. Dispose of excess excavated soil material and materials not acceptable for use as general fill.

3.8 TRENCH EXCAVATION FOR PIPES AND CONDUIT

- A. Excavate trenches to uniform width sufficiently wide to provide ample working room and minimum of 6 to 9 inches of clearance on both sides of pipe or conduit.
- B. Do not locate trenches that are deeper than adjacent footings closer horizontally to footing than vertical distance separating bottom of trench and bottom of footing.
- C. Excavate trenches and conduit to depth indicated or required to establish indicated slope and invert elevations and to support bottom of pipe or conduit on undisturbed soil. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
 2. For pipes or conduit less than 6 inches in nominal size and for flat-bottomed, multiple-

duct conduit units, do not excavate beyond indicated depths. Hand-excavate bottom cut to accurate elevations and support pipe or conduit on undisturbed soil.

3. For pipes and equipment 6 inches or larger in nominal size, shape bottom of trench to fit bottom of pipe for 90 degrees (bottom 1/4 of the circumference). Fill depressions with bedding or tamped cushion sand backfill. At each pipe joint, dig bell holes to relieve pipe bell of loads to ensure continuous bearing of pipe barrel on bearing surface.

3.9 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. General: Do not begin installation of vapor retarder and slab subbase until protection is in place. See requirements in Section 03320. Following placement and compaction of subbase material, place vapor retarder sheeting with longest dimension parallel with direction of subbase placement.
- B. Install vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E 1643, manufacturer's instructions, and as follows:
 1. Lap joints 6 inches, and seal vapor retarder joints with manufacturer- recommended seam tape.
 2. Extend vapor retarder up walls and penetrations 4 inches minimum.
 3. Seal vapor retarder to walls and penetrations with manufacturer-recommended mastic to form continuous barrier.
 4. Repair damaged areas by cutting patches of vapor retarder material and placing to overlap damaged areas by 6 inches each side. Seal each side of patch with seam tape.
- C. After vapor retarder placement, cover with slab subbase and compact as specified to depth shown in drawings.
- D. Do not allow subbase material to become wet prior to or after slab placement.

3.10 FILLING, BACKFILLING, AND COMPACTION

- A. Do not place fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
- B. Place soil stabilization geotextile below structural fill where shown in drawings after subgrade has been approved and before placement of fill material.
- C. Use structural fill to increase grades within building areas, as interior backfill against foundations and in trenches, as exterior backfill against walls with footing drains and as exterior backfill where pavement or walkways abut building.
- D. Use subbase material directly below slabs and pavements as shown in drawings.
- E. Use general fill material to increase grades outside building area except as otherwise specified.
- F. Use drainage fill around footing drains as detailed in drawings. Wrap drainage fill with filter fabric.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

- G. Backfill foundation excavations as soon as possible following construction of foundations and foundation walls.
- H. Backfill and fill against foundation walls evenly on both sides to prevent displacement of construction. For walls with fill on one side only, do not backfill until concrete has achieved 70 percent of its design strength and walls have been braced.
- I. Begin filling in lowest section of area.
- J. Place fill materials in layers not more than 12 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- K. Lifts or portions thereof not compacted in accordance with specifications shall be recompacted or removed and replaced to meet compaction requirements.
- L. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 1557, Modified Proctor:
 - 1. Under structures, footings, foundations, building slabs, and steps: Compact top 12 inches of subgrade and each layer of fill material to 95 percent.
 - 2. Subbase Material: Compact to 95 percent with moisture content no greater than 2 percent wet of optimum.
 - 3. Cushion sand: Compact to 100 percent.
- M. Where a power roller is used for compaction, do not approach nearer than 10 feet from walls of new or existing construction.
- N. Moisture Control: Where subgrade or layer of soil material must be moisture- conditioned before compaction, uniformly apply water to surface of subgrade or layer of soil material. Apply water in minimum quantity as necessary to prevent free water from appearing on surface during or subsequent to compaction operations.
 - 1. Remove and replace or scarify and air dry soil material too wet to permit compaction to specified density.
 - 2. Stockpile or spread soil material that has been removed because it is too wet to permit compaction. Assist drying by discing, harrowing, or pulverizing until moisture content is reduced to satisfactory value.

3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Excavation for structures shall conform to elevations and dimensions shown within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.10 foot except to facilitate drainage during construction stage.
- C. Surface of subbase under building slabs shall be graded smooth and even, free of voids, and rolled to required elevation. Provide final grades within tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with 10-foot straightedge.

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting (Special Inspector): Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. See Specification Section 014533.

END OF SECTION 312301

SECTION 312319 - DEWATERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Construction dewatering.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for recording preexisting conditions and dewatering system progress.
2. Section 015723 "Temporary Storm Water Pollution Control" for temporary storm water pollution controls mandated under the EPA's National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System.
3. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, backfilling, site grading, and controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.

1.2 ALLOWANCES

A. See Section 012100 "Allowances" for description of allowances affecting items specified in this Section.

1. Dewatering observation wells are part of dewatering allowance.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Verify availability of Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review condition of site to be dewatered, including coordination with temporary erosion-control measures and temporary controls and protections.
3. Review geotechnical report.
4. Review proposed site clearing and excavations.
5. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
6. Review observation and monitoring of dewatering system.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For dewatering system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of wells and well points; locations of risers, headers, filters, pumps, power units, and discharge lines; and means of discharge, control of sediment, and disposal of water.
 3. Include layouts of piezometers and flow-measuring devices for monitoring performance of dewatering system.
 4. Include written plan for dewatering operations, including sequence of well and well-point placement coordinated with excavation shoring and bracings and control procedures to be adopted if dewatering problems arise.
- B. Delegated Design Submittals: For dewatering system, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
1. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Qualification Statements: For Installer.
- C. Delegated design engineer qualifications.
- D. Existing Conditions: Using photographs, show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by dewatering operations. Submit before Work begins.
- E. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped wells and well points and other abandoned-in-place dewatering equipment.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
1. Installer: An experienced installer that has specialized in design of dewatering systems and dewatering work.
 2. Delegated Design Engineer: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in state where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.
 3. Land Surveyor: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in state where Project is located.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of a geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.

1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for dewatering in accordance with the performance requirements.
 2. The geotechnical report is included elsewhere in Project Manual.
- B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by dewatering operations.
1. Prevent surface water and subsurface or groundwater from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding site or surrounding area.
 2. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.
- B. Install dewatering system to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Provide temporary grading to facilitate dewatering and control of surface water.
- D. Protect and maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Section 015723 "Temporary Storm Water Pollution Control", Section 311000 "Site Clearing," during dewatering operations.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls.
1. Space well points or wells at intervals required to provide sufficient dewatering.
 2. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.

- B. Place dewatering system into operation to lower water to specified levels before excavating below groundwater level.
- C. Provide sumps, sedimentation tanks, and other flow-control devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Provide standby equipment on-site, installed and available for immediate operation, to maintain dewatering on continuous basis if any part of system becomes inadequate or fails.

3.3 OPERATION

- A. Operate system continuously until drains, sewers, and structures have been constructed and fill materials have been placed or until dewatering is no longer required.
- B. Operate system to lower and control groundwater to permit excavation, construction of structures, and placement of fill materials on dry subgrades. Drain water-bearing strata above and below bottom of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
 - 1. Do not permit open-sump pumping that leads to loss of fines, soil piping, subgrade softening, and slope instability.
 - 2. Reduce hydrostatic head in water-bearing strata below subgrade elevations of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
 - 3. Maintain piezometric water level a minimum of **[24 inches] [60 inches] <Insert dimension>** below bottom of excavation.
- C. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.
- D. Remove dewatering system from Project site on completion of dewatering. Plug or fill well holes with sand or cut off and cap wells a minimum of **36 inches** below overlying construction.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Observation Wells: Provide observation wells or piezometers, take measurements, and maintain at least the minimum number indicated; additional observation wells may be required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Observe and record daily elevation of groundwater and piezometric water levels in observation wells.
 - 2. Repair or replace, within 24 hours, observation wells that become inactive, damaged, or destroyed. In areas where observation wells are not functioning properly, suspend construction activities until reliable observations can be made. Add or remove water from observation-well risers to demonstrate that observation wells are functioning properly.
 - 3. Fill observation wells, remove piezometers, and fill holes when dewatering is

completed.

- B. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks monthly during dewatering and maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.
- C. Provide continual observation to ensure that subsurface soils are not being removed by the dewatering operation.
- D. Prepare reports of observations.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect and maintain dewatering system during dewatering operations.
- B. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering.

END OF SECTION 312319

SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Hot-mix asphalt overlay.
3. Cold milling of existing asphalt pavement.
4. Hot-mix asphalt patching.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 024116 "Structure Demolition" for demolition and removal of existing asphalt pavement.
2. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, fill material, separation geotextiles, unbound-aggregate subbase and base courses, and aggregate pavement shoulders.
3. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and for separate concrete curbs, gutters, and driveway aprons.
4. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at pavement terminations.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

1. Herbicide.
2. Paving geotextile.
3. Joint sealant.

B. Hot-Mix Asphalt Designs:

1. Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each hot-mix asphalt design proposed for the Work.

2. For each hot-mix asphalt design proposed for the Work.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Material Certificates: Include statement that mixes containing recycled materials will perform equal to mixes produced from all new materials.

1. Aggregates.
2. Asphalt binder.
3. Asphalt cement.
4. Cutback prime coat.
5. Emulsified asphalt prime coat.
6. Tack coat.
7. Fog seal.
8. Undersealing asphalt.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM D3666 for testing indicated.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:

1. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
2. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
3. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D3910.
4. Asphalt Base Course and Binder Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
5. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: [ASTM D6373] [or] [AASHTO M 320] binder designation [PG 58-28] [PG 64-22] [PG 70-22] <Insert performance grade>.
- B. Tack Coat: ASTM D977 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D2397/D2397M cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- C. Fog Seal: ASTM D977 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D2397/D2397M cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

2.2 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense-graded, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction and complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Provide protective materials, procedures, and worker training to prevent asphalt materials from spilling, coating, or building up on curbs, driveway aprons, manholes, and other surfaces adjacent to the Work.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to **3 mph**.
 - 2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than **15 tons**.
 - 3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as

directed.

3.3 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
1. Mill to a depth of **2 inches**.
 2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of excessive gouges, grooves, and ridges.
 3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
 4. Repair or replace curbs, driveway aprons, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
 5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
 6. Patch surface depressions deeper than **1 inch** after milling, before wearing course is laid.
 7. Handle milled asphalt material in accordance with approved waste management plan required in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
 8. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.
 9. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

3.4 PATCHING

- A. Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending **12 inches** into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.
1. Undersealing: Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
 2. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- C. Tack Coat: Before placing patch material, apply tack coat uniformly to vertical asphalt surfaces abutting the patch. Apply at a rate of **0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.**
1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- D. Placing Single-Course Patch Material: Fill excavated pavement areas with hot-mix

asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

- E. Placing Two-Course Patch Material: Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base course mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted layer of hot-mix asphalt surface course, finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

3.5 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than **1 inch** in existing pavements.
 - 1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding **3 inches** thick.
- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of **1/4 inch**.
 - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
 - 2. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than **1/4 inch** wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
 - 3. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than **1/4 inch** wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

3.6 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that prepared subgrade has been proof-rolled and is ready to receive paving. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces.
- B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide in accordance with manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
 - 1. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.
- C. Cutback Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of **0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd.**. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
 - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- D. Emulsified Asphalt Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of **0.10 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd. per inch depth**. Apply

enough material to penetrate and seal, but not flood, surface. Allow prime coat to cure.

1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- E. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of **0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.**
1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.7 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACEMENT

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand in areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course and binder course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
 2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
 3. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of **250 deg F**.
 4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than **10 feet** wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Overlap mix placement about **1 to 1-1/2 inches** from strip to strip to ensure proper compaction of mix along longitudinal joints.
 2. Complete a section of asphalt base course and binder course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.8 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of **6 inches**.
3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of **24 inches**.
4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method in accordance with AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."
5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.9 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to **185 deg F**.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
 1. Average Density, Marshall Test Method: 96 percent of reference laboratory density in accordance with ASTM D6927, AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent or greater than 100 percent.
 2. Average Density, Rice Test Method: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density in accordance with ASTM D2041/D2041M, but not less than 90 percent or greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.10 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Base Course and Binder Course: Plus or minus **1/2 inch**.
 - 2. Surface Course: Plus **1/4 inch**, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a **10-foot** straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
 - 1. Base Course and Binder Course: [**1/4 inch**] <Insert dimension>.
 - 2. Surface Course: [**1/8 inch**] <Insert dimension>.
 - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is **1/4 inch**.
- C. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices: Compact and form asphalt to the shapes indicated and within a tolerance of plus or minus **1/8 inch** of height indicated above pavement surface.

3.11 SURFACE TREATMENTS

- A. Fog Seals: Apply fog seal at a rate of **0.10 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.** to existing asphalt pavement and allow to cure. With fine sand, lightly dust areas receiving excess fog seal.
- B. Slurry Seals: Apply slurry coat in a uniform thickness in accordance with ASTM D3910 and allow to cure.
 - 1. Roll slurry seal to remove ridges and provide a uniform, smooth surface.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined in accordance with ASTM D3549/D3549M.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices: Finished height of traffic-calming devices above pavement will be measured for compliance with tolerances.
- E. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures

and compacted pavement in accordance with ASTM D979/D979M, AASHTO T 168.

1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared in accordance with ASTM D2041/D2041M, and compacted in accordance with job-mix specifications.
 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples in accordance with ASTM D1188 or ASTM D2726/D2726M.
 - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than three cores taken.
 - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method in accordance with ASTM D2950/D2950M and coordinated with ASTM D1188 or ASTM D2726/D2726M.
- F. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- G. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.13 WASTE HANDLING

- A. General: Handle asphalt-paving waste in accordance with approved waste management plan required in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes concrete paving.
 - 1. Walks.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general building applications of concrete.
 - 2. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in expansion and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.
 - 3. Section 321713 "Parking Bumpers."
 - 4. Section 321723 "Pavement Markings."
 - 5. Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing" for detectable warning tiles, mats, pavers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, and other pozzolans.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product, ingredient, or admixture requiring color selection.
- C. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer of stamped detectable warnings, ready-mix concrete manufacturer, and, testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
3. Fiber reinforcement.
4. Admixtures.
5. Curing compounds.
6. Applied finish materials.
7. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
8. Joint fillers.

C. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Stamped Detectable Warning Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer of stamped concrete paving systems.

B. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

1. Personnel conducting field tests must be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete paving mixtures.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

B. Cold-Weather Concrete Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:

1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below **40 deg F**, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture

- temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
- C. Hot-Weather Concrete Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap, so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
 3. Fog-spray forms and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- C. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, flat sheet.
- D. Epoxy-Coated Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A884/A884M, Class A, plain steel.

- E. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60**; deformed.
- F. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A767/A767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending; with ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60** deformed bars.
- G. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A775/A775M or ASTM A934/A934M; with ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60** deformed bars.
- H. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A184/A184M; with ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60** deformed bars; assembled with clips.
- I. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, as drawn.
- J. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M.
- K. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A884/A884M, Class A; coated, plain.
- L. Hook Bolts: **ASTM A307, Grade A**, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against paving form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
- M. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded-wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
 - 1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
 - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- N. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.
- O. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A780/A780M.

2.4 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to **ACI 301**, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
 - 2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that comply with or exceed requirements.
- B. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:

1. Air Content, **1-1/2-inch** Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 2-1/2 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
 2. Air Content, **1-inch** Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 3 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
 3. Air Content, **3/4-inch** Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 3-1/2 percent plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Concrete Mixtures: Normal-weight concrete.
1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **4000 psi**.
 2. Maximum W/C Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
 3. Slump Limit: **4 inches**, plus or minus **1 inch**.

2.5 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C94/C94M and ASTM C1116/C1116M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
1. When air temperature is between **85 and 90 deg F**, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above **90 deg F**, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
1. For concrete batches of **1 cu. yd.** or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 2. For concrete batches larger than **1 cu. yd.**, increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional **1 cu. yd.**.
 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.

1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to **3 mph**.
2. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than **15 tons**.
3. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of **1/2 inch** according to requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded-wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
- F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D3963/D3963M.
- G. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum **2-inch** overlap of adjacent mats.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
 - 3. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
 - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of **50 feet** unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
 - 3. Terminate joint filler not less than **1/2 inch** or more than **1 inch** below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 - 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 - 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 - 6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a **1/4-inch** radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within **3 inches** either way from centers of dowels.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with

shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch-** wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.

- a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within **3 inches** either way from centers of dowels.

3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

- E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a **1/4-inch** radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with **ACI 301** requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to **ACI 301** by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels joint devices.
- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

- J. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
 - 1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF DETECTABLE WARNINGS

- A. Blockouts: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of detectable paving units specified in Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing."
 - 1. Tolerance for Opening Size: Plus **1/4 inch**, no minus.
- B. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of tiles specified in Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing." Screed surface of concrete where tiles are to be installed to elevation, so that edges of installed tiles will be flush with surrounding concrete paving. Embed tiles in fresh concrete to comply with Section 321726 "Tactile Warning Surfacing" immediately after screeding concrete surface.
- C. Stamped Detectable Warnings: Install stamped detectable warnings as part of a continuous concrete paving placement and according to stamp-mat manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Before using stamp mats, verify that the vent holes are unobstructed.
 - 2. Apply liquid release agent to the concrete surface and the stamp mat.
 - 3. Stamping: While initially finished concrete is plastic, After application and final floating of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, accurately align and place stamp mats in sequence. Uniformly load, gently vibrate, and press mats into concrete to produce imprint pattern on concrete surface. Load and tamp mats directly perpendicular to the stamp-mat surface to prevent distortion in shape of domes. Press and tamp until mortar begins to come through all of the vent holes. Gently remove stamp mats.
 - 4. Trimming: After 24 hours, cut off the tips of mortar formed by the vent holes.
 - 5. Remove residual release agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, but no fewer than three days after stamping concrete. High-pressure-wash surface and joint patterns, taking care not to damage stamped concrete. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.

3.9 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching **0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h** before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, or a combination of these as follows:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with **12-inch** lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.

3.10 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in **ACI 117** and as follows:
 - 1. Elevation: **3/4 inch**.
 - 2. Thickness: Plus **3/8 inch**, minus **1/4 inch**.
 - 3. Surface: Gap below **10-feet-** long; unlevelled straightedge not to exceed **1/2 inch**.
 - 4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: **1/2 inch per 12 inches** of tie bar.
 - 5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: **1 inch**.
 - 6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: **1/4 inch**.
 - 7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: **1/4 inch per 12 inches** of dowel.
 - 8. Joint Spacing: **3 inches**.
 - 9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus **1/4 inch**, no minus.
 - 10. Joint Width: Plus **1/8 inch**, no minus.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C172/C172M will be performed according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 5000 sq. ft. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing to be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 - 2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 - 3. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when it is 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 - 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test to be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results to be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests to contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency will make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.

- G. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

SECTION 321373 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Joint-sealant backer materials.
 2. Primers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
1. Concrete pavement joint sealants.
 2. Joint-sealant backer materials.
- B. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each kind and color of joint sealant required.
1. Size: Joint sealants in **1/2-inch-** wide joints formed between two **6-inch-** long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Paving-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
1. Installers: Entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below **40 deg F**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer for each sealant type.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backer materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

2.3 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. Joint-Sealant Backer Materials: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- D. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

2.4 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Before installing joint sealants, clean out joints immediately to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions.
- C. Install joint-sealant backers to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backer materials.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backer materials.
 - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install joint sealants immediately following backer material installation, using proven techniques that comply with the following:
 - 1. Place joint sealants so they fully contact joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants in accordance with the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
 - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written

instructions unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess joint sealant as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturers.
- B. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

3.5 PAVING-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joints within concrete paving PJS-#:
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Expansion and isolation joints in concrete paving.
 - b. Contraction joints in concrete paving.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Single component, pourable, urethane, elastomeric joint sealant, Hot-applied, single-component joint sealant.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Joints within concrete paving and between concrete and asphalt paving PJS-#:
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Joints between concrete and asphalt paving.
 - b. Joints between concrete curbs and asphalt paving.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Hot-applied, single-component joint sealant.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: Manufacturer's standard.

END OF SECTION 321373

SECTION 321713 - PARKING BUMPERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

1. Precast concrete wheel stops.
2. Resilient wheel stops.
3. Resilient-shell, concrete-filled wheel stops

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish requiring color selection.

- D. Samples for Verification: For wheel stops, 6 inches long, showing color and cross section; with mounting hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wheel stops in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Securely anchor wheel stops to substrate with hardware in each preformed vertical hole in wheel stop as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Recess head of

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

hardware beneath top of wheel stop.

END OF SECTION 321713

SECTION 321723 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Painted markings applied to asphalt paving.
2. Painted markings applied to concrete surfaces.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for painting exterior concrete surfaces other than pavement markings.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

1. Pavement-marking paint, alkyd.
2. Pavement-marking paint, solvent-borne.
3. Pavement-marking paint, acrylic.
4. Pavement-marking paint, latex.
5. Glass beads.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
2. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified; on rigid backing, **8 inches** square.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of **40 deg F** for alkyd materials, **55 deg F** for water-based materials, and not exceeding **95 deg F**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design", ICC A117.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement-marking substrate is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow asphalt paving or concrete surfaces to age for a minimum of 90 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of **15 mils**.
 - 1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to asphalt paving or concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.
 - 2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of **6 lb/gal.**

3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 321723

SECTION 321726 - TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For tactile warning surfacing, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.

- B. Weather Limitations for Adhesive Application:

- 1. Apply adhesive only when ambient temperature is above **50 deg F** and when temperature has not been below **35 deg F** for 12 hours immediately before application. Do not apply when substrate is wet or contains excess moisture.

- C. Weather Limitations for Mortar and Grout:

- 1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- 2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602. Provide artificial shade and windbreaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of **100 deg F** and higher.
 - a. When ambient temperature exceeds **100 deg F**, or when wind velocity exceeds **8 mph** and ambient temperature exceeds **90 deg F**, set unit pavers within 1 minute of spreading setting-bed mortar.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of tactile warning surfaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering and wear.
 - b. Separation or delamination of materials and components.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities, ICC A117.1 for tactile warning surfaces.
1. For tactile warning surfaces composed of multiple units, provide units that when installed provide consistent side-to-side and end-to-end dome spacing that complies with requirements.
- B. Regional Materials: Products shall be manufactured within **500 miles** of Project site.
- C. Regional Materials: Products shall be manufactured within **500 miles** of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within **500 miles** of Project site. If materials are transported by rail or water, the distance transported by rail or water shall be multiplied by 0.25 to determine the distance to Project site.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of tactile warning surfacing, joint material, , and, fastener from single source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of tactile warning surfaces, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
1. Furnish Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use.
 2. Fastener Heads: For nonstructural connections, use flathead or oval countersunk screws and bolts with tamper-resistant heads, colored to match tile.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by manufacturer for adhering tactile warning surfacing unit to pavement.
- C. Sealant: As recommended by manufacturer for sealing perimeter of tactile warning surfacing unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is in suitable condition to begin installation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that installation of tactile warning surfacing will comply with accessibility requirements upon completion.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

- A. General: Prepare substrate and install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place tactile warning surfacing units in dimensions and orientation indicated. Comply with location requirements of AASHTO MP 12.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace tactile warning surfacing that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect. Replace using tactile warning surfacing installation methods acceptable to Architect.
- B. Protect tactile warning surfacing from damage and maintain free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material.

END OF SECTION 321726

SECTION 323113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Chain-link fences.
- B. Related Requirements:

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of fence and gate assembly.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include accessories, hardware, gate operation, and operational clearances.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of factory-applied finish.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of **500 feet** or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install chain-link fencing according to ASTM F567 and more stringent requirements specified.
 - 1. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend **2 inches** above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.
 - b. Concealed Concrete: Place top of concrete **2 inches** below grade to allow covering with surface material.
 - c. Posts Set into Sleeves in Concrete: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed according to anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions. Finish anchorage joint to slope away from post to drain water.
 - d. Posts Set into Holes in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than **5 inches** deep and **3/4 inch** larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed according to anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions. Finish anchorage joint to slope away from post to drain water.
 - 3. Mechanically Driven Posts: Drive into soil to depth of **30 inches**. Protect post top to prevent distortion.
- D. Terminal Posts: Install terminal end, corner, and gate posts according to ASTM F567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 15 degrees or more. For runs exceeding **500 feet**, space pull posts an equal distance between corner or end posts.
- E. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at **96 inches** o.c.

- F. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Diagonally brace terminal posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.
 - 1. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric **72 inches** or higher, on fences with top rail, and at two-third fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.
- G. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with **0.120-inch-** diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of **24 inches** o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
 - 1. Extended along top, bottom of fence fabric. Install top tension wire through post cap loops. Install bottom tension wire within **6 inches** of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.
- H. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fence posts. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.
- I. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts, with tension bands spaced not more than **15 inches** o.c.
- J. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric according to ASTM F626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
 - 1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at **12 inches** o.c. and to braces at **24 inches** o.c.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

END OF SECTION 323113

SECTION 323223 - SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Segmental retaining walls.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavation for segmental retaining walls, base material, soil fill, fill placement and compaction, and field in-place density testing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of retaining wall units; including backfill and leveling base materials.
2. Show types, sizes, locations of soil reinforcing materials.
3. Signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and textures for segmental retaining wall units.

D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish of segmental retaining wall units.

1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.

E. Delegated Design Submittals: For segmental retaining walls, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

F. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Certificates: For regional materials, indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include distance to Project and cost for each regional material.

2. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): For each product.
3. Product Certificates: For indigenous materials, indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include distance to Project, means of transportation, and cost for each indigenous material.
4. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
5. Product Certificates: For regional materials, indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include distance to Project, means of transportation, and cost for each regional material.
6. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
7. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
8. Third-Party Certifications: For each product.
9. Third-Party Certified Life Cycle Assessment: For each product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of segmental retaining wall unit and soil reinforcement from manufacturer.
 1. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units in accordance with ASTM D6916.
 2. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement in accordance with ASTM D6638.
- C. Test and Evaluation Reports:
 1. Product Test Reports: For each type of segmental retaining wall unit and soil reinforcement, for tests performed by qualified testing agency.
 - a. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units in accordance with ASTM D6916.
 - b. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement in accordance with ASTM D6638.
 2. Research Reports: For segmental retaining wall system, from an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction showing compliance with building code requirements.
 3. Preconstruction Test Reports: For segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement.
- D. Source Quality-Control Submittals:
 1. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 1. Field quality-control reports.

- F. Qualification Statements: For testing agency.
- G. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
 - 1. Delegated Design Engineer: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in state where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.
 - 2. Testing Agency: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following preconstruction testing:
 - 1. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for pullout resistance in accordance with ASTM D6706.
 - 2. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for coefficient of friction in accordance with ASTM D5321/D5321M.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store and handle concrete units and accessories to prevent deterioration or damage due to contaminants, breaking, chipping, or other causes.
- B. Store geosynthetics in manufacturer's original packaging with labels intact. Store and handle geosynthetics to prevent deterioration or damage due to sunlight, chemicals, flames, temperatures above 160 deg F or below 32 deg F, and other conditions that might damage them. Verify identification of geosynthetics before use, and examine them for defects as material is placed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design segmental retaining walls.
- B. Compliance Review: Qualified professional engineer responsible for segmental retaining wall design shall review and approve submittals and source and field quality-control reports for compliance of materials and construction with design.
- C. Structural Performance: Engineering design shall be based on the following loads and be in accordance with NCMA's "Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls."

1. Gravity loads due to soil pressures resulting from grades and sloped backfill indicated.
2. Superimposed loads (surcharge) indicated on Drawings.
3. Horizontal Peak Ground Acceleration (A) for Project: <Insert value>.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test and inspect each roll of soil reinforcement for minimum average roll values for geosynthetic index property tests, including the following:
 1. Weight.
 2. Grab or single-rib strength.
 3. Aperture opening.
 4. Rib or yarn size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for excavation tolerances, condition of subgrades, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RETAINING WALLS

- A. General: Place units in accordance with NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide" and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Lay units in running bond.
 2. Form corners and ends by using special units.
- B. Do not use units with chips, cracks, or other defects that are visible at a distance of **20 feet** where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.
- C. Leveling Base: Place and compact base material to thickness indicated and with not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight in accordance with ASTM D698.
 1. Leveling Course: [At Contractor's option, unreinforced lean concrete may be substituted for upper **1 to 2 inches of base**] [Place unreinforced lean concrete over leveling base **1 to 2 inches thick**]. Compact and screed concrete to a smooth, level surface.
- D. First Course: Place first course of segmental retaining wall units for full length of wall. Place units in firm contact with each other, properly aligned and level.

1. Tamp units into leveling base as necessary to bring tops of units into a level plane.
- E. Subsequent Courses: Remove excess fill and debris from tops of units in course below. Place units in firm contact, properly aligned, and directly on course below.
1. For units with lugs designed to fit into holes in adjacent units, lay units so lugs are accurately aligned with holes, and bedding surfaces are firmly seated on beds of units below.
 2. For units with lips at front of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact with lips of units below.
 3. For units with lips at bottom rear of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact of lips with units below.
 4. For units with pins, install pins and align units.
 5. For units with clips, install clips and align units.
- F. Cap Units: Place cap units and secure with cap adhesive.

3.3 FILL PLACEMENT

- A. General: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving," with NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide" and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Fill voids between and within units with drainage fill. Place fill as each course of units is laid.
- C. Place, spread, and compact drainage fill and soil fill in uniform lifts for full width and length of embankment as wall is laid. Place and compact fills without disturbing alignment of units. Where both sides of wall are indicated to be filled, place fills on both sides at same time. Begin at wall, and place and spread fills toward embankment.
1. Use only hand-operated compaction equipment within **48 inches** of wall or one-half of height above bottom of wall, whichever is greater.
 2. Compact reinforced-soil fill to not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight in accordance with ASTM D698.
 - a. In areas where only hand-operated compaction equipment is allowed, compact fills to not less than 90 percent maximum dry unit weight in accordance with ASTM D698.
 - b. In areas where fill height exceeds **15 feet** compact reinforced-soil fill that will be more than **15 feet** below finished grade to not less than 98 percent maximum dry unit weight in accordance with ASTM D698.
 - c. In areas where fill height exceeds **30 feet** compact reinforced-soil fill that will be more than **30 feet** below finished grade to not less than 100 percent maximum dry unit weight in accordance with ASTM D698.
 3. Compact nonreinforced-soil fill to comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- D. Place drainage geotextile against back of wall, and place layer of drainage fill at least

[12 inches] [6 inches] wide behind drainage geotextile to within 12 inches of finished grade. Place another layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.

- E. Place a layer of drainage fill at least [12 inches] [6 inches] wide behind wall to within 12 inches of finished grade. Place a layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.
- F. Wrap subdrainage pipe with filter fabric and place in drainage fill as indicated.
- G. Place impervious fill over top edge of drainage fill layer.
- H. Slope grade at top of wall away from wall unless otherwise indicated. Slope grade at wall base away from wall. Provide uniform slopes that prevent ponding.
- I. Place soil reinforcement in horizontal joints of retaining wall where indicated and in accordance with soil-reinforcement manufacturer's written instructions. Embed reinforcement a minimum of 8 inches into retaining wall and stretch tight over compacted backfill. Anchor soil reinforcement before placing fill.
 - 1. Place additional soil reinforcement at corners and curved walls to provide continuous reinforcement.
 - 2. Place geosynthetics with seams, if any, oriented perpendicularly to segmental retaining walls.
 - 3. Do not dump fill material directly from trucks onto geosynthetics.
 - 4. Place at least 6 inches of fill over reinforcement before compacting with tracked vehicles or 4 inches before compacting with rubber-tired vehicles.
 - 5. Do not turn vehicles on fill until first layer of fill is compacted and second layer is placed over each soil-reinforcement layer.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Level: For bed-joint lines along walls, do not exceed 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet, 3 inches maximum.
- B. Variation from Indicated Batter: For slope of wall face, do not vary from indicated slope by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet.
- C. Variation from Indicated Wall Line: For walls indicated as straight, do not vary from straight line by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet.
- D. Maximum Gap between Units: 1/8 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for field quality control.
- C. Tests and Inspections:

1. In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least one field in-place compaction test for each **150 feet** or less of segmental retaining wall length.
2. In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least one field in-place compaction test for each **24 inches** of fill depth and each **50 feet** or less of segmental retaining wall length.
3. Segmental retaining wall system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Remove and replace segmental retaining wall construction of the following descriptions:

1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged units. Units may be repaired if Architect approves methods and results.
2. Segmental retaining walls that do not match approved Samples.
3. Segmental retaining walls that do not comply with other requirements indicated.

B. Replace units so segmental retaining wall matches approved Samples and mockups, complies with other requirements, and shows no evidence of replacement.

END OF SECTION 323223

SECTION 323300 - SITE FURNISHINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel Bollards.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.
 - 2. Chain-of-Custody Certificates: For certified wood products. Include statement of costs.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, not less than **6-inch-** long linear components and **4-inch-** square sheet components.
 - 1. Include full-size Samples of **[bench] [table] [bicycle rack] [trash receptacle] [ash receptacle] <Insert product>**. Approved samples may be incorporated into the Work.
- F. Product Schedule: For site furnishings..

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For site furnishings manufactured with preservative-treated wood.
 - 1. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For site furnishings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Bench Replacement [**Slats**] [**Planks**]: No fewer than [**two**] <Insert number> full-size units for each size indicated.
 - 2. Trash Receptacle Inner Containers: [**Five**] <Insert number> full-size units for each size indicated, but no fewer than [**two**] <Insert number> units.
 - 3. Anchors: <Insert type and number>.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BOLLARDS Insert drawing designation

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [**1-800-Bollards**]
 - 2. [**brp by bison**]
 - 3. [**CAME Americas Automation LLC**]
 - 4. [**Canterbury Design**]
 - 5. [**Columbia Cascade Company**]
 - 6. [**Dero; a PlayCore company**]
 - 7. [**DuMor Inc.**]
 - 8. [**Huntco Supply, LLC**]
 - 9. [**L.A. Steelcraft, a brand of Americana Outdoor**]
 - 10. [**Maglin Site Furniture Inc.**]
 - 11. [**Neenah Foundry Company**]
 - 12. [**Thomas Steele; Graber Manufacturing, Inc.**]
 - 13. [**Tournesol Siteworks LLC**]
 - 14. [**Urban Accessories, Inc**]
 - 15. [**Victor Stanley, Inc**]
 - 16. <Insert manufacturer's name>

- B. Bollard Construction:
 - 1. [**Round**] [**Square**] Wood: [**Cedar**] <Insert material>, **10 inches** in diameter.
 - 2. Style: As indicated.
 - 3. Overall Height: As indicated.
 - 4. Overall Width: As indicated.
 - 5. Overall Depth: As indicated.
 - 6. Accessories: Eye bolts.
 - 7. Installation Method: Cast in concrete.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type

of use and finish indicated; free of surface blemishes and complying with the following:

1. Rolled or Cold-Finished Bars, Rods, and Wire: **ASTM B211**.
 2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B221**.
 3. Structural Pipe and Tube: ASTM B429/B429M.
 4. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B209**.
 5. Castings: ASTM B26/B26M.
- B. Steel and Iron: Free of surface blemishes and complying with the following:
1. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
 2. Steel Pipe: Standard-weight steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, or electric-resistance-welded pipe complying with ASTM A135/A135M.
 3. Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A500/A500M.
 4. Mechanical Tubing: Cold-rolled, electric-resistance-welded carbon or alloy steel tubing complying with ASTM A513/A513M, or steel tubing fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M and complying with dimensional tolerances in ASTM A500/A500M; zinc coated internally and externally.
 5. Sheet: Commercial steel sheet complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M.
 6. Perforated Metal: From steel sheet not less than [**0.075-inch**] [**0.090-inch**] [**0.120-inch**] <Insert dimension> nominal thickness; manufacturer's standard perforation pattern.
 7. Expanded Metal: Carbon-steel sheets, deburred after expansion, and complying with ASTM F1267.
 8. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A47/A47M, grade as recommended by fabricator for type of use intended.
 9. Gray-Iron Castings: ASTM A48/A48M, Class 200.
- C. Stainless Steel: Free of surface blemishes and complying with the following:
1. Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666.
 2. Pipe: Schedule 40 steel pipe complying with ASTM A312/A312M.
 3. Tubing: ASTM A554.
- D. Wood: Surfaced smooth on four sides with eased edges; kiln dried, free of knots, solid stock of species indicated.
1. Wood Species:
 - a. Douglas Fir: Clear Grade, vertical grain.
 - b. Pine: Southern pine; No. 2 or better.
 - c. [**Eastern White**] [**Red**] [**Yellow**] Cedar: Select Grade or better.
 - d. Redwood: [**Clear all heart**] [**Construction heart or better**], free-of-heart center.
 - e. Teak (Tectona Grandis): Clear Grade.
 - f. <Insert wood species>: <Insert grade, if applicable, and other requirements>.
- E. Certified Wood: Wood products shall be certified as "FSC Pure" according to FSC STD-01-00 and FSC STD-40-004.

- F. Certified Wood: Wood products shall be certified as "FSC Pure" according to FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004.
- G. Certified Wood: Wood products shall be labeled according to the AFPA's Sustainable Forestry Initiative, be certified as "FSC Pure" according to FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004, or be certified and labeled according to the standards of the Programme for Endorsement of Forest Certification.
- H. Certified Wood: Wood products shall **[contain not less than 60 percent] [be made from]** certified wood tracked through a chain-of-custody process. Certified wood documentation shall be provided by sources certified through a forest certification system with principles, criteria, and standards developed using ISO/IEC Guide 59 or the World Trade Organization's "Technical Barriers to Trade."
- I. Certified Wood: Wood products shall be certified according to the American Tree Farm System's "AFF Standard," the AFPA's Sustainable Forestry Initiative, FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004, or the standards of the Programme for Endorsement of Forest Certification.
 - 1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard **[stain] [and] [transparent sealer] [transparent wood-preservative treatment and sealer]** <Insert treatment or finish>.
- J. Fiberglass: Multiple laminations of glass-fiber-reinforced polyester resin with UV-light stable, colorfast, nonfading, weather- and stain-resistant, colored polyester gel coat, and with manufacturer's standard finish.
- K. Plastic: Color impregnated, color and UV-light stabilized, and mold resistant.
 - 1. Polyethylene: Fabricated from virgin plastic HDPE resin.
 - 2. Polyethylene with Recycled Content: Fabricated from HDPE and other resins with postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than <Insert number> percent.
- L. Anchors, Fasteners, Fittings, and Hardware: **[Stainless steel] [Brass] [Galvanized steel] [Zinc-plated steel] [Manufacturer's standard, corrosion-resistant-coated or noncorrodible materials]**; commercial quality[, **tamperproof, vandal and theft resistant]** [, **concealed, recessed, and capped or plugged]**.
 - 1. Angle Anchors: For inconspicuously bolting legs of site furnishings to **[on] [below]**-grade substrate; **[one per leg] [extent as indicated]** <Insert extent>.
 - 2. Antitheft Hold-Down Brackets: For securing site furnishings to substrate; **[two per unit] [extent as indicated on Drawings]** <Insert extent>.
- M. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M; recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- N. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound; resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof

coating; recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

- O. Galvanizing: Where indicated for steel and iron components, provide the following protective zinc coating applied to components after fabrication:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated Tubing: External, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of **0.9 oz./sq. ft.** of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, polymer film. Internal, same as external or consisting of 81 percent zinc pigmented coating, not less than **0.3 mil** thick.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanizing: According to ASTM A123/A123M, ASTM A153/A153M, or ASTM A924/A924M.

2.3 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment: Pressure-treat wood according to AWPA U1, Use Category UC3b, and the following:
 - 1. Use preservative chemicals acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
 - 2. Kiln-dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content, respectively, of 19 and 15 percent. Do not use materials that are warped or do not comply with requirements for untreated materials.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Metal Components: Form to required shapes and sizes with true, consistent curves, lines, and angles. Separate metals from dissimilar materials to prevent electrolytic action.
- B. Welded Connections: Weld connections continuously. Weld solid members with full-length, full-penetration welds and hollow members with full-circumference welds. At exposed connections, finish surfaces smooth and blended, so no roughness or unevenness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- C. Pipes and Tubes: Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain cylindrical cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of handrail and railing components.
- D. Preservative-Treated Wood Components: Complete fabrication of treated items before treatment if possible. If cut after treatment, apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces.
- E. Exposed Surfaces: Polished, sanded, or otherwise finished; all surfaces smooth, free of burrs, barbs, splinters, and sharpness; all edges and ends rolled, rounded, or capped.

- F. Factory Assembly: Factory assemble components to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Clearly mark units for assembly in the field.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard polyester powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

2.7 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.
- B. PVC Finish: Manufacturer's standard, UV-light stabilized, mold-resistant, slip-resistant, matte-textured, dipped or sprayed-on, PVC-plastisol finish, with flame retardant added; complying with coating manufacturer's written instructions for pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

2.8 IRON FINISHES

- A. Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard polyester powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

2.9 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 1. Run directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
 2. Directional Satin Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No 4.
 3. Dull Satin Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 6.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for correct and level finished grade, mounting surfaces, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Complete field assembly of site furnishings where required.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install site furnishings after landscaping and paving have been completed.
- C. Install site furnishings level, plumb, true, and **[securely anchored] [positioned]** at locations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Post Setting: Set cast-in support posts in concrete footing with smooth top, shaped to shed water. Protect portion of posts above footing from concrete splatter. Verify that posts are set plumb or at correct angle and are aligned and at correct height and spacing. Hold posts in position during placement and finishing operations until concrete is sufficiently cured.
- E. Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core-drill holes for installing posts in concrete to depth recommended in writing by manufacturer of site furnishings and **3/4 inch** larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with **[nonshrink, nonmetallic grout] [or] [anchoring cement]**, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, with top smoothed and shaped to shed water.
- F. Pipe Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with **[nonshrink, nonmetallic grout] [or] [anchoring cement]**, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, with top smoothed and shaped to shed water.

END OF SECTION 323300

SECTION 323301 – CONCRETE BOLLARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing & Material ASTM C33, ASTM C150, and ASTM C31.

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concrete Bollards.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing pipe sleeves cast in concrete footings.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For site furnishings to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BOLLARDS

- A. Bollard Construction:
 - 1. Basis of design: Post Guard series TF6020
 - 2. Size: 12" diameter x 36" high.
 - 3. Portland Cement: ASTM C150 specifications for Portland Cement.
 - 4. Aggregates: All aggregates to meet ASTM C33 specifications, to be cleaned of foreign matter and properly graded to size.
 - 5. Coloring: Pigments used shall be inorganic, resistant to alkalinity and used as per manufacturers recommendations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for correct and level finished grade, mounting surfaces, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Complete field assembly of site furnishings where required.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install site furnishings after landscaping and paving have been completed.
- C. Install site furnishings level, plumb, true, and securely anchored at locations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Pipe Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, with top smoothed and shaped to shed water.

END OF SECTION 323300

SECTION 329300 - PLANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Plants.
 - 2. Tree stabilization.

1.2 ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowances for plants are specified in Section 012100 "Allowances."
 - 1. Perform planting work under quantity allowances and only as authorized. Authorized work includes work required by Drawings and the Specifications and work authorized in writing by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect weekly of extent of work performed that is attributable to quantity allowances.
 - 3. Perform work that exceeds quantity allowances only as authorized by Change Orders.
- B. Furnish trees as part of tree allowance.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
- B. Unit prices apply to authorized work covered by quantity allowances.
- C. Unit prices apply to additions to and deletions from the Work as authorized by Change Orders.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.
- B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with a ball size not less than sizes indicated, diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.
- C. Balled and Potted Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are

grown and placed, unbroken, in a container. Ball size is not less than sizes indicated, diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

- D. Bare-Root Stock: Plants with a well-branched, fibrous-root system developed by transplanting or root pruning, with soil or growing medium removed, and with not less than the minimum root spread according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
- E. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
- F. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. Pesticides include insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. They also include substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant. Some sources classify herbicides separately from pesticides.
- G. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. Pests include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
- H. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.
- I. Planting Soil: Existing, on-site soil; imported soil; or manufactured soil that has been modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth. See Section 329113 "Soil Preparation" for drawing designations for planting soils.
- J. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.
- K. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.
- L. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.
- M. Subgrade: The surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordination with Turf Areas (Lawns): Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf areas, protect turf areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

1.6 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For landscape Installer. Include list of similar projects completed by Installer demonstrating Installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of owners' contact persons.
- B. Pesticides and Herbicides: Product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer whose work has resulted in successful establishment of plants.
 - 1. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the National Association of Landscape Professionals or AmericanHort.
 - 2. Experience: Five years' experience in landscape installation in addition to requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
 - 3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
 - 4. Personnel Certifications: Installer's personnel assigned to the Work shall have certification in one of the following categories from the National Association of Landscape Professionals:
 - a. Landscape Industry Certified Technician - Exterior.
 - b. Landscape Industry Certified Interior.
 - c. Landscape Industry Certified Horticultural Technician.
 - 5. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.
- B. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.
 - 1. Selection of plants purchased under allowances is made by Architect, who tags plants at their place of growth before they are prepared for transplanting.
- C. Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.
 - 1. Trees and Shrubs: Measure with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Take height measurements from or near the top of the root flare for field-grown stock and container-grown stock. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip to tip. Take caliper measurements **6 inches** above the root flare for trees up to **4-inch** caliper size,

- and 12 inches above the root flare for larger sizes.
 2. Other Plants: Measure with stems, petioles, and foliage in their normal position.
- D. Plant Material Observation: Architect may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. Architect may also observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and may reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.
1. Notify Architect of sources of planting materials seven days in advance of delivery to site.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of compliance with state and Federal laws if applicable.
- B. Bulk Materials:
1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
 2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials; discharge of soil-bearing water runoff; and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
 3. Accompany each delivery of bulk materials with appropriate certificates.
- C. Deliver bare-root stock plants within 36 hours of digging. Immediately after digging up bare-root stock, pack root system in wet straw, hay, or other suitable material to keep root system moist until planting. Transport in covered, temperature-controlled vehicles, and keep plants cool and protected from sun and wind at all times.
- D. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.
- E. Handle planting stock by root ball.
- F. Store bulbs, corms, and tubers in a dry place at 60 to 65 deg F until planting.
- G. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.
1. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.

- H. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.
- I. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
 - 1. Heel-in bare-root stock. Soak roots that are in less than moist condition in water for two hours. Reject plants with dry roots.
 - 2. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
 - 3. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
 - 4. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly wet condition.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work.
- B. Planting Restrictions: Plant during one of the following periods. Coordinate planting periods with maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Spring Planting: April 1st.
 - 2. Fall Planting: September 1.
- C. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner.
 - b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
 - c. Faulty performance of tree stabilization.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal

weathering.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Trees, Shrubs, Vines, and Ornamental Grasses: 24 months.
 - b. Ground Covers, Biennials, Perennials, and Other Plants: 12 months.
 - c. Annuals: Three months.
3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:
 - a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
 - b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
 - c. A limit of one replacement of each plant is required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANT MATERIAL

- A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant List, Plant Schedule, or Plant Legend indicated on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.
 1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than **3/4 inch** in diameter; or with stem girdling roots are unacceptable.
 2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.
- C. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which begins at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.
- D. Labeling: Label at least one plant of each variety, size, and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant.

- E. If formal arrangements or consecutive order of plants is indicated on Drawings, select stock for uniform height and spread, and number the labels to assure symmetry in planting.

2.2 FERTILIZERS

- A. Planting Tablets: Tightly compressed chip-type, long-lasting, slow-release, commercial-grade planting fertilizer in tablet form. Tablets shall break down with soil bacteria, converting nutrients into a form that can be absorbed by plant roots.
 - 1. Size: 5-gram tablets.
 - 2. Nutrient Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 5 percent potassium, by weight plus micronutrients.

2.3 WEED-CONTROL BARRIERS

- A. Nonwoven Geotextile Filter Fabric: Polypropylene or polyester fabric, **3 oz./sq. yd.** minimum, composed of fibers formed into a stable network so that fibers retain their relative position. Fabric shall be inert to biological degradation and resist naturally encountered chemicals, alkalis, and acids.

2.4 PESTICIDES

- A. General: Pesticide registered and approved by the EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
- C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive plants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
 - 2. Verify that plants and vehicles loaded with plants can travel to planting locations

- with adequate overhead clearance.
 - 3. Suspend planting operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
 - 4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable or which is dusty.
- B. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.
- B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
- C. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Architect's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.
- D. Lay out plants at locations directed by Site Engineer Stake locations of individual trees and shrubs and outline areas for multiple plantings.

3.3 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT

- A. General: Prepare planting area for soil placement and mix planting soil according to Section 329113 "Soil Preparation."
- B. Placing Planting Soil: Blend planting soil in place.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS

- A. Planting Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular planting pits.
 - 1. Excavate planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 45-degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides are unacceptable. Trim perimeter of bottom leaving center area of bottom raised slightly to support root ball and assist in drainage away from center. Do not further disturb base. Ensure that root ball will sit on undisturbed base soil to prevent settling. Scarify sides of planting pit smeared or smoothed during excavation.
 - 2. Excavate approximately three times as wide as ball diameter for balled and burlapped, container-grown stock.
 - 3. Excavate at least **12 inches** wider than root spread and deep enough to accommodate vertical roots for bare-root stock.

4. Do not excavate deeper than depth of the root ball, measured from the root flare to the bottom of the root ball.
 5. If area under the plant was initially dug too deep, add soil to raise it to the correct level and thoroughly tamp the added soil to prevent settling.
 6. Maintain angles of repose of adjacent materials to ensure stability. Do not excavate subgrades of adjacent paving, structures, hardscapes, or other new or existing improvements.
 7. Maintain supervision of excavations during working hours.
 8. Keep excavations covered or otherwise protected when unattended by Installer's personnel.
 9. If drain tile is indicated on Drawings or required under planting areas, excavate to top of porous backfill over tile.
- B. Backfill Soil: Subsoil and topsoil removed from excavations may not be used as backfill soil unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Obstructions: Notify Architect if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.
1. Hardpan Layer: Drill **6-inch-** diameter holes, **24 inches** apart, into free-draining strata or to a depth of **10 feet**, whichever is less, and backfill with free-draining material.
- D. Drainage: Notify Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub planting pits.
- E. Fill excavations with water and allow to percolate away before positioning trees and shrubs.

3.5 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PLANTING

- A. Inspection: At time of planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the top-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that root ball still meets size requirements.
- B. Roots: Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.
- C. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Set each plant plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare **2 inches** above adjacent finish grades.
1. Backfill: Planting soil **<Insert drawing designation>**.
 2. After placing some backfill around root ball to stabilize plant, carefully cut and remove burlap, rope, and wire baskets from tops of root balls and from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
 3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly

- before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
4. Place planting tablets equally distributed around each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled. Place tablets beside the root ball about **1 inch** from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
 - a. Quantity: Two per plant.
 5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
- D. Balled and Potted, Container-Grown Stock: Set each plant plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare **2 inches** above adjacent finish grades.
1. Backfill: Planting soil **<Insert drawing designation>**.
 2. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant.
 3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
 4. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
- E. Watering Pipe: During backfilling, install watering pipe **4 feet** deep into the planting pit outside the root ball with top of pipe **1 inch** above the mulched surface.
- F. Slopes: When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope; the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.

3.6 MECHANIZED TREE-SPADE PLANTING

- A. Trees shall be planted with an approved mechanized tree spade at the designated locations. Do not use tree spade to move trees larger than the maximum size allowed for a similar field-grown, balled-and-burlapped root-ball diameter according to ANSI Z60.1, or larger than manufacturer's maximum size recommendation for the tree spade being used, whichever is smaller.
- B. Use the same tree spade to excavate the planting hole as will be used to extract and transport the tree.
- C. When extracting the tree, center the trunk within the tree spade and move tree with a solid ball of earth.
- D. Cut exposed roots cleanly during transplanting operations.
- E. Plant trees following procedures in "Tree, Shrub, and Vine Planting" Article.
- F. Where possible, orient the tree in the same direction as in its original location.

3.7 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PRUNING

- A. Remove only dead, dying, or broken branches. Do not prune for shape.
- B. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines as directed by Architect.
- C. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines according to standard professional horticultural and arboricultural practices. Unless otherwise indicated by Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured, dying, or dead branches from trees and shrubs; and prune to retain natural character.
- D. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.

3.8 TREE STABILIZATION

- A. Trunk Stabilization by Upright Staking and Tying: Install trunk stabilization as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Upright Staking and Tying:
 - a. Stake trees of **2- through 5-inch** caliper. Stake trees of less than **2-inch** caliper only as required to prevent wind tip out. Use a minimum of two stakes of length required to penetrate at least **18 inches** below bottom of backfilled excavation and to extend one-third of trunk height above grade. Set vertical stakes and space to avoid penetrating root balls or root masses.
 - b. Stake trees with two stakes for trees up to **12 feet** high and **2-1/2 inches** or less in caliper; three stakes for trees less than **14 feet** high and up to **4 inches** in caliper. Space stakes equally around trees.
 - 2. Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
 - 3. Support trees with two strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
- B. Trunk Stabilization by Staking and Guying: Install trunk stabilization as follows unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Stake and guy trees more than **14 feet** in height and more than **3 inches** in caliper unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Site-Fabricated, Staking-and-Guying Method: Install no fewer than three guys spaced equally around tree.
 - a. Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
 - b. Support trees with multiple strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
 - c. Attach flags to each guy wire, **30 inches** above finish grade.

2. Proprietary Staking and Guying Device: Install staking and guying system sized and positioned as recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Root-Ball Stabilization: Install at- or below-grade stabilization system to secure each new planting by the root ball unless otherwise indicated.
1. Wood Hold-Down Method: Place vertical stakes against side of root ball and drive them into subsoil; place horizontal wood hold-down stake across top of root ball and screw at each end to one of the vertical stakes.
 - a. Install stakes of length required to penetrate at least **18 inches** below bottom of backfilled excavation. Saw stakes off at horizontal stake.
 - b. Install screws through horizontal hold-down and penetrating at least **1 inch** into stakes. Pre-drill holes if necessary to prevent splitting wood.
 - c. Install second set of stakes on other side of root trunk for larger trees.
 2. Proprietary Root-Ball Stabilization Device: Install root-ball stabilization system sized and positioned as recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF ROOT BARRIER

- A. Install root barrier where trees are planted within **48 inches** of paving or other hardscape elements, such as walls, curbs, and walkways, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Align root barrier vertically, and run it linearly along and adjacent to the paving or other hardscape elements to be protected from invasive roots.
- C. Install root barrier continuously for a distance of **60 inches** in each direction from the tree trunk, for a total distance of **10 feet** per tree. If trees are spaced closer, use a single continuous piece of root barrier.
 1. Position top of root barrier according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 2. Overlap root barrier a minimum of **12 inches** at joints.
 3. Do not distort or bend root barrier during construction activities.
 4. Do not install root barrier surrounding the root ball of tree.

3.10 PLACING SOIL IN PLANTERS

- A. Place a layer of drainage gravel at least **4 inches** thick in bottom of planter. Cover bottom with filter fabric and wrap filter fabric **4 inches** up on all sides. Duct tape along the entire top edge of the filter fabric, to secure the filter fabric against the sides during the soil-filling process.
- B. Fill planter with planting soil **<Insert drawing designation>**. Place soil in lightly compacted layers to an elevation of **1-1/2 inches** below top of planter, allowing natural

settlement.

3.11 GROUND COVER AND PLANT PLANTING

- A. Set out and space ground cover and plants other than trees, shrubs, and vines as indicated on Drawings in even rows with triangular spacing.
- B. Use planting soil **<Insert drawing designation>** for backfill.
- C. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots.
- D. For rooted cutting plants supplied in flats, plant each in a manner that minimally disturbs the root system but to a depth not less than two nodes.
- E. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water.
- F. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.
- G. Protect plants from hot sun and wind; remove protection if plants show evidence of recovery from transplanting shock.

3.12 PLANTING AREA MULCHING

- A. Install weed-control barriers before mulching according to manufacturer's written instructions. Completely cover area to be mulched, overlapping edges a minimum of **6 inches** and secure seams with galvanized pins.

3.13 **<Insert article>**.

3.14 INSTALLATION OF SLOW-RELEASE WATERING DEVICE

- A. Provide one device for each tree.

3.15 PLANT MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings.
- B. Fill in, as necessary, soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
- C. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices when possible to minimize use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include

physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

3.16 REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

- A. General: Repair or replace existing or new trees and other plants that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
 - 1. Submit details of proposed pruning and repairs.
 - 2. Perform repairs of damaged trunks, branches, and roots within 24 hours, if approved.
 - 3. Replace trees and other plants that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Architect.
- B. Remove and replace trees that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition before the end of the corrections period or are damaged during construction operations that Architect determines are incapable of restoring to normal growth pattern.
 - 1. Provide new trees of same size as those being replaced for each tree of 4 inches or smaller in caliper size.
 - 2. Species of Replacement Trees: Same species being replaced.

3.17 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.
- B. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- C. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.
- D. After installation and before Substantial Completion, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.
- E. At time of Substantial Completion, verify that tree-watering devices are in good working order and leave them in place. Replace improperly functioning devices.

3.18 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service for Trees and Shrubs: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in "Plant Maintenance" Article. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established, but for not less than maintenance period

Orange County Medical Examiner's Office

below:

1. Maintenance Period: 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Maintenance Service for Ground Cover and Other Plants: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in "Plant Maintenance" Article. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established, but for not less than maintenance period below:
1. Maintenance Period: [~~Six~~] [~~Three~~] months from date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 329300

SECTION 330500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Piping joining materials.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Sleeves.
5. Identification devices.
6. Grout.
7. Flowable fill.
8. Piped utility demolition.
9. Piping system common requirements.
10. Equipment installation common requirements.
11. Painting.
12. Concrete bases.
13. Metal supports and anchorages.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
- B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- C. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- D. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Dielectric fittings.
2. Identification devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Steel Piping Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting if devices are applied to surfaces.
- C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, **1/8-inch** maximum thickness,

unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, **1/8 inch** thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
1. ABS Piping: ASTM D2235.
 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F493.
 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D3138.
- H. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.2 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Transition Couplings **NPS 1-1/2** and Smaller:
1. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 2. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

2.4 SLEEVES

- A. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- D. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Molded PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other utilities Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
 - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
- C. Stencils: Standard stencils prepared with letter sizes complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1. Minimum letter height is 1-1/4 inches for ducts, and 3/4 inch for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Material: Fiberboard.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd-gloss black enamel, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Snap-on Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Pressure-Sensitive Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, color-coded, pressure-sensitive-vinyl type with permanent adhesive.
- F. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers,

extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.

- G. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, **6 Inches** and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
- H. Lettering:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by Architect.
 - 2. Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
 - a. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions of flow, or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- I. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive vinyl tape, at least **3 mils** thick.
 - 1. Width: **1-1/2 inches** on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than **6 inches**; **2-1/2 inches** for larger pipes.
 - 2. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with **1/4-inch** letters for piping system abbreviation and **1/2-inch** sequenced numbers. Include **5/32-inch** hole for fastener.
 - 1. Material:
 - a. **0.032-inch-** thick, polished brass.
 - b. **0.0375-inch-** thick stainless steel.
 - c. **3/32-inch-** thick plastic laminate with 2 black surfaces and a white inner layer.
 - d. Valve manufacturer's standard solid plastic.
 - 2. Size: **1-1/2 inches** in diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Shape: As indicated for each piping system.
- K. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link or beaded chain; or brass S-hooks.
- L. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
 - 1. Engraving: Engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
 - 2. Thickness:
 - a. **1/8 inch**, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. **1/16 inch**, for units up to **20 sq. in.** or **8 inches** in length, and **1/8 inch** for larger units.

3. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless steel screws or contact-type permanent adhesive.
- M. Plastic Equipment Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:
1. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
 2. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.
 3. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
 4. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet criteria above.
 5. Hazardous Equipment: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
 6. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible. Include the following:
 - a. Name and plan number.
 - b. Equipment service.
 - c. Design capacity.
 - d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
 7. Size: **2-1/2 by 4 inches** for control devices, dampers, and valves; **4-1/2 by 6 inches** for equipment.
- N. Plasticized Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with mat finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: **3-1/4 by 5-5/8 inches**.
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommets and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.
- O. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in piped utility identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of piped utility systems and equipment.
1. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

2.6 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
1. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 2. Design Mix: **5000-psi**, 28-day compressive strength.
 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.7 FLOWABLE FILL

- A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, portland.
 - 2. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft..
 - 3. Aggregates:
 - a. ASTM C33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.
 - b. ASTM C33, natural sand, fine.
 - 4. Admixture: ASTM C618, fly-ash mineral.
 - 5. Water: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
 - 6. Strength: 100 to 200 psig at 28 days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPED UTILITY DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 DIELECTRIC FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Dry Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
 - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric unions.
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Dielectric flanges.
- B. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:

1. **NPS 2** and Smaller: Dielectric **[couplings] [couplings or dielectric nipples] [nipples]**.
2. **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**: Dielectric nipples.
3. **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8**: Dielectric nipples.
4. **NPS 10 and NPS 12**: Dielectric flange kits.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- I. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- J. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- K. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of equipment areas or other wet areas **[2 inches]** <Insert dimension> above finished floor level.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - a. **[PVC] [Steel]** Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than **NPS 6**.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes **NPS 6** and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
- L. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

- M. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B32.
- I. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.

2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D2235 and ASTM D2661 appendixes.
3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D2855.
5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D3138 Appendix.

L. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D3139.

M. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D3212.

N. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D2657.

1. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

O. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping **NPS 2** and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping **NPS 2-1/2** and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

3.6 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.

C. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

3.7 PAINTING

A. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with

materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
1. Stenciled Markers: According to ASME A13.1.
 2. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot noninsulated piping.
 3. Locate pipe markers on exposed piping according to the following:
 - a. Near each valve and control device.
 - b. Near each branch, excluding short takeoffs for equipment and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch if flow pattern is not obvious.
 - c. Near locations where pipes pass through walls or floors or enter inaccessible enclosures.
 - d. At manholes and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - e. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
- B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of equipment.
1. Lettering Size: Minimum **1/4 inch** high for name of unit if viewing distance is less than **24 inches**, **1/2 inch** high for distances up to **72 inches**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths of size of principal lettering.
 2. Text of Signs: Provide name of identified unit. Include text to distinguish among multiple units, inform user of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
- C. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices that become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.

3.9 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than **4 inches** larger in both directions than supported unit.
 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch** centers around the full perimeter of base.
 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported

equipment.

6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use [**3000-psi**] <Insert strength>, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.10 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor piped utility materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.11 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 330500

SECTION 331415 - SITE WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for combined domestic water service and fire-suppression water service, and terminated **5 ft.** from building. Terminate water-service piping with appropriate fitting for extension by **[Division 21] [Division 22] [Divisions 21 and 22]**.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For piping and specialties including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and specialty sizes and valves, meter and specialty locations, and elevations.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants according to the following:
1. Ensure that piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
 2. Protect threaded ends and flange faces against damage.
 3. Set piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants in best position for handling and to prevent rattling.
- B. During Storage: Use precautions for piping, valves, meters, backflow prevention devices, and fire hydrants according to the following:
1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
 2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
- C. Handling: Use sling to handle products if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig products to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

- D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
- F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
- G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager, Owner no fewer than 10 days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
- B. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for domestic water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
- C. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- D. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Comply with ASTM F645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water

pipng.

- G. Comply with FM Approvals' "Approval Guide" and/or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-suppression water-service products.
- H. Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-suppression water-service piping.
- I. All piping and appurtenances intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), with requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61/NSF 372 or are certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and service sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. AWWA C104/A21.4 cement mortar-lined.
- B. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 - 3. AWWA C104/A21.4 cement mortar-lined.
- C. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. AWWA C104/A21.4 cement mortar-lined.
- D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.

2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
3. AWWA C104/A21.4 cement mortar-lined.

E. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with cut, rounded-grooved ends.
2. AWWA C104/A21.4 cement mortar-lined.

F. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

2.4 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PE, ASTM Pipe: ASTM D2239, SIDR No. 5.3, 7, or 9; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than **160 psig**.

1. Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.
2. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.

B. PE, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C906, DR No. 7.3, 9, or 9.3; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than **160 psig**.

1. PE, AWWA Fittings: AWWA C906, socket- or butt-fusion type, with DR number matching pipe and PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than **160 psig**.

C. PE, Fire-Service Pipe: ASTM F714, AWWA C906, or equivalent for PE water pipe; FM Global approved, with minimum thickness equivalent to FM Global Class 200.

1. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, and made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.

2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D1785.

1. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D2466.

B. PVC, Schedule 80 Pipe: ASTM D1785.

1. PVC, Schedule 80 Socket Fittings: ASTM D2467.
2. PVC, Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.

C. PVC Pipe: UL 1285, Class 150, Class 200, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.

1. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-suppression water service.
2. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 150, Class 200, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.

3. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 150, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.

2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series.
- B. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
- C. Gaskets for Ferrous Piping and Copper-Alloy Tubing: ASME B16.21, asbestos free.
- D. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.
 1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.
- B. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FM Global approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.

2.8 [CORPORATION VALVES] [AND] [CURB VALVES] [AND] [METER VALVES]

- A. Corporation Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include saddle and valve compatible with tapping machine.
 1. Service Saddle: Copper alloy with seal and AWWA C800, threaded outlet for corporation valve.
 2. Corporation Valve: Bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, with AWWA C800, threaded inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
 3. Manifold: Copper fitting with two to four inlets as required, with ends matching corporation valves and outlet matching service piping material.
- B. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
 1. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: ASTM A48/A48M, Class 25 cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches in diameter.

- a. Shutoff Rods: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.
- C. Meter Valves: Comply with AWWA C800 for high-pressure, service-line valves. Include angle or straight-through-pattern bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.

2.9 WATER METER BOXES

A. Water Meter Boxes:

- 1. Cast-iron body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
- 2. Cast-iron body and double cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in top cover; and with separate inner cover; air space between covers; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
- 3. Water Meter Boxes: Polymer-concrete body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping. Include vertical and lateral design loadings of **15,000 lb minimum over 10 by 10 inches** square.

2.10 CONCRETE VAULTS

A. Concrete Vault - Precast, Reinforced Concrete: Designed for A-16 load designation in accordance with ASTM C857 and made in accordance with ASTM C858.

- 1. Ladder: ASTM A36/A36M, steel or PE-encased steel steps.
- 2. Manhole:
 - a. ASTM A48/A48M Class No. 35A minimum tensile strength, gray-iron traffic frame and cover; **24-inch** minimum diameter unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron traffic frame and cover: **24-inch** minimum diameter unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Drain: ASME A112.6.3, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

2.11 FIRE HYDRANTS

A. Fire Hydrants - Dry Barrel:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
 - a. **[American AVK Co.]**

- b. **[American Cast Iron Pipe Company]**
 - c. **[Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.]**
 - d. **[EJ Group, Inc.]**
 - e. **[M & H Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.]**
 - f. **[Mueller Co. LLC; Mueller Water Products, Inc.]**
 - g. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire hydrants - dry barrel, from single manufacturer.
 3. Pressure Rating: **[150 psig minimum] [250 psig]**.
 4. Standard: AWWA C502.
 5. Freestanding configuration, with one **NPS 4-1/2** and two **NPS 2-1/2** outlets, **5-1/4-inch** main valve, drain valve, and **NPS 6** mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating in accordance with AWWA C550. Hydrant to have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
 6. Standards: UL 246, and FM Global approved.
 7. Freestanding configuration, with one **NPS 4-1/2** and two **NPS 2-1/2** outlets, **5-1/4-inch** main valve, drain valve, and **NPS 6** mechanical-joint inlet. Hydrant to have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
 - a. Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
 - b. Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, **1-1/2 inches** point to flat.
 - c. Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valve by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
 - d. Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint unless otherwise indicated.

B. Fire Hydrants - Wet Barrel:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]**:
 - a. **[American AVK Co.]**
 - b. **[Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.]**
 - c. **[James Jones Company, LLC; a Mueller brand]**
 - d. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **[American AVK Co.]**
 - b. **[Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.]**
 - c. **[James Jones Company, LLC; a Mueller brand]**
 - d. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
3. Source Limitations: Obtain fire hydrants - wet barrel, from single manufacturer.
4. Pressure Rating: **150 psig** minimum.
5. Standard: AWWA C503.

6. Freestanding configuration, with one **NPS 4-1/2** and two **NPS 2-1/2** outlets, **NPS 6** threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with **NPS 6** mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating in accordance with AWWA C550.
7. Standards: UL 246, and FM Global approved.
8. Freestanding configuration, with one **NPS 4-1/2** and two **NPS 2-1/2** outlets, **NPS 6** threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with **NPS 6** mechanical-joint inlet.
 - a. Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
 - b. Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, **1-1/2 inches** point to flat.
 - c. Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valves by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
 - d. Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint unless otherwise indicated.

2.12 FLUSHING HYDRANTS

- A. Flushing Hydrants - Ground Type: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **[GIL Industries, Inc]**
 - b. **[Kupferle Foundry Co. (The)]**
 - c. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
 2. Source Limitations: Obtain flushing hydrants - ground type, from single manufacturer.
 3. Pressure Rating: **150 psig** minimum.
 4. Outlet: One, with **[vertical]** **[angle]** discharge.
 5. Hose Thread: **NPS 2-1/2**, with NFPA 1963 external hose thread for use by local fire department, and with cast-iron cap with brass chain.
 6. Barrel: Cast-iron or steel pipe.
 7. Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure, and automatic draining.
 8. Inlet: **NPS 2** minimum.
 9. Hydrant Box: Cast iron with cover, for ground mounting.
 10. Operating Wrench: One for each unit.

2.13 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm Devices: UL 753 and FM Global approved, of types and sizes to mate and match piping and equipment.
- B. Water-Flow Indicators: Vane-type water-flow detector, rated for **250 psig** working pressure; designed for horizontal or vertical installation; with 2 SPDT circuit switches to provide isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125 V ac and 0.25 A, 24 V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and

tamperproof cover that sends signal when cover is removed.

- C. Supervisory Switches: SPDT; designed to signal valve in other than fully open position.
- D. Pressure Switches: SPDT; designed to signal increase in pressure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with excavating, trenching, and backfilling requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
- C. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
- D. Underground water-service piping **NPS 4 to NPS 8** to be the following:
 - 1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed, mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 - 2. PE, AWWA pipe; PE, AWWA fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
 - 3. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 4. **NPS 4 and NPS 6: NPS 6** PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe; PVC, AWWA Class 150 molded fittings; and gasketed joints.
 - 5. **NPS 8:** PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe; push-on-joint, ductile-iron, mechanical-joint, ductile-iron fittings; and gasketed joints.
- E. Aboveground water-service piping **NPS 4 to NPS 8** to be any of the following:
 - 1. Ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron, grooved-end appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 - 2. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented, threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- F. Underground fire-service-main piping **NPS 4 to NPS 12** to be the following:
 - 1. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
 - 2. PE, Class 200, fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
 - 3. PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 150

4. fabricated or molded fittings; and gasketed joints.
 4. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 200 fabricated fittings; and gasketed joints.
 5. Fiberglass, AWWA, FM Global approved RTRP, [Class 150] [Class 200]; RTRF; and gasketed joints.
- G. Aboveground fire-service-main piping **NPS 4 to NPS 12** to be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- H. Underground Combined Water-Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping **NPS 4** to be any of the following:
1. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
 2. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC fabricated or molded fittings of same class as pipe; and gasketed joints.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for **NPS 3** and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FM Global, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for **NPS 2** and smaller installation.
- B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Underground Valves, **NPS 4** and Larger, for Indicator Posts: UL/FM Global, cast-iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator post.
 2. Use the following for valves in vaults and aboveground:
 - a. Gate Valves, **NPS 2** and Smaller: Bronze, nonrising stem.
 - b. Gate Valves, **NPS 3** and Larger: AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, metal seated, AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, resilient seated, UL/FM Global, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem.
 - c. Check Valves: AWWA C508, UL/FM Global, swing type.
 3. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to control water pressure.
 4. Relief Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground.
 - a. Air-Release Valves: To release accumulated air.
 - b. Air/Vacuum Valves: To release or admit large volume of air during filling of piping.
 - c. Combination Air Valves: To release or admit air.
 5. Detector Check Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to detect unauthorized use of water.

3.4 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping-system common requirements.
- B. Provide a continuous bare copper or aluminum tracer wire not less than **0.10 inch** in diameter in sufficient length over each separate run of nonmetallic pipe.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Water-Main Connection:
 - 1. Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
 - 2. Tap water main in accordance with requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
- B. Make connections larger than **NPS 2** with tapping machine according to the following:
 - 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve in accordance with MSS SP-60.
 - 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
 - 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
 - 4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- C. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
 - 1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- D. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping in accordance with AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
 - 1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install PE pipe in accordance with ASTM D2774 and ASTM F645.
- F. Install PVC, AWWA pipe in accordance with ASTM F645 and AWWA M23.
- G. Install fiberglass AWWA pipe in accordance with AWWA M45.
- H. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 42 inches, with top at least [**12 inches**] <Insert dimension> below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
 - 1. Under Driveways: With at least 42 inches of cover over top.
- I. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.

- J. Extend water-service, fire-suppression water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building water-piping, fire-suppression piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
 - 1. Terminate water-service, fire-suppression water-service piping at building wall until building water-piping, fire-suppression piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building water-piping, fire-suppression piping systems when those systems are installed.
- K. Sleeves are specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping", Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- L. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping", Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- M. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping", Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- N. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- O. Comply with Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes," Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems," and Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for fire-suppression-water piping inside the building.
- P. Comply with Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.

3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Comply with Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Make pipe joints according to the following:
 - 1. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedures recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
 - 2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
 - 3. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
 - 4. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts in accordance with coupling manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 5. PE Piping Insert-Fitting Joints: Use plastic insert fittings and fasteners in

- accordance with fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
6. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials in accordance with AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant in accordance with ASTM D2774 or ASTM D3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
 7. Fiberglass Piping Bonded Joints: Use adhesive and procedure recommended by piping manufacturer.
 8. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 - a. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2** and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
 - b. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**: Use dielectric flanges, flange kits.
 - c. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 5** and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORAGE

- A. Anchorage: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
 2. Locking mechanical joints.
 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
 4. Bolted flanged joints.
 5. Heat-fused joints.
 6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
 7. **<Insert devices>**.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: In accordance with AWWA C600.
 2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: In accordance with AWWA M23.
 3. Bonded-Joint Fiberglass, Water-Service Piping: In accordance with AWWA M45.
 4. Fire-Service-Main Piping: In accordance with NFPA 24.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
- C. UL-Listed or FM Global-Approved Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.

- D. UL-Listed or FM Global-Approved Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
- E. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- F. Corporation Valves, Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.
- G. Relief Valves: Comply with AWWA C512. Install aboveground with shutoff valve on inlet.
- H. Comply with requirements for concrete piers in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for support of valves and piping not direct buried.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.
- B. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants: Install with valve below frost line. Provide for drainage.
- C. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.
- D. UL/FM Global Fire Hydrants: Comply with NFPA 24.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF FLUSHING HYDRANTS

- A. Install post-type flushing hydrants with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Support in upright position. Include separate gate valve or curb valve and restrained joints in supply piping.
- B. Install ground-type flushing hydrants with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Install hydrant box flush with grade. Include separate gate valve or curb valve and restrained joints in supply piping.
- C. Install sampling stations with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Attach weather-resistant housing and support in upright position. Include separate curb valve in supply piping.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF ALARM DEVICES

- A. Comply with NFPA 24 for devices and methods of valve supervision. Underground valves with valve box do not require supervision.
- B. Supervisory Switches: Supervise valves in open position.
 - 1. Valves: Grind away portion of exposed valve stem. Bolt switch, with plunger in stem depression, to OS&Y gate-valve yoke.
 - 2. Indicator Posts: Drill and thread hole in upper-barrel section at target plate. Install

switch, with toggle against target plate, on barrel of indicator post.

- C. Locking and Sealing: Secure unsupervised valves as follows:
 - 1. Valves: Install chain and padlock on open OS&Y gate valve.
 - 2. Post Indicators: Install padlock on wrench on indicator post.
- D. Pressure Switches: Drill and thread hole in exposed barrel of fire hydrant. Install switch.
- E. Water-Flow Indicators: Install in water-service piping in vault. Select indicator with saddle and vane matching pipe size. Drill hole in pipe, insert vane, and bolt saddle to pipe.
- F. Connect alarm devices to building fire-alarm system. Wiring and fire-alarm devices are specified in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems"

3.12 CONNECTIONS

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
- B. Connect water-distribution piping to utility water main, existing water main. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve.
- C. Connect water-distribution piping to interior [**domestic water**] [**and**] [**fire-suppression**] piping.
- D. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
 - 1. Increase pressure in **50 psig** increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for one hour; decrease to **0 psig**. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for one more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is **2 quarts** per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
- C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for identifying devices.

3.15 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
 - 3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
 - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 331415

SECTION 334200 - STORMWATER CONVEYANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ductile-iron culvert pipe and fittings.
2. ABS pipe and fittings.
3. PE pipe and fittings.
4. Non-pressure transition couplings.
5. Drains.
6. Encasement for piping.
7. Catch basins.
8. Stormwater inlets.
9. Stormwater detention structures.
10. Pipe outlets.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- ##### A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, and covers.
2. **[Catch basins] [stormwater inlets] [and] [dry wells]**. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and grates.
3. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, design calculations, and concrete design-mix reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.

- B. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than **1 inch equals 50 feet** and vertical scale of not less than **1 inch equals 5 feet**. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes in accordance with manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- D. Handle **[catch basins] [and] [stormwater inlets]** in accordance with manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify **[Architect] [Construction Manager] [Owner]** no fewer than **[two] <Insert number>** days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without **[Architect's] [Construction Manager's] [Owner's]** written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
 - 1. **[AB & I Foundry; a part of the McWane family of companies]**
 - 2. **[Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company]**

3. **[Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies]**
 4. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings from single manufacturer.
- C. Pipe and Fittings:
1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
 2. Standard: ASTM A888 or CISPI 301.
- D. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
 - a. **[MG Piping Products Company]**
 - b. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **<Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **[MG Piping Products Company]**
 - b. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
 3. Source Limitations: Obtain cast-iron, hubless-piping couplings from single manufacturer.
 4. Description: Two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless steel bolts and nuts; and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 5. Standards:
 - a. ASTM C1277 for couplings.
 - b. ASTM A48/A48M for cast-iron castings.
 - c. ASTM C564 for gaskets.
- 2.2 DUCTILE-IRON, CULVERT PIPE AND FITTINGS
- A. Pipe: ASTM A716, for push-on joints.
 - B. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
 - C. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153/A21.53, for push-on joints.
 - D. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

2.3 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
1. **[Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company]**
 2. **[JM Eagle]**
 3. **[Royal Building Products, a Westlake Company]**
 4. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain ABS pipe and fittings from single manufacturer.
- C. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic storm drain and "NSF-sewer" for plastic storm sewer piping.
- D. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D2661, Schedule 40.
- E. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F628, Schedule 40.
- F. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D2661, made to ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- G. Gaskets: ASTM F477, elastomeric seals.
- H. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2235.
1. Solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 325 g/L or less.
 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 3. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 4. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.
 5. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." The building concentration of formaldehyde shall not exceed half of the indoor recommended exposure limit or 33 mcg/cu. m and that of acetaldehyde shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m.

2.4 CORRUGATED-PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
 - 1. **[Emco Industrial Plastics]**
 - 2. **[Industrial Specialties Mfg, Inc.]**
 - 3. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain corrugated-PE pipe and fittings from single manufacturer.
- C. Corrugated-PE Drainage Pipe and Fittings **NPS 3 to NPS 10**: AASHTO M 252, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
- D. Corrugated-PE Pipe and Fittings **NPS 12 to NPS 60**: AASHTO M 294, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
- E. Corrugated-PE Silttight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with pipe and fittings.
- F. Corrugated-PE Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 294, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

2.5 DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Area Drains:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
 - a. **[Josam Company]**
 - b. **[MIFAB, Inc]**
 - c. **[Morris Group International]**
 - d. **[Neenah Foundry Company]**
 - e. **[Tyler Pipe; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.]**
 - f. **[WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company]**
 - g. **[Zurn Industries, LLC]**
 - h. **<Insert manufacturer's name>**
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain cast-iron area drains from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Description: ASME A112.6.3 gray-iron round body with anchor flange and round grate. Include bottom outlet with inside caulk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.
 - 4. Top-Loading Classification(s): **[Medium Duty] [and] [Heavy Duty]**.
- B. Grate Openings: **[1/4 inch circular] [3/8 inch circular] [3/8 inch circular or 3/8-by-3-**

inch slots] [3/8-by-3-inch slots].

2.6 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Material: [Linear low-density polyethylene film of **0.008-inch**] [or] [cross-laminated HDPE film of **0.004-inch**] minimum thickness.
- C. Form: [**Sheet**] [or] [**tube**].
- D. Color: [**Black**] [or] [**natural**] <Insert color>.

2.7 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete in accordance with **ACI 318**, **ACI 350**, and the following:
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type II.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, sand.
 - 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, crushed gravel.
 - 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: **4000 psi** minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
 - 1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A1064/A1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 - 2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.
- C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, **4000 psi** minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
 - 1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
 - a. Invert Slope: [**1**] [**2**] percent through manhole.
 - 2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
 - a. Slope: [**4**] [**8**] percent.
- D. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, **3000 psi** minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
 - 1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A1064/A1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 - 2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

2.8 CATCH BASINS

A. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins:

1. Description: **ASTM C478**, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
2. Base Section: **6-inch** minimum thickness for floor slab and **4-inch** minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
3. Riser Sections: **4-inch** minimum thickness, **48-inch** diameter, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
4. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
5. Joint Sealant: **ASTM C990**, bitumen or butyl rubber.
6. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
7. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of **6- to 9-inch** total thickness, that match **24-inch-** diameter frame and grate.
8. Steps: [**Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder**] [Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A615/A615M, deformed, **1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D4101, PP**] [ASTM A615/A615M, deformed, **1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D4101, PP**] <Insert material>, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at **12- to 16-inch** intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than **[60]** <Insert dimension>**inches**.
9. Pipe Connectors: **ASTM C923**, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

B. Designed Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C913, precast, reinforced concrete; designed in accordance with ASTM C890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for joint sealants.

1. Joint Sealants: **ASTM C990**, bitumen or butyl rubber.
2. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
3. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of **6- to 9-inch** total thickness, that match **24-inch-** diameter frame and grate.
4. Steps: [**Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder**] [Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A615/A615M, deformed, **1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D4101, PP**] [ASTM A615/A615M, deformed, **1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D4101, PP**] <Insert material>, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at **12- to 16-inch** intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than **[60]** <Insert dimension>**inches**.
5. Pipe Connectors: **ASTM C923**, resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.

- C. Rectangular Frames and Grates: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
 - 1. Size: **24 by 24 inches** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Round Frames and Grates: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), structural loading. Include **24-inch** ID by **7- to 9-inch** riser with **4-inch-** minimum width flange, and **26-inch-** diameter flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
 - 1. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 STORMWATER INLETS

- A. Curb Inlets: Made with vertical curb opening.
- B. Gutter Inlets: Made with horizontal gutter opening. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.
- C. Combination Inlets: Made with vertical curb and horizontal gutter openings. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.
- D. Frames and Grates: Heavy duty.

2.10 STORMWATER DETENTION STRUCTURES

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Stormwater Detention Structures: Constructed of reinforced-concrete bottom, walls, and top; designed in accordance with ASTM C890 for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
 - 1. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete as required to prevent flotation.
 - 2. Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of **6- to 9-inch** total thickness, that match **24-inch-** diameter frame and cover.
 - 3. Steps: [**Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder**] [Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A615/A615M, deformed, **1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D4101, PP**] [ASTM A615/A615M, deformed, **1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D4101, PP**] **<Insert material>**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at **12- to 16-inch** intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of structure to finished grade is less than **[60] <Insert dimension>inches**.
- B. Manhole Frames and Covers: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron castings designed for heavy-duty service. Include **24-inch** ID by **7- to 9-inch** riser with **4-inch-** minimum width flange, and **26-inch-** diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."

2.11 PIPE OUTLETS

- A. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.
- B. Riprap Basins: Broken, irregularly sized and shaped, graded stone in accordance with NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control."
 - 1. Average Size:
 - a. NSSGA No. R-3, screen opening **2 inches**.
 - b. NSSGA No. R-4, screen opening **3 inches**.
 - c. NSSGA No. R-5, screen opening **5 inches**.
- C. Filter Stone: In accordance with NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. FS-2, No. 4 screen opening, average-size graded stone.
- D. Energy Dissipaters: In accordance with NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, **3-ton** average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.

- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping in accordance with the following:
1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
 2. Install piping [**NPS 6**] <Insert value> and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 3. Install piping with [**36-**] [**48-**] [**60-**] [**72-**] <Insert dimension> inch- minimum cover.
 4. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
 5. Install hubless cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
 6. Install ductile-iron piping and special fittings in accordance with AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 7. Install corrugated-steel piping in accordance with ASTM A798/A798M.
 8. Install corrugated-aluminum piping in accordance with ASTM B788/B788M.
 9. Install ABS sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM F1668.
 10. Install PE corrugated sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.
 11. Install PVC cellular-core piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM F1668.
 12. Install PVC sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM F1668.
 13. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM F1668.
 14. Install PVC water-service piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM F1668.
 15. Install fiberglass sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D3839 and ASTM F1668.
 16. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping in accordance with ASTM C1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
 17. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping in accordance with ASTM C1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
- G. Install force-main pressure piping in accordance with the following:
1. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
 2. Install piping with [**36-**] [**48-**] [**60-**] [**72-**] <Insert dimension> inch- minimum cover.
 3. Install ductile-iron pressure piping in accordance with AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
 4. Install ductile-iron special fittings in accordance with AWWA C600.
 5. Install PVC pressure piping in accordance with AWWA M23, or ASTM D2774 and ASTM F1668.
 6. Install PVC water-service piping in accordance with ASTM D2774 and ASTM F1668.
- H. Install corrosion-protection piping encasement over the following underground metal piping in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5:
1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

3. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
4. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping in accordance with the following:

1. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasketed joints in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
2. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with caulked joints in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum caulked joints.
3. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
4. Join ductile-iron culvert piping in accordance with AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
5. Join ductile-iron piping and special fittings in accordance with AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
6. Join corrugated-steel sewer piping in accordance with ASTM A798/A798M.
7. Join corrugated-aluminum sewer piping in accordance with ASTM B788/B788M.
8. Join ABS sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 for elastomeric-seal joints.
9. Join corrugated-PE piping in accordance with ASTM D3212 for push-on joints.
10. Join PVC cellular-core piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM F891 for solvent-cemented joints.
11. Join PVC corrugated sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 for elastomeric-seal joints.
12. Join PVC sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM D3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D3034 for elastomeric-gasketed joints.
13. Join PVC profile gravity sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F794 for gasketed joints.
14. Join fiberglass sewer piping in accordance with ASTM D3839 for elastomeric-seal joints.
15. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping in accordance with **ASTM C14** and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
16. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping in accordance with ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
17. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

B. Join force-main pressure piping in accordance with the following:

1. Join ductile-iron pressure piping in accordance with AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
2. Join ductile-iron special fittings in accordance with AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
3. Join PVC pressure piping in accordance with AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
4. Join PVC water-service piping in accordance with ASTM D2855 for solvent-cemented joints.
5. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.

3.4 BACKWATER VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install horizontal-type backwater valves in piping where indicated.
- B. Install combination horizontal and manual gate-valve type in piping and in manholes where indicated.
- C. Install terminal-type backwater valves on end of piping and in manholes where indicated.

3.5 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
 - 1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in [**earth or unpaved foot-traffic**] <Insert other> areas.
 - 2. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in [**paved foot-traffic**] <Insert other> areas.
 - 3. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in [**vehicle-traffic service**] <Insert other> areas.
 - 4. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in [**roads**] <Insert area>.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, [**18 by 18 by 12**] <Insert dimensions> inches deep. Set with tops [**1**] <Insert dimension> inches above surrounding earth grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.6 DRAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install type of drains in locations indicated.
 - 1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification drains in [**earth or unpaved foot-traffic**] <Insert other> areas.
 - 2. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification drains in [**paved foot-traffic**] <Insert other> areas.
 - 3. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification drains in [**vehicle-traffic service**] <Insert other> areas.
 - 4. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification drains in [**roads**] <Insert area>.
- B. Embed drains in **4-inch**- minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
- C. Fasten grates to drains if indicated.
- D. Set drain frames and covers with tops flush with pavement surface.

- E. Assemble trench sections with flanged joints.
- F. Embed trench sections in [4-] <Insert dimension> inch- minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.7 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants in accordance with ASTM C891.
- C. Where specific manhole construction is not indicated, follow manhole manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops [3] <Insert dimension> inches above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION

- A. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
- B. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

3.9 STORMWATER INLET AND OUTLET INSTALLATION

- A. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.
- B. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.
- C. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.
- D. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.
- E. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

3.10 DRY WELL INSTALLATION

- A. Excavate hole to diameter of at least 6 inches greater than outside of dry well. Do not extend excavation into ground-water table.
- B. Install precast, concrete-ring dry wells in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Assemble rings to depth indicated.
 - 2. Extend rings to height where top of cover will be approximately 8 inches below finished grade.

3. Backfill bottom of inside of rings with filtering material to level at least **12 inches** above bottom.
 4. Extend effluent inlet pipe **12 inches** into rings and terminate into side of tee fitting.
 5. Backfill around outside of rings with filtering material to top level of rings.
 6. Install cover over top of rings.
- C. Install manufactured, PE dry wells in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and the following:
1. Assemble and install panels and cover.
 2. Backfill bottom of inside of unit with filtering material to level at least **[12] <Insert dimension> inches** above bottom.
 3. Extend effluent inlet pipe **[12] <Insert dimension> inches** into unit and terminate into side of tee fitting.
 4. Install filter fabric around outside of unit.
 5. Install filtering material around outside of unit.
- D. Install constructed-in-place dry wells in accordance with the following:
1. Install brick lining material dry and laid flat, with staggered joints for seepage. Build to diameter and depth indicated.
 2. Install block lining material dry, with staggered joints and 20 percent minimum of blocks on side for seepage. Install precast concrete rings with notches or weep holes for seepage. Build to diameter and depth indicated.
 3. Extend lining material to height where top of manhole will be approximately **[8] <Insert dimension> inches** below finished grade.
 4. Backfill bottom of inside of lining with filtering material to level at least **[12] <Insert dimension> inches** above bottom.
 5. Extend effluent inlet pipe **[12] <Insert dimension> inches** into lining and terminate into side of tee fitting.
 6. Backfill around outside of lining with filtering material to top level of lining.
 7. Install manhole over top of dry well. Support cover on undisturbed soil. Do not support cover on lining.

3.11 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete in accordance with **ACI 318**.

3.12 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.
- B. Assemble channel sections to form slope down toward drain outlets. Use sealants, adhesives, fasteners, and other materials recommended by system manufacturer.
- C. Embed channel sections and drainage specialties in **[4-] <Insert dimension> inch-** minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
- D. Fasten grates to channel sections if indicated.

- E. Assemble channel sections with flanged or interlocking joints.
- F. Embed channel sections in [4-] <Insert dimension> inch- minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

3.13 STORMWATER DISPOSAL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Chamber Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install system and backfill in accordance with chamber manufacturer's written instructions. Include storage and leaching chambers, filtering material, and filter mat.
- B. Piping Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install piping system, filter fabric, and backfill, in accordance with piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.14 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Connect force-main piping to building's storm drainage force mains specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Terminate piping where indicated.
- C. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
 - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
 - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
 - 3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes and structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
 - a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
 - 4. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

- D. Connect to sediment interceptors specified in Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors."
- E. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. **[Unshielded]** **[Shielded]** flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
 - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
 - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
 - 2. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.

3.15 CLOSING ABANDONED STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
 - 1. Close open ends of piping with at least **[8-]** **<Insert dimension>** **inch-** thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
 - 2. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
- B. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:
 - 1. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.
 - 2. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least **[36]** **<Insert dimension>** **inches** below final grade. Fill to within **[12]** **<Insert dimension>** **inches** of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
- C. Backfill to grade in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.16 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
 - 1. Use detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.

2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately **24 inches** of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
 1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 2. Test completed piping systems in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 4. Submit separate report for each test.
 5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
 - a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Option: Test plastic piping in accordance with ASTM F1417.
 6. Force-Main Storm Drainage Piping: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than **[150] <Insert number>** psig (kPa).
 - a. Ductile-Iron Piping: Test in accordance with AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
 - b. PVC Piping: Test in accordance with AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.

- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.18 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials.[**Flush with potable water.**][**Flush with water.**]

END OF SECTION 334200

SECTION 334600 - SUBDRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Perforated-wall pipe and fittings.
2. Geotextile filter fabrics.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Drainage conduits, including rated capacities.
2. Drainage panels, including rated capacities.
3. Geotextile filter fabrics.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORATED-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:

1. **NPS 6** and Smaller: ASTM F405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
2. **NPS 8** and Larger: ASTM F667; AASHTO M 252, Type CP; or AASHTO M 294, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
3. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.

B. Perforated PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D2729, bell-and-spigot ends, for loose joints.

2.2 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Soil materials are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

2.3 WATERPROOFING FELTS

A. Material: Comply with ASTM D226, Type I, asphalt, ASTM D227, coal-tar-saturated organic felt.

2.4 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRICS

- A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from **110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft.** when tested in accordance with ASTM D4491.
- B. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament.
 - 1. Survivability: AASHTO M 288 Class 2.
 - 2. Styles: Flat and sock.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and areas for suitable conditions where subdrainage systems are to be installed.
- B. If subdrainage is required for landscaping, locate and mark existing utilities, underground structures, and aboveground obstructions before beginning installation and avoid disruption and damage of services.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.3 RETAINING-WALL DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- B. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade to compacted depth of not less than **4 inches**.
- C. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive.
- D. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for retaining-wall subdrainage.
- E. Add drainage course to width of at least **6 inches** on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
- F. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least **6 inches** on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within **12 inches** of finish grade.
- G. Place drainage course in layers not exceeding **3 inches** in loose depth; compact each layer placed and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.

- H. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least **12 inches**.
- I. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding **8 inches**. Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

3.4 LANDSCAPING DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Provide trench width to allow installation of drainage conduit. Grade bottom of trench excavations to required slope, and compact to firm, solid bed for drainage system.
- B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than **4 inches**.
- D. Install drainage conduits as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for landscaping subdrainage with horizontal distance of at least **6 inches** between conduit and trench walls. Wrap drainage conduits without integral geotextile filter fabric with flat-style geotextile filter fabric before installation. Connect fabric sections with adhesive, or, tape.
- E. Add drainage course to top of drainage conduits.
- F. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage conduit to within **12 inches** of finish grade.
- G. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
- H. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least **8 inches**.
- I. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding **6 inches**. Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.
 - 1. Retaining-Wall Subdrainage: When water discharges at end of wall into stormwater piping system, install piping level and with a minimum cover of **36 inches** unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Landscaping Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of **36 inches** unless otherwise indicated.

3. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
 4. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.
- B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.
- C. Install thermoplastic piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.

3.6 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join perforated PE pipe and fittings with couplings in accordance with ASTM D3212 with loose banded, coupled, or push-on joints.
- B. Join perforated PVC sewer pipe and fittings in accordance with ASTM D3212 with loose bell-and-spigot, push-on joints.
- C. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.

3.7 BACKWATER VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Install horizontal backwater valves in header piping downstream from perforated subdrainage piping.

3.8 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Cleanouts for Retaining-Wall, Landscaping Subdrainage:
1. Install cleanouts from piping to grade. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
 2. In vehicular-traffic areas, use **NPS 4** cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 24" deep. Set top of cleanout flush with grade.
 3. In nonvehicular-traffic areas, use **NPS 4 [cast-iron] [PVC]** pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 24" deep. Set top of cleanout below above grade.
 4. Comply with requirements for concrete specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- C. Cleanouts for Underslab Subdrainage:
 - 1. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from piping to top of slab. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
 - 2. Use **NPS 4** cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout flush with top of slab.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to building's solid-wall-piping storm drainage system.
- C. Where required, connect low elevations of underslab subdrainage to stormwater sump pumps. Comply with requirements for sump pumps specified in Section 221429 "Sump Pumps."

3.10 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping. Comply with requirements for underground warning tapes specified in specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Install PE warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 2. Install detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing drainage course to top of piping, test drain piping with water to ensure free flow before backfilling.
 - 2. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.
- B. Drain piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is

completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 334600